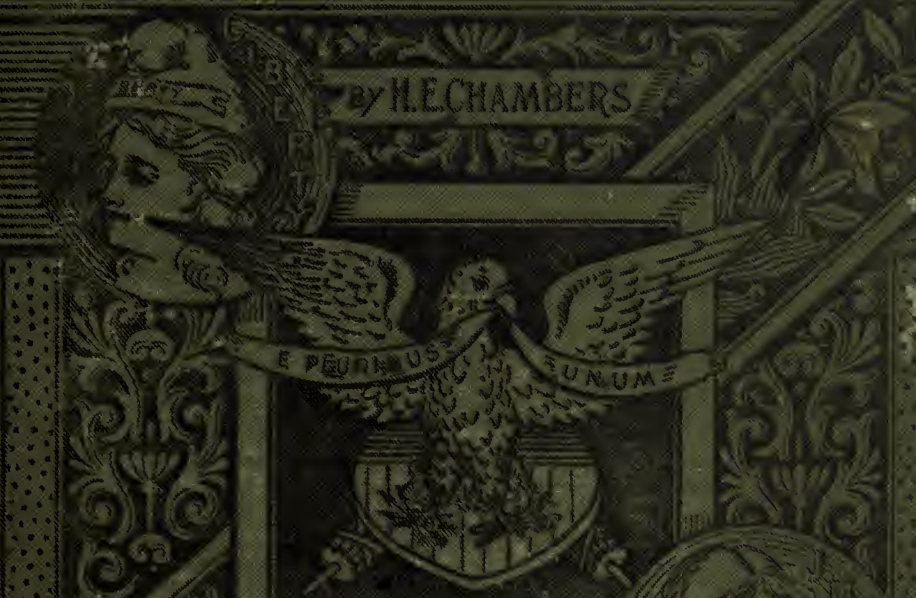
HANSELL'S HISTORICAL SERIES

A HIGHER HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES

By H. E. CHAMBERS



F. F. HANSELL & BRO.
PUBLISHERS NEW ORLEANS

FROM
S. BUTELER THOMPSON,
Books, Music, Etc.
LAKE CITY, FLA.

10 ¢

Mar. 9, 1915.

BERKELEY
LIBRARY
UNIVERSITY OF
CALIFORNIA

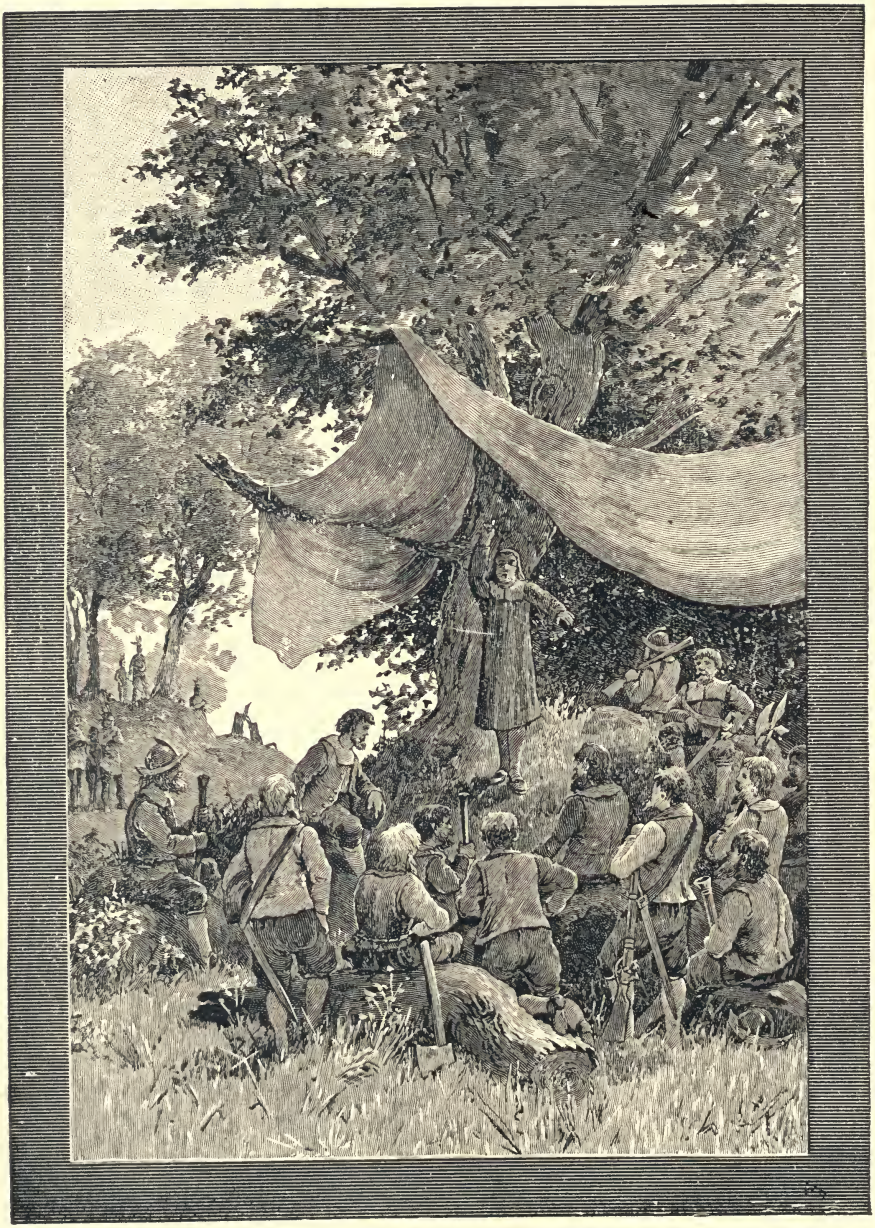
EDUCATION LIBR.

J. W. Evans
Lake City
Fla

F. S. C.

J. W. Evans
Lake City
Fla
F. A. C.

J W EVANS
LAKE CITY, FLA.,



JAMESTOWN, 1607.

PRACTICAL EDUCATIONAL SERIES.

A

HIGHER HISTORY

OF THE

UNITED STATES

FOR

SCHOOLS AND ACADEMIES.

JOHN S. PRELL
Civil & Mechanical Engineer.
SAN FRANCISCO, CAL.

HENRY E. CHAMBERS,
Author of "A School History of the United States," Etc.

NEW ORLEANS:
PUBLISHED BY F. F. HANSELL & BRO.

PRACTICAL EDUCATIONAL SERIES,

PUBLISHED BY

F. F. HANSELL & BRO.,

NEW ORLEANS.

CHAMBERS' TWENTY LESSONS IN BOOK-KEEPING.
DUVAL'S STUDENTS' HISTORY OF MISSISSIPPI.
HANSELL'S PRIMARY SPELLER.
HANSELL'S SCHOOL HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES.
HANSELL'S HIGHER HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES.
HANSELL'S PRACTICAL PENMANSHIP, 8 Nos.
HANSELL'S TRACING BOOKS, 3 Nos.
HANSELL'S PRACTICAL DICTIONARY.
HEMPSTEAD'S SCHOOL HISTORY OF ARKANSAS.
NICHOLSON'S PRIMARY ARITHMETIC.
NICHOLSON'S INTERMEDIATE ARITHMETIC.
NICHOLSON'S COMPLETE ARITHMETIC.
NICHOLSON'S ADVANCED ARITHMETIC.
NICHOLSON'S ELEMENTARY ALGEBRA.
PRACTICAL SCHOOL RECORD.
PRACTICAL SCHOOL REGISTER.

COPYRIGHT
1889.
F. F. HANSELL & BRO.

Education

PRESS OF
L. GRAHAM & SON,
NEW ORLEANS.

ELECTROTYPED BY
T. A. SLATTERY & BRO.,
NEW ORLEANS.

GIFT

E178
.1
C295
EDUC.
LIBRARY

PREFACE.

THE preparation of a work whose purpose it is to guide the intelligence and shape the thought of the young mind, carries with it a responsibility, the importance of which must be apparent to all. When this work is one upon the history of our country, and one designed to find its way into the hands of the youth of the South, an obligation is attached to this responsibility which in all its sacredness cannot be too fully dwelt upon. In full realization of this the author undertook the preparation of the present volume with some reluctance. He was encouraged to do so, however, by the favorable reception accorded his "School History of the United States,"—a more elementary text-book,—the general introduction of which into southern schools has brought to him innumerable requests that he supplement his earlier volume with one of a more advanced nature.

The author is one of an army of teachers whose experience with the average historical text-book has been thoroughly unsatisfactory. Like most of these teachers, who have attained satisfactory results with their history classes, he has had to devise and originate his own methods, to eradicate many erroneous impressions caused by prejudiced statements in earlier published text-books, and to obviate the glaring faults of omission to be found in those published at a later day. The objections to be urged against most of these text-books include both text and arrangement. The former too often comprises a series of events tritely described, interspersed with stereotyped anecdotes, whose antiquity has long ago robbed them of all interest. The latter as often consists of a strictly chrono'ogical arrangement of these events, to master which is no light feat of mental gymnastics. Of historical cause and historical effect little is shown. The student is expected to take a series of abruptly disconnected facts, associate those that bear upon each other, and generalize the whole into definite knowledge of the subject. It is needless to say that the association is seldom made, and that inasmuch as the faculty of generalization is one of the last to reach development in the youthful mind, the generalization is never accomplished unless the faculty receives systematic aid and training during its earlier period of growth. Question a student pursuing his historical studies by means of the average school history, and one will find that not infrequently his conception of the American Revolution, and of the secession of the Southern States, is that the one was a conspiracy, the

other a war. Of the struggle for that liberty, enjoyed wherever the English language is spoken, preliminary to the war that was but incidental to the Revolution, and of the events immediately following, he has little knowledge. Of the long chain of events leading to the great civil conflict, and of the logical development of principles, the contention for which has made two peoples heroic, he is ignorant.

In the preparation of the present volume the author has endeavored to place himself in the attitude of both teacher and student. He has embodied in this volume the methods by which, in an experience covering a number of years with classes of various grades, he has attained pronounced and unmistakable success. He has called to mind the mental processes by which he, as a student, attained historical knowledge, and has made smooth the places that presented obstruction to his own youthful mind, as well as to those under his observation during his experience as a teacher. He has endeavored to group his facts in a manner to show unmistakably their relation; and at the same time has preserved the signs and land-marks in side-note and outline form, that teacher and pupil, accustomed to other text-books, may find the change to this not altogether an abrupt one. He has endeavored to present his facts truthfully, clearly and logically. Belonging to a generation that has but recently come to a knowledge of the world's affairs, he has inherited traditions only, to bias his judgment. He has, however, made strenuous efforts to avoid error, to make his statements as impartial as lies within his power, and to employ language thoroughly unequivocal.

To the many who have so kindly examined, revised and corrected the proofs and advance sheets, the author must signify his unqualified appreciation. To the printers and compositors, whose infinite patience and excellent suggestions take practical shape in the following pages, he must extend his kindest thanks. To the publishers, whose confidence, enterprise and liberality have enabled him to present the fruits of his labor in so highly attractive a form, his sincere acknowledgments are extended. To the teacher engaged in the holy calling of instilling the truth, the whole truth, in the minds of the young, and into whose hands the present volume may fall, the author gives greeting and a Godspeed.

H. E. C.

Central High School,
New Orleans.

CONTENTS.

INTRODUCTION.

PAGE.

Human Progress.—Revealed by History in General—Exemplified in the History of the United States 13

PERIOD OF DISCOVERY.

I. The Great Awakening.

Chapter I. The Dawn of Learning 19
" II. The Increase of Geographical Knowledge 21

II. America Discovered.

Chapter III. The Idea and the Man 25
" IV. The Story of San Salvador 29
" V. The News Brought Back 33
" VI. First on the Mainland 39

III. First Comers from Four Nations.

Chapter VII. The Spaniards in Florida 43
" VIII. The Conquest of New Spain 47
" IX. The Quest for the Fabulous 52
" X. New France and Acadie 57
" XI. Louisiana 62
" XII. The Northwest Passage 67

IV. America of Old.

Chapter XIII. Aboriginal Races—Semi-civilized 73
" XIV. Aboriginal Races—Savage 78
" XV. Prehistoric America 85

PERIOD OF COLONIZATION.

I. Attempted Settlements.

Chapter I. First Seekers for Religious Liberty 97
" II. Raleigh's Failures in South Virginia 101
" III. English Attempts in North Virginia 106

II. Virginia.

Chapter IV. England's First Foothold 110
" V. The Father of Virginia 113
" VI. Permanency Assured 118
" VII. The First Assembly of American Lawmakers 122

III. New Netherlands.

Chapter VIII. The India Companies 126

IV. New England.

Chapter IX. Pilgrims and Puritans 130
" X. The Tyranny of Intolerance 135
" XI. New England Settlements 138

V. Maryland and Pennsylvania.

Chapter XII. First for Liberty of Conscience 143
" XIII. The Proprietary of Penn's Woods 145

VI. Carolina. PAGE
Chapter XIV The Lords Proprietors 148
VII. Georgia.
Chapter XV. Philanthropy and Protection 152
VIII. Louisiana.
Chapter XVI. French Barriers to Westward Expansion 155

PERIOD OF COLONIAL DEVELOPMENT.

I. The Growing Colonies.
Chapter I. The Beginning of Indian Extinction 164
" II. Indian Conflicts (Northern Colonies) 166
" III. Indian Conflicts (Southern Colonies) 169
" IV. An Early American Rebellion 172
" V. A Vestige of superstition 175
" VI. Colonial Quarrels (English and French) 178
" VII. Colonial Quarrels (English and Spanish) 181
II. The Struggle for Supremacy.
Chapter VIII. A Youth and His Mission 186
" IX. The Old French War 189
" X. England Victorious 191
" XI. Onconostota and Pontiac 196
III. The Thirteen English Colonies.
Chapter XII. Colonial Progress 199
" XIII. The Beginning of American Industries 202
" XIV. The Development of Sectional Differences 205

PERIOD OF REVOLUTION.

I. The Struggle for English Liberty in America.
Chapter I. Commercial Slavery 211
" II. Unjust Taxation 213
" III. Agitation 217
" IV. Armed Resistance 221
" V. Independence Declared 226
II. The War for American Independence.
Chapter VI. The War in the North 234
" VII. The First Great Victory 239
" VIII. The War in the South 245
" IX. The Partisans of the Carolinas 249
" X. America Triumphant 253
III. The Institution of Self Government.
Chapter XI. The Transfer of Soverignty 259
" XII. The Delegation of Governmental Power 262
" XIII. The Federal Constitution 268

PERIOD OF INDEPENDENCE.

I. Union.
Chapter I. The Beginning of the Federal Government 279
" II. The Rise of Political Parties 286
" III Expansion of Territory 290
" IV. The Spirit of Young America 298
" V. The War for Maritime Independence 301
" VI. Sea Triumphs of the Young Republic 308
" VII. The Era of Good Feeling 315
" VIII. The Rise of Modern Political Methods 322
" IX. The American System 325

PAGE.

Chapter X. The Panic of 1837 333
" XI. The Annexation of Texas 338
" XII. War with Mexico 344
" XIII. The Development of Sectional Antagonism 352

II. Disunion.

Chapter XIV. The Secession of the Southern States 361
" XV. The Advance on Richmond 367
" XVI. Early Battles in the West 373
" XVII. The War in Virginia 381
" XVIII. Coast, River, and Sea 393
" XIX. Lights and Shadows of Appomattox 404
" XX. The Readmission of the Southern States 417

III. Reunion.

Chapter XXI. Recent Events 424
" XXII. The United States of To-Day 429

ILLUSTRATIONS.

PAGE.

JAMESTOWN, 1607 *Frontispiece.*
INTRODUCTION (Illustrated Heading) 13
PERIOD OF DISCOVERY (Illustrated Heading) 19
First Signs of Land 32
Statue of Columbus at Genoa 35
Landing of the Cabots 40
Cortez in Mexico 48
Cartier on the St. Lawrence 58
La Salle taking formal possesion of Louisiana 64
In Search of a Northwest Passage 68
Remains of Ancient American Civilization 75
Mandan Village 79
Long House of the Iroquois 79
Indian Medicine Man 81
Indian Burial 83
Indian Mounds, Arkansas 87
Cliff Dwellings 88
A Pueblo 88
Statue of Lief Ericson 90
Norse Ruins in Greenland 90
A Viking Vessel 90
PERIOD OF COLONIZATION (Illustrated Heading) 97
Old Fort St. Augustine 98
"Croatan" 104
Settlers Choosing Wives 120
Introduction of African Slavery 121
Scenes in New Amsterdam 126
Peter Stuyvesant 128
The Mayflower 131
Landing of Pilgrims 134
Roger Williams and the Narragansetts 140

PAGE.

Catholics in Maryland 144
Oglethorpe and Tomo Chichi 153
Death of La Salle 157
Founding of New Orleans 158
PERIOD OF COLONIAL DEVELOPMENT (Illustrated Heading) 164
Indian Warriors 170
Ruins of Jamestown 174
The Charter Oak 178
Washington and the French Commandant 178
Braddock and Captain Jack 190
Wolfe's Army Ascending the Heights 194
Early American Coins 203
PERIOD OF REVOLUTION (Illustrated Heading) 211
The Call to Lexington 222
Paul Revere Watching for the Signal 223
The Continental Congress 224
Fortifying Breed's Hill 226
Sergeant Jasper Replacing the Flag 229
The Advance on Trenton 235
The Morning Drill at Valley Forge 238
American Flag, 1777 241
Battle of King's Mountain 252
The Outpost 255
PERIOD OF INDEPENDENCE (Illustrated Heading) 279
Decatur Burning the Philadelphia 291
Crossing the Rocky Mountains 292
Fulton's First Steamboat 294
Impressing American Seamen 300
Croghan's Defense of Fort Stephenson 302

ILLUSTRATIONS—*Continued.*

	PAGE.
"Don't Give Up the Ship"	310
Battle of New Orleans	312
Early American Railroad Train	322
A New England Factory	328
The Alamo	340
"General Taylor Never Surrenders."	348
A Southern Cotton Field	353
Montgomery, Ala.—Night of Davis' Inauguration	360
Bombardment of Fort Sumter	366
"We Will Give Them the Bayonet."	372
Battle of Shiloh	379
The Confederate Flag	381
The Night before Chancellorsville—Last Meeting of Lee and Jackson	388
The Last Charge at Gettysburg	391
Running the Blockade	394
Battle Between the Virginia and the Monitor	396
Running the Fire of the Forts	398
The Alabama Sinking the Hatteras	403
Custer's Last Rally	425
Statue of Liberty	433
After the Earthquake	434

PORTRAITS.

	PAGE.
Columbus	23
Ferdinand	26
Isabella	27
Americus Vespuccius	41
Balboa	47
Magellan	47
Pizzaro	50
Champlain	60
La Salle	62
Francis Drake	69
Queen Elizabeth	102
Walter Raleigh	103
John Smith	114
Pocahontas	115
Miles Standish	133
John Winthrop	136
Lord Baltimore	143
William Penn	146
James Oglethorpe	152
Montcalm	191
Jeffrey Amherst	192
Wolfe	193
James Otis	212
Patrick Henry	215
Samuel Adams	216
George Washington	227
Moultrie	230
John Rutledge	230
DeKalb	234
Count Pulaski	236
Steuben	237
Gates	241
Burgoyne	241
Pickens	245
John Paul Jones	247
Tarleton	247
Arnold	248
Marion	249
Sumter	250
Henry Lee	251
Isaac Shelby	253
Greene	254
Morgan	255
Lafayette	256
Benjamin Franklin	264
James Robertson	266
Daniel Boone	266
John Sevier	267
John Adams	273
George Washington	280
Charles Cotesworth Pinckney	287
Thos. Jefferson	290
Robert Fulton	295
James Madison	298
Commodore Perry	304
Macdonough	307
James Monroe	316
John Quincy Adams	319
Black Hawk	323
Andrew Jackson	324
Eli Whitney	327
Henry Clay	329
John C. Calhoun	330
Martin Van Buren	333
William Henry Harrison	335
John Tyler	336
Daniel Webster	336
Gen. Sam. Houston	339
James K. Polk	343
Gen. Zachary Taylor	345
Millard Fillmore	355
Franklin Pierce	357
James Buchanan	361
Howell Cobb	363

PORTRAITS—*Continued.*

	Page.
Alexander H. Stephens	365
Jefferson Davis	368
Irvin McDowell	371
E. Kirby Smith	374
A. P. Hill	374
Fitzhugh Lee	374
Wade Hampton	374
H. H. Sibley	375
Sterling Price	375
Earl Van Dorn	376
Albert Pike	376
Leonidas Polk	377
Albert Sidney Johnston	378
W. J. Hardee	379
Joseph H. Wheeler	380
P. G. T. Beauregard	380
Thomas, Grant and Meade	382
J. B. Magruder	384
Geo. B. McClellan	385
John Pope	386
J. E. B. Stuart	387
Ambrose E. Burnside	387
Joseph Hooker	389
"Stonewall" Jackson	389
Richard S. Ewell	390
Geo. D. Pickett	392
Phil. H. Sheridan	395
Commodore Farragut	397
W. S. Rosecrans	399
W. T. Sherman	399
N. P. Banks	400
Richard Taylor	401
Raphael Semmes	402
T. C. Hindman	404
Frederick Steele	404
T. H. Holmes	405
J. B. Hood	407
Jas. B. McPherson	408
John H. Morgan	408
N. B. Forest	408
Pat Cleburne	409
E. C. Walthall	409
Jubal A. Early	410
J. B. Gordon	410
Robert E. Lee	411
Winfield S. Hancock	412
James Longstreet	413
D. H. Hill	413
Joseph E. Johnston	414
Andrew Johnson	418
Abraham Lincoln	419
General Custer	425
R. B. Hayes	426
Jas. A. Garfield	428
Chester A. Arthur	429
Grover Cleveland	430
Benjamin Harrison	435

MAPS.

	Page.
Voyages of the three Great Navigators	29
Early Explorations of the Mississippi Valley	66
Discoveries and Early Settlements	92
First Settlements (Southern Colonies)	96
First Settlements (Middle Colonies)	129
First Settlements (New England Colonies)	139
Florida, Georgia and South Carolina Coast	183
French and Indian War	185
Territorial Possessions (1755)	210
Territorial Changes (1763)	210
Battles of the Revolution (North)	233
Battles of the Revolution (South)	244
Territorial Changes (1800)	292
Territorial Changes (1803)	292
War of 1812	297
Creek War	306
Campaigns of Gen. Taylor	347
Campaigns of Gen. Scott	349
Territorial Changes (1845)	350
Territorial Changes (1852)	350
Confederate States	360
The War in Virginia	383
Sherman's March	407
Territorial Growth of the United States	436

SUGGESTIONS TO TEACHERS.

This book has been arranged to meet a variety of requirements. Teachers who believe that the pupil should obtain something more than a cursory knowledge of earlier American history will find the events leading up to the establishment of the Federal Government treated with unusual fullness. Those who believe that definiteness of acquired knowledge can best be secured by the employment of set questions, will find the ones given in this work carefully chosen and free from such objectionable wordings as elicit mechanical responses. Those whose preferences are for the topic methods of study and recitation will find their requirements duly considered in the Blackboard Forms, Topical and Review Outlines interspersed throughout these pages.

Experienced teachers have long ago recognized the folly of isolating the studies of the class-room, whose interdependence is evident to all. The intimate relation between history and geography, the absolute necessity of a thorough understanding of words used, whatever the subject taught may be, are generally understood. Thus, at intervals in this work, are placed Preparatory Notes, to facilitate a preliminary mastery of locations, word meanings and pronunciations, so that when the text is taken up an intelligent consideration of it may ensue. With the average pupil, the author suggests that these Preparatory Notes be given special and due attention; with the more mature student the teacher may exercise his judgment, whether or not consideration of them is necessary.

It must be borne in mind that history study is mental training, and that little training results where no effort of mind is required to grasp a subject. The author has endeavored to grade the lessons so that this mental effort may be made continuous, and at the same time to make no discouraging demands upon the young mind. He suggests that in the use of this book as a class manual for pupils of the intermediate grammar grades, the teacher follow the full text as it is, up to the period of the REVOLUTION, making analyses of the lessons as indicated in the first few chapters. Upon taking up the Periods of REVOLUTION and INDEPENDENCE for the first time, he would advise that the side notes be only read and referred to in connection with the body of the chapter. With advanced classes intelligent recitations on both side notes and remainder of text should be insisted upon

The Blackboard Forms should be reviewed frequently by being reproduced from time to time with or without dates, as the teacher may see fit. The Topical Outlines should be made the special subjects of study in connection with review exercises, for in these the most important facts of American history are generalized and placed within the full view of the student. The questions printed in bolder type are such as require answers of more than ordinary fullness, the length of which is to be determined by the teacher.

As all History cannot be embraced within the covers of one book there is given, in connection with the Preparatory Notes, a carefully prepared list of references under the heading of *Parallel Readings*, to serve as guides for such original reseach—limited or extended—as the pupil may desire or be required to make. In this connection the author would emphasize the good results that follow the establishment of an historical library—no matter how few the volumes may be—in connection with the school. In addition to the long-established standards there should be found in each of these libraries such bright and modern works as the "American Statesmen" and "American Commonwealth" series, published by Houghton, Mifflin & Co., the "Story of the States Series," published by D. Lothrop & Co., Fisk's "Critical Period of American History," "The Century War Book," and a number of other publications that might be mentioned. No class pursuing the study, or teacher imparting instruction upon the subject, should be without the monthly visits of the *Magazine of American History*, of New York, the most excellent publication of its kind of which the writer has knowledge.

In teaching History the teacher should make use of every convenient aid, and whether he succeeds or not in placing every minute fact indelibly upon the memory of the student, if he can train to breadth of mind and intelligent interest in current affairs, his ends and aims as an instructor of History have been reasonably accomplished.

INTRODUCTION.



HUMAN PROGRESS.

THE history of the human race is a record of that development and progress by which it has attained its present state of civilization and enlightenment. A study of the record reveals that this advancement has been made by various stages, as impulses have from time to time been received; and that the greatest of these impulses have been conquests, race conflicts, colonizations, discoveries, inventions, and birth of spiritual ideas.

The history of a nation, or of a people, is a record of its rise and progress, and, where it has ceased to exist, of its decay. From such as have become known to us we readily perceive that the degree of enlightenment attained by any nation or by any people is proportional to the welfare and condition of the individuals constituting it; and we have come to know that this individual well-being depends directly upon morality, personal liberty, culture, and control of nature's forces.

In the history of the United States we are to see something more than a mere statement of facts, or a narrative of events arranged in chronological order. We are to see in it the rise and development of a nation distinct in its political features from all others on the earth; a nation of self-governing States, bound together by ties of agreement and mutual interest, exemplifying in every respect the laws of human progress; a nation no part of whose history is shrouded in the obscurity of a remote past, but whose birth and rapid growth have been illumined by the full light of modern times. This history is of absorbing interest to the intelligent of every foreign land, and to be perfectly familiar with it should be the pride, as it is the duty, of every citizen of our own.

Although the youngest of civilized nations the United States has already received many of the impulses to progress that history in general reveals to us. As a nation, its foundations were laid in intellectual development, geographical discovery and colonization. The expansion of its territory has been marked by conquest and race conflicts. The advancement of its people has been preëminently characterized by invention and scientific discoveries. Ideas have been awakened into life during the course of its existence that are of paramount importance to mankind without its borders as well as within—such ideas as the equality of man, liberty of conscience, personal freedom, and the right of self-government.

Within its confines is to be found every essential condition of individual well-being. Morality is fostered by law and is furthered by churches of many denominations in every hamlet. Each State concerns itself directly with the culture of its inhabitants, and to that end provides universities, colleges and common school systems. Personal freedom is recognized by it as by no other nation; for here the only restric-

tion placed upon individuals in time of peace is that no one shall interfere with another in the enjoyment of rights common to all. No other people have so placed the forces of nature under control to ease the burdens, to lighten the labors, and to facilitate the subsistence of the human race.

The history of this nation, then, is one in which every American may take pride; it should be familiar to every boy and girl. There is a past that in its glory must be carried into our future. There is a past that in its sadness must never be repeated in our experience so long as the nation endures. Sadness and glory alike must become known to successive generations, who, becoming citizens, perpetuate our institutions. A knowledge of what has transpired enables one to judge of the present and influence the future. If this knowledge inform us of ill-feeling and bitterness, the present tells us that the well springs of this ill-feeling and bitterness have dried up. The future must find us carrying forward unitedly our common country to its glorious destiny. No greater lesson is to be learned from United States history than this.

In the following pages the history of the United States is approached by first considering the condition of Europe at a time when America was unknown. In the consideration of this condition we are to note the circumstances that led to the discovery of America, the explorers concerned in making this newly-found region of the earth known, and the colonization of its shores. There is given incidentally some account of the red races of people there found, showing the degree of civilization they had attained in accordance with the well-known laws of human progress; and also of the authentic and uncertain visitations of America in past times, that added not to the knowledge of mankind, and therefore

rob the navigator who first made the western continent known, of not one tithe of his honor and credit.

In the development of the colonies planted upon the American shores we are to see first the beginnings of a race extinction, the red disappearing before the white, as inferior races upon the advent of a superior, have often done before; then, the conflicts between colonies of rival nations, ending in the supremacy of those of England. This colonial development will indicate a sectional development, due to diversity of interests, to geographical position, and to climatic conditions; and for a time these sectional differences will be hidden from sight in the union of the colonies in a common cause against the mother country, England.

We shall see what reason the English colonies had to revolt, and how the Revolution ended in the establishment of independence and self-government in America and in the institution of the present government of the United States. We shall see the sectional differences developed in colonial times increase and strengthen into antagonism, and two sections, urged on by some power beyond their control, rushing to a conflict the most terrible in history. This conflict was inevitable before the Americans could become one people, and from it both emerged with heritage of noble deeds and memories of gallant heroes, with mutual respect and with a clasping of hands in friendship, all barriers to which from that time forward it is to be their duty to remove. We shall therefore consider the subject in five periods: DISCOVERY. COLONIZATION, COLONIAL DEVELOPMENT, REVOLUTION, AND INDEPENDENCE.

BLACKBOARD FORM.

ANALYSIS OF INTRODUCTION.

HUMAN PROGRESS.

- Dependent upon
 - Morality
 - Personal Freedom.
 - Culture.
 - Control of Nature.
- Impulses to, given by
 - Conquests.
 - Colonizations.
 - Race Conflicts.
 - Inventions.
 - Discoveries.
 - Birth of Ideas.
- Exemplified in the
 - Discovery and Colonization of America, and in a Colonial Development, which led to the American Revolution and to the establishment of American Independence.

QUESTIONS.

Of what is the history of the human race a record? What is revealed to us by its study? Name some of the great impulses that have been given to human progress. What is the history of a nation or of a people? To what is the degree of enlightenment attained by a nation or people proportional? Upon what does individual well-being depend? What must be seen in the history of the United States other than a chronological arrangement of facts? The United States is a nation of what? Its rise and development exemplify what laws? What may be said of this rise and development? In what have the foundations of the United States been laid? What has marked its expansion of territory? The advancement of its people? What great ideas have been born into the world during the course of American events? What are found within the confines of the United States? How is morality fostered and furthered? With what does each State concern itself? What boon is held out? What is the only restriction upon individuals? Why are the forces of nature controlled? What is there in the past of our nation? Who perpetuate our institutions? What enables us to judge of the present and influence the future? What is the greatest lesson to be learned in American history? Give in your own words an outline of the ground to be covered in this work.

PREPARATORY NOTES.

TO CHAPTERS I AND II.

Geography.—*Upon a globe or map note the position of the Mediterranean sea:* What grand divisions border it? Where is Portugal? Italy? Genoa? Venice? Name the principal seaports on the southeastern shores of the Mediterranean. How would a vessel go from Genoa to the mouth of the Volga River? What rivers empty into the Black Sea? What islands southwest of Portugal? Trace the west coast of Africa. How would a vessel sail from Lisbon to Cape of Good Hope?

Definition of Words.—*If the meaning of these words is not clearly understood master each with the aid of a good dictionary:* Civilization, literature, garner, superstition, maritime, caravans, project, essay, conviction, investigation, conception, canopy, surmise, fraught, weird, capital, destined, era, experience.

Pronunciation of Names.—*A list of proper names difficult to pronounce will be found in the appendix. Practice upon the pronunciation of the following:* Christoforo Colombo, Bartholomeu Diaz, Vasco da Gama.

PARALLEL READINGS.

REFERENCE.—Hallam's "Middle Ages," Draper's "Intellectual Development of Europe" (vol. 2, chap. 5), Irving's "Life of Columbus."

TOPICAL.—"Dark Ages," "Printing, Discovery of," "Marco Polo," "Mandeville, Sir John," "Copernicus," "Mariner's Compass."

DISCOVERY.



THE GREAT AWAKENING.

CHAPTER I.

The Dawn of Learning.

A SEA more historic than the Mediterranean is not to be found on the surface of the earth. Its waters have floated the fleets of maritime nations for thousands of years, bearing to and fro the commerce of three grand divisions. About its shores have risen, flourished, and decayed, civilizations, the records of which have come down to us and influenced our own.

The Europe which touches this sea upon the north was not always the enlightened portion of the world that it is to-day. There was a time in its history known as the Dark Ages, in which the densest ignorance prevailed. Learning was locked up in a few schools, monasteries and colleges, where priests and monks preserved the literature of other times in

hand-written volumes, copying the same from time to time as the needs of their few patrons required.

Upon no subject of knowledge were the masses more ignorant than geography. When we examine a modern text-book upon this subject, and in it see elaborate maps outlining correctly every portion of the earth's surface; when we read the accompanying descriptions of lands and inhabitants, countries and governments, cities and industries, it seems difficult to realize that the time of this general ignorance was no further back in the history of man than four hundred years. Geographical knowledge, other than that of a local nature extended but little beyond the shores of the Mediterranean. America then formed no part of the known world.

The fifteenth century brought to a close this era of intellectual darkness. The art of printing, so wonderful as to be regarded by the ignorant with superstition at the time, was invented, and books from movable type began to appear. Thousands of books could now be easily produced by mechanical means where formerly the production by hand of but one was a laborious undertaking The result was a cheapening of books, and with this cheapening sprang up a desire to master the arts of reading and writing. With much reading came much thinking. The storehouses of knowledge garnered up in the past were placed within easy reach of the multitude. It was not long before Europe was in a state of intellectual activity.

As knowledge of the old became familiar, a desire for the new increased, and this desire extended to knowledge of the earth's surface. Sir John Mandeville of England, and Marco Polo of Venice, two renowned travelers, had in times past penetrated into the interior of Asia. Their works were read with avidity, and the desire for further

discovery tended, therefore, to the East. The little maritime nation of Portugal was trying to reach that East by sailing down the unknown shores of trans-equatorial Africa. The known world was in a state of eager expectancy to gain knowledge of the unknown, and an era of discovery was ushered in.

Successive expeditions were slowly making known the west coast of Africa, the dispatch of which had been induced by the reports of Portuguese representatives at Cairo that Africa is a peninsula, and that its southernmost cape could be rounded. This knowledge was obtained from the Arabs, who had been familiar for some time with the navigation of the east coast. The Cape of Good Hope was reached by Bartholomeu Diaz in 1486, and was finally doubled by Vasco da Gama in 1497.

QUESTIONS.

What sea is one of the most historic on the earth? **Why is the Mediterranean historic?** What fleets has it floated? What have risen, flourished and decayed upon its shores? What has not Europe always been? **What period in European history is known as the Dark Ages?** By whom was the literature of other times preserved during the Dark Ages? How were books then produced? Upon what subject were the masses greatly ignorant? **How does the geographical knowledge of the present day differ from that of the Dark Ages?** Of what does the fifteenth century mark the close? **What effect had the invention of printing?** What desire sprang up with the cheapening of books? What was placed within easy reach of all who learned to read? What increased as a knowledge of the old became familiar? **What do you know of Sir John Mandeville and Marco Polo?** In what direction did the desire for discovery extend? What maritime nation was endeavoring to reach India by sea? **What do you know of Portuguese discoveries?** What era was ushered in with the dawn of learning?

CHAPTER II.

The Increase of Geographical Knowledge.

Among the first European countries to experience the revival of learning was Italy. In the northern portion of this peninsula were situated the republics of Venice and Genoa,

both long celebrated for commercial enterprise, their seamen being the most skilful in Europe, and their vessels plying to and fro between the various Mediterranean ports.

The trade of Venice had long been established with the seacoast towns of southwest Asia and northeast Africa, where long caravans came laden with the treasures of the Indies and the merchandise of the East, to be transferred to the holds of Venetian vessels for European distribution. As time passed on, the trade of Genoa was centered in the Black Sea, where stations and depots were established to receive the vast quantities of produce coming down from the interior of Russia by way of her numerous rivers, and from the interior of Asia by way of the Caspian.

But the trade of Genoa suffered a death blow when the warlike Turks, having crossed the Bosphorus, gained a foothold in Europe, and cut off all access to the sea on which the commerce of the Genoese had been built up. Competition with Venice had now to be entered into. Fierce rivalry ensued between the two republics, and Genoa being at a sore disadvantage, to discover a new route to India and other lands soon became a serious question with her merchants and sailors.

Among the many whose attention was occupied with this question was one who conceived the bold project of reaching the Indies by water in a way other than that which was being essayed by the Portuguese. The name of this Genoese was *Christoforo Colombo*, and the boldness of his idea consisted in the manner in which he proposed to attain his object.

A skilful navigator, he was thoroughly familiar with all matters pertaining to the sea. He had voyaged to many of the known regions of the world, and during a long course of observation the conviction had entered his mind that the

earth is round, not flat, according to the prevailing belief at the time; and under the impression that it was very much smaller than it really is, he proposed to reach India by sailing west across the Atlantic ocean, upon the bosom of which no known vessel had yet ventured far.



COLUMBUS.

Columbus, as he is called in history, was not alone in the belief that the earth is round. A few great scholars, in the course of their scientific investigations, had arrived at the same conclusion; but these conclusions they had not dared to openly assert. Long years of ignorance had fixed in the popular mind a conception of the earth as being flat, as having four corners, as serving to support the heavens stretched canopy-like above it, and any expression of conviction contrary to the popular belief called forth at that time ridicule and sometimes persecution.

Of the other side of the Atlantic nothing was known. One by one groups of islands such as the Canary, had, by some accident or other, come within the knowledge of Portuguese navigators. Surmise placed others far out upon the broad expanse, and superstition had pictured mysterious lands beyond, approach to which was fraught with weird dangers, and return from which was believed to be impossible.

Columbus boldly professed his belief, and offered to attempt the westward voyage to India. His services were first tendered to his native city, but Genoese capital could be embarked upon no scheme so visionary. The glory of sending him upon that first great voyage was destined for no merchant of Genoa, and its determining motives were to be other than those of commercial enterprise.

QUESTIONS.

What country was among the first to experience the revival of learning? What two little republics in the northern part of Italy? **What do you know of Genoa and Venice?** What can you say of their vessels and seamen? What trade had Venice established? Where did the trade of Genoa centre? What finally sprung up between the two republics? Why? What question became a serious one to the merchants and seamen of Genoa? Who conceived the idea of reaching India by water? **What can you say of the idea entertained by Christopher Columbus?** With what was Columbus familiar? What conviction entered his mind? What mistaken idea had he about the size of the earth? Who besides Columbus had reached his conclusion? **Why did not eminent scholars of that day dare to profess openly their beliefs and convictions?** What conceptions had been firmly fixed in the popular mind by long years of ignorance? What was known of the other side of the Atlantic? What did people imagine to be there? What offer did Columbus make? To whom was this offer first tendered? Why? **Why was not the offer of Columbus accepted by his native city?**

SEARCH QUESTIONS.

When did the Turks gain a foothold in Europe? When and by whom was printing invented? What nautical instrument renders it possible for a vessel to sail out of sight of land? Name two civilizations that have arisen and decayed about the shores of the Mediterranean sea. What is "St. Brandan's Isle?"

PREPARATORY NOTES.

TO CHAPTERS III, IV, V AND VI.

Geography.—*Note the location of the following upon a globe or map:* Lisbon, Canary Islands, Palos, Bahama Islands, Cuba, Hayti, Jamaica, Orinoco River, Isthmus of Panama, Barcelona, Bristol, Newfoundland, Labra-

dor, Straits of Belle Isle. In what direction from Palos are the Canary Islands? What point on the American coast is the same latitude as these islands? Would a vessel steer north or south of this parallel in sailing from the Canary to the Bahama Islands? In what direction is Labrador from the British Isles? Which is the greater distance, from the Canary Islands to the Bahamas, or from England to Labrador? What animals are found in the Polar regions?

Definition of Words.—*Master the meaning of the following words:* Patron, discredit, treachery, interval, arguing, prior, dominant, absurdity, evidently, antipodes, reversed, visionist, replenish, species, persistent, depleted, accrue, parallel, identity, formal, disaster, proclaim, adulations, accusations, latitude, patent, bestow, subsequent, authentic.

Pronunciation of Names.—*Practice the pronunciation of the following:* Salamanca, Pinzon, Vincente Yanez, Roderigo de Triana, San Salvador, Hispaniola, Bahama, Gomera, Sebastian, Santius, Prima Vista, Alonzo de Ojedo.

PARALLEL READINGS.

REFERENCE.—Irving's "Life of Columbus," Nicholls' "Cabot," Bancroft's "History of the Colonization of the United States" (chapter 1).

GENERAL.—"How America was Discovered," in Harper's Magazine (Dec., 1881).

TOPICAL.—"West Indies," "Labrador," "Cabot, John," "Cabot, Sebastian," "America, Discovery of," "Ferdinand and Isabella," "Canary Islands," "Columbus, Life of."

AMERICA DISCOVERED.

CHAPTER III.

The Idea and The Man.

It appears that Columbus first formed the idea of the earth's roundness about the year 1474, at which time he was living at Lisbon, Portugal, whither a number of Genoese navigators, attracted by the fame of the Portuguese princes as patrons of maritime enterprises, had from time to time repaired, as the commerce of their own city declined.

At this time he was very poor, and having no means to put his ideas into execution, he naturally turned to the

Portuguese king after his native city had declined to enter into his plans. The application of Columbus was referred to several councilors. They first ridiculed the project openly, then secretly advised the king to dispatch an expedition of his own and reap the whole glory. To the discredit of this monarch—an unusually enlightened one for the times—it is said that he listened to these evil advisers; but the expedition sent out ended in speedy failure.

Smarting from the treachery, Columbus set out from Portugal to lay his plans before the court of Spain. Much of the toilsome journey was performed on foot, his little son walking beside him. Poverty-stricken, the very bread they ate was begged at times by the wayside. Spain, then beginning to be the most powerful nation in Europe, was in the midst of costly wars, and a long interval elapsed before Columbus could gain a hearing. Seven years did he spend pleading, urging, arguing, devoting his whole energy to the one idea of adding to the world's knowledge a knowledge of the world. Two of these years were spent in a convent, whose prior fortunately gained for him powerful friends at court. He obtained a hearing at last from FERDINAND and ISABELLA, the reigning king and queen.



FERDINAND.

A council of wise men, known as the Council of Salamanca, was assembled, to whom Columbus presented, with the greatest eloquence, the ideas that had long been dominant in his mind. He maintained that the sea was everywhere navigable; that there were lands upon the earth other than those then known; that the earth was round; and that Asia could be reached by sailing west across the Atlantic.

"The earth," he reasoned, "is made for man." "The command and promise of the Bible is that man shall increase and replenish the earth. Too much of the earth's surface cannot therefore be taken up with water. There must be lands to us unknown. Is it possible that the sun shines upon nothing, and that the nightly watches of the stars are wasted upon trackless seas?"

To sustain his arguments he brought forward a number of facts. West of the Azores Islands had been found floating a piece of timber curiously carved by tools evidently not of iron. Whence came it? Two dead bodies of an unknown race, with large, dark, strange features, had been cast upon a western coast. Where live such men? Where grow the gigantic canes, the trees and vines of strange species, whose trunks and stems are found floating upon the waters of the ocean by navigators driven far out to sea by adverse winds?

But the great and wise council would not accept his arguments. "The earth cannot be round," they answered, "for then there would be antipodes, and everything would be reversed. People certainly cannot live with their feet up and heads down. Snow and rain cannot fall upwards Moreover the rotundity of the earth would imply the arrangement of the ocean as a watery hill, up and down which vessels would have to sail in going from one region to another—an absurdity."



ISABELLA.

Discouraged, but still persistent, Columbus prepared to apply to France, and had actually set out upon his way when overtaken and recalled. His eloquence had made a deep impression on the queen. The possible success of such an undertaking as Columbus pro-

posed opened up to her mind the glories of extended dominion, and, good Catholic that she was, the desire of spreading the religion of Christ to such unknown regions as might be found, appealed to her very strongly. So she agreed to furnish the required assistance.

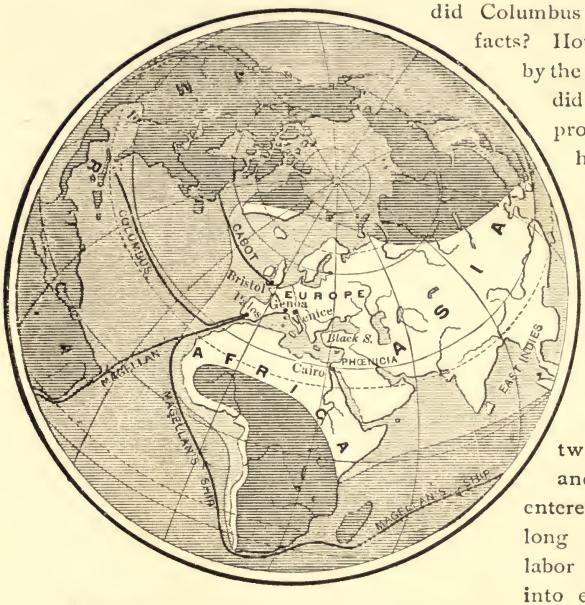
The treasury of Spain was in a state of depletion, caused by years of war; but an offer to pledge her jewels obtained for Isabella the necessary amount. An agreement was entered into with Columbus by which he was to contribute one-eighth of the expense and to receive one-tenth of whatever pearls, precious stones, gold, spices and other articles he might obtain. He was to be admiral "in all the lands and continents he might discover or acquire in the ocean," and viceroy of the same. He was also to have the privilege of nominating three candidates for each of such governorships as might be established.

Eighteen long years of poverty, misfortune, and disappointment had he passed through. Assailed by the superstitious, ridiculed as a madman by the ignorant, he had adhered to his purpose with a perseverance, the parallel of which it is difficult to find. At last his time had come, and the dreams of the visionist were to become established facts.



QUESTIONS.

About what time did Columbus form the idea of the earth's roundness? Where was he then living? Who had repaired here from time to time? Why? Why did not Columbus put his ideas into execution? **What efforts did Columbus make to obtain assistance?** To whom was the application of Columbus for assistance referred? To what evil advice did the Portuguese king listen? Where did Columbus next apply? **Tell what you know of Columbus' visit to Spain.** How was the journey thither performed? Why could he not gain an immediate hearing? How long a time did he spend in Spain? Where were two of these years spent? Who were king and queen of Spain at the time? What council was assembled to pass upon Columbus' views? **What do you know of the Council of Salamanca?** What arguments



MAP SHOWING THE VOYAGES OF COLUMBUS, CABOT, AND MAGELLAN; AND THE KNOWN AND UNKNOWN REGIONS OF THE EARTH IN THE TIME OF COLUMBUS.

did Columbus present? What facts? How was he answered by the wise men? Where did Columbus next proceed? Why did he not continue on to France. Why had Isabella determined to grant the necessary assistance? Why did she offer to pledge her jewels? What agreement between Columbus and Isabella was entered into? How long did Columbus labor to put his idea into execution? What had he encountered through this period?

CHAPTER IV.

The Story of San Salvador.

Immediately upon receiving his commission Columbus repaired to Palos, a little port in the southwest of Spain, and began preparations for the voyage. Here dwelt a wealthy family of navigators named PINZON, friends of Columbus, with whose assistance he was enabled to contribute that portion of the expense he had agreed upon. The Pinzons thus identifying themselves with the expedition, were to receive a share of whatever profits might accrue.

Two small vessels, the Pinta and the Nina, were furnished by the government, while with the funds obtained from the Pinzons, a third, the Santa Maria, somewhat larger than the

other two, was procured. The last named was made the flagship of the admiral. Martin Alonzo Pinzon took command of the Pinta, and his brother, Vincent Yanez, of the Nina.

The government provided for the employment of ninety sailors. At first it was with some difficulty that men could be procured. Every one was interested in the expedition being fitted up, but the venture was regarded as a desperate one, and few cared to risk themselves upon a voyage with chances of returning so meagre. The results of possible success, however, were held up so glowingly that, by the time preparations were completed, not only ninety sailors were secured, but thirty others joined for the purpose of adventure.

By August 2, 1492, everything was ready for departure. The day was spent in solemn and impressive religious ceremonies. Officers and men in procession marched to the church, confessed their sins and offered up prayers, according to custom of the Roman Catholic Church. The priests called down the blessings of heaven upon the expedition, and early next morning the fleet set out to sea, Columbus bearing with him a letter from the sovereign of Spain to the Grand Kahn of Tartary, a monarch whose realm had been visited and described by Marco Polo, and whom Columbus expected to visit before his return. Aboard the vessels it was announced that a prize, offered by the queen, awaited him who was first to see land not heretofore discovered. The greatest voyage in the world's history had now begun.

When three days out, the rudder of the Pinta was lost; sail was therefore made for the Canary Islands, where, after a three weeks' stay at the one called Gomera, the damage was repaired. Here Columbus was informed that a Portuguese fleet was in those waters for the purpose of intercepting him.

Fortunately it never came in sight, and on September 6th the voyage was resumed.

Day after day now passed, filled sometimes with hope, sometimes with fear. Most of the sailors were superstitious; some were inclined to be insubordinate. When the sea happened to be calm, they were afraid that a region had been reached where winds never blow. When a steady breeze set in and wafted them swiftly along in the direction most to be desired, it was, "How shall we ever sail back against it?"

The further they proceeded, the more uneasy they became. In consequence of this uneasiness Columbus found it advisable to keep two reckonings of the distance daily traveled—a correct one for his own guidance, and another recording a less number of miles than had actually been traveled, to be shown the crew. From time to time appeared signs that sailors had always hitherto regarded as indicating nearness of land, but in these instances they proved false indications. More than once clouds upon the horizon were mistaken for shores. The fears of the sailors brought them at times to the verge of mutiny; and it was only by great tact that Columbus succeeded in persuading them, from time to time, to continue the voyage.

On the 7th of October a memorable incident happened. Martin Pinzon, from the deck of the Pinta, perceived a flock of parrots flying toward the southwest, and rightly supposing land to lie in that direction, the heads of the vessels were turned accordingly. As they sailed on signs of land became numerous and unmistakable. A branch filled with berries went floating by, and birds that never fly far from shore, alighted on the vessels.

The night of October 11th arrived in the course of time. The vesper hymn, sung by each crew at eve, had ceased to sound over the waters. In the forepart of his ship, peering



FIRST SIGNS OF LAND.

anxiously into the dark ahead, stood Columbus. A little twinkling light in the distance suddenly attracted his attention. It was moving, and, though he was not certain of it at the time, was coming from land. Early the next morning a gun sounded from the Pinta. Rodrigo de Triana, the sailor on watch, had summoned all hands; for there before them, dimly to be seen, was an unknown shore approached in the night. The joyful shout went up, and all uncertainty was at an end.

QUESTIONS.

Where did Columbus repair upon receiving his commission? What friends had he here? **What part did the Pinzons take in aiding the enterprise of Columbus?** What benefit were they to receive therefrom? What three vessels were fitted up? How was each obtained? Who was the commander of each? How many sailors were employed? How many men went with the expedition? How was this number finally procured? **Tell what you know of the fitting up of Columbus' expedition?** When was everything ready for the start? What ceremonies preceded the departure? What did Columbus take with him? Why did he take this letter? What announcement was made to the crews? **Why is the first voyage of Columbus one of the greatest in history?** What accident befell the Pinta? When? Where was it repaired? What danger did Columbus escape? **Describe the voyage from the Canary Islands?** What fears were entertained by the men? What did Columbus find it necessary to do on account of these fears? What was the notable occurrence of October 7th? Why was this occurrence remarkable? What signs of land soon began to appear? What happened the night of the 11th? The morning of the 12th? Who first saw land? What was now at an end?

CHAPTER V.

The News Brought Back.

The land first seen proved to be one of the Bahama Islands. The devout Columbus bestowed upon it the name of *San Salvador* (Holy Savior). In the light of early dawn the three vessels drew up and cast anchor. The intense interest

with which the men scanned the land before them may well be imagined. The vanguard of European civilization had reached American shores, and all felt the solemnity and importance of the occasion.

The first landing of Columbus in the new world was made with elaborate ceremony. Attired in a rich uniform of scarlet, with the royal banner of Spain in his hand, the admiral entered his own boat and was joined by his subordinate captains in theirs, each holding aloft the green-crossed banner of the enterprise; all three were accompanied by retinues—the whole forming a most brilliant pageant as it drew near to shore. The first act of Columbus on landing was to kneel reverently, kiss the earth, and offer thanks to God, while the tears of joy sprang to his eyes and a sense of gratitude to his heart. He then rose to his feet, drew his sword, and, surrounded by his men, took formal possession in the name of the sovereigns of Spain. The oath of obedience to him as admiral and viceroy was then taken by all present.

Dark-skinned natives had gathered around and were witnessing the proceedings with astonishment. To them the ships seemed bird-like, and wing-like the sails. Regarding the visitors as from the sky, they treated them with every mark of kindness. A few of them wore ornaments of gold, with which they readily parted, and when asked by signs where more of that metal could be obtained, they pointed to the south. This led the Spaniards to further search, and, erecting a large cross, they left the island, and proceeded in the direction pointed out.

Before long the coast of Cuba was sighted, and soon after that of Hayti, which was called by them *Hispaniola* (Little Spain). The Spaniards landed from time to time along the coast to search and make inquiry for the gold and spices they

had hoped to find in abundance. At Hispaniola disaster befell the Santa Maria, and many of the men opposing further exploration, a fort was constructed from the wreck and named Fort Isabel. Leaving thirty-five men as a garrison, Columbus set out with the rest upon the return.

The excitement that spread over Spain when, on the 13th



STATUE OF COLUMBUS AT GENOA.

of March, 1493, news went out from Palos that Columbus had returned successful, can hardly be imagined. Bells were rung, and exultation was upon every side. A general holiday was proclaimed. The king and queen assembled their

courtiers, and waited in state at Barcelona, to welcome with honor the man who was thenceforth to be known as Spain's greatest admiral. The journey of Columbus from Palos to the Spanish court was quite different from the footsore and weary one made six years before. Greetings and adulations were now showered upon him all along the route, and his progress was a series of triumphs.

In the presence of the assembled court Columbus received the hands of his sovereign. The story of his adventure, and of that new world beyond the seas, was given in full. The curious objects he had brought back with him, among which were two natives of the new world, were examined with wonder. The islands that Columbus told about were thought to be among those lying off the southeast coast of Asia, and known in those days as the Indies; hence the natives received the name of INDIANS, which they have retained to this day.

A large fleet was now provided for Columbus to make a second voyage. Impatient to make further discoveries he soon set sail, this time with fifteen hundred soldiers, missionaries and adventurers, all eager to extend Spain's dominion, to Christianize the savages, and to search for the gold and silver that were to flow into the coffers of Spain, and, for a time, make her the richest among nations.

In time Hispaniola was reached; but a sad discovery was here made. The men left by Columbus on his first voy-

The last days of Columbus were spent in misfortune. The powers and privileges granted him in the new world, occasioned much jealousy and awakened powerful enmity. False accusations were made against him at one time, and he was sent back in chains as a criminal. Public opinion was so incensed at the indignity imposed upon him that his chains were quickly removed; but he was never restored to the benefits to which he was entitled. His patron, Queen Isabella, having died, he was treated with more and more neglect; and at last, overcome by disappointment, the man who had given to Spain a new world died (May 26, 1506) a victim of ingratitude.

age had been massacred, and Fort Isabella destroyed. The fort was rebuilt and strengthened, the settlement was renewed and the hostile tribes of the island were subdued by the many new-comers.

Columbus, continuing upon his voyage, discovered a number of other islands, one of which was Jamaica (1493). A third voyage brought him to the mainland of the continent, near the mouth of the Orinoco River (1498); and a fourth and last, to the coast of Central America (1502).

QUESTIONS.

What did the land first seen prove to be? **Describe the ceremonies of landing?** What did Columbus do upon reaching the shore? Who gathered around to view the proceedings? How were the Spaniards regarded by the natives? What ornaments were found upon the natives? **What induced the Spaniards to sail south upon leaving the island?** What did they do before leaving? The coasts of what islands were explored? What inquiries were made? What name was bestowed upon Hayti? **What followed upon reaching Hispaniola?** How many remained behind while Columbus returned? What fort had been erected? Of what was this fort constructed? **What effect had Columbus' return to Palos?** How was he greeted? What was the difference between his present journey to the Spanish court and his former one? **How was Columbus received by Ferdinand and Isabella?** What mistaken idea had Columbus of the islands he had visited? What name was bestowed upon their inhabitants? **Tell what you know of Columbus' second voyage?** By whom was he accompanied? Why? What sad discovery was made upon reaching Hispaniola? What did the Spaniards do after their arrival? How many voyages did Columbus make? **What did Columbus discover upon each of his voyages?** How were his last days spent? What indignity was put upon him? From what did he suffer after Isabella's death? What did Columbus give to Spain?

REVIEW OUTLINE.

MEMORY AID FOR LESSON ON COLUMBUS.

(Place upon the Blackboard and have pupils fill the blank spaces, after which use as outline for Composition or topical recitation.)

COLUMBUS.

- Native of
- Entertained idea
 - of earth's
 - about the year
- Applied for assistance to
 - 1. (refusal.)
 - 2. (treachery.)
 - 3.
 - waited years.
 - was refered to
 - Arguments.
 - Refutations
 - was assisted by
 - Motives.
 - Agreement.
- First Voyage 149.....
 - Preparations
 - Vessels obtained
 - (1)
 - (2)
 - (3)
 - Expenses shared by the
 - Ceremonies of Departure.
 - Procession.
 - Blessings.
 - Embarkation.
 - Incidents of Voyage.
 - Accident to Repaired at
 - Direction taken
 - Uneasiness of
 - Reckonings kept by
 - Signs of land
 - 1
 - 2
 - Course changed on the
 - Incident of
 - Oct. 7th
 - Oct. 11th
- Other Voyages.
 - 149.... Discovered...
 - San Salvador
 - Discovered on
 - First seen by
 - Landing
 - Natives
 - 149.... Discovered....
 - Cuba.
 - 150... Discovered....
 - Hayti
 - Wreck of
 - Fort built.
 - Garrisoned by men.
 - Return
 - Greeted by
 - Welcomed by
- Last Days.
 - Suffered from
 - Died
 - Gave to Spain a

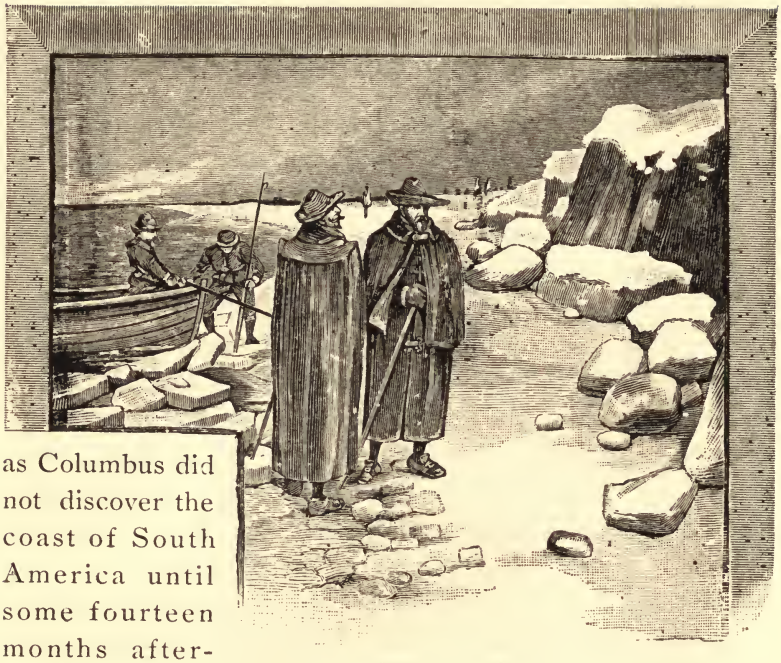
CHAPTER VI.

First on the Mainland.

The news that Columbus had found land upon the other side of the Atlantic soon spread from Spain over western Europe. About this time there was living at Bristol, England, a Venetian navigator named *Giovanni Gabotto* (JOHN CABOT), who, upon learning of the discoveries of the Spanish admiral, began to devote much study to the shape of the earth. It occurred to him that this newly discovered region could be reached by a shorter route than that taken by Columbus; and he believed this shorter route lay directly west from England. An examination of a globe will show how nearly correct he was; for the Western Continent, in the latitude of England is much nearer the Eastern than it is in the latitudes of Spain and the Canary Islands.

Cabot fitted up an expedition at his own expense. The English king (Henry VII), interesting himself in his enterprise, granted a patent that included many privileges. This patent was made out to John Cabot and his three sons, Lewis, Sebastian and Santius, and by its terms they were authorized to take possession of all "isles, countries, regions, provinces, whatsoever they be," and hold the same in the king's name. Should any profits accrue from the venture the king was to receive one-fifth.

John Cabot and his son SEBASTIAN set sail early in the summer of 1497, and after a short but stormy voyage sighted land (June 24). The name of *Prima Vista* was bestowed upon the land first seen, and it is believed to be a point lying a little to the north of the straits now called Belle Isle. Thus was reached the mainland of the Western Continent, the Cabots being the first Europeans to set foot upon its shores,



LANDING OF THE CABOTS.

as Columbus did not discover the coast of South America until some fourteen months afterwards.

Of that first voyage of the Cabots there remains little record. Doubtless they found the shores bleak and barren, inhabited by a few savages, whose clothing was made of furs, whose weapons were bone-pointed pikes and darts, and whose occupations were hunting and fishing. Such a region could not be India. It must be a "new found land."

A second voyage was made by SEBASTIAN CABOT in May of the next year. This navigator at the time was only twenty-two years old, but he had already won a name for benevolence, courtesy, daring and patience. With three hundred men he set out, bent upon reaching India through whatever passage he might discover in the new found land.

On arriving at the Labrador coast he turned northward, entering a region the strangeness of which so alarmed his

men as to render them mutinous. Everywhere the sea was filled with blocks of ice and floating icebergs, and monstrous animals of strange appearance often made themselves visible. Retracing his course, Cabot sailed south as far as the southern limits of what is now Maryland, and, not finding the desired passage, returned to England.

The discoveries of the Cabots have an important bearing upon American history; for by them England was enabled to establish those claims to territory that afterwards led to her colonization of America. In this colonization were to be laid the foundations of our present great English-speaking republic of the United States.



AMERICUS VESPUCCIUS.

Naming the New World.

Among those who came to America with Columbus upon his second voyage and who took an active part in the conquest of Hispaniola was Alonzo de Ojedo. Commanding in time an expedition of his own, he made explorations among the neighboring islands, and sailed along the shores of South America for some hundreds of miles (1499). His pilot upon this occasion, as well as upon a subsequent one to the same region, was a man of some intelligence named Amerigo Vespucci, or, Latinized, as was the custom in those days, Americus Vespuccius. He, with keen observation, noted the features of the country, and afterwards, in a series of printed letters, gave an excellent description of the regions visited. These letters, being the first published description of the new world, were read with eagerness. People soon began to refer to the land beyond the Atlantic as the land of Americus. A German geographer, named Waldsee-Muller, finally proposed the name of America for the new continent. It met with general acceptance, and soon began to appear in books and upon maps. This is the generally accepted theory concerning the name America. It is, however, stated that the natives found by the early explorers about the southwest shores of the Carribean Sea referred to their country as *Amaraca*, hence a counter theory gives the origin of the name to the natives of the New World.

QUESTIONS.

Who was John Cabot? Where did he live? What did he do upon learning of the discoveries of Columbus? What conclusion did he arrive at from

his study of a globe? What patent did the English king grant him? **What were the privileges granted by patent to Cabot?** What three sons had Cabot? What share of profits was to be the king's? When did Cabot set sail? Who accompanied him? What was the nature of the voyage? **Where did they first sight land? What was the nature of this land? Why was this discovery of future importance?** How many months did the Cabots precede Columbus in the discovery of the mainland? For what was Sebastian Cabot noted? When was a second voyage made by him? How old was he at the time? **Tell what you know of the voyage of Sebastian Cabot?** What direction did he first take? Why did he turn back? How far south did he sail? To what did the discoveries of the Cabots lead? Who was Alonzo de Ojedo? Amerigo Vespucci? **How did the new world receive the name of America?** Who first bestowed this name upon the new continent?

BLACKBOARD FORM.

THE FOUR GREAT NAVIGATORS.

Columbus. Who first crossed the Atlantic.

Da Gama. Who first doubled Cape Good Hope.

Cabot. Who first reached North America.

Magellan. Who first sailed around the world.

SEARCH QUESTIONS.

Where is Columbus buried? Was Cabot the first European to reach North America? How large did Columbus believe the world to be? What was the Indian name of San Salvador Island? How did the Pope divide the new world? What became of the chains of Columbus? What is an astrolabe? What is a caravel?

PREPARATORY NOTES.

TO CHAPTERS VII, VIII AND IX.

Geography.—*Note the principal islands of the West Indies:* Name them. Note the proximity of Mexico and Central America to Cuba. Where is Vera Cruz? The city of Mexico? Isthmus of Darien? Island of Porto

Rico? In what direction is Florida from this island? Where is Tampa Bay? How would one go overland from Florida to Mexico? Note the nearness of Peru to the Isthmus of Darien. About how wide is this isthmus? What strait south of South America? What ocean west? In what direction is this ocean from the Isthmus of Darien? Note the Rio Grande, Colorado, and Gila Rivers. Into what do each empty? Where is Santa Fé? Cape Mendocino? Note the relative position of the Southern States? What state north of Florida? West of Georgia? West of Alabama? Two west of Mississippi? Where is the Altamaha River? Ogeeche? Coosa? Mississippi? White? Ouachita? Where is Mobile?

Definition of Words.—*Learn the meaning of the following:* Adventurous, materially, ambition, credulous, subsequently, taskmaster, ruse, avail, abduct, harass, persistently, circumnavigate, subjugate, equip, atrocity, manifest, revolt, dictates, annals, eventually, similar, realm, fabulous, survivor, transcending, assert, pacify, acquirement, rumor, indomitable, emergency, miasmatic, summit, bayou, fidelity, unanimity, viceroy.

Pronunciation of Names.—*Practice the pronunciation of the following:* Porto Rico, Ponce de Leon, San Augustine, Pascua Florida, Chicora, Hispaniola, Vasquez de Ayllon, Pamphilo de Narvaez, Alvar Nunez, Cabecca de Vaca, Enciso, Nunez de Balboa, Grijalva, Hernando Cortez, Velasquez, Montezuma, La Noche Triste, Francisco, Pizarro, Antonio de Mendoza, Coronado, Espejo, Juan de Onàte, Rio Grande, Gila, Altamaha, Mauvilla, Arkansas, Ouachita, Luys de Moscoso.

PARALLEL READINGS.

REFERENCE.—Prescott's "Conquest of Mexico," Bancroft's "History of the Colonization of the United States" (chapter 2), Martin's "History of Louisiana" (chapter 1).

GENERAL.—"Spanish Discoveries," in Harper's Magazine (October, 1882), "Pictures from Florida," in Scribner's Monthly (November, 1874), Morris' "Half Hours with American History" (vol. 1), Wallace's "Fair God" (fiction), Drake's "Making of the Great West."

TOPICAL.—"DeSoto," "Ponce de Leon," "Cortez," "Fountain of Youth," "Mississippi, Discovery of," "Florida, Discovery of," "Mexico, Conquest of," "Santa Fé, Founding of," "Coronado, Expedition of."

FIRST COMERS FROM FOUR NATIONS.

CHAPTER VII.

The Spaniards in Florida.

To this day the islands of the West Indies are remarkable for fertility of soil and for beauty of vegetation. Such wonderful accounts of this region were wafted back to Spain,

that adventurers in great numbers flocked to the New World to embark in the eager pursuit of wealth. Island after island was taken possession of and entrusted to the governorship of some soldier of fortune or adventurous nobleman; and it was not long before Spanish conquest extended to the mainland.

Among the many who came over with Columbus upon his second voyage was a stern old soldier, named PONCE DE LEON, who, having aided materially in the conquest of Hispaniola, was made governor of that island. Soon afterwards he was transferred to the smaller domain of Porto Rico; but here his ambition prevented him from remaining long content. Moreover there had been whispered in the ears of the credulous Spaniards the legend of a wonderful fountain, whose waters, bathed in, restored the old to youth. Tradition placed this fountain somewhere to the northwest; and De Leon, with three vessels, set sail in that direction, bent upon finding the fountain.

His search was, as may be supposed, fruitless; but during the course of his voyage he sighted the mainland a little north of what is now San Augustine (1512). It was Easter Sunday, a day known to the Spaniards as *Pascua Florida;* so to the land was given the name of the holy day. Formal possession was taken. De Leon subsequently returned with the appointment of governor; but his landing was this time opposed by the natives, and in the attack he was mortally wounded.

Some miles north of where he had first landed, lay the coast of Chicora (South Carolina). From Hispaniola there came to this coast VASQUEZ DE AYLLON, with two vessels, upon a kidnapping expedition (1520). The Spaniards, in their eagerness for riches, had opened up mines and laid out plantations in the different islands, and the conquered natives, compelled to labor under brutal taskmasters, were fast disap-

pearing. To remedy this loss was De Ayllon's mission. The natives of Chicora, ignorant of his intentions, received him kindly, and were induced to come on board the visitors' vessels for the ostensible purpose of taking part in a great feast. When a sufficient number had crowded aboard, the cruel De Ayllon headed his vessel for the place whence he came, and sailed away. The ruse availed but little. One of the vessels was wrecked, and the captives on board of the other so sickened from grief as to be totally unfit for the purpose for which they had been abducted.

By the time the territory of Florida became established within the geographical knowledge of the Spaniards, its conquest was determined upon by PAMPHILO DE NARVAEZ. He landed for the purpose upon the west coast, near Tampa Bay, with three hundred men and eighty horses (April, 1528). The vessels were placed in charge of one Alvar Nunez, better known as CABECCA DE VACCA, with instructions to sail along the shores to the northwest; and with his land forces De Narvaez marched into the interior.

The natives encountered by the Spaniards along the route were treated with great atrocity, and therefore rose in hostility against the invaders. The Spaniards, after eight hundred miles of weary marching, harassed by natives, suffering from pestilence and hunger, reached the coast exhausted. Upon embarkation a storm arose, and wrecked the vessels, and all the adventurers perished miserably, with the exception of De Vacca and four or five others, who made their way overland to Mexico.

TOPICAL OUTLINE.

MEMORY AID.

For Lesson on Early Florida Exploration.

(Place on the Black Board and have pupils fill blank spaces, then elaborate in written composition.)

FLORIDA.

De Leon 151.....

- *Came to New World with.....*
- *Appointed to governorship of.....then to.....*
- *Went in search of.....*
- *Landed.....near.....in the year.....*
- *Named the country.....because.....*
- *Was.....in his search.*
- *Returned subsequently and was.....by.....*

De Ayllon 152.....

- *Sailed from.....with.....vessels.*
- *Landed on the coast of.....which is now.....*
- *Practiced the deception of.....*
- *Expedition unsuccessful because* (1)..... (2).....

De Narvaez 152.....

- *Landed near.....Bay.*
- *Left his vessels in charge of.....*
- *Marched about.....miles.*
- *Treated natives.....*
- *Expedition suffered from....* (1)..... (2)..... (3).....
- *Returned to the coast, embarked and vessels were.....*
- *.....survived and made their way to Mexico.*

QUESTIONS.

For what are the West Indies remarkable? Why did adventurers flock to the New World? Where did Spanish conquest extend? **Who was Ponce de Leon?** What island did he help to conquer? To what three governorships was he successively appointed? What legend had he heard? **What was the result of de Leon's exploration?** How did Florida receive its name? What was the fate of De Leon? What coast was called Chicora? **What was the object of de Ayllon's expedition?** How did he succeed? What deception did he practice? **What do you know of Pamphilo de Narvaez? Cabecca de Vacca?** How were the natives treated by De Narvaez? What sufferings did the expedition of De Narvaez encounter? What was its fate? Where did the survivors make their way? How?

CHAPTER VIII.

The Conquest of New Spain.

In the belief that the West Indies were the outlying islands upon the southeast shores of Asia, the Spaniards went from island to island, persistently searching for those sources of gold, spices and precious commodities that had been so long the objects of maritime enterprise.

In the course of these searchings Enciso landed upon the Isthmus of Darien about the time De Leon was exploring Florida (1512); and Grijalva reached the coast of Mexico (1518), two years before De Ayllon did that of Chicora. With Enciso went Nunez de Balboa, who, hearing upon his arrival at Darien, of a great sea to the south, determined to behold it, and for that purpose journeyed over land. Ascending the last range of mountains, he was greeted with a view of the mighty ocean that has since borne the name, Pacific (1513).



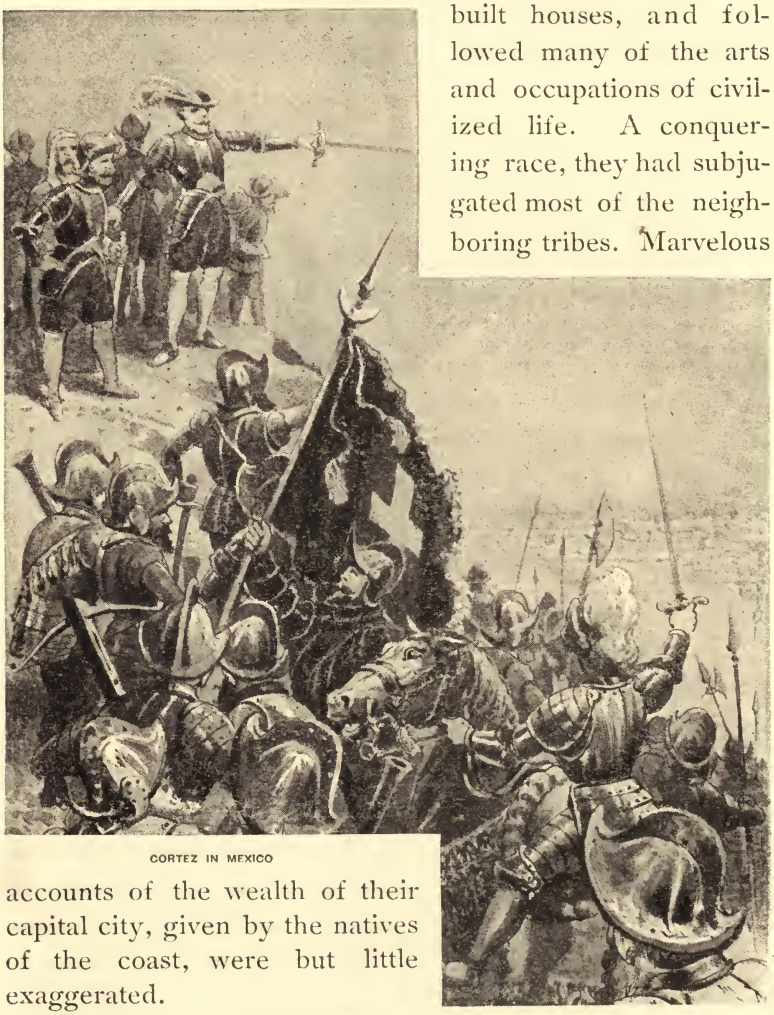


MAGELLAN.

Eight years after Balboa's discovery (1520), Magellan, a navigator sailing in the interest of Spain, entered the Pacific ocean through the straits that now bear his name, crossed the broad expanse, his vessel finally reaching Spain after having circumnavigated the globe.

The discoveries of Balboa and Grijalva opened up other regions to conquest. Mexico, or Anahuac, as it was then called, was the first to attract attention. Grijalva brought back with him accounts of the Aztecs, a strange race of people living in the interior,

Wonderful to relate, this people had made great advances toward civilization. They knew many of the uses of metals, wore ornaments of gold, lived in cities composed of well-built houses, and followed many of the arts and occupations of civilized life. A conquering race, they had subjugated most of the neighboring tribes. Marvelous



CORTEZ IN MEXICO

accounts of the wealth of their capital city, given by the natives of the coast, were but little exaggerated.

The avarice of the Spaniards was incited by these accounts, and it was determined to conquer this people. Seven hundred men, carefully selected and equipped, were placed under

command of HERNANDO CORTEZ by Velasquez, the governor of Cuba. Eleven vessels conveyed the expedition to a spot near the present town of Vera Cruz, where a landing was made (1520). Cortez was here joined by the Tlascalans and other tribes at enmity with the Aztecs, and, with forces thus augmented, marched into the interior. Along the route many atrocities were perpetrated by the Spaniards for the purpose of intimidating all who were inclined to oppose them. At first the Aztecs, regarding the Spaniards with awè, as superior beings or gods, offered no resistance. The capital city was entered without opposition, and the strangers took up their abode in quarters furnished by the Montezuma, or Aztec emperor.

Meanwhile Velasquez, becoming jealous of the superior qualities for leadership manifested by Cortez, dispatched De Narvaez—him who eight years after attempted the conquest of Florida—with another force to supersede him. Cortez refused to surrender his command, and, returning to the coast with a portion of his army, defeated De Narvaez, many of whose men joined the conqueror, and with him marched back to the Aztec city.

Affairs, however, had gone wrong in the absence of the commander. The natives, becoming assured that the Spaniards were but men, had risen in revolt. Their numbers were overwhelming; but Cortez, by treachery, secured the person of the Montezuma and held him as hostage for the good behavior of his subjects. He compelled the unfortunate monarch to furnish large quantities of gold and supplies of food, and to administer the affairs of his empire according to the dictates of his captor. This served for a time; but the warlike spirit of the people soon manifested itself anew, and to so alarming an extent that the abandonment of the city was determined upon.

Having selected a dark night for the purpose the Spaniards as quietly as possible withdrew from the castle they had been occupying, and attempted to leave the city. But the natives were on the alert, and assembled in thousands to cut off the retreat. A terrible night of conflict and slaughter ensued, known in the annals of the expedition as *La Noche Triste*. By almost superhuman exertions, Cortez and a remnant of his army made their way through the swarming natives, and escaped to the coast. By aid of reinforcements which joined him here, he eventually effected the conquest that has placed his name among the great conquerors of history.



A race similar to the Mexicans in enlightenment and advancement inhabited Peru. Their conquest was brought about by Francisco Pizarro, a bold but ignorant man, who went there from Darien with a much smaller army than Cortez had, and met with less opposition. The same treachery was practiced against the Peruvian Inca as against the Mexican Montezuma, and the realms of both poured into the coffers of Spain, riches that surpassed in realization the traditions of the long-sought for Indies.

QUESTIONS.

What were the West Indies according to early belief? For what were the Spaniards continually seeking? Who landed upon Darien? Who went with him? **What do you know of Balboa?** Who explored the coast of Mexico? When? When was the Pacific discovered? **What do you know of Magellan? To what did the discoveries of Balboa and Grijalva lead?** What was the ancient name of Mexico? **What accounts were brought back by Grijalva?** What progress had been made by the Aztecs? What did they know? Wear? How did they live? What expedition was sent against them? When? **Tell what you know of Cortez.** Where did he land? What natives assisted him? Why? Why did the Aztecs not resist? Why was De Narvaez sent to recall Cortez? What was his fate? What did Cortez find upon returning to the Aztec capital? Whom did he take prisoner?

How? Why? What did he compel Montezuma to do? What was determined upon when the Aztecs became threatening? **Tell what you know of** *La Noche Triste.* How was Cortez enabled to conquer Mexico? **Who was Francisco Pizarro?** What was his success in Peru? **How did Spain benefit in the conquest of Mexico and Peru?**

TOPICAL OUTLINE.

MEMORY AID.

For Lesson on the Establishment of Spanish Power in America.

(Place on the Blackboard, have pupils fill blanks and then elaborate in original composition.)

NEW SPAIN.

- Enciso's Exploration 15.....
 - Isthmus of.....
 - Resulted in
 - Discovery of.....Ocean by.....In.....
 - Conquest of Peru by.....in.....
- Grijalva's Exploration 15.....
 - Coast of.....
 - Resulted in
 - Naming the mainland New.....
 - Conquest of Mexico by Cortez. 152
 - Lands with.....men.
 - Near what is now.....
 - Was assisted by the.....
 - Aztecs did not resist because
 - Returns to coast to meet..... who was sent by.....because he was
 - The result was.....
 - Cortez seizes
 - Is compelled to
 - The night of his withdrawal called
 - Afterwards successful because.....

CHAPTER IX.

The Quest for the Fabulous.

Spanish dominion was extended into the limits of what is now the territory of the United States in two directions. One was from the southeast, and began with the discovery of Florida by De Leon; the other was from the southwest, following upon the conquest of New Spain, as Mexico was in those days called.

The survivors of the ill-fated De Narvaez expedition had a tale of wild exaggeration to unfold to their brethren upon reaching Mexico. The dangers of their toilsome overland journey were graphically portrayed; and the existence of wonderful races of people living in large cities, abounding in wealth, far transcending anything the Spaniards had yet beheld, was asserted by them. These reports confirmed the traditions of the natives whom the Spaniards had conquered, and ANTONIO DE MENDOZA, the viceroy of Mexico, gave to them willing ear.

An expedition was prepared to go in quest of these fabulous realms. Father MARCO, a friar, was sent on before, with presents to pacify the natives through whose territory it was to pass. Under the leadership of VASQUEZ DE CORONADO this expedition penetrated some distance into the interior (1540). Its only immediate result, however, was the acquisition of geographical knowledge concerning the region about the Rio Grande, Gila, and Colorado Rivers; but it eventually led to Spanish occupancy of what is now the southwestern part of the United States. CABRILLO traced the west coast up as far as Cape Mendocino (1542); ESPEJO built Santa Fé (1582), the second oldest town in the United States; and JUAN DE ONATE

established forts and missions, and took full possession in the name of Spain (1595-1599).

Mendoza was not the only one who put faith in the false reports of Cabecca de Vaca and his companions. In far-off Spain these reports reached the ear of HERNANDO DE SOTO. De Soto had been one of the trustiest lieutenants of Pizarro in the successful conquest of Peru, and had returned to his native country to find content and enjoyment in the wealth amassed in that expedition. But in this he was disappointed, for his great ambition was to place his name above those of Cortez and Pizarro as a conquering son of Spain.

The rumors wafted to him from Mexico seemed to present his opportunity. His wealth placed at his command everything necessary to accomplish his desires. An expedition was fitted up at his own expense, perfectly equipped in every detail. From the multitude that would have accompanied him six hundred were carefully chosen for strength and courage. The route of De Narvaez was selected, rather than that of Coronado; and in time De Soto and his men reached the New World and landed near Tampa Bay, Florida (1539).

The preparations for this expedition were most complete. Weapons of the finest make, chains to bind captives, and a forge to repair armor and implements, were provided. To guard against a possible scarcity of food, hogs were driven before the expedition. The men were distinguished for courage; their leader, indomitable. It would seem no emergency could arise to debar them from success. We however see them three years after, amid swamps and reeds, surrounded by lurking foes and miasmatic death, in woe and desolation, but faithful to each other, making their way slowly back to safety, with only memories of fallen comrades, of toils and privations, leaderless and unsuccessful, their quest a failure, the ends of their expedition unachieved.

The Indians had not forgotten the depredations of those who not long before had visited their territory. They either opposed the progress of the Spaniards, or rid themselves of their presence by narrating to them tales more fabulous

than any that had drawn them to the New World, thus causing them to press on in all eagerness.

Having crossed the Altamaha River the Spaniards entered the land of the Cherokees, in what is now Georgia, and arrived at the Ogeechee, from which they turned northwest to the Coosa. Down this river they journeyed to the Indian village of Mauvilla, near what is now Mobile. A fierce battle with the natives here ensued, during which sixteen of De Soto's men lost their lives, more than one thousand Indians were killed, and their village was laid in ashes.

After a rest of one month the Spaniards again turned to the interior, marching northwest over what is now the State of Mississippi. This brought them into the country of the Chickasaws, a powerful tribe, who waged such fierce war against them that in one attack alone, forty of the Spaniards fell. De Soto pushed on through this hostile territory until, reaching the summit of a high bluff, he found his further progress obstructed by the mighty river (1541) that now bears the name Mississippi.

Flatboats were hastily constructed. The expedition crossed to the other side, into the present State of Arkansas, and moved up the banks of the White River for some distance. The Spaniards had now been engaged for two years in following their quest, marching and fighting with energy and courage under their iron-willed leader, and at last they could but conclude to return.

Southward they turned to the Ouachita River, down whose banks they proceeded to the marshes and bayous near its mouth. Here they made their way with difficulty, harassed by hostile natives and attacked by disease. Here also their brave leader was stricken with an illness that proved fatal, and, as his end approached, he called his faithful followers about him. Commending them feelingly

for the fidelity with which they had served him, he gave them parting words of instructions, appointed LUYS DE Moscoso his successor, and urged upon them the necessity of obedience to their new commander, affection for each other, discipline, unanimity and perseverance. The last rites of the church were administered to him and he was laid at rest (1542), first at the foot of a tree, afterwards beneath the surface of the mighty river he had discovered.

Moscoso succeeded with great difficulty in constructing some small vessels, and in these the Spaniards drifted down the Mississippi, fighting their way against armed canoes. When, by way of the Gulf of Mexico, they arrived at a place of safety, it was found that of the six hundred who set out upon the expedition, but three hundred and eleven had lived through the three years of toil and hardship, to tell of its dangers and of its failures.

QUESTIONS.

From how many directions did Spanish explorers enter the territory of what is now the United States? From what directions? **What reports were spread in Mexico by the survivors of the De Narvaez expedition?** What did these reports confirm? Who was Viceroy of Mexico at the time? How did these reports affect him? **What do you know of Vasquez de Coronado?** What was the result of his expedition? When was it made? Who explored the coast line of what is now California? When? **Who was Espejo? Who took full possession for Spain in the southwest?** What did he establish? When? Where else had the reports of De Vacca extended? **Who was Hernando de Soto?** Why was he not contented with the wealth already acquired? **Tell what you know about the organization of this expedition.** Why was it reasonable to suppose that this expedition would be successful? Where did it land? When? **Trace De Soto's route upon some map of the Southern States.** What spirit did the Indians show? Why? From what river in Georgia was the route changed to the northwest? What direction was taken upon reaching the Coosa? **What happened at Mauvilla?** What State was then crossed? What Indian tribe made war upon De Soto? What prevented further progress at Chickasaw Bluff? **When was the Mississippi River discovered?** How was it crossed? In what State did they wander? How long had they been searching by this time? What was determined upon? What river did they descend? By what difficulties were they sur-

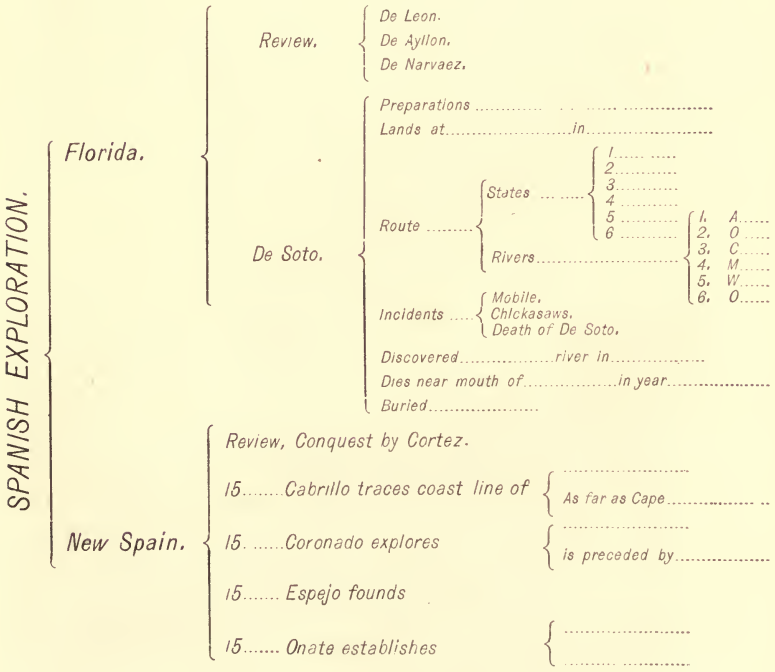
rounded near its mouth? Tell what you know of the last days of De Soto? How many times was he buried? How did the survivors finally reach a place of safety?

TOPICAL OUTLINE.

MEMORY AID.

For Lesson on Early Spanish Exploration.

(Place on the Blackboard and have pupils fill blanks and afterwards elaborate in written composition.)



SEARCH QUESTIONS.

Why is the term "New World" a misnomer? What was the fabled island of Bimini? What were the Seven Cities of Cibola? Was De Soto the first European to see the Mississippi River? Who are the Zunis? Why was De Soto buried twice? What was the fate of Magellan?

PREPARATORY NOTES.

TO CHAPTERS X, XI AND XII.

Geography.—*Note upon a globe or map of the world the similar latitude of France and Newfoundland, and their comparative nearness.* What is the latitude of each? Note the location of the St. Lawrence Gulf. Where is the Bay of Chaleurs? Note the St. Lawrence River. Where is Montreal? Quebec? Kingston? Note the southeast coast of Maine. Where is the St. Croix River? What islands at its mouth? Where is Nova Scotia? In what part of it is Annapolis? Where is Lake Champlain? Note the region about the Great Lakes. Name these lakes. What State borders Lake Michigan on the west? Where is the Fox River? Into what does it empty? Where is the Wisconsin River? Find the shortest distance between the two rivers over which a canoe would have to be carried. Note the Mississippi River from its source to its mouth. Where are the falls of St. Anthony? Into what does the Illinois empty? Wisconsin? Missouri? Ohio? Arkansas? Red? Into what does the Misssissippi empty? Note the northeast coast of North America. Where is Davis Strait? Frobisher's Inlet? Hudson Bay? Hudson Strait? Trace the west coast of South and North America up as far as Oregon.

Definition of Words.—*Know the meaning of the following:* Ignore, sarcastically, disinherit, severity, appellation, monopoly, instigation, immigrant, frontier, interference, peltry, vicissitude, erection, acquire, recipient, veteran, devotion, portage, capacity, tact, incite, obstacle, symbol, alliance, final, freighted, assume, eminent, achievement, frequented.

Pronunciation of Names.—Verrazanni, Denys, Jacques Cartier, Chaleurs, Hochelaga, De la Roche, Roberval, Poutrincourt, St. Croix, Port Royal, De Monts, Acadie, Champlain, Iroquois, Algonquin, *Coureurs-de-bois*, Outagamis, Marquette, Joliet, La Salle, Frontenac, Chevalier de Tonti, Dacan, Hennepin, Sioux, Duluth, Prudhomme, Quapaws, Tænsas.

PARALLEL READINGS.

REFERENCE.—Parkman's "Pioneers of France in the New World," Gayarré's "History of Louisiana," Parkman's "Jesuits in North America," Shea's "Discovery and Exploration of the Mississippi Valley."

GENERAL.—Drake's "Making of the Great West," "Champlain in America" (Magazine of American History, March, 1886), Drake's "Making of New England," (pages 20 and 40), "The Romance of Dollard," (fiction), (Century Magazine, 1888).

TOPICAL.—"Cartier," "Roberval," "Frontenac," "De Monts," "Champlain," "La Salle," "Marquette," "Joliet," "Hennepin," "The Jesuits," "Tonti," "St Lawrence, Discovery of," "New France," "Settlement, First French in America," "French Fisheries in America," "Quebec, Founding of," "Champlain Lake, Discovery of," "French Claims."

CHAPTER X.

New France and Acadie.

The explorations and conquests of Spain in America were bringing to that nation such wealth that others would have

gladly followed in her footsteps had she not set up a haughty claim to all the regions beyond the Atlantic. Francis I, King of France, disregarded this claim of his powerful neighbor, and resolved to have a share of America's riches, sarcastically demanding to be shown



CARTIER ON THE ST. LAWRENCE.

the clause in father Adam's will by which he was disinherited in the New World.

So VERRAZANI, a Florentine navigator, was employed and sent over to explore (1524) the east coast of what is now the United States. Long before the voyage of Verrazani, however, the waters about Newfoundland had become familiar to the Breton fishermen of northwest

France, the Gulf of St. Lawrence having been entered by JOHN DENYS (1506). The explorations of France were thus directed to this portion of the continent. JACQUES CARTIER entered the gulf (1534) ten years after the voyage of Verrazani, naming one of its bays, Chaleurs. The next year (1535) he ascended the St. Lawrence River to the Indian village of Hochelaga, near the site of the present city of Montreal. The territory was taken formal possession of, after the manner of the early explorers, and named New France.

This establishment of a French claim was followed up by an attempt at settlement. Francis de la Roche, LORD OF ROBERVAL, was appointed viceroy of the territory, and with Jacques Cartier as his captain-general, proceeded to establish a colony. There was little unanimity between the two. Cartier, arriving first, built a fort near the present town of Quebec (1541), passed a gloomy winter, and in the spring abandoned the settlement just as Roberval arrived with reinforcements.

More than fifty years elapsed before any further efforts were made. A monopoly of the fur trade having been granted to DE MONTS, an honest, able and patriotic Frenchman, he arrived off the coast of what is now Nova Scotia, entering the harbor of Annapolis. Its situation so pleased POUTRINCOURT, one of the leaders of the expedition, that he obtained permission to establish himself near by; and De Monts, continuing on, planted a settlement upon an island at the mouth of the St. Croix River (1604). The winter was one of unusual severity; and next year the colony was transferred to the site selected by Poutrincourt. This became the first permanent French settlement in America, and was called Port Royal (1605). The neighboring territory received the appellation of Acadie.

The monopoly granted to De Monts was, however, soon set aside at the instigation of a company of French merchants, who themselves desired to enjoy some of the fur-trading privileges. SAMUEL CHAMPLAIN, a man who had served the St. Croix settlers faithfully in their trying winter, and who had displayed unusual energy and intelligence, was sent over to New France by these merchants. Champlain founded the city of Quebec (1608), from which point he explored the country in every direction, entering at one time the territorial limits of the present United States, and discovering the lake that now bears his name. Numbers of French immigrants arriving, other settlements were founded, whose affairs were directed by Champlain with such wisdom and ability that he has been called the "Father of New France."



CHAMPLAIN.

Champlain, however, made the fatal mistake of permitting himself to be drawn into the quarrel that had long existed between the Algonquin Indians of Canada and the Iroquois of central New York. The latter were among the most powerful tribes upon the continent, and they long resented this French interference with such success that the French tide of immigration to the St. Lawrence never turned southward to the Atlantic, but was compelled to make its way to the southwest, thus leaving the Atlantic seaboard clear for the English colonies soon to be planted.

The Jesuits in North America.

With these early immigrants came the Jesuits, members of a religious order that has done much to spread the faith of the Catholic Church beyond the frontiers of civilization. These missionaries penetrated great distances into the country, took up their abode among the Indians, bringing the savages into subjection by the mild arts of peace, and while engaged in their Christianizing and self-sacrificing labors, were laying the foundations for France of a mighty empire in the new world.

QUESTIONS.

What did the explorations and conquests of Spain bring to that nation? **Why did not other nations follow in her footsteps?** What king ignored the claim of Spain to a monopoly of the new world's riches? What sarcastic inquiry did he make? Who was employed to make explorations for France? When? Where were his explorations made? What fishermen had already become familiar with American waters? Who was the first to enter the St. Lawrence Gulf? When? **What do you know of Jacques Cartier?** What bay did he discover and name? When? What river did he ascend? When? To what point? What name was bestowed upon the region about the St. Lawrence? Who was appointed viceroy? What appointment did Cartier receive? **Tell what you know of the first efforts of France to occupy this territory.** What fort did Cartier build? When? Why was this attempted settlement unsuccessful? How many years elapsed before further effort was made? To whom was a monopoly of the fur trade then granted? Where did De Monts first establish himself? When? To what point was this settlement then removed? When? **Tell what you know of the first permanent French settlement in America.** What was it called? What name was bestowed upon the territory now known as Nova Scotia? How did the monopoly of De Monts come to be set aside? **What do you know of Champlain?** What explorations did he make? What city did he found? When? Why was he called the father of New France? What grave error did he commit? **What effect had this upon the extension of French dominion in America? What part did the Jesuits take in establishing the French power in the New World?**

TOPICAL OUTLINE.

MEMORY AID.

For Lesson on First Ventures of France in the New World.

(Place on the Blackboard and have pupils fill blanks.)

FRENCH EXPLORATIONS.

- *Early Discoveries.*
 - *Denys, Gulf of* *in*
 - *Verrazani, Coast of* *in*
 - *Cartier*
 - *Bay of* *in*
 - *river, in*
- *New France*
 - *Roberval and Cartier.*
 - *Fail to colonize in*
 - *De Monts*
 - *Settles at mouth of* *river in*
 - *Removes to* *in* *and thus establishes first* *in America.*
 - *Country called Acadie.*
 - *Champlain*
 - *Founds city of* *in*
 - *Explores*
 - *Discovers Lake* *(N.Y.)*
 - *Manages affairs with*
 - *Mistake made and its results*
 - *The Jesuits*

CHAPTER XI.

Louisiana.

As time passed on, the prosperity of the French settlements about the St. Lawrence became assured. The fur trade that had sprung up proved to be very profitable. French influence and dominion were extended about the great lakes. Traveling agents or runners, known as *coureurs-de-bois*, penetrated to great distances, returning with loads of valuable furs and peltries to be shipped to France.

Accounts gathered from the Indians of the interior, of a great river flowing southward, were from time to time brought back by these runners. It was believed that this river flowed to the great South Sea, and as visions of French supremacy in the New World began to arise, the discovery and exploration of this river were determined upon. Along the chain of great lakes went a monk, MARQUETTE, accompanied by a trader, JOLIET, to seek out this river; and entering the Outagamis, now the Fox River, of Wisconsin, ascended it to a point near its head waters. A portage enabled them to transfer their canoes to the stream now called the Wisconsin, upon which they floated until they reached the Mississippi, the object of their search (July, 1673). Down this river they proceeded to the mouth of what is now the Arkansas, where, becoming satisfied of its general direction, size and importance, they turned back.



LA SALLE

Marquette and Joliet were soon followed by ROBERT CAVELIER DE LA SALLE. This "prince of explorers" had

spent several years with the Jesuits, and coming to New France had found much to occupy his mind in conceiving brilliant plans for the extension of French dominion. One of these plans was the thorough exploration of the great river that had been brought to notice, and the erection of forts within convenient distances of one another, along the lakes and down the newly explored river, to serve as links in a chain binding a vast domain to the already acquired possessions of France.

Count Frontenac, who was at that time governor of New France, entered fully into the proposed plans, and La Salle went to France and laid the matter before the French king, whose interest was immediately awakened. Here was a man who proposed to add an empire to the possessions of France. La Salle having received a title of nobility, and being clothed with ample authority, returned to America, accompanied by Chevalier de Tonti, a grim, experienced, one-armed veteran, who was to serve him devotedly through many vicissitudes.

The first fort was erected near the present town of Kingston, and was called Fort Frontenac. From this point expeditions were sent out along the lake shores until a territory of some fifteen hundred miles had been covered. At length La Salle found himself in the country of the Illinois (1680), where the difficulties and conditions with which he had to contend, tested at times his capacity and tact to the utmost. Iroquois messengers had been sent to inflame the minds of the Illinois against the French. His own men mutinied, plotted against him, endeavored to incite the Indians to hostility, and even attempted his death by poison; but every obstacle was overcome, and La Salle never lost sight of what he had set out to do.

A small party, under Dacan and Father Hennepin, was sent to explore the head waters of the Mississippi (February,

1680). In this expedition they discovered and named the falls of St. Anthony, near which they were captured and held prisoners for some time by the warlike Dakota or Sioux Indians. They were finally liberated through the intercession of some traders, who had thus early penetrated this region from the north. One of these bore the name of Du Luth.



LA SALLE TAKING FORMAL POSSESSION OF LOUISIANA.

At Creve Cœur, the fort erected in the Illinois country, preparation was made to proceed further, and early in February, 1681, La Salle and his men floated out of the Illinois River for a voyage down the Mississippi. Short stops were made at the mouths of the Missouri and Ohio Rivers, but the

first landing of importance was at Chickasaw Bluff, where a log fort was erected and named Fort Prudhomme.

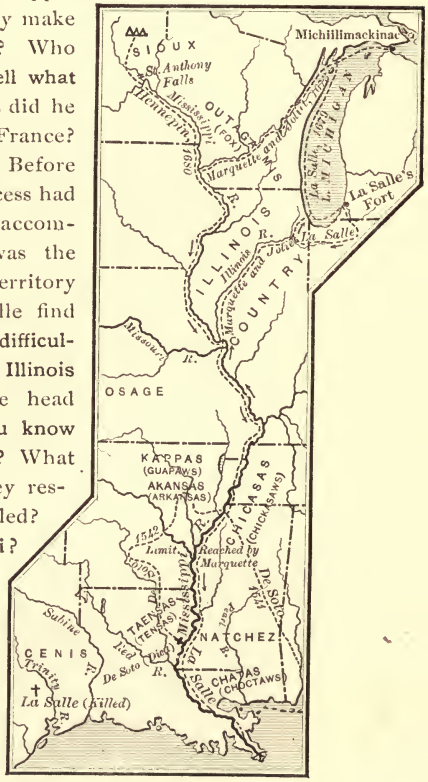
One hundred and forty years had elapsed since the ill-fated De Soto had encamped near this same spot, and the Chickasaws had had time to forget the cruelties of the Europeans who first came among them. A calumet, or peace pipe, had been given to the French by the Illinois, and the symbol was understood and responded to favorably, so La Salle and his men were not disturbed, and here, for the first time, were the shores of the lower Mississippi taken possession of formally in the name of the King of France.

A four days' voyage further on brought the explorers to a village of the Kappas or Quapaws, in the present territory of Arkansas. The peace pipe was again brought into service, and professions of alliance and friendship were exchanged with these Indians and also with the Arkansas, twenty-five miles further down. Here the standard of France was again erected and possession taken. One hundred and eighty miles then brought them to the land of the Tænsas. The enmity of these Indians had been feared, but Tonti, sent on in advance with the peace pipe, succeeded in rendering them friendly.

Below the mouth of Red River some hostile tribes were encountered, but the opposition presented was not sufficient to deter them from continuing on, and at last the mouth of the river was reached (April, 1682). Landing here, La Salle took final possession, in the name of the King of France, of the whole territory through which he had traveled, bestowing upon the river he had descended the name St. Louis, and the region through which it coursed Louisiana.

QUESTIONS.

What important trade sprang up about the Great Lakes? Who were *coureurs-de-bois?* What accounts were gathered by them from the Indians of the interior? Where was the Mississippi river supposed to empty? Who were sent to explore it? **What do you know of Marquette and Joliet?** Who were they? How did they reach the Mississippi? When? How far down this river did they make explorations? Why did they turn back? Who soon followed up their explorations? **Tell what you know of La Salle.** What great plans did he conceive? Who was then governor of New France? What encouragement did he give La Salle? Before whom were these plans laid? What success had La Salle with the French king? Who accompanied him back to America? What was the first fort built? About how many miles of territory were soon covered? When did La Salle find himself in the Illinois country? **What difficulties were overcome by La Salle in the Illinois country?** Who were dispatched to the head waters of the Mississippi? **Tell what you know of the expedition of Dacan and Hennepin?** What happened to them? By whom were they rescued? What was the Illinois fort called? How did La Salle reach the Mississippi? When? In drifting down where were short stops made? **Where was the first landing of importance made by La Salle on the Mississippi?** What fort was here erected? Why did he meet with a better reception at the hands of the Chickasaws than had De Soto? What ceremony occurred at Chickasaw Bluff? With what two Arkansas tribes were friendly relations established? Who was sent on in advance to the Tænsas? Why? With what success? What opposition was encountered below the mouth of Red River? When did La Salle reach the mouth of the river? What name was bestowed upon the river? Upon the territory? **What do you know of the Prince of Explorers?**



MAP SHOWING EARLY EXPLORATIONS OF MISSISSIPPI VALLEY.

TOPICAL OUTLINE.

MEMORY AID.

For Lesson on The Exploration of Louisiana.

(Place on Blackboard and have pupils fill blanks and elaborate by written composition.)

LOUISIANA.

- , a monk. / , a trader. — Reach the Mississippi — By way of Rivers; in the year
- La Salle.
 - Early life.
 - Conceives plans of
 - Is encouraged by Governor of New France.
 - Lays plans before the King.
 - Returns with (1) Authority. (2) Title of (3) Chevalier
 - Builds first fort and calls it
 - Explores territory for miles.
 - Reaches the Illinois country about the year
 - Sends / — To headwaters of Mississipi River who — Discover falls of / Are captured by / Are rescued by
 - Leaves mouth of Illinois River (date.)
 - Arrives at Bluff — Treated by Indians. / Builds Fort / Takes formal possession.
 - Continues on to country of the Indians. / Then to that of the
 - Sends Tonti in advance to the Indians.
 - Arrives at mouth of Mississippi
 - Takes final possession, calls — River / Territory

CHAPTER XII.

The Northwest Passage.

When the discoveries of Balboa and Magellan made it known that America was a new continent, the old question of the shortest route to India again arose. For almost a

century Spanish galleons had been crossing and recrossing the Atlantic, freighted with the riches and products of New Spain. All this time the naval power of England had been increasing; and when Elizabeth assumed the throne the



"IN SEARCH OF A NORTHWEST PASSAGE."

spirit of English enterprise was directed to the explorations begun by the Cabots years before.

To reach India by the most direct route seemed to be about the only achievement remaining by which a navigator could win renown. Moreover, the voyage by way of Cape Horn or Cape of Good Hope was impracticable to English vessels

in those days, not only because of the distance, but because a part of the ocean would have to be crossed which was zealously guarded by hostile Spanish fleets going to and returning from America.

This caused English navigators to follow up the explorations of Sebastian Cabot in seeking for a northwest passage around North America. Many eminent English seamen engaged in this enterprise. One of these, MARTIN FROBISHER, sailed with a small fleet (1576), explored much of the coast visited by the Cabots, reaching a higher latitude. Returning the next year with a larger fleet, he pushed on until blocked by ice. Eight years after (1585) JOHN DAVIS entered the straits that now bear his name, but was compelled to turn back by the same ice that had obstructed the passage of Frobisher. Both of these navigators were firmly impressed with the idea that, were it not for this ice, the object of their voyages could be attained.

The Dutch also attempted to find a passage to India. No sooner had the way to the East Indies around Africa

Sir Francis Drake.

While this northwest passage was being sought there was one, who, in another quarter of the globe, was achieving glory and renown for England's growing navy. SIR FRANCIS DRAKE, styled the greatest seaman of his age, scorning to avoid the waters frequented by Spanish men-of-war, sailed southward with five vessels (1577), and after taking many rich prizes and making his name a terror upon the Spanish seas, found himself in the south Atlantic with one vessel laden with the treasures he had captured. Drake boldly entered the Pacific, although Spain had set up the claim to the exclusive right of navigating its waters. He sailed up the western coast of South and North America, and landed at a point north of that reached by Cabrillo, upon the shores of what is now Oregon (1579). He named the country New Albion, and took formal possession of it for England. The Indians, in all friendliness, crowned him king in token of their submission. Two years had elapsed since he left England, and he now determined to set out for home. Having refitted his little vessel he decided to cruise across the broad Pacific. Rounding Cape Good Hope he arrived safely in England—the second navigator in the world's history to circumnavigate the globe, as Magellan was the first.



SIR FRANCIS DRAKE.

become known than the ships of the enterprising little country of Holland followed closely in the wake of the Portuguese discoverers. A company of merchants called the Dutch East India Company rapidly rose to wealth and power, and in their service, HENRY HUDSON, an Englishman, visited the shores of North America (1609) and explored numerous inlets, in the hope that they might prove to be the long sought passage. He entered the harbor now known as New York, and his vessel, the Half Moon, ascended the Hudson River to the head of navigation. One year after this Hudson, now in the service of England, entered the strait and bay that bear his name. Here he was forced into an open boat and sent adrift by a mutinous crew, and was never heard of more.

QUESTIONS.

What question again arose as soon as it was known that America was a new continent? About how long after the discovery of America did England begin to follow up the discoveries of the Cabots? **Why was the voyage to India by way of Cape Horn or Cape Good Hope impracticable to English vessels?** What English navigators followed up the explorations of the Cabots? When did each make his voyage? Where? **Tell what you know of Frobisher and Davis.** Who was Sir Francis Drake? **How did Drake bring glory and renown to England?** When did he sail? What did he make himself in Spanish waters? What did he capture? What ocean did he enter from the Atlantic? What shores did he reach? What name was bestowed upon what is now called Oregon? How did the Indians of this region show their friendliness? **Tell what you know of the second circumnavigation of the globe.** What other nation sought a northwest passage? **What was the Dutch East India Company?** What Englishman was employed by them? **What do you know of Henry Hudson?** What harbor did he enter? Why? What river did he ascend? What was the name of his vessel? What was his fate?

TOPICAL OUTLINE.

MEMORY AID.

For Lesson on Early English and Dutch Explorers.

(Place on the Blackboard and have pupils fill blanks, then elaborate by written composition.)

EARLY EXPLORERS.

- English
 - Seekers for the Northwest Passage
 - Sebastian Cabot
 - Frobisher
 - First Voyage.....
 - Second Voyage
 - Davis
 - Sailed in.....
 - Discovers strait
 - Sir Francis Drake.
 - Sails in year.....with.....vessels
 - Captures.....
 - Enters.....ocean
 - Discovers
 - Crowned by
 - Reaches England by way of
- Dutch
 - Henry Hudson
 - Explores coast of in year.....
 - Ascends river
 - Name of vessel
 - Subsequent voyage to
 - Perished in Bay.

SEARCH QUESTIONS.

What has been built over Champlain's grave? How did Canada receive its name? How was Joliet rewarded? What name did La Salle give his residence? After whom did La Salle name his fort at Chickasaw Bluff? Why was New Albion so called? Who was the founder of the Jesuits?

PREPARATORY NOTES.

TO CHAPTERS XIII, XIV, XV.

Geography.—*Note upon a map the location of Mexico.* Where is Yucatan? Vera Cruz? Note the relative position of America and Asia. What strait between them? About how wide is this strait? Where are the Aleutian Islands. Upon the chart of the ocean currents in a physical geography note the direction and flow of the Japan current. Where does this current touch the American shores? What current flows from Africa to South America at the equator? Note the numerous islands in the Pacific Ocean. Name

the principal ones in Malaysia. Upon a globe or map of the world note the nearness of Norway to Iceland. Of Iceland to Greenland. Of Greenland to Labrador. Of Labrador to Newfoundland. Of Newfoundland to the New England coast. Where is Newport?

Definition of Words.—*Know the meanings of the following words:* Aboriginal, ethnologist, plane, immutable, partial, zeal, impelled, revealed, archæologists, imbedded, supplanting, predecessor, ingenuity, devise, concentrate, inferior, absolute, expressive, systematic, precepts, expert, fabrics, crystalized, congregate, surveillance, serfdom, vassalage, dialects, varying, improvident, edifice, economy, primitive, constituents, prowess, decorum, taciturn, ceremonious, intervals, guttural, vocabulary, reverence, appease, grotesque, efficacy, interpret, alternate, attribute, discordant, fantastically, incantations, intensified, accordance, inferior, encroaching, bounty, cope, extinction, speculative, fabricated, similarity, nautical, evidence, research, predominating, structure, antiquity, sedentary, relapse, deify, accredited, ample, blend, corroborative, bards, veritable, inscribe, prehistoric.

Pronunciation of Names.—*Study the pronunciation of the following:* Chichimecs, Alcolhuas, Nahuatlac, Aztlan, Tenochitlan, Montezuma, Esquimaux, Algonquins, Sioux, Shoshones, Comanches, Apaches, Iroquois, Hoei Shiu, Phœnicians, Zuni, Pueblo, Moquis Cabral, Quetzal, Gunnbjorn, Bjorne Herjulfson, Lief Ericson, Thorstein, Thorfinn, Karlsefne.

PARALLEL READINGS.

REFERENCE.—Short's "North Americans of Antiquity," Foster's "Prehistoric Races," Bancroft's (H. H.) "Native Races of the Pacific States," Schoolcraft's "Indian Tribes of the United States," Biart's "The Aztecs," Prescott's "Conquest of Mexico," Catlin's "North American Indians," Beamish's "Discovery of America by Northmen," Weise's "Discoveries of America to the year 1525," Vining's "An Inglorious Columbus."

GENERAL.—Wallace's "Fair God," Mrs. Wallace's "Land of the Pueblos," Drake's "Making of the Great West," Cooper's "Leatherstocking Tales," Longfellow's "Hiawatha," "Skeleton in Armor," Fontaine's "How the World was Peopled," "The First Americans" (Harper's Magazine, August, 1882), "The Zunis" (Century Magazine, Aug.-Dec., 1882, Feb.-May, 1883), Mrs. Jackson's "A Century of Dishonor," "The Visit of the Vikings" (Harper's Magazine, Sept., 1882), "Indian Tribes of Prehistoric Times," (Magazine of American History, Sept., 1888), "Conquest of the Mayas," (Magazine of American History, April, 1888), "Lief Ericson," by Mrs. Ole Bull (Magazine of American History, March, 1888).

TOPICAL.—"Mound Builders," "Iroquois," "Northmen," "Vikings," "Aztecs," "Pueblos," "Mayas," "Indians, North American," "Madoc," "Lief Ericson," "Vinland," "Snorri," "Karlsefne," "Mandans," "Newport, Old Tower at," "Dighton Rock," "Cliff-Dwellers."

AMERICA OF OLD.

CHAPTER XIII.

Aboriginal Races.—Semi-Civilized.

The Spaniards, under Cortez, came in contact with the Indian in his highest state of development. Of the races conquered by him and his followers we have had for a long time but little knowledge. The religious zeal of the conquerors impelled them to tear down what to them were pagan temples, and destroy many of the sacred records that would have made ancient Mexican history clear to us. What has long been hidden, however, is being gradually revealed by the labors of modern explorers and archæologists.

The aboriginal inhabitants of the American Continent, wherever found, are known as Indians. They are classed by some ethnologists as a separate and distinct family of mankind. By others they are regarded as subdivsions of a great family that includes among its members the yellow races of Asia.

Just as we find the white race to-day in various portions of the world, existing in every condition of society, so were the red race found living at the time of the discovery in different portions of the American Continent. Some were occupying very low planes of existence, as do now the animal-like Digger Indians of California; others, in accordance with the immutable laws of human progress, had, by the time the Europeans began to visit American shores, responded to several impulses, and reached a state of partial civilization, both peculiar and wonderful.

Among the earliest to occupy the territory afterwards to be conquered by Cortez were the Mayas, whose descendants still live in the interior of Yucatan. Here to this day are to be found imbedded in the earth and covered with forests, ruins of their ancient monuments, temples and cities. Following the Mayas, there arrived successively, each blending with or supplanting its predecessor, the Toltecs, the Chichimecs, the Alcolhuas and the seven Nahuatlac tribes, one of which (the Aztecs) deeming themselves the favored children of their divinity, *Mexitli*, changed their names to *Mexi*, from which we have the present Mexico.

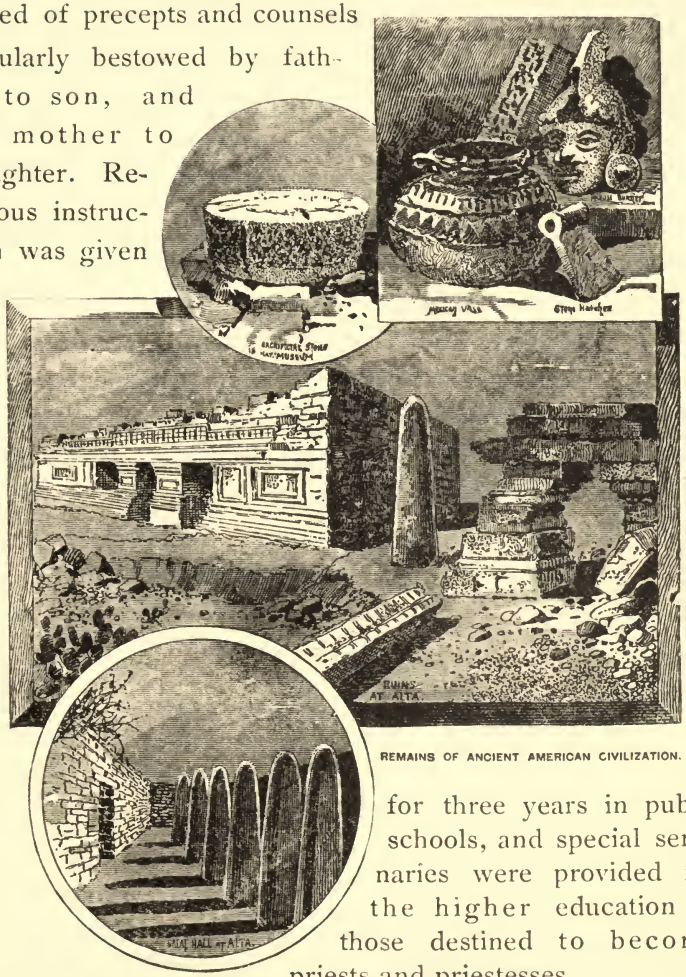
Emigrating from a northern land, referred to in their traditions as Aztlan, of whose location we know but little, the Aztecs reached Anahuac, and laid the foundations of their capital, Tenochitlan, about the year 1325, near the present City of Mexico. A warlike race, continually engaged in conquests and conflicts, they made themselves secure by building in a lake and guarding the approach to their city by long and easily defended causeways.

When at war and surrounded by enemies, the fish of the lake served them as food, and ingenuity devised *chinampas*, or floating islands, upon which they raised fruits and vegetables. These chinampas were constructed of interwoven reeds and roots, upon which was deposited the rich soil taken from the bottom of the lake. As time passed on, and the subjugation of neighboring tribes brought security and power, Tenochitlan became adorned with temples and palaces, wherein were accumulated from all parts of the realm, the wealth and treasure for which the mines of Mexico are to this day celebrated. Under the reigns of wise and intelligent Montezumas, many of the arts of civilized life developed, and the advancement made by them before the conquest, reached a degree but little inferior to that of their conquerors.

The government of the Aztecs was that of an absolute monarchy. Supreme power was vested in the Montezuma, or emperor. Under him ruled nobles or *caciques* over the different provinces. Justice was admirably administered in every part of the kingdom. The religion, however, was idolatrous, and, unlike that of the Mayas and some of the other tribes, cruel in many of its practices and ceremonies, human sacrifice being of frequent occurrence.

The language of the Aztecs was very full and expressive; their speech, musical. In writing they employed hiero-

glyphics and pictures. Poetry was frequently composed and sung to appreciative hearers, and oratory was carefully cultivated. The education of children was systematic, and consisted of precepts and counsels regularly bestowed by father to son, and by mother to daughter. Religious instruction was given



REMAINS OF ANCIENT AMERICAN CIVILIZATION.

for three years in public schools, and special seminaries were provided for the higher education of those destined to become priests and priestesses.

In many of the arts the Aztecs were expert. As potters, stonecutters, jewelers, and basket-makers, they excelled. Many were skilled woodworkers, builders, and weavers,

weaving not only delicate and beautiful fabrics, wherein feathers took the place of silk, and rabbit skins of wool, but also more serviceable clothes of cotton and other plant fibres. The farmers raised maize, cocoa, cotton, fruits, and agave, a plant most useful to them,—its thorns supplying needles; its fibres, thread for sewing and weaving; its juice, when boiled, honey; when crystalized, sugar; when fermented, their favorite beverages of *pulque* and *mescal*.

Commerce was their special delight. Money consisted of grains of cocoa, squares of cloth and quills of gold. The market-places were large squares where one day in five traders from long distances congregated and displayed their wares. These market-places were admirably managed. Commissioners, officially appointed, by strict surveillance insured good order and fair dealing. All differences were referred to a court of two judges near by, who decreed and instantly executed punishment upon those guilty of law-breaking and fraud. Enterprising merchants made long journeys to the interior, their goods borne upon the backs of porters, or *tlamenes*, whose individual load was sixty pounds and whose daily task was twelve miles. The most powerful of these traveling merchants took with them armed escorts, and their expeditions to distant regions often resulted in a conquest of territory visited, and its addition to the Aztec realm.

Such was the people who were overcome by Spanish arms, whose records were destroyed by Spanish zeal, and whose civilization has been replaced by that of modern Mexico. The conquest of this race could not have been achieved by Cortez without the assistance of the many tribes, who preferred serfdom to Spain rather than vassalage to Tenochitlan.

BLACKBOARD FORM.

Analysis of Lesson on The Aztecs.

THE AZTECS.

- *Origin—Aztlan.*
- *Capital—Tenochitlan.*
- *Government—Absolute Monarchy.*
- **Religion.**
 - *Idolatrous.*
 - *Human sacrifices.*
 - *Priests, Temples, etc.*
- **Occupation.**
 - *Agricultural.*
 - *Chinampas.*
 - *Products*
 - *Maize*
 - *Cocoa*
 - *Agave*
 - *Thread.*
 - *Needles.*
 - *Paper.*
 - *Clothes.*
 - *Food.*
 - *Sugar.*
 - *Pulque.*
 - *Mezcal.*
 - *Cotton*
 - *Fruit*
 - *Commercial.*
 - *Market places.*
 - *Money*
 - *Grains of Cocoa.*
 - *Squares of cloth.*
 - *Quills of Gold.*
 - *Caravans*
 - *Tlamenes.*
 - *Armed escorts.*
 - *Industrial.*
 - *Builders.*
 - *Woodworkers.*
 - *Stone cutters.*
 - *Basket makers.*
 - *Feathers.*
 - *Cotton.*
 - *Agave fibre.*
 - *Rabbit skins.*
 - *Weavers*
 - *Jewelers.*
 - *Potters.*
- **Language.**
 - *Written.*
 - *Picture.*
 - *Hieroglyphic.*
 - *Spoken.*
 - *Complete.*
 - *Musical.*
 - *Adapted to*
 - *Oratory.*
 - *Poetry.*
- **Education.**
 - *Instruction of son by father.*
 - *Instruction of daughter by mother.*
 - *Public schools, seminaries, etc.*

QUESTIONS.

What name was bestowed upon the aboriginal inhabitants of America? What race do they constitute? What Indians occupy a very low plane of existence? What had some of the Indian races reached by the time the Europeans came? Why did the Spaniards destroy most of the records of ancient Mexico? How are we coming to know of what could have been told us by these records? What race was among the earliest to occupy Mexico? What races followed? Who were the Aztecs? From where did they come?

What is the origin of the name Mexico? When was Tenochitlan founded? How was it built? Why? How did the Aztecs obtain food when besieged? How did Tenochitlan become adorned? **What form of government had the Aztecs?** Who ruled subordinate to the Montezuma? How was justice administered? **What was the character of their religion?** What did they practice? **What was the nature of their language?** Speech? What was frequently composed? What cultivated? **How were children educated?** In what arts did the Aztecs excel? What materials did they weave? What did the farmers raise? Why was the agave a useful plant to them? **In what did the Aztecs specially delight?** What did they use for money? **What about their market places?** Traveling merchants? Tlamenes? **How did the Spaniards succeed in overcoming this race?**

CHAPTER XIV.

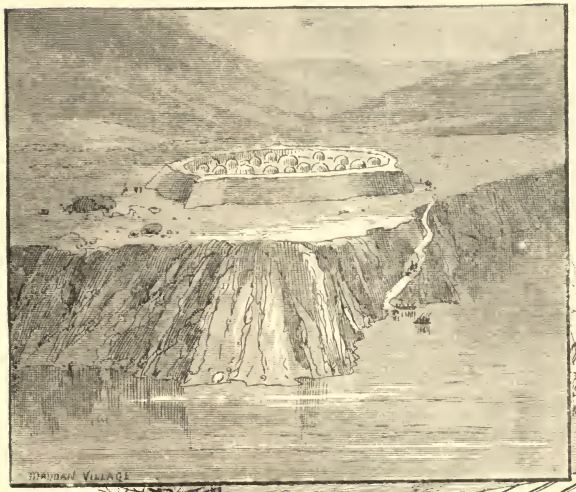
Aboriginal Races—Savage.

The Indians found living in that part of America occupied by what is now the United States and British America constituted numberless tribes, having many resemblances in common. Classified according to language, the greater portion of them comprises four great families: the Esquimaux of the North, the Athabascans of West British America, the Algonquins of Canada and Northeast United States, and the Dakotas of Northwest United States. Each of these embraces many tribal subdivisions, speaking dialects whose similarities enable them to be grouped together. Thus we have the Wampanoags, Narragansetts, Pequods, Pow-

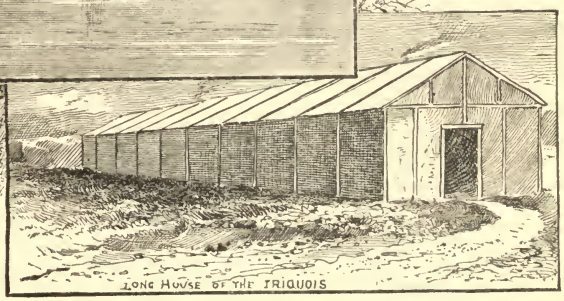
Many of the tribes that occupied the Southern States are generally classed together, as the Mobilian or Apalachians, though their singularities of language and dialectical differences are perhaps more marked than those existing between the subdivisions of the Algonquins or Dakotas. Among these tribes are the Yamasees, Corees, Appalachees, Seminoles, Creeks, Choctaws, Chickasaws and others. Separate and distinct from any mentioned heretofore, and existing as single tribes or smaller confederacies, were the Iroquois of New York, the Cherokees of Georgia, the Natchez of Mississippi, the Mandans of the upper Missouri River, and the Shoshones, Comanches, Apaches, Pawnees and many others of West and Southwest United States. Of these the Iroquois and the Natchez were remarkable—the Iroquois because of the indomitable spirit and courage that enabled them to conquer and destroy their powerful neighbors; the Natchez because of their peculiar fire and sun worship, and a governmental and industrial development far in advance of surrounding tribes.

hattans, Shawnees, Ottawas, Sacs and Foxes, Illinois, Chippewas and others, constituting the Algonquin group; and the Crow, Sioux, Osage, Quapaws, Arkansas, Omahas, and others, the Dakota group.

Much has been written of the life, habits and customs of these savage races. That they possessed both good and bad traits of character, varying according to the individual, is known beyond a doubt. As a general thing they were brave, hospitable and grateful, yet indolent, improvident, revengeful and treacherous. Their habitations were rudely built huts or wigwams covered with barks and skins, the exception being the well-built "long houses" of the Iroquois, the dome-roofed dwellings of the Mandans, built upon circular foundations of stone; and the edifices of the Natchez and Pueblo Indians, constructed of sun-dried brick. In the economy of the household the women or squaws were most conspicuous



MANDAN VILLAGE



LONG HOUSE OF THE IROQUOIS

for the labors that devolved upon them. It was their duty to cultivate in primitive fashion small fields of maize; to dress the skins and cure the meat of the game taken in the chase; to make the moccasins and garments, decorating them with quills of porcupine, shells, feathers and other ornaments; to cook the meals of parched corn, broiled flesh and sometimes broth, boiled in closely-woven baskets or rude utensils of clay by means of hot stones dropped therein.

The passion of the men seemed to be for killing, either in the chase or upon the war-path. Their weapons until the whites came and supplied them with better were of the rudest description, consisting of bows and flint-tipped arrows, clubs and stone-headed hatchets or tomahawks. Their condition of continual warfare caused them to associate themselves in tribes and confederacies of tribes, their government imposing but few restrictions upon them. In peace, a sachem presided over the councils of a tribe; in war, a war-chief led them against the foe. Respect for the wisdom of the one, and the prowess of the other, assured obedience.

Matters of importance were always referred to the older and experienced members of the tribe, who assembled for the purpose of deliberation around the council fire. The proceedings always opened with a ceremonious smoking of the calumet, the sacred pipe passing from lip to lip amidst the greatest decorum. Between intervals of dignified silence one after another would express his views and opinions, tersely, yet eloquently, to the taciturn circle seated upon the ground around him.

The spoken language of the Indian was harsh and guttural. The words in his vocabulary were so few that when new ideas were introduced to him by the Europeans it often required the combining of several of his words to

The Indian Medicine Man.

The priest or medicine man occupied an exalted position in the tribe. It was his duty to read signs and interpret omens, to tender sacrifices and conduct religious ceremonies. He was supposed to have the power to call down rain in time of drouth, which he often endeavored to do by means of chants, dancings and loud mouthings to the spirits of the air, in which coaxings alternated with violent abuse. His ability to heal the sick went unquestioned. When illness would not yield to his simple remedies of roots and herbs, the cause would be attributed to a demon that had possession of the patient, and forthwith preparations would be made to exorcise the evil one. Relatives and friends gathered about the sick one's dwelling and engaged in noise-makings with gourd rattles and rude drums, accompanied by screechings and howls of a most discordant nature. Amidst the hideous din the medicine man, fantastically attired and decorated with his most effective totems, practiced his incantations and executed his medicine dance.



INDIAN MEDICINE MAN.

express what we in our language can with one. A very primitive form of picture-writing upon the inner and paper-like bark of trees was practiced by some few tribes.

The North American Indian has often been wrongly pictured as having a sublime faith in one God, Great Spirit, or Manitou. In truth his religion was but a bundle of superstitions, erroneously comprehended by those who came in early contact with him. Certain animals were reverenced by him, and he believed in good and evil spirits, the latter of whom received the greater part of his worship; for, according to his mode of reasoning, the good never did him harm, the evil injured him upon all occasions unless appeased. This appeasing constituted the greater part of his religious ceremonies, and consisted in sacrifices, grotesque dances, chantings, playing upon sacred and noisy instruments, and voluble promise-makings. He had great faith in the efficacy of charms, or totems, to shield him from evil influences.

To him who died there was a hereafter, in which all the pleasures of this life were intensified and enjoyed in continuous repetition. So when a warrior died his weapons and other favorite possessions, including sometimes his dog, were buried with him, to add to his happiness when he reached the "Happy Hunting Ground."

Some tribes buried their dead in sitting posture, a covering of stones and earth forming a mound above the remains. Among many of the western tribes the custom existed of depositing the dead upon high platforms, erected for the purpose out on the prairie, away from the village. Here would the widow daily come to mourn her husband, to bring to him the food that only the fowls of the air devoured, to speak to him and in return receive no answer.

With the advance of the white man the red race is rapidly

passing away, in accordance with a well-established law of nature, that causes an inferior race to yield to a superior when one comes in contact with the other. Remnants are found far out in the West, where even now the emigrant and the ranchman are encroaching upon their domain; or at agencies subsisting as pensioners on the bounty of the United States government. A fortunate few, descendants of the once powerful Cherokee, Chickasaw, Choctaw and other tribes, occupy lands reserved to them in the Indian Territory, where education and acquired enlightenment are enabling them to cope successfully against extinction.



INDIAN BURIAL.

BLACKBOARD FORM.

Analysis of Lesson on Savage Races of America.

- **THE NORTH AMERICAN INDIANS.**
 - **Classification.**
 - *Principal Groups.*
 - *Dakotas.*
 - *Esquimaux.*
 - *Athabascans.*
 - *Sioux.*
 - *Osage.*
 - *Quapaws.*
 - *Arkansas.*
 - *Omahas.*
 - *Crow, etc.*
 - *Algonquins.*
 - *Wampanoags.*
 - *Narragansetts.*
 - *Pequods.*
 - *Powhattans.*
 - *Shawnees.*
 - *Illinois, Ottawas, etc.*
 - *Mobilians.*
 - *Chickasaws.*
 - *Creeks.*
 - *Choctaws.*
 - *Appalachees.*
 - *Corees.*
 - *Seminoles.*
 - *Etc., Etc.*
 - *Minor Groups.*
 - *Iroquois.*
 - *Cherokees.*
 - *Natchez.*
 - *Shoshones.*
 - *Apaches.*
 - *Etc., Etc.*
 - **Characteristics.**
 - *Good.*
 - *Brave.*
 - *Hospitable.*
 - *Grateful.*
 - *Evil.*
 - *Improvident.*
 - *Indolent.*
 - *Revengeful.*
 - *Treacherous.*
 - **Language.**
 - *Written.*
 - *Primitive Picture Writing.*
 - *Spoken.*
 - *Guttural.*
 - *Incomplete.*
 - **Government.**
 - *The Sachem.*
 - *The War-Chief.*
 - *The Council.*
 - *The Confederacy.*
 - **Religion.**
 - *Totems.*
 - *Incantations.*
 - *The Medicine Man.*
 - *Duties.*
 - *Powers.*
 - *Worship of Spirits.*
 - *The Hereafter.*
 - **Life, Manners and Customs.**
 - *The Family.*
 - *The Dwelling.*
 - *The Dance.*
 - *The Hunt.*
 - *The Preparation of*
 - *Food.*
 - *Clothing*
 - *The War-Path.*
 - *The Burial.*

QUESTIONS.

According to language how are most of the Indian tribes classified? Locate each. Mention some of the tribal subdivisions of the Algonquins. Dakotas. Name the subdivisions of the Mobilian group. What can you say of the Iroquois? Name some tribes other than those already mentioned. Why were the Natchez remarkable? What are the principal traits of Indian character? What about their habitations? What can you say of the dwellings of the Iroquois? The Natchez and Pueblos? The Mandans? What duties devolved upon the squaws? Of what were garments made? Decorated? What were the principal articles of food? For what did the men have a passion? What weapons did they employ before the coming of the whites? How did they associate themselves? Who was the sachem? The war-chief? What was the council? How were matters passed upon by the council? What was the nature of the Indian language? What about its vocabulary? What form of writing was practiced? What was the nature of the Indian religion? What did they worship? Reverence? How did they endeavor to appease evil spirits? In what did they have great faith? What do you know of the medicine man? What were some of his duties? What power was he supposed to have? Describe the ceremony of curing the sick. What hereafter did the Indian anticipate? What were the different methods of burial? To what has the red race yielded? Where are remnants of this race to be found to-day? What Indians are found in the Indian Territory? What is their condition?

CHAPTER XV.

Prehistoric America.

The question of how America was originally peopled is of fascinating interest to students of a speculative turn of mind. Many wild theories have been fabricated upon the subject. It has been advanced that the Indians are perhaps the descendants of the ten tribes of Israel, of whom it is recorded in Biblical history that they wandered away and were lost; and that time, climatic conditions, and changed modes of life have altered their original appearance and characteristics.

The nearness of Asia and America at the Behring Strait; the Aleutian Islands arranged, stepping-stone-like, between

the two continents; the Japan current sweeping around the east coast of Asia and depositing upon the western shores of America, even within our present knowledge, wreckage of Chinese and Japanese junks; the marked similarity of complexion and feature of the natives of Northwest America to those of Northeastern Asia, all lead many to believe that America received its first inhabitants from Asia.

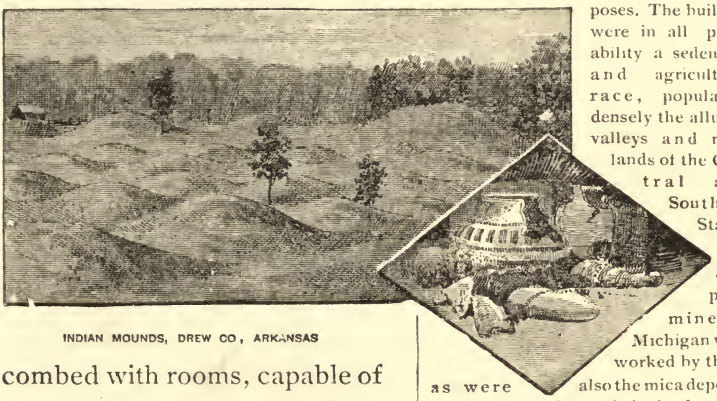
Many of the theories advanced upon the origin of the American Indian would carry with them greater weight had not modern investigation and research brought to light his great antiquity. Evidence is multiplying to show that the Indians found living here at the time of the discovery were but descendants of a people whose existence extends far back in the past. These people have received the name, MOUND-BUILDERS, from the character of the remains they have left behind.

It has even been advanced that South America was visited in ancient times by the Malays whose nautical skill enabled them to people many of the Pacific islands. Under this theory it is interesting to note that the learned philologist, Pickering, is quoted as having detected, in the language of the Inca Indians of Peru, a resemblance to that of the Malays. It is also claimed that among the historical records of China, a nation among the oldest on the globe, there is to be found the narrative of a great traveler, Hœi Shin, who in the year 499, visited a country called by him *Fu Sang*. This narrative has been recently translated, and from the description of the country visited, the direction taken, and the number of miles traveled, the evidence is strong that Fu Sang corresponds with the southwestern shores of the United States.

These remains take the forms of serpent, bird and animal-shaped embankments, mathematically constructed earthworks, seemingly fortifications, and tumuli or mounds, the latter predominating. Nothing resists the destroying effects of time more than a mound of earth. Structures of hardest stone decay and crumble into dust, but an earth-mound retains its shape indefinitely. Many of these American mounds are known to be of great antiquity, some of them being covered with dense forests, evidencing centuries of

growth; others have been constructed within the knowledge of the present day by the Indians of Florida and other Southern States.

American antiquities of a much more wonderful nature are to be found in the southwest part of the United States. Here are to be seen Pueblos, great single houses built of brick, several stories in height, semi-circular in form, honeycombed with rooms, capable of containing one thousand or more inhabitants. Similar edifices are found built at almost inaccessible heights, in openings hollowed out of the gigantic sides of cañon or cliff. The builders of these structures have probably left their descendants in the Pueblo, Zuni and Moquis Indians of those parts.



INDIAN MOUNDS, DREW CO., ARKANSAS

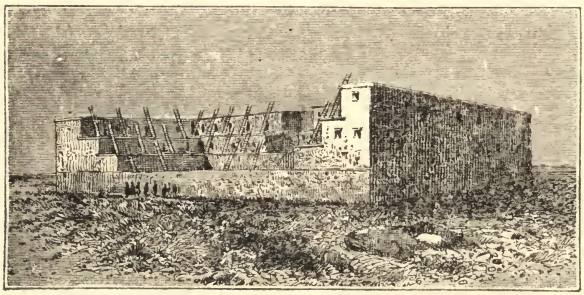
By excavating, pottery, copper and stone utensils, flint arrowheads, idols, pipes, stone tools and human bones have been found. Hence it is inferred that the mounds were constructed for religious, burial and defensive purposes. The builders were in all probability a sedentary and agricultural race, populating densely the alluvial valleys and rich lands of the Central and Southern States. The copper mines of Michigan were worked by them, as were also the mica deposits of North Carolina and the lead ores of other States. They were much further advanced towards civilization than the Indians. Perhaps the savage state of their descendants was but a relapse into primitive barbarism from which the moundbuilders had advanced. It is believed that the Natchez Indians preserved intact many of the original habits, customs, religious and governmental institutions, many of which were noted by the first French settlers of the lower Mississippi valley.

Many traditions bind the old and new worlds together. In ancient times there lived on the southwest shores of the Mediterranean Sea a maritime people known as the Phœni-

cians. Such was the skill of their naval commanders that their vessels voyaged to every part of the known world (1000 B. C.). Out through the straits of Gibraltar would they go, then up to the coast of Cornwall, in England, for tin, to the shores of the Baltic for amber, or down the African coast for ivory and gold, their destination always a secret, their endeavor always to keep hidden from other nations the sources of their wealth. Their records refer to Ophir, a land of fabulous wealth far to the west, and the fact that Cabral, a Portuguese navigator, endeavoring in more recent times to double the African Cape, was carried by wind and current to South America, renders the idea of an accidental discovery of America by the Phœnicians not impossible, particularly as the Mayas and other ancient



CLIFF DWELLINGS



A PUEBLO

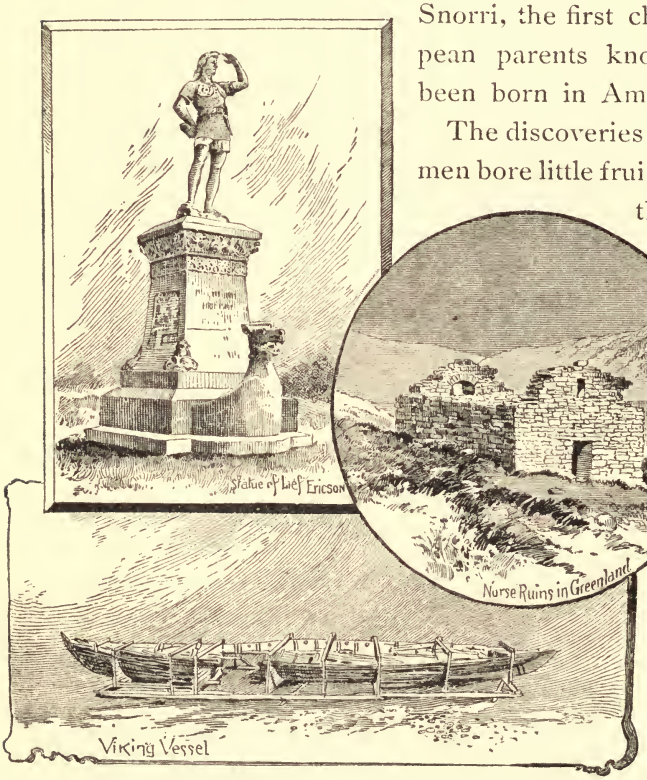
tribes of Mexico have a record of the visitation of a superior being, coming to them by sea from the East. This visitor, they claimed, taught them various arts, and they have deified him under the names of Votan and Quetzal.

Among other nations who have been accredited with having visited the New World in former times are the Arabs, the Irish, the Basque or Biscayan fishermen of Western France and the Welsh. Strong testimony has been adduced to show that the last named were not unfamiliar with this continent. It is asserted that the Welsh Prince Madog, after making a preliminary visit to this country, embarked a large colony upon ten vessels and arrived on the coast of the United States, perhaps Carolina (1170). Four hundred years elapsed before the Europeans became familiar with America, which period gave ample time for the colony to lose its identity and blend itself with neighboring tribes. Most strongly corroborative of this are the facts that the Tuscarora Indians of North Carolina were known to the earlier settlers as "White Indians," the skins of some of them being lighter than usual; and that the eminent ethnologist, Catlin, found in the Mandans of the upper Missouri a tribe in which, contrary to the distinctive features of pure-blooded Indians, blue eyes and fair skin were not uncommon, whose language contained no less than fifty pure Welsh words, whose odd-shaped, hide-covered canoe was identical with the coracle of the ancient Welsh, and peculiar to no other people, and whose very name, Mandan, is strikingly similar to the Welsh word for red.

Leaving the realm of surmise, let us consider a discovery of America before the time of Columbus, a reasonable certainty of which has recently been established. In the north of Europe, about the shores of the North Sea, holding little or no communication with the people south of them, lived tribes and clans of Norsemen, whose rulers were called Vikings, the achievements and adventures of whom have been recited and sung by bards and poets called *scalds*, in verse and narrative called *sagas*. These were the veritable sea-kings of history, bold and adventurous, loving no life but that upon the billow, happy only when engaged in predatory and warlike expeditions, wherein strength and courage could be exercised to the utmost.

In the course of their wanderings these sea rovers became thoroughly familiar with the Northern Ocean. It is believed that Iceland was discovered by Nadod (860), Greenland by Gunnbjorn (876), Labrador by Bjorne Herjulfson (986),

and the New England coast by Lief Ericson (1000), who bestowed upon it the name, Vinland. Erik the Red attempted the colonization of Greenland (985); Thoerwald and Thorstein, Newfoundland (1002-5), and Thorfinn Kalsefne, Vinland (1007). In this last colony was born Snorri, the first child of European parents known to have been born in America.



The discoveries of the Norsemen bore little fruit. Their settlements soon died out, or were abandoned. An old stone tower at Newport, R. I., and a curiously inscribed rock found near Dighton, Mass., were long supposed to be relics of the Norse visitation of this continent. The authenticity of both, however, has been cast into doubt. Knowledge-seeking Europeans were none the wiser from viking voyages, and when, five hundred years later, Columbus returned from the west with intelligence of another continent, his achievement had all the merit of original discovery.

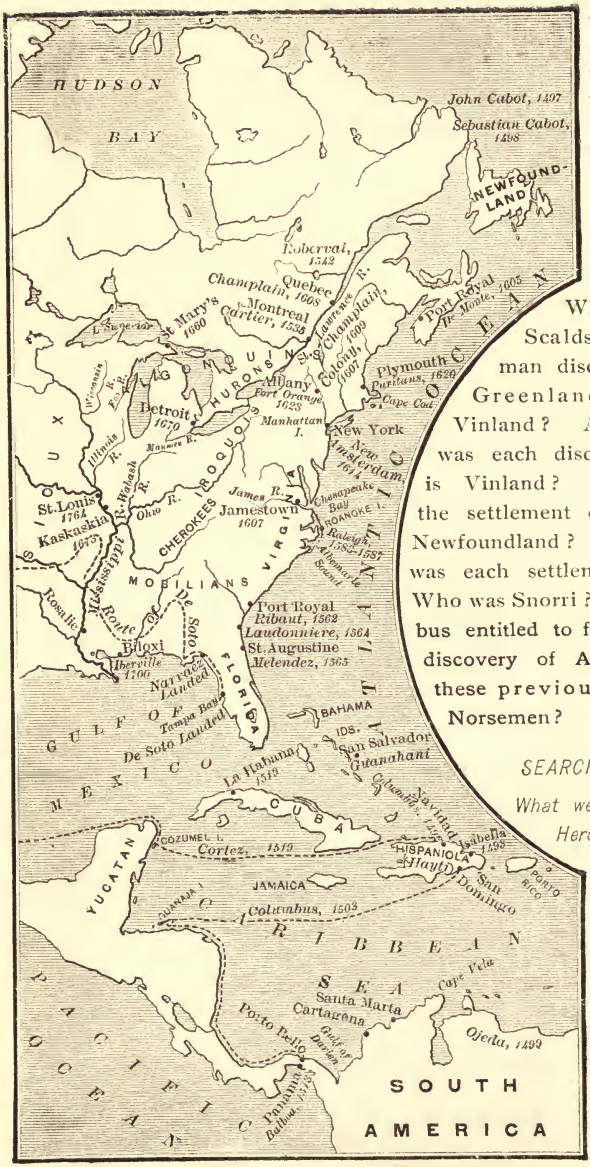
BLACKBOARD FORM.

Analysis of Lesson on Prehistoric America.

- PREHISTORIC AMERICA.
 - *Inhabitants.*
 - *Moundbuilders.*
 - *Cliff dwellers.*
 - *Pueblo builders.*
 - *Mayas.*
 - *Toltecs.*
 - *Chichimecs, etc.*
 - *Discoveries.*
 - *Uncertain.*
 - *1000. B. C. Phœnicians.*
 - *499. Chinese. (Hoei Shin)*
 - *700-800. Irish.*
 - *1170. Welsh. (Madog.)*
 - *Authentic.*
 - *860. Iceland. (Nadod.)*
 - *876. Greenland. (Gunnbjorn.)*
 - *986. Labrador (Bjorne Herjulfson)*
 - *1000. Vinland (Lief Ericson.*
 - *Settlements.*
 - *985. Greenland. (Erik the Red.)*
 - *1002-5. Newfoundland*
 - *Thorwald.*
 - *Thorstein.*
 - *1007. Vinland. (Thorfinn Karlsefne.)*

QUESTIONS.

What question has often interested students? **What theories have been advanced in regard to the origin of the Indians?** Why does it seem reasonable to suppose that America received its first inhabitants from Asia? **Name some of the ways by which people could come from Asia in prehistoric times?** What about the Malayan theory? What learned philologist discovered similarities in the Inca and Malayan languages? **What great Chinese traveler is supposed to have visited this country?** When? What is it called in his narratives? Why do we think the land he visited to be the southwestern part of the United States? **Of what people are the Indians now supposed to be descendants?** What is the character of the remains left by the moundbuilders? **How do we know that some of these mounds are very old?** What Indians of the present day are known to have been builders of mounds? What are frequently found by digging in these mounds? **For what purpose do we infer that these mounds were constructed? What kind of a people were the ancient moundbuilders?** What mines and deposits were worked by them? **How did their social state compare with that of the Indians?** What Indians are supposed to have preserved many of the customs of the ancient moundbuilders? **What antiquities are found in the Southwest?** What are pueblos? Cliff dwellings? Who were the Phœnicians? **Why is it reasonable to suppose they visited America?** About what time? What Portuguese navigator was driven by accident to the coast of Brazil? What



other people are supposed to have visited America? **What is the tradition of Madog?** What has been brought forward to substantiate it? **Who were the Vikings?** What are sagas? Scalds? What Norseman discovered Iceland? Greenland? Labrador? Vinland? About what time was each discovered? Where is Vinland? Who attempted the settlement of Greenland? Newfoundland? Vinland? When was each settlement attempted? Who was Snorri? **Why is Columbus entitled to full credit for his discovery of America, despite these previous visits of the Norsemen?**

SEARCH QUESTIONS.

What were the "Pillars of Hercules?" What is Runic Writing? What eminent Danish sculptor is descended from Snorri? By what title was the chief of the Natchez tribe known? What is the "Stone Age?" How could Indian hunters walk over snow without sinking? Who was Uncas? What is called the northward trend of Indian civilization? Name two Spaniards who assisted Cortez in the conquest of Mexico?

REVIEW QUESTIONS.

What was the condition of Europe just before the discovery of America? Who were the four great navigators? What four voyages did Columbus make? What do you know of the life of Columbus? Who were the principal Spanish explorers? Conquerors? How did America receive its name? What motives led the Spaniards to explore the West Indies? The coast of Mexico? Florida? South Carolina? The southern part of the United States? The southwestern part of the United States? Taking the Aztecs as a type of the American Indian, in his highest state of development, what do you know of the progress attained? What do you know of De Soto? What led to French explorations in America? Name eight French explorers. What was the first permanent French settlement in America? What do you know of the explorations of La Salle? Name four seekers for the northwest passage. What do you know of Sir Francis Drake? How are the savage races of North America classified? Tell what you know of the Northmen in America. What do you know of the prehistoric discoveries of America?

REVIEW EXERCISES.

To the Teacher :—Place the following names on the blackboard, and after each have the pupils write the answers to the following questions:

Exercise I — Who was he? Exercise II — What did he do? Exercise III — What date is associated with what he did?

Espejo.	Balboa.	La Salle.	Columbus.	De Ayllon.	Poutrincourt.
Onate.	Denys.	Ericson.	Magellan.	Karlsefne.	Champlain.
Tonti.	Cabot.	De Soto.	De Monts.	Frobisher.	De Narvaez.
Davis.	Cortez.	Hudson.	De Leon.	Cabrillo.	Coronado.
Diaz.	Drake.	Cartier.	Da Gama.	Roberval.	Verrazani.

Place the following dates upon the board:

Exercise IV — Have pupils write the name associated with each. Exercise V — Have pupils write the event associated with each.

1506 (2)	1680	1519	1492	1577	1541 (2)	1528
1498	1585	1534	1512 (2	1673	1604	1542 (2)
1518	1493	1682	1539	1486	1579	1608
1524	1520	1609	1535	1620	1497 (2)	1576

Exercise VI — Have pupils fill the following blanks with names and dates:

AMERICA was discovered by in.....

FLORIDA was discovered by in.....; was explored by.....in and by.....in.....

SOUTH AMERICA was discovered by.....in.....; was visited by.....in

MISSISSIPPI RIVER was discovered by.....in.....; was explored by.....in and by.....in.....

NORTHWEST PASSAGE was sought by.....in.....; by.....in.....; by.....in

MEXICO was discovered by.....in.....; was conquered by.....in.....

PACIFIC OCEAN was discovered by.....in; was first crossed by.....in.....

ST. LAWRENCE GULF was discovered by in.....; was explored by.....in.....

NORTH AMERICA was discovered by.....in.....; east coast was explored by.....in; by.....in....., and by.....in.....; west coast was explored by.....in....., and by in.....

UNITED STATES was explored from the southeast by.....in; by.....in and by.....in; from the southwest by.....in and by.....in; from the north by.....in.....; by.....in....., and by.....in.....

REVIEW OUTLINE.

AMERICAN DISCOVERIES AND EXPLORATIONS

(BY NATIONS).

Discoveries and Explorations.

Spanish.

COLUMBUS.	1492	SAN SALVADOR.
	1493	JAMAICA.
	1498	SOUTH AMERICA.
	1502	CENTRAL AMERICA.
OJEDO,	1499	SOUTH AMERICA
DE LEON,	1512	FLORIDA.
ENCISO,	1512	DARIEN.
BALBOA,	1513	PACIFIC OCEAN.
GRIJALVA,	1518	MEXICO.
CORTEZ,	1519	MEXICO.
MAGELLAN,	1520	STRAITS OF MAGELLAN
DE AYLLON,	1520	SOUTH CAROLINA.
DE NARVAEZ	1528	FLORIDA.
PIZARRO,	1531	PERU.
CORONADO,	1540	ARIZONA.
DE SOTO,	1541	MISSISSIPPI RIVER
CABRILLO,	1542	CALIFORNIA.

English and Dutch.

CABOT,	1497	LABRADOR.
	1498	N. E. COAST OF N. A.
		E. COAST OF U. S.
FROBISHER,	1576	N. E. COAST OF N. A.
DAVIS,	1585	
DRAKE,	1579	OREGON.
HUDSON,	1609	E. COAST OF U. S.
	1611	HUDSON BAY.

French.

DENYS,	1506	ST. LAWRENCE GULF.
VERRAZANI	1524	E. COAST OF U. S.
CARTIER,	1534	ST. LAWRENCE GULF.
	1535	ST. LAWRENCE RIVER.
DE MONTS,	1604	BAY OF FUNDY.
CHAMPLAIN,	1608	CANADA.
MARQUETTE, JOLIET,	1673	MISSISSIPPI RIVER.
HENNEPIN, DACAN,	1680	MINNESOTA.
LA SALLE,	1682	LOUISIANA.

REVIEW OUTLINE.

AMERICAN DISCOVERIES AND EXPLORATIONS

(SHOWING RELATIVE TIME).

Principal Discoveries and Exolorations.

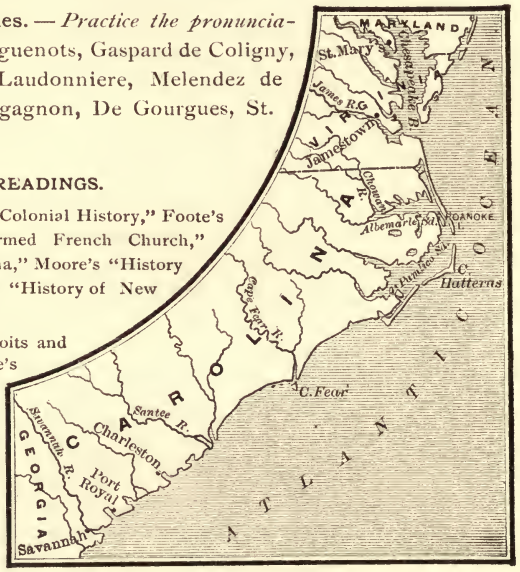
1492	SAN SALVADOR	COLUMBUS.
1493	JAMAICA	COLUMBUS.
1497	LABRADOR	CABOT.
1498	SOUTH AMERICA	COLUMBUS.
1498	E. COAST OF U. S.	CABOT.
1499	SOUTH AMERICA	OJEDO.
1502	CENTRAL AMERICA	COLUMBUS.
1506	ST. LAWRENCE GULF	DENYS.
1512	FLORIDA	DE LEON.
1512	DARIEN	ENCISO.
1513	PACIFIC OCEAN	BALBOA.
1518	MEXICO	GRIJALVA.
1519	MEXICO	CORTEZ.
1520	STRAIT OF MAGELLAN	MAGELLAN.
1520	SOUTH CAROLINA	DE AYLLON.
1524	E. COAST OF U. S.	VERRAZANI.
1528	FLORIDA	DE NARVAEZ.
1531	PERU	PIZARRO.
1534	ST. LAWRENCE GULF	CARTIER.
1535	ST. LAWRENCE RIVER	CARTIER
1540	ARIZONA	CORONADO
1541	MISSISSIPPI RIVER	DE SOTO.
1542	CALIFORNIA	CABRILLO.
1576	N. E. COAST OF N. A.	FROBISHER.
1579	OREGON	DRAKE.
1585	N. E. COAST OF N. A.	DAVIS.
1604	BAY OF FUNDY.	DE MONTS.
1608	CANADA	CHAMPLAIN.
1609	E. COAST OF U. S.	HUDSON.
1611	HUDSON BAY	HUDSON.
1673	MISSISSIPPI RIVER	MARQUETTE and JOLIET.
1680	MINNESOTA	HENNEPIN and DACAN.
1682	LOUISIANA	LA SALLE.

PREPARATORY NOTES.

Geography.—*Note upon a map the coast of North Carolina, South Carolina, Georgia and Florida.* Where is St. Augustine? St. Mary's River? Port Royal? Note the distance between St. Augustine and the mouth of St. Mary's River. Where is Roanoke Island? Ocracoke Inlet? Note upon the map of New England the position of Cape Cod. Where is Martha's Vineyard? Elizabeth Islands? Kennebec River?

Definition of Words.—*Know the meaning of the following:* Interpretation, tenets, protesting, prevails, menace, ascendancy, genial, trespassing, havoc, treat, apprised, alternative, clemency, pinioned, occupancy, indefinitely, inspire, intimidate, recreant, preliminary, venture, fortitude.

Pronunciation of Names. — *Practice the pronunciation of the following:* Huguenots, Gaspard de Coligny, Ribaut, Albert, Réné, Laudonniere, Melendez de Aviles, Durand de Villagagnon, De Gourgues, St. Augustine.



PARALLEL READINGS.

REFERENCE.—Bancroft's "Colonial History," Foote's "The Huguenots, or Reformed French Church," Martin's "History of Louisiana," Moore's "History of North Carolina," Palfrey's "History of New England."

GENERAL.—Towle's "Exploits and Voyages of Raleigh," Drake's "Making of New England," "Old English Seamen" (Harper's Magazine, January, 1883), Longfellow's "Sir Humphrey Gilbert" (poem), Margaret J. Preston's "Croatan" (poem).

TOPICAL. — "Huguenots," "Coligny," "Ribaut," "Laudonniere," "Melendez," "St. Augustine," "De Gourgues," "Raleigh," "Roanoke, Colony of," "Gilbert, Sir Humphrey," "Gosnold," "Plymouth and London Companies."

SEARCH QUESTIONS.

Who was Father Kino? What is the meaning of Colorado? What are "Casas Grandes"? Who was Lieutenant Cushing and what researches have made him famous? What was the name of the second vessel that circumnavigated the Globe? Who was Jean Nicollet?

COLONIZATION.



ATTEMPTED SETTLEMENTS.

CHAPTER I.

First Seekers for Religious Liberty.

IN the intellectual awakening that followed the invention of printing, the subject of religion occupied much of the attention of the people of Europe. As religious writings came to be printed and distributed more widely, various interpretations were placed upon them. Discussion and study led many earnest Christians to opinions different from those entertained by the great body of the Church. In time, this dissent from the established tenets and ceremonies took the form of protesting; hence the term PROTESTANT came to be applied to these dissenting Christians.

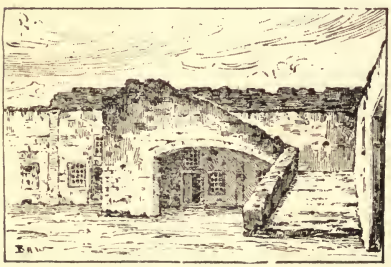
At the present day, the idea of religious tolerance generally prevails; but this idea was born into the world amid great suffering. With the growth of Protestantism there arose a discord that for many years plunged Europe into the miseries and cruelties of war and persecution. They who

were faithful to their creed and church, regarded all dissenting as a menace to their dearly-beloved faith. They who differed, adhered ofttimes to their convictions and beliefs, undeterred by imprisonment and death. The struggle was a mighty one. When one side gained the ascendancy, the other was persecuted. Small wonder it is, that the eyes of both should turn to that land beyond the seas where man could abide in peace, and God be worshiped as conscience might dictate.

France was among the European nations that suffered most severely from these religious dissensions. Here the Protestants were known as HUGUENOTS, and prominent among them was GASPARD DE COLIGNY. This nobleman conceived the plan of colonizing his people in America. The cold region of the north was not selected to add discomfort to the sorrows of exile, but a more genial clime was chosen. What is now South Carolina became the refuge of the earliest seekers after religious liberty.

Coligny made three attempts to establish the Huguenots in America. The first colony was sent under Durand de Villegagnon to South America (1555), A fort was built near the Rio Janeiro River, and named "Coligny," but the expedition ended in failure.

JOHN RIBAUT, commanding the expedition sent out by Coligny, reached the coast of Florida near the mouth of a beautiful river (1562), upon which they bestowed the name, May (now St. Mary's). Proceeding up the coast, the Huguenots landed near what is now Port Royal, where they built a fort and called it Fort Carolina, after Charles IX, King of France. Leaving twenty-six men in charge, under CAPTAIN ALBERT, Ribaut returned to France for supplies. After Ribaut's departure,



OLD FORT, ST. AUGUSTINE.

Albert and his men, becoming uneasy, constructed a small brigantine upon which they embarked for Europe. After enduring many of the horrors of starvation at sea, they were rescued by an English vessel.

A second Huguenot colony was sent out under RENE LAUDONNIERE (1564), a member of Ribaut's colony, and a fort was built near the River of May and called Fort Carolina also. Discouragements brought this colony to the point of abandonment, but Ribaut's arrival with six hundred immigrants, gave an impetus to the settlement that promised permanency.

News reached Spain of this trespass upon Spanish territory and MELENDEZ DE AVILES, a cruel, bloodthirsty man, was sent with an army of twenty-six hundred men against the intruders. He determined to attack them by land; but before setting out, he built a fort, and founded a town (1565) called St. Augustine, which is still in existence, and is, therefore, the oldest town within the limits of the present United States.

In the march to Fort Carolina the Spaniards encountered marshes and swamps, through which they made their way with great difficulty. Contrary to the advice of Laudonnière Ribaut, apprised of the landing of the Spaniards, had left Fort Carolina with all but three of his vessels, for the purpose of attacking the Spanish fleet down the coast. Only one hundred and fifty men remained to defend the fort.

By a strange act of carelessness there were no sentinels on duty to warn the French of the approach of the Spaniards. The fort was therefore surprised, and easily taken. About twenty escaped to the woods, and were afterwards picked up by the vessels left by Ribaut. The rest were massacred.

Ribaut's fleet, proceeding along the coast, did not meet the Spanish vessels, but encountered a disastrous storm.

Wind and sea and sandy beach made sad havoc, and Ribaut and his men, barely escaping with their lives, found themselves shipwrecked, in a defenseless condition, upon a hostile shore.

The French wearily made their way back by land towards Fort Carolina, only to find the Spanish flag floating above it, showing that it had fallen. They turned again into the wilderness, and in hunger and suffering journeyed footsore southward, not knowing the Spanish stronghold of St. Augustine to be in their path.

An advance party of two hundred soon reached the neighborhood of the fort, and, becoming apprised of its proximity, sent messengers to treat with the Spaniards. Melendez would make them no promises. Behind them lay starvation and ceaseless wandering; before them, possible clemency. There seemed no alternative but surrender. Giving up their arms, they were marched, with hands tied behind, in small companies to the Spanish commander. His treatment of the prisoners was most cruel. A line was traced in the sand, and, pinioned as they were, they were led up to it and shot. The rest of Ribaut's men, arriving the next day, met with a similar fate.

No official steps were taken by France to obtain reparation for this outrage, but many gallant Frenchmen smarted under the injury done their countrymen. One Dominique de Gourgues took upon himself the task of avenging this wrong. Three vessels were fitted out by him, and with one hundred and eighty men, he landed in Florida. He was joined by a number of the natives, who made common cause with him against the cruel Spaniards. Fort Carolina, with its garrison of three hundred, was captured. In the attack it was sought to save from death as many Spaniards as possible, for De Gourgues had determined to match cruelty

with cruelty. The Spaniards who survived the attack were hanged without mercy, and De Gourgues returned whence he came.

QUESTIONS.

What subject claimed much attention in Europe after the invention of printing? What came to be printed and distributed? To what did study and discussion lead many? **How was the term Protestant first applied?** What idea upon religion generally prevails now? What arose with the Protestant movement? How was dissenting regarded? How did they who dissented show the earnestness of their belief? What was beheld in the land beyond the seas? What nation suffered greatly from religious disturbances? **Who were the Huguenots?** Who was Coligny? What plan did he conceive? What region did he select? Who was Ribaut? **Tell what you know of Ribaut's colony.** What river was named by him? Where did his colony land? What did they call the fort? Who was left in command? With how many men? What followed Ribaut's departure? **What do you know of Laudonniere's colony?** Where was a fort built? What prevented the abandonment of this settlement? How was the news of French intrusion upon Spanish territory received in Spain? Who was sent to reclaim Florida? With how many men? **Tell what you know of Melendez.** What fort did he build? **What is the oldest town in the United States?** Describe the march to Fort Carolina. **What was the result of the Spanish attack?** Why? Where had Ribaut gone with his fleet? What misfortune befell him? **Describe the wanderings of the shipwrecked French.** Why did they turn back from Fort Carolina? **What was their fate?** Who avenged this outrage? **Tell what you know of De Gourgues.** Who assisted him against the Spaniards? What was the fate of the Spaniards who survived the French attack?

CHAPTER II.

Raleigh's Failures in South Virginia.

The sixteenth century was drawing to a close before England took the first steps to establish by occupancy her claim to the territory discovered by the Cabots. Spanish power had been steadily increasing all the while, and the expulsion of the French from the territory of Florida had established Spanish claims more firmly. When Sir Humphrey Gil-

BERT, a good and wise knight, obtained from Queen Elizabeth of England, a patent to establish English colonies in America (1579), the grant was, indeed, a timely one.



QUEEN ELIZABETH.

Gilbert's first attempt was made with two vessels. One was lost, the other returned after having sailed but a short distance. Four years later (1583), Gilbert, with the assistance of SIR WALTER RALEIGH, fitted up a much larger expedition. This consisted of five vessels, one of which deserted, another was abandoned and a third was wrecked. The remaining two, the Hind and the Squirrel, after coasting along the island of Newfoundland for some distance, proceeded to return to England. One night a storm arose, filling the crews with great apprehension. Unmindful of self, the gallant Gilbert sought in every way to inspire his men with courage. As the two vessels came near together at one time in the night, he was heard to call out from the deck of the smaller one, "Cheer up! cheer up! We are as near to heaven by sea as by land." About twelve o'clock, his vessel went down, and he was never heard of more.

PHILIP AMIDAS and ARTHUR BARLOWE were now sent by Raleigh to select a suitable location for a colony (1584). They arrived off the coast of Carolina, near Ocracock Inlet, and found the land "as goodly as e'er sun shone upon." The Indians were hospitable. Upon one of their expeditions to the interior, the white visitors were entertained with a grand feast by the wife of GRANGANIMO, father of WINGINA, chief of the Indians of that region. Upon their return to England they were accompanied by two of the natives, WANCHESE and

MANTEO. Glowing accounts of the region were given, and the name of Virginia was bestowed upon it, in honor of Elizabeth, Queen of England, she being known as the Virgin Queen.

Raleigh found no difficulty in obtaining emigrants. A colony of one hundred and eight, under the governorship of RALPH LANE, was sent to Virginia in a fleet commanded by SIR RICHARD GREENVILLE. The colonists landed upon Roanoke Island. Little wisdom was manifested in their dealings with the Indians. A whole village, with its surrounding cornfields, was burned, in retaliation for the stealing of a silver cup: When the Indians withheld supplies of food, the whites sought to intimidate them by treacherously putting Wingina and several of his tribe to death, after they had accepted in good faith a deceitful invitation.



SIR WALTER RALEIGH.

These acts provoked retaliation, and the English soon became aware of an Indian conspiracy. The first opportunity of returning to England was seized. Sir Francis Drake, happening to land in those parts in the course of one of his voyages, the colonists embarked with him and sailed away.

Greenville arrived a few days after Drake's departure, and finding none of the settlers, left fifteen men to hold Roanoke while he returned to England. A new colony was collected (1587), consisting, in this instance, of men with wives and families, who were willing to settle permanently. On reaching Roanoke Island, they found nothing but the skeletons of



In vain, in vain, their heart-sick search.
No tidings reached them more,
No record save that silent word
Upon that silent shore.

—*Margaret J. Preston.*

the men left by Greenville. They soon established themselves, and shortly after their arrival VIRGINIA DARE, granddaughter of JOHN WHITE, the governor of the colony, was born, the first white child born of English parents in America.

Before many weeks it was decided that White should go to England for supplies. If, in the meanwhile, the colonists determined to move to another location the name of the new place was to be carved upon a post, with a cross-piece above it, that he might know where to find them when he returned. White proved recreant to his trust, and, became for a time interested in other matters after his arrival in England. When at last, after two years, he again reached Roanoke no colonists were to be found. Carved on the bark of a tree was the word

CROATAN.

This was the name of a neighboring island, but upon search no trace of the settlers was found. Several expeditions were sent out from England to find the missing ones.

Their fate has ever remained a mystery. They will ever be known as the Lost Colony of America. With the failure of this colony Raleigh, who had by this time expended more than £40,000 in his American ventures, was now compelled to give up all further attempts at colonization.

QUESTIONS.

When did England take steps to occupy her American territory? How had the Spanish power in America manifested itself? What knight obtained a patent from Queen Elizabeth? When? Tell what you know of Gilbert's first venture. Who was associated with him four years after? Tell what you know of Gilbert's second venture? How many vessels had he? What was the fate of each? What island was coasted? What was the fate of Gilbert? Who were now sent over by Raleigh to explore? When? What coast did they reach? Where? How was the land described? How were they treated by the Indians? Who was Wingina? Granganimo? What

two Indians accompanied the English upon their return? **Tell what you know of Lane's colony.** Who was Sir Richard Greenville? Where did the colonists land? How did they act toward the Indians? What treachery did they practice? What was awakened? What was feared? What did the colonists decide to do? What opportunity presented itself to carry this decision into execution? Who arrived after the colonists had departed? Who were left to hold possession? What became of them? **Tell what you know of White's colony.** When did it reach Roanoke? Who was Virginia Dare? Where did White go? Why? How long did he stay? What did he find upon his return? **What do you know of the Lost Colony of America?** What did his efforts to colonize America cost Sir Walter Raleigh?

CHAPTER III.

English Attempts in North Virginia.

The next attempt by England to colonize America was made by CAPTAIN BARTHOLOMEW GOSNOLD, who sailed (1602) with thirty-two men in the ship Concord, and after a passage of forty-nine days reached the coast of what is now Massachusetts. He was the first Englishman to set foot in that region. Sailing south, he found himself in a land-locked bay, and exploring further discovered that it terminated in a cape. He soon doubled this and named it Cape Cod, from the abundance of codfish caught by his men in the surrounding waters.

Continuing along the coast he explored a number of islands, one of which he named Martha's Vineyard. He determined to form a settlement upon one of a chain of islands near the mainland, and in honor of the queen he called it Elizabeth—a name now applied to the whole chain. A fort and storehouse were built, and friendly relations established with the neighboring Indians, with whom a trade in furs, skins and sassafras soon arose. The region seemed admirable in climate and fertility, notwithstanding which, when the time came for the vessels to return to England, most of those who had come over for the purpose of colonizing, refused, for one reason or another, to stay, and the colony was therefore abandoned.

Pring and Weymouth.

A favorable description of the regions visited was brought back. The trade that had been carried on with the Indians turned out very profitably. A voyage was made by MARTIN PRING (1603), who returned after six months without having encountered mishap or danger, and fully corroborated the favorable report of Gosnold. Pring was followed by GEORGE WEYMOUTH (1605), who made a number of landings upon the New England coast, taking formal possession by erecting crosses. Weymouth reached the mouth of the Kennebec River, which was then known as the Sagadahoc, and, treacherously kidnapping five Indians, returned to England.

The whole coast of what is now the United States from Florida to Nova Scotia was known in those days as Virginia, and eager plans were now made for its colonization. The territory was divided and assigned by grant to two companies, known as the LONDON COMPANY and the PLYMOUTH COMPANY, each named from the city in which a majority of its members resided. To the London Company was granted the exclusive right to colonize the territory between the thirty-fourth and thirty-eighth parallels of latitude; to the Plymouth, that between the forty-first and forty-fifth.

The Plymouth Company made the first venture, and the colony sent out was called the POPHAM COLONY, after SIR JOHN POPHAM, one of the leading members of the company. GEORGE POPHAM and RALEIGH GILBERT were the leaders of these colonists, and the ships "Mary and John" and "Gift of God" brought them over to the coast of what is now Maine. SKITWARRES, one of Weymouth's kidnapped Indians, accompanied them.

They landed on Satquin, an island at the mouth of the Sagadahoc, and before winter set in, erected a fort, storehouse, chapel and fifty cabins. Although winter proved severer than it was anticipated, they were provided with abundant supplies, and encountered but few hardships. Notwithstanding this favorable beginning, much discontentment and homesickness were experienced, and in the spring the settlement was abandoned.

These early attempts show what discouragements, hardships, and dangers were encountered by first settlers in the New World. They who were to establish the first permanent English settlement in America must needs be possessed of fortitude and endurance. No encouragement could be drawn from the past, for that past was one of failure. Successful colonization was to depend upon what manner of men they were.

QUESTIONS.

Tell what you know of Gosnold. What was the name of his vessel? What coast did he reach? What cape did he name? Why? What islands did he explore? Upon what island did he land? What were built? What established? Why was the settlement abandoned? What voyage did Pring make? **Tell what you know of Weymouth's exploration.** When did he sail? How did he take possession along the coast? Where did he land? Whom did he kidnap? **What reports did he carry back with him? What was known as Virginia in those days?** After whom had it been called? **To what two companies was it granted? What parallels defined the limits of each grant?** Which of the companies made the first move towards establishing colonies? **What do you know of the Popham colony?** What vessels brought Popham's colony over? Who returned with them? Where was a landing made? What were erected? How was the winter passed? **Why was the colony abandoned?** What did these early attempts at settlement show? **What qualities were necessary to men who were to establish a permanent settlement?**

SEARCH QUESTIONS.

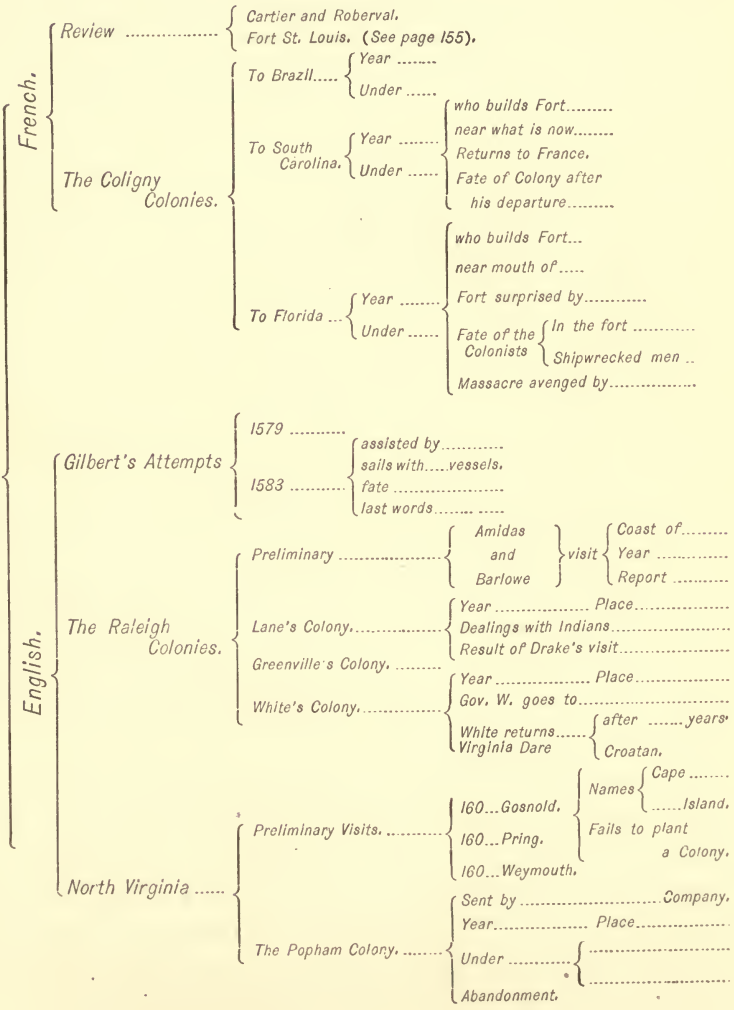
Who was Madame de Guercheville? What State has a county named after Virginia Dare? Did Raleigh ever visit America? What did Ribaut call the St. John's River? What was the Massacre of St. Bartholomew's Day? Where is Cuttyhunk? Who introduced tobacco into England? What was the fate of Sir Walter Raleigh?

TOPICAL OUTLINE.

MEMORY AID.

For Lesson on Early Attempts at Settlement.

(Place on the Blackboard and have pupils fill blank spaces, then elaborate in written composition.)



PREPARATORY NOTES.

Geography.—*Note upon a map the east coast of Virginia.* Where is Chesapeake Bay? James River? Cape Charles? Cape Henry? Chickahominy River? Where are the Bermuda Islands? In what direction from Virginia?

Definition of Words. — *Know the meaning of the following:* Auspices, delegated dissensions, motives, adopted, succumb, fortitude, crisis, ransom, charter, sustained, assumed, bestowed, administrative, allotted, indenture, exterminated, inspired, permanence, political, tumult, ordinances, arbitrary, reverting, confirming, enactments.

Pronunciation of Names.—Opecancanough, Bermuda, Henricus, Kiccowtan.

PARALLEL READINGS.

REFERENCE.—Bancroft's "Colonial History," Cooke's "Virginia," Lodge's "History of the English Colonies in America," Sparks' "Smith."

GENERAL.—Simms' "Smith and Pocahontas," Hopkins' "Youth of the Old Dominion," Cooke's "Stories of the Old Dominion," "Virginia in the Colonial Period" (Harper's Magazine, November, 1882), "The Beginning of a Nation" (Century Magazine, November, 1882).

TOPICAL. — "Virginia," "Jamestown, Founding of," "Settlement, First Permanent English," "Smith, Captain John," "Slavery, Introduction of," "Tobacco, First Cultivation of," "Pocahontas," "Assembly, First Colonial."

VIRGINIA.

CHAPTER IV.

England's First Foothold.

The London Company was not far behind that of Plymouth in sending out settlers under the king's charter, for three months after the Popham colony departed (December 19, 1606), one hundred and five colonists, in the ships Susan Constant, Good Speed and Discovery, under the command of CAPTAIN CHRISTOPHER NEWPORT, sailed down the Thames for South Virginia.

The preparation for the establishment of this colony had been elaborate. The plans for its government had been carefully considered. As an enterprise it was under the auspices of the London Company. As a colony, it was under the control of the king, which control he delegated to two councils—one composed of eleven members, to reside in England; the other of seven, to reside in the colony.

It was some time before the colonists knew who among themselves were to be the seven colonial councilors; for the names had been placed in a box which was not to be opened until their destination was reached. A number desired the honor, and thought themselves entitled to it, each aspirant looking upon the expectations of the others with distrust; so during the voyage many petty dissensions arose. Captain John Smith, the ablest man of them all —a man of whom we shall learn more hereafter—incurred the envy of a few of the worthless ones. Fearing that his ability might place him at the head of affairs, they falsely accused him of plotting against the interests of the king, and caused his arrest.

After an unusually long voyage, the vessels entered the mouth of the Chesapeake Bay. The capes on either side were named Charles and Henry, in honor of the king's sons. They soon entered a broad river, which, after the king, they named the James. Forty miles from its mouth, where a peninsula is formed by one of its bends, they selected a site for a town.

On May 13, 1607, the colonists landed and proceeded to lay out a town, which they called Jamestown. Neighboring Indians looked on with curiosity and offered no interference. One of the first acts of the colonists was to provide a canvas-roofed structure, in which the REV. ROBERT HUNT, a "religious and courageous divine," held service morning and evening. This was the first English church erected within the present territorial limits of the United States, and it was soon replaced by a much better one.

First Colonial Government.

Upon opening the box it was found that Bartholomew Gosnold, John Smith, Edward Wingfield, Christopher Newport, John Ratcliff, John Martin and George Kendall had been appointed councilors; but Smith, being under arrest, was prohibited from serving. In the box, besides the names, were instructions and laws for the guidance of the colony, by which were stipulated the holding of everything in common, the storing of all food and products in a common storehouse, the trial of criminal cases by jury and of civil cases by the council.

EDWARD WINGFIELD was chosen president, and a worse selection could hardly have been made; for, from all accounts, he was indolent, self-indulgent and wanting in every faculty that a successful ruler should possess. Indeed, the remainder of the council were no better, with the exception of the deposed Smith and Captain Gosnold, the same brave and experienced navigator that had landed at Elizabeth five years before. The selection of the council was most unfortunate. Wise direction and control of affairs, so necessary during the early stages of the colony, could not be expected from men so notoriously incompetent and inexperienced.

For the purpose of exploration, a party under CAPTAIN JOHN SMITH, went upon a six days' trip up the James River,

during the course of which a visit was made to POWHATTAN, the most powerful chief in that section. Upon their return they found that the settlement had been attacked by Indians and every thing thrown into confusion. Smith immediately demanded a trial by jury, according to the terms of the king's charter, and, notwithstanding the opposition of Wingfield and his friends, succeeded in obtaining it. At this, THE FIRST TRIAL BY JURY IN AMERICA, he was triumphantly acquitted, and his prosecutors were sentenced to pay a fine of £200 damages, which Smith generously donated to the public treasury. He was thus restored to the council. Through the mediation of Mr. Hunt peace was temporarily secured, and all sat down and partook of communion together.

Thus was begun the FIRST PERMANENT ENGLISH SETTLEMENT IN AMERICA. Those who founded this settlement have been described as vagabond adventurers, turbulent, law-breaking and indolent, but we know that some of them undoubtedly were possessed of noble motives in coming to America, and all paid sedulous attention to the worship of God. They were drawn from every walk in life. Forty-eight called themselves gentlemen—a term that has been quoted to their reproach. That they were not adapted to the new, hard life in the American wilderness, the "gentlemen" having never before toiled with their hands, is a fact to their credit. It betokened that inordinate courage must have been theirs, to enable them to brave the toils of pioneer life, knowing what these toils were, from the records of past colonial failures. We know that they were possessed of great spirit. Under incompetent rulers, their intense human activities may have taken, at times, a form of turbulence and disorder, which disappeared under wise direction. Some may have been deficient in many of the qualities that go to make up a

perfect man, but a better element was in the majority, otherwise the colony would in all certainty have succumbed to the trials and sufferings they were called upon to endure—trials which fell to the lot of no other colony before or since.

QUESTIONS.

When was the first colony sent by the London Company? How many did the colonists number? Upon what vessels did they embark? What was the name of the commander? **What can you say of the preparations for the establishment of this colony?** How was its government to be ordered? How were the seven colonial councilors appointed? What resulted from the peculiar manner of appointing? How was Smith regarded by a few worthless ones? Of what was he falsely accused? What bay was entered? What names were bestowed upon the capes at its entrance? **What can you say of the site selected for settlement?** What was the town laid out called? Who were found to have been appointed councilors? Why could not Smith serve? What did the box contain besides the names of the seven councilors? **What were some of the stipulations for the government of the colony?** Who was chosen president? What kind of a man was he? Who were the only competent ones among the members of the council? When did the colonists land? What did they proceed to do? **What was one of the first acts of the colonists?** Who was Rev. Robert Hunt? **Tell what you know of Smith's first exploring trip?** Who was Powhattan? What did Smith find upon his return? What did he demand? **What was the result of his trial? Why is this trial remarkable?** How have the first settlers of Virginia been described? How many called themselves gentlemen? Of what were some undoubtedly possessed? To what did they give sedulous attention? **Why did their activities take at times the form of turbulence? What kind of an element prevailed among them? How do we know?**

CHATTER V.

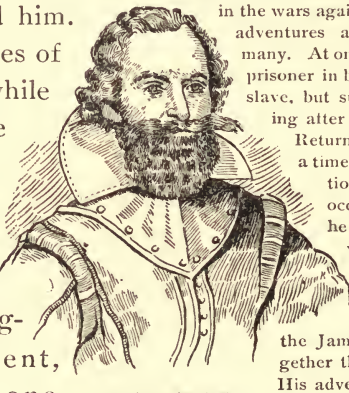
The Father of Virginia.

The history of the Jamestown colony, during the first months of its existence, is a record of suffering and misery. The site had been injudiciously selected, and with the heat of summer came malarial fevers, from which many, including Gosnold, died, and all more or less suffered.

The gloom and despondency that hung over the colony were increased when it was found that much of the food

brought from England had spoiled, and that a hostile attack by the Indians could be expected at any time. President Wingfield was detected in acts of appropriating to his own selfish uses the best of the public stores. He was strongly suspected of an intention to seize the pinnace left by Newport and desert the colony. Popular feeling ran so against him that he was displaced, and RATCLIFF, another unfortunate choice, superseded him.

The good qualities of Smith shone forth while the colonists were in the midst of their distress and sufferings. Nursing the sick, comforting the dying, encouraging the despondent, assisting every one, setting the example of fortitude and patience, he was soon looked up to with respect and affection. The direction of everything fell into his hands, and when autumn brought health, ripening corn, and game and fish in abundance, the first crisis of the colony had passed, and Smith had been its savior.



CAPTAIN JOHN SMITH.

Captain John Smith.

Captain John Smith was one of the most remarkable men connected with the early history of the English colonies. Born at Willoughby, Lincolnshire, England, he entered early in life upon a career of adventure. He spent four years in the military service of Holland, and afterwards was engaged in the wars against the Turks. His adventures and escapes were many. At one time he was taken prisoner in battle and sold as a slave, but succeeded in escaping after slaying his master. Returning to England at a time when the colonization of America was occupying attention, he beheld in the new world opportunities to gain further experience. Smith did more to hold the Jamestown colony together than any other man. His adventures and explorations in eastern Virginia would fill a volume. His interest in *America* continued long after he returned to England, and he issued a number of publications that did much to promote colonization; among these publications were: "*A Map of Virginia, with a Description of the Country*," "*A True Relation of Virginia*," "*A General History of Virginia, New England and the Summer Isles*," *etc.*

As soon as corn began to ripen, Smith started down the river to obtain a supply. He found the Indians reluctant to trade. Seeming to take great delight in tantalizing their

visitor they showed him the abundance they had. During the negotiations a quarrel took place, and shortly after the colonists were attacked. In the engagement Smith captured an Indian idol, and the Indians gladly ransomed it with a boatload of corn.

Upon his return to Jamestown, Smith found that Wingfield, Kendall and some others had taken advantage of the weakness of President Ratcliff and had seized the pinnace. They were about to embark for England when Smith arrived; but he directed the cannon of the fort upon them, and compelled them to return. Better times now set in, and Smith, leaving everything in order, set out to explore the Chickahominy River. Upon this expedition he was captured by the Indians and taken first to OPECANCANOUGH, then to Powhattan, through the intercession of whose daughter, POCAHONTAS, he was finally liberated. Returning to Jamestown, he found the colony in a worse state of confusion than ever before. Food had become scarce again, and another conspiracy to abandon the colony had been formed. About this time Newport arrived with supplies from England.

Pocahontas.

Pocahontas, daughter of Powhattan, proved herself a true friend of the struggling colonists, often bringing them corn and warning them of Indian attacks. According to the account of Captain John Smith, she was directly instrumental in saving his life when he was taken prisoner. Condemned to death, he would have been executed had she not interceded for him. She was at one time sold to Captain Argall by a treacherous chief. A war was about to ensue between the Indians and colonists, when THOMAS ROLFE, afterwards Secretary and Recorder-general of Virginia, requested her hand in marriage, and received the assent of old Powhattan, who was thenceforth to be the firm friend of the whites. Pocahontas was baptized under the name of Rebecca, and with her husband went to England, where she received every mark of attention and favor. She died before her return, leaving a son, from whom are descended many eminent families of Virginia.



POCAHONTAS.

Again leaving the colony in a prosperous condition, Smith, with fourteen companions, set out in an open boat, to explore the shores of the Chesapeake, which he accomplished successfully. He returned after having sailed more than three thousand miles, explored both shores, visited many Indian villages, and passed through many dangers. He found the affairs of the colonists in the state that always arose when he was absent. They would submit to Ratcliff no longer, and with one voice called upon Smith to be president, THE FIRST INSTANCE IN AMERICAN HISTORY WHERE THE PEOPLE MADE CHOICE OF THEIR OWN RULER.

Now came order out of chaos. Smith took hold of the reins of government with a firm hand. Newport had brought reinforcements, and during the winter of 1608 and 1609, when the Indians refused to sell their corn, Smith made several daring expeditions against them, awing them by his boldness, and compelling them to trade. His skill and energy were everywhere felt. The willing were shown what to do, and the idle were compelled to work. Rules were established and enforced. Labor was exacted from each man six hours a day. Additional cabins were built, and all caught the spirit and determination to establish the colony firmly.

Before Newport set out upon the return voyage, the colony became excited over the discovery of a yellow deposit in the neighboring sands; it was taken for gold; and, notwithstanding the protests of Smith, valuable time was wasted in digging for the worthless stuff and loading Newport's vessel with it. It was in the early part of the year (1608), and the time taken should have been devoted to the cultivation of crops. A consequence of their neglect was to be seen the next year, when, the second supply from England giving out, the historic "starving time" set in.

About this time a new charter for Virginia was granted by the king, under which LORD DELAWARE, a nobleman of much ability, was appointed governor for life. Nine ships set out with five hundred emigrants, under Captain Newport, and among them were SIR THOMAS GATES and SIR GEORGE SOMERS, who were to govern the colony until Lord

Delaware arrived. A storm dispersed the fleet, and the vessel which carried Newport, Gates and Somers was wrecked upon one of the Bermuda Islands.

The rest arrived safe, and for a time the colony, being now under a new charter, was without a governor. Smith determined to retain control until his successor arrived, in which determination he was sustained by a majority; but about the time the new order of things had assumed definite shape, Smith sustained injuries from an accidental explosion of gunpowder, of so serious a nature that he was compelled to return to England for medical treatment. His authority was delegated to GEORGE PERCY. He never returned to the colony, whose interests he had served so faithfully, though several years after, he visited the North Virginia coast and gave to that region the name that it now bears—New England.

QUESTIONS.

Of what is the early history of the Jamestown colony a record? **What sufferings were encountered by the colonists?** What increased the general gloom? In what was Wingfield detected? Of what was he suspected? By whom was he displaced? What can you say of the choice of Ratcliff? When did the good qualities of Smith shine forth? How? What did he do? What came with autumn? Where did Smith go when corn ripened? **What do you know of his experience with the natives on this trip?** What did he capture? How was it ransomed? What did Smith find upon his return to Jamestown? How were Wingfield and Kendall thwarted? What did Smith do when better times set in? What river did he now explore? **What happened to Smith upon this expedition?** To whom was he brought when captured? Who interceded for him? **What did he again find upon his return to Jamestown?** Who arrived about this time? What excitement arose? How did the colonists lose valuable time? In what did this waste of time result? **Upon what exploring expedition did Smith now set out?** What was the result of these explorations? What call was made upon him when he returned? Why is this call remarkable? **How did Smith administer affairs?** How did he obtain corn? What was done with the willing? Idle? What rule of labor was enforced? **What resulted from Smith's pres-**

idency? What was granted by the king of England about this time? Who was appointed governor? How many emigrants now set out from England? What was the fate of one of the vessels? Who were upon this vessel? What did Smith determine to do in the absence of a regularly appointed governor? By whom was he sustained? What accident befell Smith? What was he compelled to do? To what part of America did he subsequently make a voyage? What name did he bestow upon North Virginia?

CHAPTER VI.

Permanency Assured.

By Smith's return to England a strong hand was taken from the helm of government. His wisdom and administrative ability were sadly missed, and colonial affairs, shortly after his departure, fell once more into disorder. Bad management and wastefulness brought on a period of destitution and suffering so dire, that it is always referred to in history as the "*starving time.*" The provisions brought from England had been heedlessly consumed, and a sufficient quantity of food had never been raised by the colonists. The Indians became hostile, attacked the outer settlements, cut down defenseless parties, and conspired to prevent the colonists from obtaining food in any direction. In six months the colony was reduced from five hundred to sixty.

Gates, Somers, and Newport arrived from the Bermudas, in small boats constructed from the wreck of their vessel, and beheld a sad spectacle. Immediate wants were relieved, but the food brought would last only fourteen days. It was determined to abandon the scene of so much suffering. The colony was at last to be given up. With the few supplies now on hand they could make their way to the fishing settlements in Newfoundland, thence to England. It was even proposed to burn the town and leave but smoking ruins behind, but to this Gates objected. The colonists all embarked and proceeded down the river. When half way to

the sea, they were met by a small boat coming up stream, conveying the joyful intelligence that Lord Delaware had arrived with abundant supplies. They turned back, and it is said that when Lord Delaware entered the lately deserted town, he fell on his knees and thanked God that he had saved Virginia.

Delaware was a very able governor. Noble, dignified, firm, and armed with ample authority, he commanded respect, and exacted obedience. All dissensions were now passed. The colony was well ordered in every way, and system was introduced. Every morning all assembled in the neatly-kept, flower-decked church for prayer, then repaired to the public storehouse for the day's allowance of food. Four hours of labor in the morning and two in the afternoon was the day's work allotted each. The colony was soon upon the road to prosperity. Ill health, however, compelled the governor to return to England, after a short rule (March, 1611).

In May (1611) Sir Thomas Dale came from England and assumed the office of High Marshal of Virginia, Sir Thomas Gates, the lieutenant-governor under Delaware, being absent. Gates arrived shortly after with many new emigrants, and a number of cattle, which proved a valuable addition. In 1614 Dale became governor, and he proved himself a strict and soldierly one, administering affairs under martial law. Although he was at times somewhat cruel, yet he was the first to take a decided step toward insuring the permanency of the colony, for he caused fifty

Tobacco.

George Yeardley succeeded Dale as governor, and shortly after a demand for tobacco sprang up in England. The demand could only be supplied by America. Much profit was found in its cultivation, so lands were laid out in tobacco plantations, and it was grown even in the streets of Jamestown itself. Such became its value that when cured it served every purpose of barter and sale, coin and other money being scarce in those days. Large quantities were shipped to England, and wealth began to flow into the colony.

acres of land to be apportioned to each colonist (1615), who was thenceforth to have the incentive of owning his home, and of enjoying the full benefits of his personal labor.



SETTLERS CHOOSING WIVES.

Twelve years after its founding, Jamestown was a prosperous community, surrounded by outlying well-tilled plantations. The colonists owned lands and houses, and were rapidly acquiring wealth. But they were all men, and thorough contentment was not to be theirs until woman's presence should make homes of their houses, and the smiles and love of wife cheer them in the toils and struggles of their



INTRODUCTION OF AFRICAN SLAVERY.

Slavery.

As reports of Virginia's increased prosperity reached England, many felt a desire to emigrate, some of whom had not sufficient to pay the expense of their passage. The custom of indenturing servants existed in those days, whereby the services of a person were given for a certain number of years in return for a sum of money. Many found their way across the ocean by indenturing themselves to the Virginia planters. In 1619 a Dutch ship captain landed twenty negroes from Africa, and offered them for sale. Slavery had existed in many parts of the world for thousands of years. Negro slavery had been introduced into the West India Islands by the Spaniards, when the natives were exterminated; yet this was the first introduction of slavery into the United States; and we shall see with what evil consequences the event was fraught. Here were servants indentured, not for a few years, but for life. The first twenty were readily sold. They proved so docile and efficient, that more were sought, and the introduction became general.

lives. Ninety excellent young women were sent over from England to become wives of the colonists. He to whose lot fell a wife was required to pay her traveling expenses, about one hundred and fifty pounds of tobacco being the required amount.

It was a great day in Jamestown when the young women arrived. The settlers were promptly on hand to greet them, and make selections; but it is said that the choice was by no means all on their side. The result was so happy that the next year sixty more

were induced to come over, upon representations of those who first came. The allotment of lands, the development of the profitable tobacco industry, and the establishment of homes, assured the permanency of the colony.

QUESTIONS.

How was Smith missed from the Virginia colony? What resulted from bad management? **What do you know of the "starving time"?** How did the Indians manifest hostility? To what number were the colonists reduced? Who arrived from the Bermudas? What did they behold? What was determined upon? To what settlement did the Virginia colonists hope to make their way? To what did Gates object? What caused the colonists to return? **What do you know of the arrival of Lord Delaware? What kind of governor was he?** What did he command and exact? What did he introduce? What was the daily custom? What constituted a day's work? What compelled Delaware to return to England? Who became High Marshal of Virginia? When? Who arrived with emigrants and assumed the governorship? By whom was Gates succeeded? **What kind of a governor was Dale?** What step did he take toward insuring colonial permanency? What was assigned to each colonist? Why? Who succeeded Dale? **What profitable agricultural product now came into general cultivation?** How did it bring prosperity to the colony? **Who were indentured servants? What do you know of the introduction of African slavery?** Where did it exist? Who had introduced it into the western continent? Why did the Virginia planters purchase these slaves? **What was the condition of Jamestown twelve years after its founding?** What was needed by the settlers to make homes of their houses? Who were sent from England? What assured the permanency of the colony?

CHAPTER VII.

The First Assembly of American Lawmakers.

George Yeardley had served but a short time as governor when he was superseded by the rapacious and intriguing CAPTAIN SAMUEL ARGALL (1617), whose rule was of so despotic and cruel a character, that bitter complaints went to England and caused his recall. His mild and honest predecessor, now become Sir George Yeardley, returned as Gov-

ernor-General of Virginia (April, 1619), and was received with rejoicings.

About this time England was entering upon a great political tumult, the outcome of which was to be the establishment of the rights of the people above the will of the king in the law and government of England. To the London Company, by their charter, had been given full power to make such laws and ordinances for the good of the Virginia plantations as was thought requisite and meet. The idea of popular rights had by this time gained such headway that the company determined to delegate some of this lawmaking power to the colonists, thus limiting the powers of Virginia governors, and preventing a recurrence of the arbitrary doings of such men as Argall.

Sir George Yeardley was therefore authorized to summon a General Assembly to make laws for the local government of the colony. It consisted, when convened, of two members or burgesses, elected by the freemen of each borough. The first meeting of the COLONIAL ASSEMBLY was held July 30, 1619. The towns, plantations and "hundreds" constituting the eleven boroughs represented were: James City, Charles City, Henricus, Kiccowtan, Martin - Brandon, Smythe's Hundred, Martin's Hundred, Argall's Gift, Lawne's Plantation, Ward's Plantation, and Flowerdieu Hundred.

Among its first enactments were laws regulating agricultural and religious matters, and dealings with the Indians. In 1621 Virginia received its FIRST CONSTITUTION, granting free government, confirming the institution of the Colonial Assembly, or HOUSE OF BURGESSES, and providing for the selection of a COUNCIL to assist the governor in his administration of affairs.

Under this constitution Sir Francis Wyatt ruled as governor until 1624, when the London Company was dissolved, and the colony, reverting to the crown, became a royal province.

BLACKBOARD FORM.

Early Virginia History.

VIRGINIA COLONY.

- *1607* Founding of Jamestown.
- *1610* "Starving Time." / Arrival of Lord Delaware.
- *1613* Marriage of Pocahontas.
- *1615* Tobacco Cultivated. / Land Tenure established.
- *1619* Sir George Yeardley, Governor. / First Colonial Assembly. / Introduction of Slaves.
- *1621* Sir Francis Wyatt, Governor. / First Virginia Constitution.
- *1624* Virginia becomes a Royal Province.

QUESTIONS.

Who superseded Yeardley? When? **What kind of a man was Argall?** How did he rule? What caused his recall? Who succeeded him? When? How was he received by the Virginians? **Upon what was England entering about this time?** What was to be the outcome? What had been given to the London Company? **What did the company determine to do?** What was Yeardley authorized to do? **What do you know of the first colonial assembly?** Of what was it composed? When was its first meeting held? How many boroughs were represented? What were their names? **What were among the first enactments of this assembly?** When did Virginia receive its first constitution? **What did this constitution grant? Confirm? Provide?** Who ruled as governor under the constitution? Until what year? What became of the Virginia Company? By whom was it dissolved? **What did Virginia become in 1624?**

SEARCH QUESTIONS.

What is "Fool's Gold"? What price was paid for Pocahontas when she was sold to Argall? What was the fate of Lord Delaware? Was Opecancanough a Virginia Indian? What is the meaning of the Indian word Pocahontas? What early Virginia poet was called by Dryden the best versifier of his age?

PREPARATORY NOTES.

Geography.—*Note upon a map of the United States the location of New York City.* Upon what island is it built? Where is Albany? Note the territory between the Delaware and Connecticut Rivers. To what States does this territory now belong? Note Delaware Bay. What river flows into it? What capes at its entrance? Where is Wilmington? Note the territory lying south of the Schuylkill River? To what State does this territory now belong? Note the relative positions of Holland and England upon the map of Europe. Where is the Isle of Jersey? Where is Southampton? Plymouth? Note the coast of New England. Where is Cape Cod? Provincetown? Boston? Plymouth? Cape Ann? Salem? Where is Portsmouth? Dover? Where is Saco? Where is Providence? Newport? Where is Hartford? New Haven? Saybrook?

Definition of Words.—*Know the meaning of the following:* Remonstrance, privateers, development, engrossed, confiscate, alliance, expand, jurisdiction, conform, modify, dictates, persecuted, acquire, posterity, memorable, dilapidate, exposure, prowess, intercession, mediation, subsequently, hermit, restricted, corporate, autocratic, administered, deviation, inspiration, countenanced, dissensions, domicile, rigid, dominations, sects, civil, doctrines, heresy, exaltation, banish, conveyance, exemplary, terminate, rigorous, advocacy, incorporate, constitution, deliberation.

Pronunciation of Names.—*Practice the pronunciation of the following:* Minuit, Stuyvesant, Wouter Van Twiller, Keift, Oxenstern.

PARALLEL READINGS.

Reference.—Lamb's "History of the City of New York," Robert's "History of New York," Young's "Chronicles of Massachusetts," Winthrop's "History of New England," Palfrey's "History of New England," Greene's "History of Rhode Island," Hollister's "History of Connecticut," Lodge's "History of the English Colonies."

General.—Irving's "Knickerbocker History of New York," Moore's "Pilgrims and Puritans," Drake's "Making of New England," Holmes' "Robinson of Leyden" (poem), Coffin's "Old Times in the Colonies," "New England in the Colonial Period" (Harper's Magazine, December, 1882), "The Planting of New England" (Century Magazine, January, 1883), Mrs. Hemans' "Landing of the Pilgrim Fathers" (poem), Longfellow's "Courtship of Miles Standish."

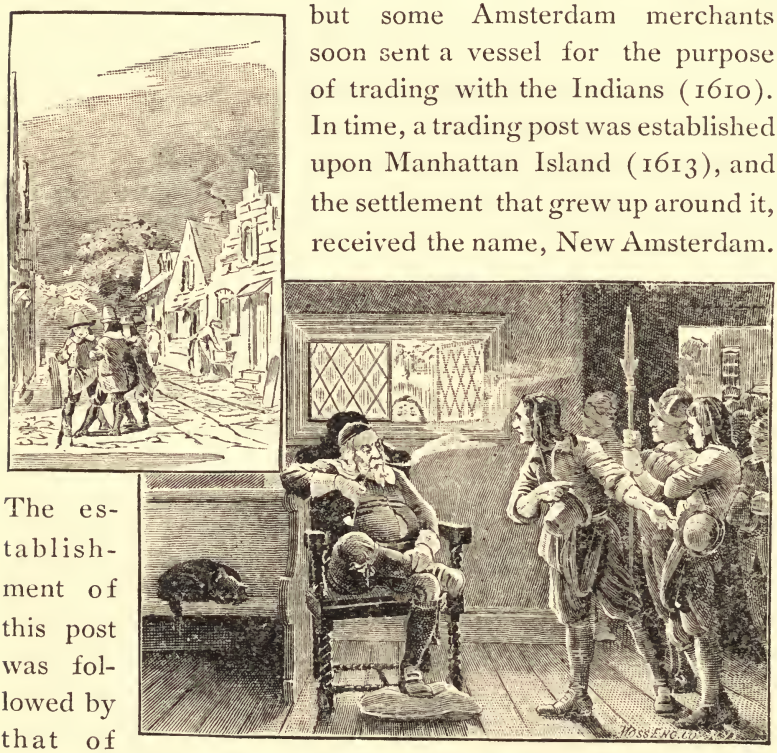
Topical.—"Dutch West India Company," "New Amsterdam," "New Netherlands," "Stuyvesant," "New Sweden," "Patroons," "Puritans," "Pilgrim Fathers," "Massachusetts, Settlement of," "Mayflower Compact," "Miles Standish," "Massasoit," "New Hampshire, Settlement of," "Roger Williams," "Anne Hutchinson," "John Winthrop," "Connecticut, Settlement of," "Boston, Founding of," "Puritan Migration."

NEW NETHERLANDS.

CHAPTER VIII.

The India Companies.

The explorations of Hudson conferred but little benefit upon the EAST INDIA COMPANY, in whose service he was, but some Amsterdam merchants soon sent a vessel for the purpose of trading with the Indians (1610). In time, a trading post was established upon Manhattan Island (1613), and the settlement that grew up around it, received the name, New Amsterdam.



SCENES IN NEW AMSTERDAM.

The establishment of this post was followed by that of others. Dutch vessels explored the coast of Long Island, Connecticut and New Jersey (1614), and upon these explorations Holland based a claim to the territory between the Connecticut and Delaware Rivers, bestowing upon it the name, New Netherlands.

Remonstrances from England, against the establishment of trading posts upon what she considered her territory, soon made it plain to the Dutch that occupancy alone could secure to them the control of these American possessions. About this time Holland was at war with Spain, and a private company had organized for the purpose of fitting out privateers to depredate upon Spanish commerce. This was the DUTCH WEST INDIA COMPANY. In applying for a charter much opposition was encountered. The grant was, however, made, upon condition that the company undertake the colonization of New Netherlands.

Some attempts were made to fulfill the terms of this charter. A few additional trading posts were erected. One, called Fort Orange, was located near the present city of Albany (1623.) A colony, with PETER MINUIT as governor, was shortly after established upon Long Island (1624). But little attention was paid at first to the development of the country, for these settlers soon turned their attention to the fur trade, and the company itself was too much engrossed with the lucrative occupation of confiscating Spanish treasure ships, to give much thought to New Netherlands.

The Patroons.

Land was very scarce in Holland, but very plentiful and cheap in New Netherlands. A great impulse was given to Dutch immigration, when the West India Company decided to confer upon any one who should establish a colony of not less than fifty adults, the title of PATROON, which carried with it the privilege of purchasing of the Indians a tract of land sixteen miles square. Each Patroon was required to furnish all necessary farming implements, and to support a minister and a schoolmaster. The labor of his colonists so increased the value of his land, that he soon rose to wealth and power.

England's claim to the territory deterred many of the Dutch from emigrating to this region about the Hudson. But an alliance between England and Holland against Spain removed for a time the fear of interference on the part of the former country, and a tide of Dutch immigration soon set into the regions. Thrifty settlements began to appear, and

quaint villages, with their straw-thatched and gable-roofed houses, sprang up on all sides. Among the early arrivals were many Protestants or WALLOONS, as Dutch Protestants were in those days called.

Minuit served as governor until 1632, when he was succeeded by WOUTER VAN TWILLER. Van Twiller extended the limits of the colony and caused a fort to be established



PETER STUYVESANT.

upon the Connecticut River, near what is now Hartford (1633). He was succeeded by WILLIAM KEIFT, who in turn was followed by PETER STUYVESANT.

After fifty years of existence as a Dutch colony, New Netherlands passed into the hands of the English (1664), and the name was changed to New York, after the Duke of

New Sweden.

GUSTAVUS ADOLPHUS, king of Sweden, intended to establish Swedish colonies in America, but, dying, it fell to OXENSTIERN, his prime minister, to carry out his intentions. In 1638 a company of Swedes and Finns, under the leadership of Peter Minuit, who had been the first governor of New Netherlands, entered Delaware Bay. A tract of land was purchased, extending from what is now Cape Henlopen to a point up the Delaware River, near Trenton. This territory was named New Sweden. A fort was built, and a settlement begun near what is now Wilmington, and it received the name of Christiana. More of these people came over (1643), and Swedish settlements soon extended up as high as the Schuylkill River within the limits of what is now Pennsylvania. As the colonies of Holland expanded, there arose a dispute over territory. Fort Casimir was built by the Dutch (1651) within a few miles of the settlement of Christiana, and the Swedes, viewing it as a menace, drove their unwelcome visitors away. Their triumph was, however, short-lived. Peter Stuyvesant was governor of New Netherlands at the time, and the plucky old soldier went down to New Sweden with an army of six hundred men (1655), and compelled the inhabitants to acknowledge the jurisdiction of New Netherlands.



York, brother of the English king, to whom it was granted. The Duke in turn assigned a part of the grant to LORD BERKLEY and SIR GEORGE CARTERET. In honor of the latter, who had been governor of the Isle of Jersey, the granted territory was called New Jersey, its boundaries corresponding to those of the State now known by that name. The first settlement by the English was made at Elizabethtown (1664).

QUESTIONS.

What were sent over by Amsterdam merchants? When? Why? **What can you say of the settlement of New Amsterdam?** What followed upon the establishment of this post? **Upon what did Holland base her claims to New Netherlands?** What other country claimed this territory? What company had been instituted in Holland? **For what purpose was the Dutch West India Company formed?** What condition was made before it could obtain a charter? What was built in fulfillment of its terms? When and where was Fort Orange established? **What do you know of Peter Minuit?** When did he establish his colony? Where? To what did the settlers turn their attention? Why did not the West India Company take systematic steps to develop New Netherlands? **What prevented many Dutch colonists**

from coming to New Netherlands? How was the objection removed? Who were Walloons? What do you know of the Patroons? What privilege was conferred upon them? Upon what condition? Who succeeded Minuit? When? What fort did Van Twiller establish? By whom was he succeeded? What do you know of Peter Stuyvesant? What Swedish king desired to establish colonies? By whom were his intentions carried out? When was New Sweden settled? What were its territorial limits? Who led the colony? Where was a fort built? What name was bestowed upon it? How far up the Delaware did Swedish settlements extend? What fort was built by the Dutch in the neighborhood of the Swedish settlements? When? How did the Swedes regard this fort? What did they do? What do you know of Stuyvesant's expedition against the Swedes? How long was New Netherlands a Dutch colony? Into whose possession did it then come? When? To what was its name changed? After whom? To whom did the Duke of York assign part of the grant? How did New Jersey receive its name? Where was the first English settlement made in New Jersey? When?

BLACKBOARD FORM.

NEW NETHERLANDS.

- *1609* — *Explored by Hudson.*
- *1613* — *Settlement of New Amsterdam, (N. Y.)*
- *1623* — *Settlement of Fort Orange, (N. Y.)*
- *1633* — *Fort Good Hope built, (Conn.)*
- *1651* — *Fort Casimir built (N. J.)*
- *1655* — *Conquest of New Sweden, (Del.)*
- *1664* — *Conquered by the English.*
 Settlement of Elizabethtown, (N. J.)

NEW ENGLAND.

CHAPTER IX.

Pilgrims and Puritans.

While the colonization of America was occupying the attention of England, there was but one method of worshiping God established by law throughout the kingdom. There were those, however, who did not approve of many of the religious ceremonies and services, and believed that of all such the church should be purified. In derision, the name

PURITANS was soon applied to them, and because they did not conform to the tenets of the established church, they were also styled NON-CONFORMISTS

Separatists.

As long as they remained with the body of the church and tried to modify its form of worship by arguments and pleadings, they had but ridicule to encounter. But when they began to form congregations of their own, in order to worship God according to the dictates of their conscience, they were branded as SEPARATISTS, and were cruelly persecuted; the king (James I) declaring that he would "harry them out of England."

A number of these Puritans took up their abode at Leyden, Holland, and, meeting with kind treatment, remained eleven or twelve years. But they were not thoroughly contented there. Kindly as they had been received they did not wish to remain permanently, where they were coming in continual contact with foreign customs, and their children were rapidly acquiring foreign ways. After much earnest thought, it was decided to cross the sea and establish for themselves and their posterity an abode in America.



THE MAYFLOWER.

The Dutch advised them to settle in the region about the Hudson. Friends of theirs in England prevailed upon the king to take no notice of their departure, and not to molest them should they establish themselves upon English territory in America. Only the ablest and strongest were to attempt the first voyage, the aged and infirm remaining behind. Two vessels, the Speedwell and the Mayflower, were secured. The former set sail from Holland and joined the latter at

Southampton, England. August 5, 1620, they started on their voyage to America, but had not sailed far before the Speedwell sprung a leak and was declared unseaworthy. This necessitated a return to England, and the selection of a smaller number of colonists. At length the Mayflower set out alone (September 6). On board were one hundred and one settlers, under the leadership of WILLIAM BRADFORD, WILLIAM BREWSTER, JOHN CARVER and MILES STANDISH. These Puritans had moved so from place to place that they had come to call themselves PILGRIMS.

After a long and stormy voyage, Cape Cod was sighted (November 9). Rounding the cape, they entered the peaceful harbor, upon which is now built the city of Provincetown. Here, in the cabin of the Mayflower, was drawn up a solemn written agreement for the government of the colony, and under this COMPACT John Carver was chosen the first governor.

Deciding to proceed further, the colonists embarked and sailed along the coast. Meanwhile a fierce storm of snow and sleet had set in, and their progress was delayed. No harbor was found until some fifty miles had been traversed. This brought them to a small island, under the lee of which they anchored in safety (December 8). Here some went ashore (December 11), found cornfields and running brooks, and brought back such good reports that it was decided to land. The region was down on the maps as Plymouth, and the name was not changed. Upon the beach the rock first trod by Pilgrim foot in land-

Many of the colonists went ashore, and Captain Miles Standish, with fourteen others, set out to explore the country. They were gone several days, during which they encountered a small party of Indians, who fled on their approach. Further on they came to a ruined hut, an old ship kettle, a dilapidated palisaded fort—remains of some unknown settlement of the past—and mounds of earth, into which they dug. One of these contained four or five bushels of corn. They took of this corn enough to fill their pockets, and, with the kettle, returned to the vessel. Here an attack from thirty or forty Indians was met and repulsed.

ing, has since become historic as Plymouth Rock; and the event is known as the LANDING OF THE PILGRIM FATHERS.

Nineteen plats were laid out, corresponding to the number of households into which the colonists had divided themselves, and in the midst of the winter's cold they set about building habitations. Their discouragements were many, and before long exposure, hardship and bad food brought on disease and death. Half of their number were carried off before the winter was over. History gives us few pictures more touching than that of this little band upon that bleak shore, surrounded by unknown dangers, unswerving in their determination to remain, and enduring the gloom and despair of that first winter with a heroism unparalleled. Spring came, and better times dawned on the colony. Occasionally, Indians hovered about the settlement, but fled upon being approached. One day the settlers were surprised to see a single Indian enter the town uttering the words: "*Welcome Englishmen.*" He proved to be SAMOSET, and the little English he knew had been acquired from fishermen who had visited the Maine coast.

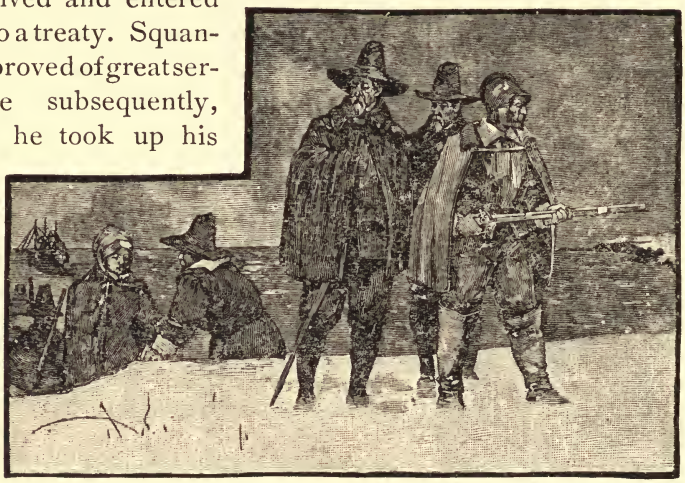


Miles Standish.

Their first experience with the natives had led them to expect nothing but hostility. Fearful of their surrounding foes, their weakness and distress were kept hidden. Brave Miles Standish, the "Puritan Captain of Plymouth," organized a little company for purposes of defence, and his superior courage did much to sustain the drooping spirits of his companions. Many a feat of daring is recorded of him. Small in stature, he nevertheless taught such of the neighboring Indian chiefs as were inclined to be hostile, to fear his powers and respect his skill. He was the Captain John Smith of the Plymouth colony.

Samoset shortly afterwards appeared with another Indian, named SQUANTO, who had lived some time in England, having been stolen by one of the early expeditions. Through

the mediations of these two Indians peace was made with MASSASOIT, chief of the neighboring Wamponaogs, who soon arrived and entered into a treaty. Squanto proved of great service subsequently, for he took up his



LANDING OF PILGRIMS.

abode with the whites, acting as interpreter for them, and teaching them how to plant and cultivate corn, catch and cure fish, and many other useful things.

QUESTIONS.

What was recognized and established by law in England at the time the English colonization of America began? **Who were the Puritans?** How did they receive their name? By what other name were they known? **What persecutions did they encounter?** What did the king declare? Where did a number of the Puritans take up their abode? How were they here received? How long did they remain? **Why did they not desire to remain longer?** What did they determine upon? Where did the Dutch advise them to settle? What influence was brought to bear upon the English king in their behalf? Who were selected for the first voyage? What two vessels were secured? When did they leave Southampton? Why did they return? Which of the two vessels finally departed for America? **What do you know of the voyage of the Mayflower?** Who were the leaders? **Why were these Puritans called Pilgrims?** What was the nature of the voyage? What cape did they reach? What harbor? **What historic compact was here drawn up?** Who was chosen governor? **What exploring expedition was made by Captain**

Miles Standish? What did he find upon this expedition? How long was he gone? What was brought back? **What was the first experience of the colonists with the natives?** How many miles further did the Pilgrims go? Where did they land? **Why is Plymouth Rock historic?** Into how many households were the colonists divided? **What did they do upon landing?** From what did they suffer during the first winter? Who was the John Smith of the Plymouth colony? What measures did he take for protection? **What do you know of Samoset?** What other Indian came shortly after with Samoset? Who was chief of Wamponaogs? Of what use was Squanto to the colonists?

CHAPTER X.

The Tyranny of Intolerance.

The growth of Plymouth colony was slow. From time to time, however, a few scattered settlements sprung up along the Massachusetts coast. At length, the country about Cape Ann having been brought to the favorable attention of Rev. John White, a Puritan minister of Dorchester, England, a company styled the Massachusetts Bay Company was formed for its systematic colonization.

The Massachusetts Charter.

The charter of the Massachusetts Bay Company was quite liberal in its provisions. The territory granted lay between the Charles and Merrimac Rivers, and extended from ocean to ocean. The members of the company had the privilege of choosing annually a governor, deputy governor and eighteen assistants, and the power of making all laws for the government of their colonies, provided such laws did not conflict with those of England. This law-making power afterwards became an important matter.

A colony under the governorship of John Endicott was planted at Salem (1628). Some few settlements had already been made in that region. William Blackstone, a man of much talent, had established his abode where Boston is now built, and was there leading a hermit's life.

Much as the people of England had been restricted in religious affairs, they had long enjoyed a certain amount of civil liberty. Their laws were made by a Parliament consisting in part of representatives chosen from among them-

selves. During the reign of Charles I, who succeeded his father, James I, a contest arose between the king and Parliament that resulted in a civil war, called the ENGLISH REVOLUTION. The years leading up to this event, were years of disquietude and dissension. Many made their way across the ocean to avoid the conflict they beheld approaching. A PURITAN MIGRATION rapidly peopled the east coast of Massachusetts.

In 1630, the first party of immigrants, consisting of about one thousand persons, arrived. The site selected for settlement was unsuitable. The scarcity and brackishness of the water caused much suffering. By the advice of William Blackstone, the settlers removed to Shawmut, as the peninsula of Boston was then called. Here they found many springs of fresh water and fared much better. The settlement was called Boston. In ten years there were more than twenty thousand inhabitants in the colonies about Massachusetts Bay.

Transfer of Charter.

The Massachusetts Bay Company was composed mostly of Puritans. A majority of its members, with its president, John Winthrop, joining in the Puritan migration, carried with them their charter, by which the right of governing and making laws for colonies across the ocean, became the right of governing themselves, when they themselves became colonists.

As president of the Massachusetts Bay Company, JOHN WINTHROP, upon his removal to America, became governor of Massachusetts Bay Colony. Only members of the company, which was a corporate body, had a voice in the management of colonial affairs. The privilege of voting and passing upon measures was afterwards extended to all freemen that were church members. As the settlements increased in extent, representatives from each assembled at Boston, in a GENERAL COURT.



JOHN WINTHROP.

From the first the rulers of the colony manifested an autocratic spirit in matters pertaining to religion. Church and colonial governments were mingled and administered as one. It would seem that the long period of persecution in England should have taught the elders and rulers the benefits of peace and tolerance; but it proved otherwise. No deviation from established religious opinion was tolerated. It seemed to be the policy of the leaders to crush the inspiration, control the thought, scrutinize the teachings, and direct the social and moral destinies of all under their authority. The granting of liberty of conscience was as far from their inclinations as it was from the minds of those whose forceful processes had caused many Puritans to leave England. Under this condition discontent often manifested itself, and religious dissensions became frequent.

These religious dissensions sent many into the wildernesses of Maine, New Hampshire, Rhode Island and Connecticut, for that peace whose domicile was supposed to be Massachusetts. William Blackstone, the man who had invited the settlers of Boston to take up their abode in his neighborhood, was so fretted at their rigid and intolerant enforcements, that he sold out and moved into the interior, to the banks of the river now bearing his name. He liked the church ways of Boston as little as he did those of England.

Among the first to rebel against the tyrannical religious domination of the Boston leaders, was an eloquent young Puritan minister of Salem, named Roger Williams. He boldly proclaimed that all religious sects were entitled to protection under the law, and that civil magistrates had no right to restrain the conscience or interfere with modes of worship.

Such doctrines were denounced as heresy. The preacher was commanded to appear in Boston, but refused. He was then banished from the colonies, and steps were taken to send him back to England; but he escaped into the wilderness (1636), bearing with him the sympathies and affection of his congregation.

QUESTIONS.

What sprung up from time to time along the Massachusetts coast? What part of this coast attracted the favorable attention of Rev. John White? **What company was organized?** Who was the governor of the first colony sent out? Where was this colony planted? When? **Who was William Blackstone? What can you say of the charter of the Massachusetts Bay Company? The territory granted? The powers and privileges granted its members?** What kind of liberty had the people of England enjoyed to a certain extent? **What contest arose between the king and the parliament of England? What effect did the approach of civil war have upon the colonization of Massachusetts?** Of what was the Massachusetts Bay Company mostly composed? What was done with its charter when a majority of its members crossed to America? **What powers and rights were transferred to America with this charter? What can you say of the settlement of Boston?** How many inhabitants did the Massachusetts colonies number in ten years? Who became governor of the colony after the transfer of the charter? What was conferred upon freemen? **What do you know of the general court at Boston?** What spirit was manifested from the first on the part of the rulers? Why was it reasonable to expect a different spirit? What seemed to be the policy of the leaders? What soon became frequent? Where did religious dissensions send many? What became of William Blackstone? **What do you know of Roger Williams? What ideas were boldly proclaimed by him?** How did he suffer for his boldness? **Who was Anne Hutchinson?** What do you know of the religious meetings instituted by her? When was she banished?

Anne Hutchinson.

One of the early customs was the holding of meetings to repeat and discuss the teachings and sermons of the pastors. To these meetings no females were admitted. A woman of great intellect and piety, named Mrs. Anne Hutchinson, conceived the idea of holding similar meetings for persons of her sex. At first the discussions were confined to the same subjects as those of the men. In time she began to express opinions of her own; and frequently, in a state of exaltation and mental excitement, would utter spiritual truths that greatly impressed her hearers. The cry of heresy was raised against her; and though the governor, who was then young, Sir Henry Vane, was won to her side, she, too, was banished (1637), and, with a few friends, followed the footsteps of Roger Williams.

CHAPTER XI.

New England Settlements.

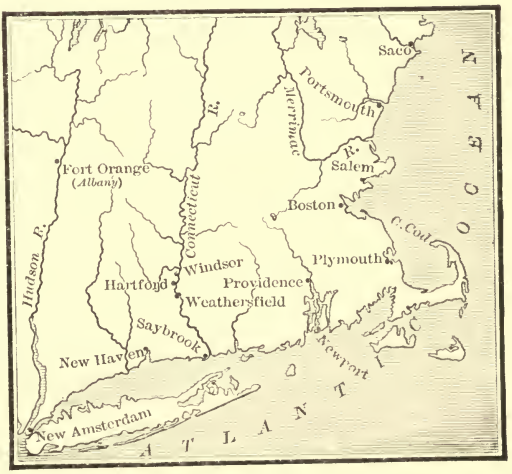
The old Plymouth Company, to which had been granted the territory of North Virginia, made no further attempts to colonize after the failure of the Popham colony. The company, however, made a number of sub-grants of its territory. One

of these was a conveyance to SIR FERDINAND GORGES (1622) of lands lying about the Piscataqua River, called Laconia. This nobleman associated with himself CAPTAIN JOHN MASON (1623), and by their joint efforts settlements were made at Portsmouth and Dover, and seven years after at Saco. Mason obtained from the Plymouth Company (1629) an independent grant to that part of the joint territory lying south and west of the Piscataqua, and its name was then changed to New Hampshire.

Early New Hampshire History.

Many, choosing not to endure the religious tyrannies of Massachusetts, made their way to these parts. Flourishing settlements sprang up, which, after the death of Gorges and Mason, had full control over themselves, regulating local affairs and administering justice in a most exemplary manner. In the course of time Massachusetts claimed jurisdiction over this territory. This claim was resisted by those who had succeeded to Mason's grant. Contentions arose that did not terminate until 1679, when the authorities in England decided against Massachusetts. New Hampshire was thenceforth regarded as an independent colony.

The claims of the Dutch to the territory now known as Connecticut led them as early as 1633 to establish a fort, called Fort Good Hope, upon the Connecticut River, near what is now Hartford. In that year a vessel from Plymouth ascended the river, and, undeterred by the threats of the Dutch, passed Fort Good Hope, proceeded further up river, and at Windsor an English settlement was made.



News of the great fertility of the Connecticut Valley reached the inhabitants about Massachusetts Bay, and many, glad to



ROGER WILLIAMS AND THE NARRAGANSETTS.

escape the persecutions and controversies that had driven others to Maine and New Hampshire, prepared to move westward to this region. Among others were Rev. Thomas Hooker and his whole congregation of more than one hundred persons, who made the journey overland, driving their cattle before them through the woods (1636).

By 1639 a number of settlements had been made up and down the river. In that year all united under a written constitution, the provisions of which were very liberal. New Haven remained an independent colony, with laws so rigorous as to receive the appellation of Blue Laws.

Saybrook and New Haven.

A party of Puritans from England, under Rev. John Davenport and Theophilus Eaton, arriving in Boston (1637), decided not to remain, but proceeded by water to the Connecticut coast, bought land of the Indians, and upon a beautiful bay established the colony of New Haven (1638). Meanwhile the territory around the Connecticut River had been granted to other parties by the Plymouth Company of England, and the grant being transferred to Lord Say-and-Seal and Lord Brooke, these noblemen sent out a colony under John Winthrop, son of the first governor of Massachusetts Bay Colony. This colony founded Saybrook (1635), named so in honor of the proprietors.

When Roger Williams was compelled to flee from Massachusetts, he wandered for some time through the forests,

suffering from cold and hardship. Taking up his abode among the Indians he soon won their friendship and esteem by his kindly ways and unselfish disposition. Joined by four or five others, the little party established a settlement, which they named Providence (1636).

The site selected was within the the territory of the Narragansett Indians, whose chief, CANONICUS, became a firm friend of Roger Williams. Here the exiled minister was followed by his family and several members of his congregation; and, in time, Providence became the refuge of many who were persecuted for conscience sake. Many such came in 1638; and, through the intercession of Williams with the Indians, obtained permission to settle upon the island now called Rhode Island, where WILLIAM CODDINGTON established the settlement of Newport.

Rhode Island Charter.

The settlements about Narragansett Bay were incorporated in 1643 under a charter obtained by Roger Williams, who visited England as the agent of the colonists. This charter defined the limits of Rhode Island almost as they now exist. The constitution that had been drawn up by Williams was of a most liberal nature. The principle of religious tolerance formed the most important feature of this constitution.

BLACKBOARD FORM.

NEW ENGLAND SETTLEMENTS.

- *Massachusetts.*
 - *1620 Plymouth* — *Standish.*, *Carver.*, *Brewster.*, *Bradford.*
 - *1628 Salem, John Endicott.*
 - *1630* — *Boston Founded.*, *Transfer of Charter*
- *New Hampshire.*
 - *1622 Gorges' Grant.*
 - *1623 Settlement of* — *Dover.*, *Portsmouth.*
 - *1629 Mason's Grant.*
- *Connecticut.*
 - *1633* — *Dutch build Fort Good Hope.*, *English settle Windsor.*
 - *1635 Settlement of Saybrook* — *Say-and-Seal.*, *Brooke.*
 - *1636 Hooker's Colony.*
 - *1638 Founding of New Haven* — *Davenport.*, *Eaton.*
- *Rhode Island.*
 - *1636 Providence, Roger Williams.*
 - *1638 Newport, William Coddington.*
 - *1643 Rhode Island Charter obtained.*

QUESTIONS.

To whom had the territory of North Virginia been granted? What did the company do with this territory after the failure of the Popham colony? What lands were granted to Sir Ferdinand Gorges? When? By what name was New Hampshire known in those days? Whom did Gorges associate with himself? **What settlements were established?** What independent grant did Mason obtain? When? Of whom? **Who found their way to the settlements in Maine and New Hampshire?** How did the New Hampshire colonists administer local affairs? What claim did Massachusetts set up? How was it decided? What fort was established by the Dutch upon the Connecticut River? When? **What do you know of the establishment of the Windsor colony?** Who was Rev. Thomas Hooker? Rev. John Davenport? Theophilus Eaton? Where did Davenport and Eaton settle? **To whom was the country about the Connecticut River granted?** By whom? What do you know of the founding of Saybrook? **When did the Connecticut River colonies unite under a written constitution?** What experience had Roger Williams with the Indians? What settlement did he establish? Who was the chief of the Narragansetts? What did Williams' settlement become? Who founded Newport? When? When were the Rhode Island settlements incorporated under a charter? By whom was this charter obtained? What did it define? **What was the character of the constitution drawn up by Williams? What agreement was signed under its provisions? What was its most important feature?**

PREPARATORY NOTES.

Geography.—*Note upon a map:* Chesapeake Bay, Potomac River, Annapolis, Baltimore, Delaware River, Schuylkill River, Philadelphia, Albemarle Sound, Chowan River, Cape Fear River, Ashley River, Charleston, Savannah, Port Royal, Biloxi, New Orleans, Natchez, Natchitoches, Mobile.

Definition of Words.—Denominations, restrict, inherit, accord, furtherance, institute, confirm, revoke, jurisdiction, political, elements, deliberation, fundamental, philosopher, nobility, tenants, attain, elaborate, promulgators, exacting, controversy, philanthropy, menace, investigate, physical, asylum, motives, emblematic, prohibit, eminent.

Pronunciation of Names.—Schuylkill, Huguenots, Yeamans, Joli, Amiable, La Belle, Les Vaches, Launcelot, Liotot, Hiens, Duhault, Iberville, Sauvolle, Bienville, Manchac, Maurepas, Pontchartrain, Natchitoches, Crozat.

PARALLEL READINGS.

REFERENCE.—Moore's "History of North Carolina," Proud's "History of Pennsylvania," Ramsey's "History of South Carolina," Steven's "History of Georgia," Martin's "History of Louisiana," Gayarré's "History of Louisiana," Thrall's "History of Texas," Doyle's "English Colonies in America," Bancroft's "Colonial History."

GENERAL.—Jenney's "Life of William Penn," "Early Quakers in England and Pennsylvania" (Harper's Magazine, November, 1882), "Old Time Life in Quakertown" (Harper's Magazine, January, 1881), "Maryland and the Far South in Colonial period" (Harper's Magazine, February, 1883), "Oglethorpe and Georgia" (Magazine of American History, February, 1883), Thrall's "History of Texas."

TOPICAL.—"Baltimore, Lord," "Baltimore," "Maryland, Settlement of," "William Clayborne," "William Penn," "The Quakers," "Philadelphia," "Lords Proprietors," "Carolina, Settlement of," "Charleston," "Oglethorpe," "Sir John Yeamans," "Savannah," "Biloxi," "New Orleans," "Bienville," "Iberville," "La Salle, death of."

MARYLAND AND PENNSYLVANIA.

CHAPTER XII.

First for Liberty of Conscience.

SIR GEORGE CALVERT, Lord of Baltimore, a Catholic nobleman of England, inspired with a desire to establish a refuge in America for the persecuted of his sect, visited Virginia in 1628. Finding here the colonists firmly attached to the established church, and reluctant to admit Catholics, he sailed up the Chesapeake Bay and explored its shores (1629). The region pleased him very much, and, returning to England, he obtained from the king, Charles I, one of the most liberal charters ever granted by an English king.



LORD BALTIMORE.

Baltimore died before he could carry out his plans of colonization; but his sons, CECIL and LEONARD, put them into execution. Two hundred colonists, in the ships Ark and Dove, sailed to the Potomac, and a short distance above its mouth established themselves (1634), calling the settlement St. Mary's, and the territory, Maryland, after HENRIETTA MARIA, wife of the king. They were received kindly by the natives. The hospitality of the Indian villages was extended to the new comers until houses of their own were erected. The Indian women taught the settlers how to make corn bread, and the men, how to hunt, trap and fish.

Clayborne's Rebellion.

At the time the first colonists of Maryland arrived, William Clayborne, a Virginia trader, had established himself upon the Isle of Kent, near the mouth of the Potomac, and, though the island was within the limits of Calvert's grant, refused to give up possession. A controversy arose, some blood was shed, and Clayborne was driven away (1635). Failing to obtain redress at the hands of the authorities in England, he returned and stirred up a rebellion (1645). The rebels were temporarily successful, and Lord Baltimore was driven from the colony. But the rightful authority was soon re-established.

The Calverts were just and wise men. The provisions made by them for the government of the colony were eminently liberal. Full toleration was proclaimed to all denominations, the colonists enjoyed many privileges of self-government, and were restricted only by the few rights reserved to the proprietors.



CATHOLICS IN MARYLAND.

Baltimore was founded in 1729, and it is now one of the greatest cities of the United States. As the population of the colonies increased, and

The Puritans in Maryland.

In 1649 the legislature passed an act confirming the toleration that had been proclaimed. This liberal policy attracted many settlers, and among those who arrived were large numbers of Puritans. These Puritans were attracted by the natural advantages of climate, fertility of soil, and abundance of fish and game. In time they sought to wrest the colony from its rightful proprietor. Contentions and civil war between Puritans and Catholics lasted some years. These ceased by 1660, and under the governorship of PHILIP CALVERT, prosperity began. In 1689 the capital was removed to the Puritan settlement of Providence, the name of which was changed to Annapolis.

colonial limits expanded, trouble arose about the boundaries. These troubles were adjusted between 1763 and 1767. The line that marks the northern boundary has become historic as MASON and DIXON'S, so named from the surveyors who established it.

BLACKBOARD FORM.

MARYLAND.

- *1631.* — *Kent's Island occupied by Clayborne.*
- *1634.* — *Settlement of St. Mary's.*
- *1635. 1645.* — *Clayborne's Rebellions.*
- *1649.* — *Toleration Act.*
- *1689.* — *Annapolis made capital.*
- *1729.* — *Baltimore founded.*
- *1763. 1767.* — *Boundaries established.*

QUESTIONS.

What do you know of Sir George Calvert? Why did he not settle in Virginia? What territory was granted him? **What do you know of the settlement of St. Mary's?** Who was William Clayborne? What controversy arose between him and the Maryland colonists? **What do you know of Clayborne's rebellions? What liberal provisions were made for the government of the Maryland colony?** What was the result of this liberal policy? **What act was passed by the Maryland legislature in 1649?** What do you know of the contentions between the Catholic and Puritan settlers? When was Baltimore founded? When were boundaries fixed? Why is Mason and Dixon's line so called?

CHAPTER XIII.

The Proprietary of Penn's Woods.

WILLIAM PENN, an English Quaker, inheriting a claim against the English crown for money loaned, accepted in lieu of it a grant of 40,000 square miles of land west of the Delaware River, from Charles II (1681). Although his principal motive was to establish a home for his Quaker brethren,

yet he published an invitation to all willing to assist him in building up his estates in the New World. In May, 1681, two ship loads of immigrants arrived and sailed up the Delaware, establishing themselves near the mouth of the Schuylkill. The next year they were followed by Penn himself, who was accompanied by more than a hundred of his Quaker friends and neighbors.



WILLIAM PENN.

Dutch, Swedes and Quakers all accorded him a hearty greeting when, October 27, 1682, he landed from the ship Welcome. His reputation for benevolence and piety had preceded him. The country named by him, Sylvania (woodlands), became known as Pennsylvania. In 1683 a town was laid out, with broad streets, at the mouth of the Schuylkill, and named Philadelphia.

Swedish Settlements.

Swedish settlements extended northward within the present limits of Pennsylvania as early as 1638. They passed into the possession of the Dutch with the conquest of New Sweden (1655), and subsequently (1664) into that of the English with the conquest of New Netherlands.

Penn instituted a form of government very liberal in its nature, consisting of a governor, a council of three, and a house of delegates, chosen by freemen. Petty contentions were everywhere discouraged, and differences were submitted to official "peacemakers." The Swedes and Dutch who occupied the territory previous to the arrival of Penn, were not disturbed. They were confirmed in their claims, and adopted into the colony. Conditions were in every way favorable, and the growth of the Quaker colonies was rapid. In three years the population numbered ten thou-

sand, and Philadelphia contained more than six hundred houses. Among the early comers was a large colony of Germans, who established themselves at Germantown.

Penn's Treaty.

Penn's treatment of the Indians was eminently just. He felt that they were the rightful owners of the soil, and from them he purchased the territory that was his already by grant of the English king. In furtherance of his wishes to live friendly with them, a grand assembly of Quakers and Indians was held near Philadelphia under the spreading branches of a gigantic elm, since famous as Penn's Elm. In an eloquent address Penn told the red men that the Quakers had come to live in peace with them, and wanted their friendship. Many expressions of good will followed on both sides, and a treaty that was never broken entered into. As much as other colonies suffered from Indian depredations, the Pennsylvania settlement escaped. It is said that no Quaker was ever killed by Indians.

Penn returned to England in 1684, and having great influence with James II, who had just ascended the throne, exerted it in behalf of imprisoned and persecuted Quakers, many of whom soon found their way to peaceful homes in Pennsylvania.

Delaware was included among Penn's American possessions, he having, before his departure for America, purchased it of the Duke of York, into whose hands it had fallen after the conquest of New Netherlands. A separate legislature was granted to it in 1703; but it still remained under the jurisdiction of the governor of Pennsylvania. In time, all charters granted by English monarchs to American territory were revoked, with the exception of that granted to Penn. His proprietary rights remained in his family until Pennsylvania became a State, when the commonwealth purchased their claims.

BLACKBOARD FORM.

PENNSYLVANIA.

1638. Swedish settlements established.
1655. Dutch conquest.
1664. English conquest.
1681. Granted to Wm. Penn.
1683. Philadelphia founded.

QUESTIONS.

By whom was New Sweden conquered? When did it pass into the hands of the English? What do you know of William Penn? Why did he accept a grant of land? What do you know of his first colony? When did he come over? How was he received? How did he treat the Indians? When was Philadelphia founded? What form of government did Penn institute? What do you know of the rapid growth of the Pennsylvania settlements? How did Delaware come into the possession of Penn? What fact is remarkable concerning the colony of Pennsylvania?

CAROLINA.

CHAPTER XIV.

The Lords Proprietors.

The territory south of Virginia was regarded by the Spaniards as part of their Florida possessions, particularly as their rights had been established by force of arms in destroying the early French settlements. Nevertheless it was claimed by England, and under this claim was granted to proprietors by the English king, as other portions of English territory had been. Lying beyond the jurisdiction of the royal governors of Virginia, some of whom exercised tyrannical authority, the region about the Chowan River and Albermarle Sound, in what is now North Carolina, soon received a number of colonists who were glad to escape from unpleasant surroundings in the older colony of Virginia.

As early as 1653 REV. ROGER GREEN led a colony to the Chowan country and settled near the present site of Edenton. Many more followed, and soon a number of scattered settlements arose. Ten years after (1663), the reigning English king, Charles II, granted the territory of Carolina to some noblemen, who organized themselves into a company under the name of LORDS PROPRIETORS, PROVINCE OF CAROLINA.

The Lords Proprietors.

The members of this company were George, Duke of Albermarle; Edward, Earl of Clarendon; William, Earl of Craven; John, Lord Berkeley; Anthony, Lord Ashley; Sir George Carteret, Sir John Colleton and Sir William Berkeley. Their grant at first included the territory between thirty-one and thirty-six degrees north latitute; but subsequently the strip of country lying between northern limit of this grant and the southern limit of Virginia was added to it.

To the Lords Proprietors was given full political control over all colonists; but so eager were they to induce emigration to their territory, in order that sales and rents might increase their revenues, that most liberal promises were made relative to government and tolerance. This rendered Carolina for a time a desirable region, in those days of oppression. Germans and Swiss from Europe, Dutch from New Netherlands, dissatisfied with the rule of the English, who had just taken possession (1664), and, above all, large numbers of French Huguenots, with their high culture and independent spirit, came over and laid out farms and vineyards, introduced useful occupations, and by their industry and thrift implanted such elements of strength as few other American colonies enjoyed.

The settlements that had been made around the Chowan were organized, when the proprietors took possession, as the ALBERMARLE COLONY, WILLIAM DRUMMOND being appointed governor. At the time of the grant (1663) a CAPTAIN HILTON was exploring the region around the Cape Fear River. He had been sent thither by an English planter of Barbadoes, named JOHN YEAMANS, to find a suitable location for settlement. Yeamans went to England, where he became Sir John Yeamans, and obtaining the desired grant of land from the Lords Proprietors, returned and planted, near the mouth of the Cape Fear River, a colony that afterwards became known as the CLARENDON COLONY (1665). Here he found the ruins of an abandoned settlement which had been made five years before (1660) by some men from New England.

Two colonies had thus been planted in what is now North Carolina. In 1670 WILLIAM SAYLE arrived with a large

number of emigrants, and landed within the limits of what is now South Carolina. These colonists first stopped at Port Royal, but not being satisfied with the place, proceeded to the Ashley River, and, upon the west bank, laid the foundation of a city, which they named Charlestown. Ten years after, the colony was removed to a more suitable site, called Oyster Point, and the city became known, first, as Oyster Point Town, then, New Charlestown, and finally Charleston (1782), the name it now bears. This colony received the name of the CARTERET COLONY.

On the death of Governor William Sayle, the year after the colony was founded (1671), JOSEPH WEST filled the position until Sir John Yeamans, appointed by the Lords Proprietor, arrived from the Clarendon Colony (1672). Yeamans was followed by so many Cape Fear settlers that the Clarendon Colony was soon afterwards abandoned. Among his possessions were a number of negroes, brought originally from the Barbadoes. Thus was slavery first introduced into South Carolina.

As time passed on, the Proprietors became more exacting, and rents, taxes and violation of rights became sources of much contention. A flourishing trade with the West Indies had brought prosperity to the colonies, yet it was sought to place restrictions on this trade. Controversies between

The Grand Model.

Prior to the year 1670 the form of government was, for the most part, satisfactory to the colonists. But when the Lords Proprietors saw their vast domain filling up with settlers, the scheme of establishing a grand American empire presented itself. SIR ASHLEY COOPER, who had become Earl of Shaftesbury, and JOHN LOCKE, one of the most renowned of philosophers, with much thought and deliberation, drew up "fundamental constitutions" consisting of one hundred and twenty articles. These articles provided for a monarchy, with two orders of nobility, the landgraves, or earls, and the caciques, or barons. The territory was to be divided into counties, each containing 48,000 acres, and the population into freeholders and tenants, the latter of whom were to have no political rights, and were never to attain higher rank. The proposed form of government was deemed a GRAND MODEL by its promulgators. But it did not suit the liberty-loving Carolina colonists, and after twenty years of effort to establish it, the plan had to be abandoned.

the colonists and Proprietors continued until 1729, when the latter gladly ceded their claims to the English crown, and Carolina was divided into North and South, and became two royal provinces.

BLACKBOARD FORM.

CAROLINA.

- *Visited by*
 - 1584. Amidas and Barlow.
 - 1663. Capt. Hilton.
- *Settlements Attempted.*
 - 1562. By Huguenots at Port Royal.
 - 1660. By New Englanders at Cape Fear.
 - 1585. / 1587. By Raleigh at Roanoke.
- *Colonies Founded.*
 - 1653. By Roger Green (Albermarle Colony).
 - 1665. John Yeamans (Clarendon Colony).
 - 1670. By Wm. Sayle (Carteret Colony).
- *Other Principal Events.*
 - 1663. Granted to Lords Proprietors.
 - 1672. Slavery introduced.
 - 1680. Founding of Charleston.
 - 1729. Separation into North / South
 - Becomes Royal Provinces.

QUESTIONS.

What two nations claimed the territory south of Virginia? What region of North Carolina was peopled by emigrants from Virginia? Who led a colony to the Chowan River? When? **To whom was Carolina granted?** Name the Lords Proprietors. What was the extent of the territory granted? **How was Carolina made a desirable region for immigrants?** Name some of the classes of people among the early settlers. **What do you know of the organization of the Albermarle colony? What do you know of Sir John Yeamans?** What colony was established at the mouth of the Cape Fear River? When? Where did William Sayle establish a colony? When? **What do you know of the founding of Charleston?** What was the Charleston colony called? Who succeeded Sayle? What became of the Clarendon colony? **What do you know of the introduction of slavery into South Carolina? What do you know of the Grand Model? What caused much contention as time passed on?** When did the Carolinas become royal provinces?

GEORGIA.

CHAPTER XV.

Philanthropy and Protection.

With the settlement of the Carolinas, English occupancy rapidly extended down the coast toward the Spanish possessions. These latter were a constant menace to the settlers of South Carolina. Several times was Charleston threatened and invasion feared. Evil influences were continually exerted by the Spaniards upon the Indians and slaves, inciting the former to hostility, and the latter to desert their owners and take refuge in Florida. It was determined to occupy the territory between the Savannah and Altamaha Rivers, and here establish colonies of a somewhat military nature, to serve as a barrier of protection for the older settlements. A grant of the region for twenty-one years was made (1732) to James Oglethorpe, a brilliant young English officer and member of parliament, who had sought to obtain it for a benevolent purpose which he had long entertained.



JAMES OGLETHORPE.

James Oglethorpe.

Oglethorpe was a warm-hearted philanthropist, and felt the deepest sympathy for the oppressed poor of all countries Many prisons in England were filled with persons whose only offence was that they were in debt and could not pay, it being the law in those days to imprison for debt, whether the amounts were large or small. Oglethorpe had investigated the condition of these prisoners and found it attended with so much physical suffering and misery that he was moved to make his grant a refuge for them. Many philanthropic individuals, through his influence, lent their assistance, and Parliament appropriated a large sum of money to aid him in carrying out his benevolent designs.

Oppressed Protestants from all countries were to find welcome. Gentle Moravians that had been driven from Austria, and Salzburgers who, for their Lutheran beliefs, had been exiled from their Alpine valleys in the same country, were to avail themselves of this welcome. The conversion of the Indians to Christianity was by no means the least of Oglethorpe's good motives.

One hundred and twenty emigrants arrived at Charleston in January, 1733, where a most kindly reception was accorded them. Continuing on their course, they landed at Port Royal, but Oglethorpe and a few others, pushing southward, found an admirable site for a city upon the bank of what is now the Savannah River. Here they were joined by the others, and the foundations of the present city of Savannah were laid (1733).



OGLETHORPE AND TOMO CHICHI.

The neighboring Indians were conciliated, and Tomo Chichi, sachem of the Indian confederacy existing in those parts, while earnestly expressing a desire for peace, presented Oglethorpe with a handsomely ornamented buffalo robe, lined with eagle feathers, calling attention to its softness and warmth as emblematic of that love and protection which the Indians hoped to receive from their white friends.

A subsequent treaty with other Indian chiefs gave the English control of the territory as far as the St. John's River, and as emigrants arrived, other settlements were made. In 1734 a colony of Salzburgers established themselves thirty miles in the interior, at a pleasant spot, which they named Ebenezer. In 1735 a company of Scotch Highlanders settled at Darien, and in this same year the city of Augusta was founded. Another company of immigrants founded the city of Frederica in 1738. In eight years the population of the Georgia colonies numbered more than twenty-five hundred.

War with Spain being imminent, Oglethorpe repaired to England in 1737, and, equipping a well-disciplined company of six hundred men, returned with the appointment of Commander-in-chief of all militia of South Carolina and Georgia. We shall learn how he distinguished himself in the war that occurred two years afterward. Georgia became a royal province in 1752.

Continually threatened by the Spaniards, there were many military features attached to the Georgia colonies. Lots of twenty-five acres were granted in return for military service. Strict regulations were enforced. Trade with the West Indies was prohibited, as one of the most important articles of import was rum. Slavery was not permitted. In time, these restrictions caused much discontent among the Georgians who beheld their Carolina neighbors growing rich with their cultivated fields and unhampered commerce; the regulations were therefore altered.

BLACKBOARD FORM.

GEORGIA.

- 1733. *Savannah founded.*
- 1734. *Salzburgers settle at Ebenezer.*
- 1735. *Augusta founded.*
- 1735. *Darien founded.*
- 1738. *Frederica founded.*
- 1740. *Troubles with Spaniards.*
- 1752. *Becomes a Royal Province.*

QUESTIONS.

What menaced the settlements of South Carolina? How did the Spaniards of Florida act towards the English north of them? How was it deter-

mined to protect the Carolina settlements? **What do you know of James Oglethorpe?** What grant did he obtain? When? For how long? For whom did Oglethorpe's grant serve as a refuge? **What do you know of the founding of Savannah?** When was it founded? How did Tomo Chichi receive Oglethorpe? When was Ebenezer founded? By whom? When was Darien settled? Augusta? Frederica? What was the growth of the Georgia colony? What was prohibited to the early Georgia colonists? Why did these prohibitions cause dissatisfaction? When did Oglethorpe repair to England? Why? When did Georgia become a royal province?

LOUISIANA.

CHAPTER XVI.

French Barriers to Westward Expansion.

The forts established by La Salle and Tonti in the upper portion of the Louisiana territory subsequently became settlements. Nothing was done to occupy the lower portion until 1699, when LEMOINE D'IBERVILLE, a brave naval officer who had distinguished himself in the wars of France, and had seen much service in Canada, Hudson Bay, and Newfoundland, set out to rediscover the mouth of the Mississippi, and there establish a colony. He was accompanied by his brothers, BIENVILLE and SAUVOLLE. The first point reached was the Florida coast, near what is now Pensacola,

La Salle in Texas.

After reaching the mouth of the Mississippi, La Salle retraced his course, and from Canada again went to France. Provided with the ships Joli and Amiable, the brig La Belle and the ketch St. Francis, he set out with a colony of two hundred and fifty persons to occupy the territory he had explored for France. This colony included twelve young gentlemen, five clergymen, fifty soldiers and twelve families of immigrants, all well supplied with provisions and implements.

The St. Francis, being a slow sailer, was captured by Spanish privateers. The remaining vessels safely entered the Gulf of Mexico, and steering northwest, reached the coast some distance to the west of their intended destination. The selection of the naval commander, Beaujeu, had been most unfortunate. His stubborness and jealousy did much to defeat the ends of the expedition, and La Salle was left for the most part to his own resources.

An exploring party, sent on land, journeyed along the coast and found an inlet, the channel of which was staked so that the vessels could enter in safety. This, the Joli and La Belle did; but the Amiable, ignoring all

precaution, struck a sandbar and soon went to pieces. The bay entered was called St. Bernard, and is now known as Matagorda. As soon as the colonists landed, Beaujeu returned to France, leaving the La Belle, but the wreck of this vessel occurring shortly after, the colonists were rendered dependent upon their own resources in an unknown region. They ascended a river which they named *Les Vaches* (Lavaca), from the buffaloes they saw on the banks and mistook for cattle. They landed and built Fort St. Louis (1686).

Two expeditions to the northeast were made by La Salle, with the object of reaching the French posts or forts in Illinois. Upon the second expedition, accompanied by his brother, nephew, and eighteen others, he penetrated to the eastern part of what is now Texas. Here, in revenge for some fancied injury, Lancelot, one of the men, formed a plot against him, and was joined by three others, Liotot, Hiens and Duhault. La Salle, enticed from camp, was waylaid and killed by Duhault. The expedition went to pieces after La Salle's death. The malcontents took up their abode with neighboring Indians. La Salle's brother and six others made their way to the land of the Arkansas, where two Frenchmen from Canada were found. From these it was learned that Tonti had journeyed down to the mouth of the river to join La Salle and had returned, little knowing how sad was the need of his old commander, then wandering in the wilds of Texas, for faithful servitors.

As soon as the Spaniards of Mexico became apprised of the St. Louis settlement, its location being upon Spanish territory, they determined to destroy it. A force under Alonzo de Leon was dispatched (April 1789) to lay siege to it, but the settlement was found deserted. The few who had escaped death from privation and disease had wandered away and were captured by the neighboring Indians, from whom several were afterwards recovered.

where they found a company of Spaniards in possession. Sailing further, they anchored in what is now Mobile Bay, from which point much of the coast was explored in smaller boats. They entered the Mississippi through one of the numerous lagoons that led from it some distance above its mouth, and, after proceeding up as far as the Red River, returned to a bayou, called Manchac. Here the brothers separated, Bienville continued down the river and Iberville returned by way of a chain of lakes, two of which he named Maurepas and Pontchartrain, after French noblemen at that time prominent. A settlement was established at a point on the coast, and called Biloxi (1699), after a near and friendly tribe of Indians. Sauvolle was appointed governor, and as soon as the building of a fort was well under way, Iberville sailed to France, from which he shortly returned and founded a settlement near what is now Mobile.

The growth of these French settlements was slow. In a

few years Iberville died (1706), and the management of affairs fell to Bienville. Much of the neighboring territory by this time had been explored, and English traders from the



DEATH OF LA SALLE

Carolinas were already making their way towards these regions. To keep back the English, Fort Rosalie was built

near the present town of Natchez (1716), and not long after, Natchitoches, on the Red River, to oppose the claims of the Spaniards of Mexico, who were beginning to encroach from the southwest. The territory was granted to ANTHONY CROZAT (1712), and in consequence of his inordinate proprietorial privileges and monopolies, but little progress was made toward actual settlement.

In 1717 control passed to JOHN LAW, a Scotchman living in France. He organized the celebrated MISSISSIPPI COMPANY, which, though established upon an unstable basis of



FOUNDING OF NEW ORLEANS.

wild speculation, and destined to a financial collapse, gave the first great impulse to Louisiana colonization. The experienced Bienville was appointed governor. Eight hundred emigrants were sent over, part of whom settled at Biloxi, while the rest went on to the Mississippi River. Selecting a spot but a few feet above the surrounding swamps, Bienville laid the foundations of the city of New Orleans (1718).

Lands were sold and granted along the river, and plantations laid out. Slaves were brought from St. Domingo and other West India Islands. Posts were established on the river

above and below. Intercourse was opened with the settlements in Illinois and Canada. Thus was the French power firmly established in the heart of the continent, from the gulf of St. Lawrence on the northeast to the gulf of Mexico on the southwest; but slowly sweeping back from the Atlantic seaboard, a wave of English emigration was approaching, whose contact the French were soon destined to feel.

QUESTIONS.

What do you know of La Salle's attempt to colonize Louisiana? Of whom did his colony consist? Where did he land? When? **What do you know of the Texas settlement of St. Louis? What was the fate of La Salle?** What happened after his death? What do you know of Alonzo de Leon? What did the forts in the upper Mississippi become? By whom was Biloxi founded? **What do you know of Bienville?** What explorations were made by Bienville and Iberville? Why was Fort Rosalie built? When? Natchitoches? What progress was made by Louisiana under Crozat? **What do you know of John Law?** What do you know of the founding of New Orleans? **How was the French power established in the heart of the continent?** Between what two gulfs did the American dominions of France extend? What was to sweep back from the Atlantic coast and come in contact with them?

BLACKBOARD FORM.

LOUISIANA.

- *1642* Visited by De Soto.
- *1681* Explored by La Salle.
- *1699* Explored by Iberville. / Explored by Bienville. / Settlement of Biloxi, (Miss.)
- *1712* Granted to Crozat.
- *1716* Fort Rosalie established.(Miss.)
- *1717* Granted to Mississippi Company.
- *1718* New Orleans founded.

SEARCH QUESTIONS.

Who was John Locke, and what was his greatest work? Who was William Drummond and what was his fate? What was the "Mississippi Bubble"? How came Penn by his claim against the king? What did Penn's land cost him? What high appointment in America did Oglethorpe decline? Who were the "Casket Girls"? Who was Seth Sothel? Where is the Dismal Swamp and what is the name of the lake in it? What English ship captain entering the Mississippi was turned back by Bienville? What is the "east shore of Virginia"? After whom was Fort Rosalie named?

REVIEW OUTLINE.

SETTLEMENTS BY NATIONS.

SETTLEMENTS.

- **French.**
 - 1562 SOUTH CAROLINA (Attempted).
 - 1564 FLORIDA (Attempted).
 - 1605 NOVA SCOTIA.
 - 1608 CANADA.
 - 1685 TEXAS (Attempted).
 - 1699 MISSISSIPPI.
 - 1718 LOUISIANA.
- **Spanish.**
 - 1565 FLORIDA.
 - 1582 NEW MEXICO.
- **Dutch and Swedish.**
 - 1613 NEW YORK.
 - 1638 DELAWARE.
- **English.**
 - 1585 NORTH CAROLINA (Attempted).
 - 1602 MASSACHUSETTS (Attempted).
 - 1606 MAINE (Attempted).
 - 1607 VIRGINIA.
 - 1620 MASSACHUSETTS.
 - 1623 NEW HAMPSHIRE.
 - 1630 MAINE.
 - 1633 CONNECTICUT.
 - 1634 MARYLAND.
 - 1636 RHODE ISLAND.
 - 1653 NORTH CAROLINA.
 - 1664 NEW JERSEY.
 - 1670 SOUTH CAROLINA.
 - 1681 PENNSYLVANIA.
 - 1733 GEORGIA.

REVIEW OUTLINE.

RELATIVE TIME OF SETTLEMENT.

FIRST SETTLEMENTS.

1562	SOUTH CAROLINA	PORT ROYAL (Attempted).
1564	FLORIDA	FT. CAROLINA (Attempted)
1565	FLORIDA	ST. AUGUSTINE
1582	NEW MEXICO	SANTA FE.
1585	NORTH CAROLINA	ROANOKE (Attempted).
1602	MASSACHUSETTS	ELIZABETH ISLAND (Att'd).
1605	NOVA SCOTIA	PORT ROYAL.
1606	MAINE	KENNEBEC R. (Attempted).
1607	VIRGINIA	JAMESTOWN.
1608	CANADA	QUEBEC.
1613	NEW YORK	NEW AMSTERDAM
1620	MASSACHUSETTS	PLYMOUTH.
1623	NEW HAMPSHIRE	PORTSMOUTH.
1630	MAINE	SACO.
1633	CONNECTICUT	HARTFORD.
1634	MARYLAND	ST. MARY'S.
1636	RHODE ISLAND	PROVIDENCE.
1638	DELAWARE	CHRISTIANA
1653	NORTH CAROLINA	EDENTON.
1664	NEW JERSEY	ELIZABETHTOWN.
1670	SOUTH CAROLINA	CHARLESTON.
1681	PENNSYLVANIA	SCHUYLKILL RIVER.
1685	TEXAS	FT. ST. LOUIS (Attempted).
1699	MISSISSIPPI	BILOXI.
1718	LOUISIANA	NEW ORLEANS.
1733	GEORGIA	SAVANNAH.

REVIEW QUESTIONS.

Name three settlements attempted by the French and locate each. Three by the English. What was the first permanent French settlement in America? English? What is the oldest town in the United States? Second oldest? Name five sects that sought relief from religious persecution in America. What do you know of the "Lost Colony of America?" The first English church? The first trial by jury? What part did John Smith take in the settlement of Virginia? Name eight governors of colonial Virginia. What do you know of the introduction of slavery? The first Colonial Assembly? Who were the Huguenots? Patroons? Pilgrims? Waloons? Puritans? Quakers? Salzburgers? Non-Conformists? What do you know of the London Company? Plymouth Company? East India Company? West India Company? Mississippi Company? Name four Dutch governors of New York. Name four settlements established by the Dutch. What do you know of the Mayflower? The Hind and the Squirrel? The Concord? The Mary and John? The Susan Constant? The Speedwell? The Ark and Dove? The Welcome? What do you know of the settlement of Plymouth? Who named New England? What do you know of the Massachusetts Charter? Who was Anne Hutchinson? Name and locate five Connecticut settlements. When and by whom was each made? When was Philadelphia founded? Charleston? New Orleans? Boston? New York? Baltimore? Savannah? What was Mason and Dixon's line? Who were the Lords Proprietors? What were the principal features of the Grand Model? What do you know of the Carteret Colony? After whom was New York named? Carolina? Maryland? Delaware? New Jersey? Pennsylvania? Louisiana? New Hampshire? Georgia? Baltimore? Jamestown? Saybrook? What do you know of La Salle in Texas? Name five settlements in Georgia. When and by whom were each established? Who killed La Salle?

REVIEW EXERCISES.

(BIOGRAPHICAL.)

Exercise I—Tell who each of the following was. Exercise II—What did he do? Exercise III—Associate the name of a place with each. Exercise IV—Associate a date with each name in italics.

Bienville.	Hilton.	*Green.*	*Clayborne.*	*Iberville.*
Oglethorpe.	Crozat.	Tomo-Chichi.	Drummond.	*Coddington.*
Canonicus.	*Yeamans.*	Law.	*Sayle.*	Hooker.
Winthrop.	Vane.	*Penn.*	Duhault.	Mason.
Carver.	Samoset.	Gorges.	*Davenport.*	Tonti.
Wyatt.	Keift	Squanto.	Blackstone	*Calvert.*

Newport.	Yeardly.	*Stuyvesant.*	Standish.	*Williams.*
Pocahontas.	Gates.	Argall.	Van Twiller.	White.
Weymouth.	*Pring.*	Skitwarres.	*Amadas.*	*Minuit.*
White.	Greenville.	Dare.	Dale.	Powhattan.
Hunt.	Smith.	Kendall.	*Gosnold.*	Ratcliff.
Gilbert.	Lane.	Wingina.	*Raleigh.*	Wingfield.
De Gourgues.	*Ribaut.*	*Laudoniere.*	*Coligni.*	*Melendez.*

(GEOGRAPHICAL.)

Exercise V—Locate each of the following. **Exercise VI**—State some historical fact connected with each. **Exercise VII**—Associate a name and date with place printed in italics.

Plymouth.	*Salem.*	*Boston.*	Leyden.
Saco.	*Fort Good Hope.*	*Saybrook.*	*Providence.*
Baltimore.	Hartford.	Southampton.	*St. Mary's.*
Fredrica.	Provincetown.	*Newport.*	NewAmsterdam.
Christiana.	Fort Orange.	Edenton.	*Philadelphia.*
Augusta (Ga.)	*Savannah.*	*Charleston.*	*Roanoke Island.*
New Orleans.	*Quebec.*	*Biloxi.*	*Fort St. Louis.*
Fort Carolina (S. C.)	Martha's Vineyard.	*Ft. Carolina* (Fla.)	Satquin.
Jamestown.	*St. Augustine.*	Chesapeake.	New England.

To the Teacher—Write the foregoing names upon slips of paper—one to each. Fold and mix thoroughly. Test the class by having each pupil draw at random a name to serve as his topic of recitation. Have the remainder of the class supply whatever information he may fail to give. A fascinating "history match" can be conducted upon the same plan.

PREPARATORY NOTES.

TO CHAPTERS I, II AND III.

Geography.—Note the position of Richmond, Va. In what part of Connecticut is the Mystic River? Where is Fairfield? Weatherfield? Hartford? Windsor? In what part of Massachusetts is Swanzey? Deerfield? Hadley? In what part of North Carolina is New Berne? In what part of Mississippi is Natchez?

Definition of Words.—Surplus, supremacy, domain, adapt, extermination, depredations, dissuade, succor, calamitous.

Pronunciation of Names.—Opecancanough, Graffenreid, Neuse, Tuscaroras, Pocotaligo, Coosawhatchie, De Chopart, Perier.

PARALLEL READINGS.

REFERENCE.—Howison's "History of Virginia," Hollister's "History of Connecticut," Du Pratz' "History of Louisiana," Moore's "History of North Carolina."

GENERAL.—Cooke's "Virginia," Campbell's "History of Virginia," Church's "History of the Great Indian War of 1675," Drake's "Making of New England," Gayarré's "History of Louisiana," Doyle's "English Colonies in America" (vol. I), Johnston's "History of Connecticut."

TOPICAL.—"Virginia Massacre," "Opecancanough," "Pequod War," "Sassacus," "King Phillip's War," "Baron Graffenreid," "Tuscarora War," "Yamassee War," "Natchez War."

COLONIAL DEVELOPMENT.



THE GROWING COLONIES.

CHAPTER I.

The Beginning of Indian Extinction.

THE establishment of colonies is often conducive to the welfare of a nation. They serve as outlets for its surplus population, create new markets and demands for its products and manufactures, and add to its glories that of increased dominion. Hence it was that the three great nations of Europe — England, France, and Spain — encouraged emigration to the New World.

Man, in his savage state, requires a larger area of territory, for his subsistence, than when civilized. Depending for food

Conflicting Claims.

The Spanish power was established, as we have seen, in the southern part of North America, the territorial claims of Spain extending northward indefinitely. The claims of France embraced Canada and the Mississippi Valley from the Alleghanies westward. England claimed all that region of the continent bordering upon the Atlantic, and lying between the French possessions on the north and those of the Spanish on the south, and extending from ocean to ocean. Boundaries thus far were undetermined and claims conflicted. A struggle for supremacy was inevitable. The title of the Indian, by original possession, to the territory claimed, was taken into no consideration.

upon the products of the chase, he finds it necessary to change his place of abode from time to time. The narrowing of his hunting grounds is followed by a scarcity of game. Hence the Indians beheld with alarm great numbers of whites coming to their shores, intruding upon their domain, and appropriating their territory. It was not long before they manifested their hostility.

Indian Hostility.

The English colonies suffered most severely from Indian hostility. Their early history is filled with revengeful deeds, conflicts and bloody massacres. There was a marked contrast between the treatment of the Indian by the French and by the English. The former adapted themselves to his manners and customs, and so entered into the spirit of his everyday life that they won their way to his heart, and secured his friendship. Their objects were trade and dominion, and their occupancy interfered but little with his natural rights. The English, on the other hand, coveted his land, and wished to be rid of his presence. The few that came first inspired no alarm. Powhattan in Virginia, sought to restrain his subjects by saying, "Let them alone; they harm you not; they but take a little land." Massasoit, in Massachusetts, offered no objection against the landing of the Pilgrims, and even entered into an alliance with them. Little did either chieftain know that these few were to be followed by numbers, and that against the white tide, soon to sweep upon them, all savage valor, treachery, and treaty were to avail little; and that in its onsweep was to be their race's doom.

The marriage of Pocahontas, daughter of Powhattan, to the English John Rolfe, established a certain degree of friendliness between the whites and Indians of Virginia. But OPITCHAPAN, the successor of the old chief, possessed little strength of character, and the control of affairs soon fell to OPECANCANOUGH, an inveterate foe to the English. This chief lost no time in inciting his warriors to hostility, and secretly set about the destruction of the settlers.

A friendly intercourse was maintained up to the last moment, and, all unsuspected, the blow fell (1622). Plantations were surprised and three hundred and forty-nine settlers were put to death. Jamestown, however, escaped, timely warning having been given to it by an Indian convert.

A terrible war followed this massacre. The number of the colonists was reduced from four thousand to twenty-five hundred, and the settlements and plantations, from eighty to

six. The Indians, however, were driven back into the wilderness; their power was broken; and a larger area of territory was opened to English occupancy. Twenty-two years of peace followed, during which all traces of the war disappeared, and prosperity again smiled.

But Opecancanough brooded long over plans for revenge. At length, drawing to his side several tribes, he again fell upon the outer settlements (1644) and massacred five hundred colonists on the first day. A force from Jamestown soon reached the scene, and a war of extermination began. The Indians were hunted down and many were slain. Opecancanough himself, now one hundred years old, was captured and brought to Jamestown, where he was shot. After his death another season of peace was enjoyed .

QUESTIONS.

How do colonies sometimes promote the welfare of a nation? What three European nations established colonies in America? What were the territorial claims of each? What title had the Indians to the territory claimed by these European nations? What does man in his savage state require for subsistence? Why? How did the French differ from the English in their treatment of the Indians? How did Powhattan receive the first settlers? Massasoit? What followed the death of Powhattan? What do you know of the Indian war of 1622? 1644?

CHAPTER II.

Indian Conflicts — Northern Colonies.

When Roger Williams established his colony in Rhode Island he was kindly received by Canonicus, the Narragansett chief. Far different was the reception of the Connecticut settlers by SASSACUS, chief of the Pequods, for hardly had they established themselves in their new homes when Indian depredations began (1634).

Determined to break the power of the hostile tribe, the towns of Hartford, Weathersfield, and Windsor at length

organized a force of ninety men, under CAPTAIN JOHN MASON. Accompanied by seventy Indian allies, under UNCAS, the friendly chief of the Mohegans, Mason proceeded against the Pequod strongholds on the Mystic river, and arrived two hours before dawn. Through the stillness and dark, just as the attack began, came the alarm of a Pequod sentinel, "*Owanux! Owanux!*" "Englishmen! Englishmen!" The interior of the palisaded fort was soon gained, and for some time a one-sided contest was waged. At length the village was fired and its fleeing occupants put to death. Five hundred men, women, and children perished.

The Pequods.

The Pequod being the most powerful of the Connecticut tribes, Sassacus succeeded in organizing a league against the whites. The Narragansetts were dissuaded from joining by Roger Williams. Several murders were committed. The hostiles lurked about the Connecticut forts, waylaid settlers and destroyed everything they could reach. For three years the colonists lived in a state of uncertainty and terror, and finally the situation could be borne no longer.

Fate of Sassacus.

From a neighboring fort, Sassacus hurried to the rescue with three hundred of his best warriors, but arrived too late to stay the destruction. His attacks upon the returning colonists were ineffectual. Disheartened by disaster, he made his way towards the Hudson, with about eighty of his warriors. He was followed and overtaken in a swamp, near what is now Fairfield, Conn., from which he escaped after a severe action. The war was prosecuted with such persistence that the Pequod tribe was destroyed. Some of the captives were sent as slaves to the West Indies. A few survivors joined the Mohegans and Narragansetts.

The Pequod war was followed by forty years of comparative peace, during which the New England colonists increased in number to more than sixty thousand. While Massasoit lived, the Wampanoags remained peaceful; but his sons, PHILIP and ALEXANDER, did not inherit the friendly spirit of the old chief; and when Philip became sachem, he organized a confederacy of Indian tribes, for the purpose of destroying the rapidly increasing power of the whites.

KING PHILIP'S WAR began with an attack upon Swanzey, Mass. (1675), in which several persons were killed. The

whole country taking alarm, troops were sent from Boston and Plymouth against the savages. Philip was besieged at Pocasset for thirteen days, but managed to escape. Other tribes were drawn into the conflict. The town of Deerfield was attacked and burned (September 11); but in their attempts against Hadley and Hatfield, the savages were repulsed.

The Indian uprising soon extended to the tribes of Maine and New Hampshire. The Narragansetts did not openly join in the hostilities, but it was believed that they were encouraging and succoring Philip. A force sent against them destroyed one of their towns in which many of them had taken refuge. More than a thousand of them being killed, the remnant joined Philip. Towns were now subjected to the fury of Indian attack, but the aroused colonists maintained the conflict with energy.

The war in Massachusetts, which ended with King Philip's death, was the most calamitous with which the early colonies were afflicted. More than six hundred settlers fell during the course of the conflict, and as many dwellings were destroyed. It resulted in the almost total extinction of the Indians participating, and, like many other Indian wars, threw open a large area of territory to settlement.

Death of King Philip.

One of the most celebrated of the Indian fighters at this time was CAPTAIN CHURCH. When it was learned that Philip had returned to his residence at Mount Hope, or Pokanoket, after having failed to induce the Mohawks to join him. Church hastened with a company to surprise him. His place of refuge in the swamp was surrounded, and in endeavoring to make his escape, Philip was shot (Aug. 12, 1676) by ALDERMAN, an Indian deserter, who had guided the English to the place.

QUESTIONS.

How did the Pequods receive the Connecticut settlers? When did Indian depredations begin? **How did the Pequod war begin? End?** Who succeeded Massasoit? **How did King Philip's war begin? End?** What do you know of the expedition against the Narragansetts? What do you know of King Philip's death? **What were the results of King Philip's war?**

CHAPTER III.

Indian Conflicts — Southern Colonies.

The territory adjacent to the Carolina settlements was occupied by the crafty and cruel Tuscarora Indians—a tribe allied to the Iroquois of New York. For some time these Indians beheld the encroachment of the whites with increasing jealousy, and, when the Albermarle colonists were occupied among themselves with discord and strife over the governorship, they seized the opportunity of instituting a general Indian uprising.

The Tuscaroras were joined by the Corees, Meherrins and Mattamuskeets, and the attack began (September 11, 1711). For three days the savages butchered the whites. One of the first settlements to suffer was New Berne. Assistance however, soon came. Governor Spottswood, of Virginia, closed up the war-trail leading through his dominion, between the Iroquois and Tuscarora countries, and kept the former neutral in the contest. Captain John Barnwell came up from South Carolina with a force of militia and Yamassee Indians, and defeated the Tuscaroras with great slaughter near New Berne (1712).

Graffenreid's Colony.

The fertile lands of Carolina attracted a very desirable class of immigrants. Among the hard-working people who made their way to this region from different European countries was a colony of six hundred Germans and Swiss under Baron de Graffenreid. These established themselves on the Neuse River (1710), calling their settlement New Berne.

The next year (1713) the Tuscarora chief, Handcock, was attacked in his palisaded fort of Nahucke, near what is now the village of Snow Hill, by Colonel James Moore, with such success that the fort, with eight hundred prisoners, was taken. This ended the war, for it so disheartened the Tuscaroras that they abandoned Carolina and made their way to New York, where they joined the Iroquois Confederacy. A treaty was then made with the Coree and other Indians.

The peace that followed the TUSCARORA WAR was of short duration. The Yamassees, who had so bravely assisted the whites against the Tuscaroras, were the first to break it. These Indians were incited by the Spaniards of Florida, whose enmity had been awakened by the rapid expansion of the Carolina colonies towards their domain. The Yamassees were joined by warriors from the Muscogees, Apalachees, Congarees and other tribes, and more than ten thousand engaged in the bloody work.



INDIAN WARRIORS.

The massacre began at POCOTALIGO (April 15, 1715), and in a few hours the victims in that locality alone numbered more than one hundred. While marching to the scene with a company of cavalry, GOVERNOR CRAVEN of South Carolina was fiercely attacked by more than five hundred Yamassee warriors, but repulsed them. Shortly after, COLONEL MACKEY,

The Natchez War.

When the French established Fort Rosalie, in the lower Louisiana territory, they were brought in contact with the Natchez. At first these Indians were disposed to be friendly. As time passed on the imprudent DE CHOPART was placed in command. This commandant determining to establish an additional settlement, selected a site upon which the Natchez village of the White Apple was located, and haughtily demanded its abandonment by the Indians. Their hostility was aroused. They pleaded for time to gather their crops, and in the meanwhile planned a conspiracy, which was successfully executed (1729). Fort Rosalie was captured by stratagem. Not a single building was left standing. Of the seven hundred that garrisoned it, few escaped to tell the tale. The success of the Natchez was of short duration. A force of French and Choctaws, under Commandant-General PERIER, arriving from the lower settlements, compelled them to take refuge in the swamps beyond the Mississippi, whither they were pursued. Many of them were captured, and the remainder took refuge with the Chickasaws.

with a force from Charlestown, destroyed the Yamassee town of COOSAWHATCHIE, driving the Indians toward the south. The war ended after long and persistent fighting, in which more than four hundred of the whites lost their lives. The Indians were driven beyond the Savannah River, many of them taking refuge in Florida. For a long period afterwards the Carolina settlements extended themselves westward uninterruptedly.

QUESTIONS.

What do you know of the Tuscarora Indians? How did the Tuscarora war begin? What part did Governor Spottswood of Virginia take? Captain John Barnwell? Colonel James Moore? The Yamassees? What do you know of the settlement of New Berne? What became of the Tuscaroras? **How did the Yamassee war begin?** How many Indians were concerned in this war? What part did Governor Craven of South Carolina take? Colonel Mackey? How did the war end? **What do you know of the Natchez war?**

BLACKBOARD FORM.

COLONIAL WARS—INDIAN.

INDIAN WARS.

- *1622, First Indian War, (Virginia).*
- *1636, Pequod War, (Connecticut).*
- *1644, Second Indian War, (Virginia).*
- *1675. King Philip's War, (Massachusetts).*
- *1711, Tuscarora War, (North Carolina).*
- *1715, Yamassee War, (South Carolina).*
- *1729, Natchez War, (Louisiana).*
- *1757, Cherokee War, (South Carolina).* *(See page 196)*
- *1763, Pontiac's War.* *(See page 198)*

PREPARATORY NOTES.

TO CHAPTERS IV AND V.

Definition of Words.— Depose, extortionate, reinstate, loyalty, affable, despot, franchise, prorogue, lucrative, desist, concession, grievance, sway, prejudice, intolerance, fanaticism, delusion, exemplary, perpetrated.

PARALLEL READINGS.

REFERENCE.— Campbell's "History of Virginia," Bancroft's "History of the United States."

GENERAL.—Cooke's "Virginia," Longfellow's "Giles Cory," Coffin's "Old Times in the Colonies."

TOPICAL. — "Bacon's Rebellion," "Berkley, Sir William," "Salem Witchcraft," "Cotton Mather."

CHAPTER IV.

An Early American Rebellion.

The governors of the Virginia colony who followed Sir Francis Wyatt, ruled uninterruptedly, with the exception of SIR JOHN HARVEY and SIR WILLIAM BERKLEY. The former was deposed by the Assembly (1635) for his extortionate and unjust measures, but was reinstated by the king. The latter was the first representative of English monarchy in America to encounter armed resistance when his authority was exercised to oppress the people.

Berkley served as governor for almost thirty years. A courtly gentleman, with a smile for every one, he delighted the Virginians during the first years of his rule. Time, however, changed the affable governor into the merciless despot. England made poor returns for colonial loyalty, and was pursuing an extortionate and oppressive policy towards Virginia. This, with Berkley's tyrannies, kindled fires of discontent and rage that smouldered for years.

Growth of Liberty.

Virginia had been, from the first, the most intensely loyal of all the colonies. The established church of England was its church. The monarch of England was its respected sovereign. But a love of liberty was growing up side by side with this spirit of loyalty, and the jealousy with which the colonists guarded their rights, was as strong as the pride they took in being Englishmen. Years of oppression were to make clear to their minds the political truth that loyalty to unjust and tyrannical government ceases to be a virtue, and becomes almost a crime.

Unjust measures were enforced by which England monopolized the trade of the colony. Heavy taxes were laid on imports and exports, so that the planters were brought to the verge of bankruptcy. The right of franchise, at one time exercised by every freeman in the colony, was restricted to freeholders or "housekeepers." The Assembly that was to come from the people to make laws in accordance with their wishes, was rendered powerless by being prorogued from time to time.

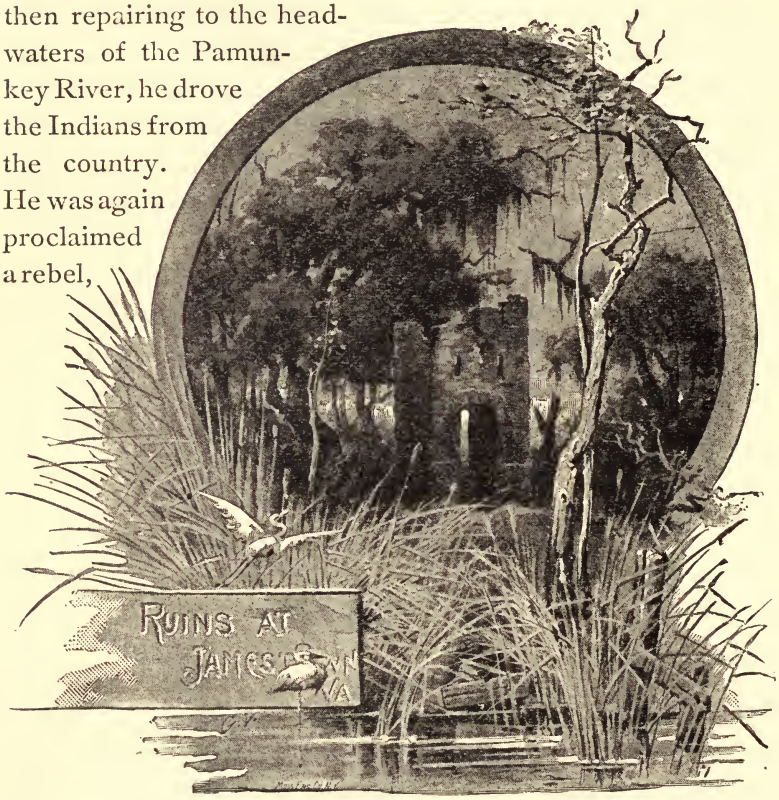
Amidst the general discontent an Indian attack was made upon the frontier (1675), and Berkley took no step to protect the outlying settlements, although a large force volunteered to be led against the depredators. It was suspected that his disinclination for the war was caused by his unwillingness to injure a lucrative trade with the Indians that he monopolized.

NATHANIEL BACON, JR., an eloquent and popular young lawyer, applied for a commission to pursue the Indians, but was refused. When again they ravaged the frontier (1676), killing Bacon's plantation overseer and one of his servants, he placed himself at the head of a party of colonists, set out to chastise the savages, and though he was proclaimed a rebel and ordered to desist, marched on and administered a crushing defeat to the Indians at BLOODY RUN, near the present city of Richmond.

Bacon was generally sustained, and when Berkley sought his arrest a civil war became imminent. The governor now found himself compelled to make certain concessions to the people, one of which was the dissolving of the repeatedly prorogued Assembly and the issuance of writs of election for a new one. Of this new Assembly, Bacon was triumphantly elected a member.

The people were now ripe for righting wrongs. The public revenues and exorbitant taxes were to be accounted for, grievances redressed, the Indians punished. The exploits of the young lawyer were recounted all over Virginia, and the cry went up for Bacon! Bacon! With a large force

he marched to Jamestown and compelled the governor to issue a commission to him as "General of Indian Wars"; then repairing to the headwaters of the Pamunkey River, he drove the Indians from the country. He was again proclaimed a rebel,



but he was now master of the situation. Civil war ensued, and Berkley having been driven from Jamestown, that town was burned to the ground, to prevent its ever again falling into his hands. The ruins of its church may yet be seen.

The death of Bacon in the midst of his success brought the rebellion to a speedy end; and Berkley, with assistance derived from England, resumed his sway. To satisfy his cruel and revengeful spirit, twenty-three of the rebels were executed. This tyrannical conduct disgusted the king,

and Berkley was recalled. He died shortly after reaching England, and within one year of Bacon's death.

QUESTIONS.

Name two governors of Virginia that followed Wyatt. What do you know of Sir John Harvey? Sir William Berkley? What can you say of the loyalty of the Virginia colonists? How long was Berkley governor? How did he change? What policy did England pursue toward Virginia? Name some causes that the colonists had for discontent? Of what was Berkley suspected? What do you know of Nathaniel Bacon? Where did he defeat the Indians? What was he proclaimed? By whom was he sustained? What concessions was the governor compelled to make? Why did the people rise in rebellion? Who led them? What happened to Jamestown? How did Bacon's rebellion end? When did Berkley's death occur?

CHAPTER V.

A Vestige of Superstition.

No greater foe to human progress exists than ignorance. It has crushed genius, opposed advancement, kindled persecution, caused bloodshed, and in every way added to the sum of human misery. It is the parent of prejudice, intolerance, and fanaticism. Its lowest form is superstition.

In the early history of Massachusetts we find an instance in which a peculiar superstition held terrible sway, destroying for a time the peace of a whole community, and threatening the existence of the community itself. This instance is known as the WITCHCRAFT DELUSION. The scene of its terrors was Salem.

Witchcraft.

A belief in witches existed throughout the ignorant ages of the world. The practice of witchcraft was recognized as a crime in the laws of many countries, and its punishment was provided for in the statutes of even enlightened England. Prosecutions of so-called witches had been, however, rare up to the time of the Massachusetts troubles.

Public attention in Massachusetts was first directed to the prosecution of witches when the thirteen-year-old child of John Goodwin of Boston, to avenge a rebuke justly administered to her, pretended to be bewitched, and accused

a friendless and aged immigrant of being the offender. COTTON MATHER, a minister, took part in the prosecution, and so imflamed the public mind that the unfortunate immigrant was brought to trial, found guilty, and executed (1688).

Although the people had been greatly excited over the subject, and accusations had begun to multiply, the next prosecution did not take place until four years after, when SAMUEL PARRIS, a fanatic and narrow-minded minister of Salem, accused his Indian servant, Tituba, of bewitching his daughter and niece. Tituba was whipped until a false confession was wrung from her. Then Mr. Parris turned his attention to others, and there being no public prosecutor in those days, he took upon himself the duties of the office. In the exercise of its functions he was moved by personal malice, and the opportunity was seized of venting his hatred upon many inoffensive persons who had from time to time incurred his displeasure.

Sarah Good, Martha Cory, Rebecca Morse, Sarah Cloyce and others, all exemplary women, were accused and committed to prison. At the trials Parris questioned the witnesses in such a way as to elicit the answers he desired. All evidence in favor of the accused was suppressed. Those found guilty were hanged.

Prosecution was next directed to those who doubted the existence of witches. Edward Bishop, a farmer, and George Burroughs, a graduate of Harvard College and a rival of Parris in the ministry, were both committed for being skeptical.

Wardwell, Cory and Willard.

None so far committed confessed themselves guilty; but one, Deliverance Hobbs, when arrested, acknowledged everything asked her, and was released. Thus was escape from prosecution, shown to lie in owning to witchcraft, when accused. As arrests were made, confessions became numerous. One, SAMUEL WARDWELL, confessed and was safe, but, ashamed of himself for doing so, he retracted his confession and spoke out boldly against the superstition. He was hanged. Stubborn old GILES CORY refused to speak at all when accused, and he was horribly pressed to death. JOHN WILLARD, an officer, for refusing to become an instrument of error, when directed to arrest accused persons, was himself convicted and executed.

The delusion soon became a frenzy, and raged in Salem for six months. At the end of this period twenty persons had been hanged, fifty-five tortured into confession, one hundred and fifty thrown into jail, and more than two hundred and fifty accused were awaiting trial. At last the Colonial Assembly of Massachusetts met and deprived of their power, the magistrates before whom the witchcraft cases had been tried. The delusion then subsided as suddenly as it had arisen. The people awoke to a realization of the horrors perpetrated. Parris was driven from Salem, and remorse tortured many who had taken an active part in the prosecutions.

QUESTIONS.

How has ignorance proved itself one of the greatest foes to human progress? What is the lowest form in which it manifests itself? In what colony was this form manifested at one time? Where and when had a belief in witchcraft existed? What first drew the attention of the people of Massachusetts to witch prosecution? What minister influenced public sentiment in the matter? When was the first victim executed? **What do you know of Parris?** Giles Cory? Samuel Wardwell? John Willard? Deliverance Hobbs? How long did the delusion continue? How many fell victims to it? How did it come to an end?

PREPARATORY NOTES.

TO CHAPTERS VI AND VII.

Geography.—Note the position of Dover, N. H., Salmon Falls, Me., Schenectady, N. Y., Haverhill, Mass. Note the relative position of Charleston, S. C., St. Augustine, Fla., Savannah, Ga., Frederica, Ga., St. Simon's Island.

Definition of Words.—Unrelenting, mandates, prefer, incursions, marauders, treaty, redound, harboring, semblance.

Pronunciation of Names.—Leisler, Ryswick, De Rouville, Utrecht, Aix la Chapelle, Le Feboure, Montiano.

PARALLEL READINGS.

REFERENCE.—Steven's "History of Georgia," Granéau's "*L'Histoire du Canada*" (Bell's translation), Coffin's "Old Times in the Colonies," Palfrey's "History of New England."

GENERAL.—Ramsay's "History of South Carolina," Fairbank's "History of Florida."

TOPICAL.—"Oglethorpe," "Georgia, Spanish Invasion of," "King William's War," "Queen Anne's War," "King George's War," "Louisburg, Capture of," "Schenectady, Massacre of."

CHAPTER VI.

Colonial Quarrels — English and French.

The Duke of York, to whom New Netherlands had been granted, succeeded to the throne of England under the title of James II. In him the rights and liberties of the English people had a most unrelenting foe. The colonies came in for a large share of his attention. Most of them were compelled to surrender their charters, and tyrannical governors were sent to rule them and to execute the oppressive mandates of the king.

But the people of England soon rose in their might. In the famous REVOLUTION OF 1688 James was deposed, and his daughter, MARY, and her husband, WILLIAM, Prince of Orange, were placed upon the throne.



The Charter Oak.

In Connecticut the people declined to surrender their charter. A meeting was held, attended by the king's officers, sent to demand the return of the Connecticut charter, and as the written instrument lay upon the table, around which all were gathered, the lights in the room were suddenly extinguished. When the candles were again lighted, the charter was no where to be seen. WILLIAM WADSWORTH had carried it off and hid it in the hollow of an old oak.

The cause of James was espoused by the French King, Louis XIV, and war between France and England ensued. The American colonies of these nations had long been distrustful of each other, and occasion was now seized to engage in open hostilities. The war in America is known as KING WILLIAM'S WAR, and lasted eight years (1689-97).

A number of incursions were made by the French of Canada and their Indian allies during the the progress of

this war. DOVER, N. H. (1689), SALMON FALLS, Me. (1690), and SCHENECTADY, N. Y. (1690), were subjected to all the horrors of Indian surprise and massacre. The last named town was fired, and but two houses left standing. The marauders were, however, overtaken by a band of Mohawks and almost destroyed.

Colonial Revolts.

With the deposition of James in England came the displacement of his representatives in America. SIR EDMUND ANDROS, the "tyrant of New England," was seized by the people of Boston and imprisoned (1689). Nicholson, the acting governor of New York, was compelled to leave, and JACOB LEISLER assumed charge. Although this revolt was made in the direct interest of William and Mary, yet Leisler did not promptly surrender the government to the authorities sent to take possession. His delay gave his enemies an excuse to prefer charges of treason against him, and he was found guilty and executed.

The English colonies were soon aroused to action. A CONGRESS, composed of representatives from Massachusetts Bay, Plymouth, Connecticut and New York, met in New York to devise measures of retaliation (1690). Two invasions of Canada were attempted—one by sea, under SIR WILLIAM PHIPS, the other by land, under GENERAL WINTHROP. Neither accomplished anything. In the last year of the war HAVERHILL, Mass., suffered from Indian attack and massacre. Hostilities ceased with the peace TREATY OF RYSWICK (1697).

Five years after there arose in Europe the WAR OF THE SPANISH SUCCESSION (1702-1713), and in it France and England were arrayed upon opposite sides. Again their colonies entered upon hostilities. ANNE, daughter of James II, had succeeded William and Mary on the throne of England, so in America this war is known as QUEEN ANNE'S WAR.

DEERFIELD, a frontier settlement of Massachusetts, was the town to suffer this time. A force under DE ROUVILLE descended upon it from Montreal (1704), massacred fifty of its inhabitants, took more than one hundred captives, pillaged the village and fired the houses. A successful expedition against ACADIE was made from Boston (1710). Port

Royal was captured, and its name changed to Annapolis, after the queen. Thenceforth the territory was to be a part of the English possessions in America.

Sir Hovenden Walker and General Hill planned the capture of Quebec by sea; but on entering the mouth of the St. Lawrence, the English fleet was wrecked by a storm. A force of New York, Connecticut and New Jersey militia, under General Nicholson, set out by land to capture Montreal, but met with no success (1711). Two years afterwards (1713) the peace treaty of Utrecht went into effect.

A third inter-colonial war, known as King George's War, began (1744). Like the others, it had its origin in a European war—the War of the Austrian Succession—but its direct cause was the jealousy which had long existed between the colonies of rival nations. It lasted but four years, and is marked by but one important event—the capture of Louisburg, one of the strongest fortresses in America (1745). The attacking forces were led by Generals Pepperel and Warren, and consisted for the most part of Massachusetts colonists. The result redounded greatly to their glory. At the close of the war, which ended with the treaty of Aix la Chapelle (1748), Louisburg was given back to the French.

QUESTIONS.

What do you know of James II? What was the result of the Revolution of 1688? Who was Sir Edmund Andros? Nicholson? Who was Jacob Leisler? What was his fate? When did King William's War begin? End? **What were its principal events?** What congress assembled in New York? What invasions of Canada were planned? By what name was Queen Anne's War known in Europe? When did it begin? End? **What were its principal events?** What two expeditions against Canada were planned? What were the results? When did King George's War begin? End? By what name was it known in Europe? What were its principal events? What territory was added to American possessions of England by this war? What peace treaty ended King William's War? Queen Anne's? King George's?

REVIEW OUTLINE.

INTER-COLONIAL WARS.

- *1689-1697, King William's.* — War of the English Succession.
 - *1689, Dover (N. H.) Massacre.*
 - *1690,*
 - *Schenectady (N. Y.) Massacre.*
 - *Salmon Falls (Me.) Massacre.*
 - *Colonial Congress at New York.*
 - *Canadian expedition* — *Phips.*, *Winslow.*
 - *1697,*
 - *Haverhill (Mass.) Massacre.*
 - *Peace Treaty of Ryswick.*
- *1702-1713, Queen Anne's.* — War of the Spanish Succession.
 - *1704, Deerfield (Mass.) Massacre.*
 - *1710, Port Royal (N. S.) taken.*
 - *1711,*
 - *Quebec expedition,* — *Walker.*, *Hill.*
 - *Montreal expedition,* (*Nicholson*).
 - *1713, Peace Treaty of Utrecht.*
- *1744-1748. King George's.* — War of the Austrian Succession.
 - *1745, Capture of Louisburg,* — *Pepperel.*, *Warren.*
 - *1748, Peace Treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle.*

SEARCH QUESTIONS.

Who was Hannah Dustin? What is the difference between a rebellion and a revolution? From what country was William, Prince of Orange? What college was endowed in America by English monarchs? What great architect drew the plan of the building? What colonial governor signed a death warrant while intoxicated? Whom did the Iroquois call Quider?

CHAPTER VII.

Colonial Quarrels — English and Spanish.

The Spaniards of Florida proved very troublesome neighbors to the early settlers of South Carolina, and subsequently to those of Georgia. In the War of the Spanish Succession Spain and France were arrayed on the same side, and while the English colonists of the north were engaged in hostilities with the French of Canada, those of the south directed their attention towards the Spaniards of Florida.

In the first year of the war (1702) GOVERNOR MOORE of Carolina, with twelve hundred colonists and Indian allies, proceeded against the Spanish fort of St. Augustine; but

finding it too strong, he was compelled to abandon the enterprise. A subsequent expedition against the Appalachian Indians, who were allies of the Spaniards, was completely successful.

The war between the parent nations continuing, a French and Spanish fleet, under LE FEBOURE, with more than a thousand men, attempted the capture of Charleston (1706). Nine hundred soldiers under COLONEL WILLIAM RHETT were mustered in its defence. The Spaniards demanded the surrender of the town, but GOVERNOR JOHNSON replied, "I hold this country for the Queen of England. My men will shed the last drop of their blood to defend it from the invader." The enemy landed troops at the three neighboring points of James Island, Wando Neck and Seawee Bay. The first force was driven off by CAPTAIN DRAKE; the second, numbering two hundred men, was captured by CAPTAIN CANTEY; and the third surrendered to CAPTAIN FENWICK. Meanwhile Colonel Rhett, with a little fleet, drove off the ships of the enemies.

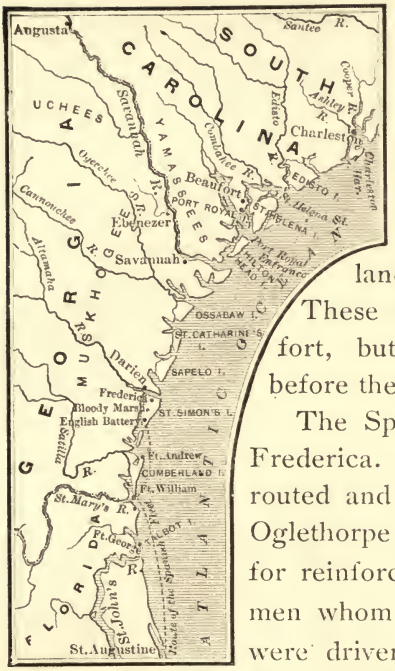
After the close of the war the ill feeling of the Spaniards manifested itself in harboring runaway slaves from South Carolina and inciting the Indians to hostility* At length the colony of Georgia was planted (1733), and it soon became evident that hostilities would break out anew. In 1739 war between England and Spain was declared.

Invasion of Florida.

Oglethorpe returned from England with his well-disciplined company of 600 men (see page 154), and as commander-in-chief of the Carolina and Georgia forces, was ordered to invade Florida. With 900 men, most of whom were friendly Indians, he appeared before St. Augustine (1740), but finding the fort more strongly fortified and garrisoned than he had anticipated, was compelled to return.

A formidable Spanish armament, consisting of fifty-six vessels and about seven thousand men, under MONTIANO, governor of St. Augustine, appeared off St. Simon's Bar (1742) with the intention of attacking FREDERICA.

*See Yamasee War, page 170



General Oglethorpe, governor of Georgia, had few forces under his command. His fort on St. Simon's Island made a gallant defense, but the enemy forced their way up the Altamaha River and landed five thousand men. These marched back to attack the fort, but Oglethorpe abandoned it before they arrived.

The Spaniards then advanced upon Frederica. A part of their force was routed and driven back some distance. Oglethorpe then hastened to Frederica for reinforcements. In his absence the men whom he had left upon the scene were driven back by the enemy under Don Antonio Barba; but a platoon and company of rangers, under Lieutenants McKay and Sutherland, wheeled aside in the retreat, and, concealing themselves in a grove of palmettoes, ambushed the pursuing Spaniards, whose victory was now turned to crushing defeat. This brilliant episode is called the Battle of Bloody Marsh.

Oglethorpe now prepared to make a night attack upon the main body of the enemy. In this he was thwarted by the desertion of one of his men to the Spaniards. Knowing that the weakness of his little army would be revealed to his enemies, Oglethorpe devised an expedient which successfully deceived the Spanish commander. A Spanish prisoner was liberated and given a sum of money to carry a letter to the deserter. This letter pretended to convey instructions to him, thus making it appear that his desertion was feigned for the

purpose of misleading the Spaniards. He was instructed to make the Spaniards believe that the English were weak, to induce them to make an attack upon what was represented to be the impregnable position of the English. Failing in this he was to endeavor to detain them in those parts for three days longer, when a powerful fleet and force from Charleston would arrive.

As intended, this letter fell into the hands of Montiano, and puzzled that commander greatly. The deserter was looked upon as a spy. A council of war advised immediate retreat, and three vessels, coming in sight off the bar, gave such a semblance of truth to the statement concerning reinforcements that the Spaniards hastily embarked, and in the panic to escape, abandoned a great quantity of their military stores.

The success of Oglethorpe in this campaign was indeed remarkable. With his handful of men, numbering but little more than six hundred, he had defeated and baffled a well-equipped army of five thousand, destroyed some of their best troops, captured provisions, ammunition and military stores, and saved Georgia and Carolina from formidable invasion.

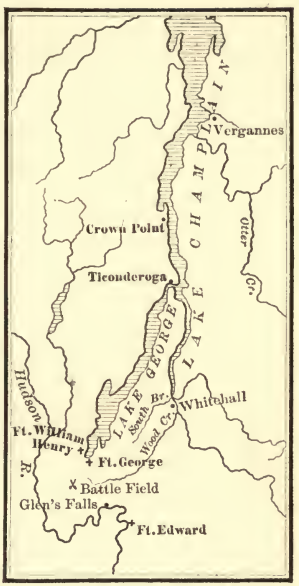
QUESTIONS.

What troublesome neighbors had the southern English colonies? **What do you know of Moore's invasion of Florida?** What expedition was more successful? Who attempted the capture of Charleston? Who defended the city? What reply did Governor Johnson make to the demand for surrender? **What four successes had the English?** How did the Spaniards show their ill feeling after the war? When did the next war between English and Spanish colonies occur? **What do you know of Oglethorpe's invasion of Florida? What do you know of the Spanish invasion of Georgia?** Who won the victory of Bloody Marsh? **What can you say of Oglethorpe's strategy in deceiving the Spaniards? What were the results of Oglethorpe's campaign?**

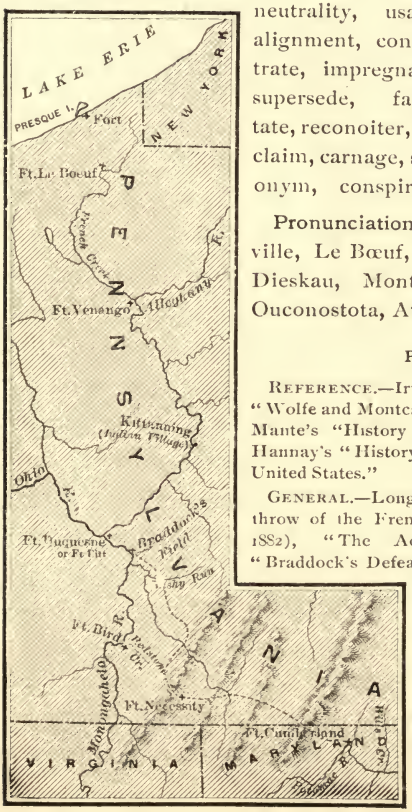
PREPARATORY NOTES.

TO CHAPTERS VIII, IX, X, XI AND XII.

Geography.—In what part of Virginia is Williamsburg? Note the position of Fort Cumberland. Fort Pitt. Trace upon a map a journey from Fort Cumberland to Fort Le Bœuf, on French Creek. Note the physical features of this region such as mountains, rivers, etc. In what part of New York is the Niagara River? Crown Point? Ticonderoga? Oswego? Where is Louisburg? Quebec? Montreal? Kingston (Fort Frontenac)?



Definition of Words. — Subsequent, destined, ratification, centralization, rallied, neutrality, usages, alignment, concentrate, impregnable, supersede, facilitate, reconoiter, disclaim, carnage, synonym, conspiracy.



Pronunciation of Names.—Du Quesne, Jumonville, Le Bœuf, Contrecœur, Beujeu, Boishebert, Dieskau, Montcalm, De Vitré, Prideaux, Ouconostota, Attakullakulla.

PARALLEL READINGS.

REFERENCE.—Irving's "Life of Washington," Parkman's "Wolfe and Montcalm," Parkman's "Conspiracy of Pontiac," Mante's "History of the Late War in North America," Hannay's "History of Acadia," Trumbell's "History of the United States."

GENERAL.—Longfellow's "Evangeline" (poem), "Overthrow of the French Power" (Harper's Magazine, June, 1882), "The Acadian Tragedy" (Id., Nov., 1882), "Braddock's Defeat" (Magazine of American History, Nov. 1886), "Fall of Fort Du Quesne" (Id., April, 1887) Spark's "Life of Washington," Frost's "Life of Washington," E. E. Hale's "Life of Washington."

TOPICAL.—"George Washington, Life of," "Fort Du Quesne," "Braddock," "Louisburg, capture of," "Quebec," "Acadians, The," "Wolfe," "Montcalm," "Amherst," "Treaty of Paris" (first), "Cherokee War," "Pontiac's War."

THE STRUGGLE FOR SUPREMACY.

CHAPTER VIII.

A Youth and His Mission.

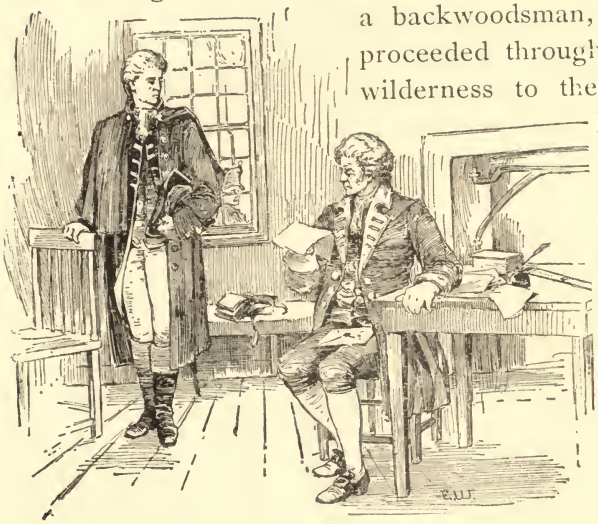
The inter-colonial wars were but forerunners of a struggle that was inevitable. When the claims of France, Spain, and England to territory in the New World were established, a general ignorance prevailed concerning the interior and extent of the American continent. Subsequent explorations brought a more extended knowledge. It was soon evident that these claims conflicted. Colonial jealousy and territorial disputes were thus engendered.

The claims of France to the valleys of the Ohio and Mississippi Rivers conflicted with several grants made by England to her colonies, of territory extending from ocean to ocean. As the eastern portion of Virginia became populated, the settlement of her territory west of the Alleghanies came to be considered. The period following King George's War was one of great activity. The OHIO COMPANY, consisting of Virginia and Maryland gentlemen, was organized (1748), and to this company was granted a large tract of land in the region known as the GREAT WOODS, lying between the Kanawha and Monongahela Rivers. The company immediately proceeded to develop it, and sent out surveyors preparatory to making settlements. The French, however, had already begun to occupy the region with troops. They manifested their hostility by seizing and imprisoning, in their fort at PRESQUE ISLE, on Lake Erie, three English traders.

GOVERNOR DINWIDDIE, of Virginia, determined to send a formal protest against French intrusion upon Virginia territory, and he selected for the mission MAJOR GEORGE WASHINGTON, a young man, destined to leave an indelible impress on his country's history. Though Washington was then but

twenty-one years of age, he had already become distinguished for those qualities of courage, ability, and judgment that were afterwards to render him famous.

Washington set out from Williamsburg, and joined by a backwoodsman, named GIST, proceeded through the unbroken wilderness to the French fort, LE BŒUF, on French Creek, fifteen miles south of Lake Erie. Here he was politely received by the French commandant. Dinwiddie's message was delivered, but the French firmly declined to withdraw.



WASHINGTON AND THE FRENCH COMMANDANT.

The report that Washington brought back, aroused the Virginians to activity. The Assembly immediately provided for the raising of an army, and Washington, now colonel, set off with two companies (April, 1754). Upon his journey to the French he had noted a desirable location for a fort at the junction of the Alleghany and Monongahela Rivers, and to build one he dispatched a detachment in advance. This detachment was driven off

Washington's Return.

Washington returned by way of VENANGO, the French fort at the mouth of French Creek. His journey was made in the dead of winter, and was marked by many dangerous incidents. While crossing a river on a rude raft, he was precipitated into its icy flood, and narrowly escaped drowning. He was shot at by an ambushed savage, but again escaped. His horse having given out, he was compelled to perform much of the return journey on foot. He arrived at Williamsburg after having been gone eleven weeks.

by the French, who completed the fort and called it Du Quesne.

Washington, informed of the proximity of the French by Half-King, a friendly Indian, threw up entrenchments, and advancing, surprised a force under Jumonville, killed their leader, and took nearly all prisoners. Learning that reinforcements were approaching from Fort Du Quesne, he fell back to his entrenchments, which he strengthened and called Fort Necessity.

The French soon appeared with a superior force before Fort Necessity, and, his ammunition having given out, Washington decided to accept the honorable terms of surrender offered him. The Virginians were permitted to withdraw with all their effects, and, unmolested, they marched back to Virginia.

Franklin's Plan of Union.

The British government saw the necessity of concerted action on the part of the English colonies in the approaching struggle, and recommended a union for common defence. Delegates met at Albany, N. Y. (1754), entered into a league with the Iroquois Indians, and considered a plan of union, drawn up by Benjamin Franklin, one of America's greatest thinkers. The plan was favored by all the delegates except those from Connecticut; but, when submitted to the king and to the various colonial assemblies for ratification, it was rejected by both, and, curiously enough, for the same reason. The plan provided for the organization of a general government over all the colonies, consisting of a President-General, appointed by the crown, and a Grand Council, chosen by the Colonial Assemblies. King and colonists each thought the other would have too much power should the centralization of authority as proposed go into effect. Thus early did England behold a danger in the united action of her dependencies, and the colonists evince a reluctance to delegate governmental power to authorities without the borders of each respective colony.

QUESTIONS.

Of what were the intercolonial wars forerunners? **What do you know of the conflicting claims of the French and English?** What was the Ohio Company? What grant was made to it? Why did Dinwiddie dispatch a messenger to the French? Who was this messenger? Who accompanied him? How was he received? What was the result of his mission? What do you know of his return journey? **What effect had the report brought back by Washington upon the Virginians?** Name four French forts in the disputed territory. Who was sent out against the French? **Tell what you know of Washington's campaign? What do you know of Franklin's plan of union?** To whom was it unsatisfactory? Why?

CHAPTER IX.

The Old French War.

Thus far, the contest had been between Virginia and the invaders of the Ohio territory but it was soon seen that general war was about to ensue. The mother countries rallied to the support of their respective colonies. SIR EDWARD BRADDOCK, with two regiments, was sent to Virginia (January, 1755) to take charge of military operations as commander-in-chief, and the war, known as the FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR, formally opened. The governors of five colonies met in council, and three distinct campaigns were planned. One of these was against FORT NIAGARA, another against CROWN POINT and the third against FORT DU QUESNE.

The expedition against Fort Du Quesne ended in disastrous failure. The one against the French fort at the mouth of the Niagara River was abandoned as soon as GENERAL SHIRLEY, the leader of the expedition, heard of the Du Quesne failure. The expedition against Crown Point met with better success.

When the French learned of the contemplated advance

Expulsion of Acadians.

When Acadie was added to the English possessions in America, the Acadians were permitted to remain. They were a quiet, frugal, industrious people, and their settlements had greatly increased. They had persistently declined to take the oath of allegiance to England, and in the war now pending claimed neutrality. Their sympathies, however, were with their countrymen, and when this sympathy took the form of occasional aid and encouragement it became a matter of offence to the English. COLONEL MONCKTON with three thousand troops from Boston took possession of the Acadian forts about the Bay of Fundy, and upon pretense that the neutrality of the Acadians was false, that some of them had acted treacherously, and that to drive them into Canada would only strengthen the enemy, it was determined to remove them from the territory and distribute them among the English colonies. The removal of a part of them was accomplished in a manner unduly harsh, families being separated, and villages and farm buildings burned. More than three thousand were torn from their homes, forced on board British vessels, and carried away. Many escaped to the wilderness and were sheltered by the Indians. At one point, under BOISHEBERT, a gallant and effective resistance was made. Of those carried off many reached the French settlements on the lower Mississippi and remained permanently. Some few in time made their way back to their old homes.

upon this point, BARON DIESKAU, a brave German officer in the service of France, hastened to its defense. The English forces consisted of ill-equipped and inexperienced men from New York and New England. They were led by SIR WILLIAM JOHNSON, a man whose great influence with Indians caused a number of Mohawks, under their chief, HENDRICK, to join the expedition.

The opposing forces met at the head of LAKE GEORGE. An advance party of the English, under COLONEL WILLIAMS, was defeated, and, following up his advantage, the victorious Dieskau attacked the main body. Early in the engagement that ensued Johnson was wounded and the command fell to GENERAL LYMAN. The French were defeated, and Dieskau, severely wounded,



BRADDOCK AND CAPTAIN JACK.

Braddock's Defeat.

The expedition against Fort Du Quesne was undertaken by the commander-in-chief in person. The selection of Braddock was a most unfortunate one, possessed as he was of inordinate vanity, stubbornness and over-confidence in his own prowess and that of his British troops. His campaign preparations were very elaborate, and were based upon the most approved of European military usages. No arguments could convince him of the futility of regular military tactics against a foe that lurked in ambush and fought scattered behind trees and rocks. The advance into the enemy's country was made from Fort Cumberland, Maryland, with drums beating, flags flying, perfect alignments and beautiful display. Progress was slow, for the roads had to be built so that the imposing array could pass on unbroken.

Washington, with about one thousand colonial troops from Virginia, Maryland and New York, had joined the expedition. He was serving as aide-de-camp to the general. Little heeded were the cautions that past experience caused him to tender. A celebrated woodsman, named CAPTAIN JACK, offering to lead the advance with his rangers, so as to guard against surprise, met with a haughty refusal from the English general. Precautions were for inexperienced colonial troops, but British regulars were invincible.

The result was as might have been anticipated. The movements of the English were watched all along by Indian scouts, and their progress reported to DE CONTRECŒUR, the

commandant at Fort Du Quesne. Upon their approach, a young and gallant French officer, named DE BEUJEU, sallied out with a force, arranged his men advantageously in ambush, and when the English came up poured into them a deadly fire that threw them into confusion. Little then did scientific tactics avail. Braddock was mortally wounded, his army routed and the total destruction of the whole expedition was prevented only by Washington, who, with his Virginians, covered the rear of the retreating and demoralized army, and fought the enemy according to his own method. Thus ended in failure the Fort Du Quesne campaign.

fell into the hands of the English. After building FORT WILLIAM HENRY, near the scene of battle, the victorious army returned.

QUESTIONS.

Who was appointed commander-in-chief of the English forces in America? When did he arrive? What three campaigns were planned? What do you know of Braddock's expedition against Fort Du Quesne? What part did Washington take in Braddock's expedition? What do you know of the expedition against Fort Niagara? What do you know of the expedition against Crown Point? What were the results of the battles of Lake George? Why were the Acadians removed? What do you know of the expulsion of the Acadians? Who was De Contrecœur? De Beujeu? Dieskau? Shirley? Sir William Johnson? Colonel Monckton? Boishebert?

CHAPTER X.

England Victorious.

After the capture of Dieskau the command of the French fell to MARQUIS DE MONTCALM, one of the ablest and bravest officers that ever served in the armies of France. The fort built near OSWEGO by Shirley, upon his return from the Niagara expedition, was captured and destroyed (1756), and Fort William Henry, with a garrison of two thousand men, under COLONEL MOORE, was forced to surrender (1757).



MONTCALM.

Fort William Henry Massacre.

Permission to retire in safety had been granted the English garrison as one of the terms of surrender. Scarcely had they left the fort, in order to make their way to Fort Edwards, further south, when they were fallen upon in their defenseless condition by the Indians of Montcalm's army. A horrible massacre ensued. Montcalm and his officers did all in their power to stop the slaughter, but their efforts could not prevail against savage fury.

About this time a change in the English ministry brought to the head of British affairs a man of unusual ability in the person of WILLIAM PITT. Thenceforth the war was vigorously prosecuted. Arms and ammunition were dispatched to America, and skilled officers sent to train the colonial armies to expertness in the arts of war.

LORD LOUDON had succeeded BRADDOCK, and after an ineffectual attempt against Louisburg (1757), was superseded by GENERAL ABERCROMBIE. Expeditions were now planned against Louisburg, Ticonderoga, and Fort Du Quesne, and troops concentrated for these expeditions at Halifax, Albany, and Philadelphia respectively.

The expedition against Ticonderoga was led by Abercrombie. The fort had been rendered almost impregnable by Montcalm. An ill-timed assault was made upon it, in which the English suffered a terrible defeat, losing almost two thousand men. This was, however, the last important French victory of the war.

Capture of Fort Frontenac.

An expedition subordinate to Abercrombie's main enterprise was more successful. COLONEL BRADSTREET marched to Oswego and embarked for Fort Frontenac, which he succeeded in capturing after a two days' siege. Large quantities of stores and ammunition, designed for Fort Du Quesne, fell into the hands of the English. The subsequent capture of this fort was thus facilitated.

The operations against Louisburg were eminently successful. Invested for two months by a land and naval force under SIR JEFFREY AMHERST, the fortress finally surrendered, and six thousand prisoners were taken (July, 1758). Amherst next took command in New York, and Ticonderoga and Crown Point, after having been abandoned by the French, fell into his hands (1759).



SIR JEFFREY AMHERST.

The success of Amherst was followed by that of GENERAL PRIDEAUX at FORT NIAGARA (1759), the commander, however, losing his

life in the siege. The French were now greatly weakened. Little assistance was being received from the mother country. Driven at all points from the disputed territory, they took refuge in Canada. The English now determined to conquer this province.

Capture of Fort Du Quesne.

Meanwhile GENERAL FORBES, a gallant Scotch officer, had captured Fort Du Quesne. The French had gathered a large number of Ottawas, Jibewas, Wyandots and other Indians, and awaited his coming with boasts that they would serve him as they had served Braddock. Forbes was joined at different points by bodies of colonial troops, among whom were Colonel Washington and other Virginians. The progress of the English army was slow, but even this slowness proved advantageous, for many of the Indian allies of the French, weary of waiting, scattered to their homes and left the French greatly reduced in numbers. A reconnoitering party, sent forward under MAJOR GRANT, rashly attempted to surprise and capture the fort, but were driven back with great loss. Following up this victory a strong force under DE VITRE appeared before the principal encampment of the English and gave battle, but were repulsed. Forbes now advanced upon the fort, but on drawing near found only smoking ruins. The French had abandoned the field From the ashes of Fort Du Quesne sprang the present city of Pittsburg, so named in honor of the great English premier.

The fate of Canada depended on Quebec, the strongest fortress in America. Eight thousand men concentrated at Louisburg, and under GENERAL WOLFE, a gallant young officer, who had distinguished himself under Amherst at the siege of Louisburg, embarked for the St. Lawrence, bent upon its capture. Fortifications were erected upon the island of Orleans, just below the city, and the English batteries soon opened fire.

Far up the rugged heights that rose almost perpendicularly from the water's edge stood the principal fort, little affected by the bombardment. The skillful Montcalm was in charge of the French defenses, and the siege bid fair to be interminable. An English assault was repulsed. At last the young commander found it necessary to resort to desperate measures. In one of his reconnoiterings he had noticed a rough, partly hidden



GENERAL WOLFE.



WOLFE'S ARMY ASCENDING THE HEIGHTS.

path leading to the top of the heights, where the PLAINS OF ABRAHAM, above the city, spread out.

In the darkness of the night he embarked his men, and dropped silently down the river to the foot of the path. By great good fortune the difficult ascent was made, and in the morning the English were in battle array upon the plains.

There remained to the French nothing but to come out and give battle. The opposing forces were about equal in number, and the contest was fiercely waged. Both commanders displayed the highest valor, and both fell mortally wounded. The English were successful, the French taking refuge in the city, which soon after surrendered (1759).

The power of France in the New World was now extinct. The surrender of MONTREAL soon followed that of Quebec. The treaty that terminated hostilities was signed at Paris (1763). By this treaty France ceded all her territory in America to Spain and England, except two small islands south of Newfoundland.

Spain received all that portion lying west of the Mississippi, and that part of the present State of Louisiana, lying on the east bank, south of Lake Pontchartrain. England received Canada and all the French territory east of the Mississippi. By a special grant from Spain, Florida was also ceded to England.

QUESTIONS.

Who succeeded Dieskau as commander of the French? What successes had he? What do you know of the massacre of Fort William Henry? Who was William Pitt? Who had succeeded Braddock? By whom was Loudon succeeded? What three expeditions were planned? What do you know of Abercrombie's defeat? What do you know of the fall of Fort Frontenac? What victories were gained by Amherst? When? What do you know of the capture of Fort Du Quesne? Who took Niagara? When? What was now the condition of the French? Who was sent against Quebec? Why? What do you know of the siege of Quebec? Of the battle of Abraham Heights? What city fell after the capture of Quebec? What treaty terminated hostilities? When was this treaty made? What territory did Spain receive by this treaty? England?

REVIEW OUTLINE.

ENGLISH SUCCESSES IN ITALICS.

- THE OLD FRENCH WAR. (French and Indian War.)
 - *Preliminary*
 - *1753, WASHINGTON'S JOURNEY.*
 - *1754*
 - FORT DU QUESNE BUILT.
 - *BATTLE OF GREAT MEADOWS.*
 - FORT NECESSITY SURRENDERED.
 - *Objective Points of the War.*
 - *Fort Du Quesne.*
 - 1755, BRADDOCK'S DEFEAT.
 - *1758, TAKEN BY*
 - *FORBES.*
 - *WASHINGTON.*
 - *Fort Niagara.*
 - 1755, SHIRLEY'S FAILURE.
 - 1756, OSWEGO TAKEN.
 - *1759, TAKEN BY PRIDEAUX.*
 - *Ticonderoga and Crown Point.*
 - *1755.*
 - FIRST BATTLE OF LAKE GEORGE.
 - *SECOND BATTLE OF LAKE GEORGE.*
 - 1757, FT. WILLIAM HENRY TAKEN.
 - *1758,*
 - ABERCOMBIE DEFEATED.
 - *FORT FRONTENAC TAKEN.*
 - *1759, TAKEN BY AMHERST.*
 - *Louisburg.*
 - *1755, ACADIANS EXPELLED.*
 - 1757, LOUDON'S FAILURE.
 - *1758, TAKEN BY*
 - *AMHERST.*
 - *WOLFE.*
 - *Quebec.*
 - *1759.*
 - *BATTLE OF ABRAHAM HEIGHTS.*
 - *TAKEN BY WOLFE.*

SEARCH QUESTIONS.

What was the name of the French commandant to whom Washington delivered his message? What fort was captured through a game of ball? What were Wolfe's last words? Montcalm's? What was Wolfe's favorite poem? What islands near Newfoundland now belong to France? What was the fate of Pontiac? Where is the "Gibralta of America," and why so called? Who fired the first gun in the French and Indian war? What three regicide judges took refuge in America? Who was Simon Girty?

CHAPTER XI.

Ouconostota and Pontiac.

As the French War drew to a close there arose in the South one of the most fiercely contested Indian wars that ever laid waste any portion of the United States. The Cherokees had long been friends of the English, and assisted them in the war against the French. A party of young warriors, returning from the capture of Fort Du Quesne through the backwoods of Virginia, having lost their own horses, appropriated some that were roaming at large, apparently ownerless. These Indians were followed and treated as marauders. Fourteen were shot, and many others were made prisoners.

This affair was reported to the Cherokee nation, and contrary to the advice of the older men, a band of young braves took the war path, and committed such depredations upon the Carolina frontier that GOVERNOR LITTLETON summoned a force and proceeded against them. Thirty-two chiefs and headmen of the tribe waited upon the governor and disclaimed the acts of the depredators. Wise management upon his part would now have averted the terrible war that followed. The chiefs were haughtily received, were forced to accompany the expedition, and when Fort Prince George, upon the Savannah, three hundred miles from Charleston, was reached, were thrown into prison.

Here ATTAKULLAKULLA, the wisest man of the Cherokee nation and life-long friend of the English, appeared, and by his eloquence, effected a treaty and the liberation of a number of the chiefs. The remainder were detained as hostages until a like number of the young depredators should be given up.

One of the liberated chiefs was OUCONOSTOTA, a man who wielded great influence over the tribe. Smarting under the indignities imposed upon him while under arrest, he sought personal vengeance, and, drawing forth CAPTAIN COTYMORE from the fort by stratagem, killed him. For this the hostages, twenty-two in number, were mercilessly put to death.

The whole nation now rose, and a terrible period of carnage ensued. COLONEL MONTGOMERY and twelve hundred men were sent from Amherst's army at the north (1760) to assist the Carolinians. Montgomery captured several villages, but was so persistently harassed that he gladly abandoned the enemy's country.

Amherst, again appealed to, sent COLONEL JAMES GRANT, who took the field with twenty-six hundred men. As he advanced the Cherokees made the most ferocious assaults upon his troops, all of which he repulsed. Grant taught the Indians a terrible lesson. He burned fourteen of their towns, destroyed their fields and laid waste their territory. For many a day his name remained with them a synonym of destruction. Many joined Attakullakulla in suing for peace, and a treaty was made.

In the settlement of the territorial dispute between France and England the rights of the Indians were entirely ignored. One by one the French forts were relinquished; but no sooner had the English entered upon their hard-earned possessions than they found confronting them a question of ownership other than what had been decided with France.

PONTIAC, the powerful chief of the Ottawas, beheld with resentment the transfer of his domain to the English. Possessed of ability rarely met with in an Indian, he planned and organized one of the greatest Indian conspiracies ever formed against the whites. Eight of the twelve forts acquired from the French fell into his hands. Detroit escaped surprise by the merest accident, and made an effectual resistance. Several of the forts were captured by stratagem.

The war fomented by Pontiac continued for three years, and the power of the confederacy was broken only by most vigorous measures upon the part of the English. The treaty that ended the war was signed at Oswego (1766) by a number of chiefs, assembled for the purpose, and by SIR WILLIAM JOHNSON on the part of the English.

Battle of Bushy Run.

The same barbarities that characterize every Indian war were practiced in this. The settlements of northwest Virginia and western Pennsylvania suffered most severely. In the early part of the contest Fort Pitt was besieged, but COLONEL HENRY BOGUET marching from Philadelphia to its relief, defeated the Indians at the battle of Bushy Run (1763).

QUESTIONS.

What was the cause of the war with the Cherokees? How did Governor Littleton deal with the Indians? **What do you know of Attakullakulla?** What revengeful act did Ouconostota commit? What resulted from it? Whom did Amherst send to assist the Carolinians? **What do you know of Montgomery's campaign?** Whom did Amherst next send? **What do you know of Grant's campaign?** What Indian chief resented the transfer of territory to the English? **What do you know of Pontiac's conspiracy?** How many forts fell into his hands? **What do you know of the battle of Bushy Run? Where, when, and by whom was the treaty of peace signed?**

PREPARATORY NOTES.

Definition of Words.—Relinquishment, transmit, devising, staple, resources, lucrative, restrict, sectional, assigned, industrial, antagonism, exert, culminating, wreak, disposition, regicide, tendency, institute, hospitality, impart, acquisition, mature, indelible.

PARALLEL READINGS.

REFERENCE. — Coffin's "Old Times in the Colonies," Cook's "Virginia," Eggleston's "Household History of the United States," Gilman's "History of the American People."

GENERAL. — Thackeray's "Virginians" (fiction), "Second Generation of Englishmen in America" (Harper's Magazine, July, 1883), Bliss' "Colonial Times on Buzzard's Bay," "The Fairfaxes of Yorkshire and Virginia" (Magazine of American History, March, 1885).

TOPICAL. — "Colonial Life," "First College," "First Printing Press," "Plantation Life," "Farm Life," "New England Fisheries," "Ship Building," "Colonial Money," "Colonial Governments," "Pirates," "West Indie Trade."

THE THIRTEEN ENGLISH COLONIES.

CHAPTER XII.

Colonial Progress.

The French and Indian War rendered the English power in America supreme. Its bearing upon the development of the English colonies was of the highest importance. Drawing the colonies together in a common cause, it had taught them the benefits of united action, and had brought them into closer acquaintanceship with each other. The men of the colonial armies had learned from the experienced officers sent from England many a valuable lesson in the art of war that was shortly to serve them to good purpose, and repeated success had inspired them with confidence in themselves.

The cession of Canada to the English insured security to the northern frontier. The relinquishment of French forts and posts in the Ohio and Mississippi valleys removed the barriers that at one time opposed the expansion of the colonies westward. The conquest of the Indians of the South and West cleared the way for the pioneer who was soon to make his way across the Alleghanies.

Greatly had the colonies increased in population since the time when a few struggled for existence upon the banks of the James. They now numbered almost three millions.

This population had all the elements of strength. It had been drawn from the liberty-loving of all Europe. Land in America was easily to be had. In Europe it was owned and controlled for the most part by the higher and titled classes. The inducements offered to the enterprising and industrious in the way of lands and homes and undisturbed possession of the fruits of their own labor were many. The tide of immigration that set in from Europe has not ceased to this day.

Colonial Governments.

One by one the colonies of England had been planted along the Atlantic coast, and had finally grouped themselves into thirteen colonial organizations, each separate and distinct from the others in its relation to the mother country. Under the different grants, relinquishments and purchases there had come to exist three forms of colonial governments. Virginia, New York, New Jersey, North Carolina, South Carolina, New Hampshire, and Georgia were ROYAL PROVINCES, whose governors were appointed by the king. Laws were made by a legislative body consisting of two houses, the upper one of which was appointed by the king; the lower, elected by the people. Maryland, Pennsylvania and Delaware were PROPRIETARY colonies, the proprietors exercising appointive powers similar to that of the king. Massachusetts, Connecticut and Rhode Island were CHARTER colonies, and under their charters enjoyed many of the privileges of self-government, such as the choosing of their own governors.

Life in a new region is always one of privation and hardships. Many a lesson of courage, perseverance, and endurance is to be learned of those who first came and wrested from the American wilderness permanent abiding places for themselves and their posterity. In the generations that followed them we see their traits of character transmitted and exhibiting themselves, when called into activity by love of liberty, right and country.

First to confront the early colonists were the problems of food and shelter. At first their dwellings were rude affairs. Sometimes they were patterned after the barked hut of the savage; sometimes constructed of logs taken from the trees felled in clearing the land for cultivation. The furnishings were few, and the conveniences for housekeeping fewer still. Rude platters and bowls of wood often took the place of

dishes, and the few utensils brought from the mother country served more purposes than one.

But time brought many improvements. The sawmill was introduced at an early day, and neater structures replaced the cabins of the first settlers. Cattle, hogs, and horses were brought from Europe, and American farm-life became comfortable and prosperous. The natural resources of the country were developed in the several lines of agriculture, commerce and manufactures. Those colonies whose staple products became profitable articles of export, accumulated wealth very rapidly, and the luxuries of life soon made their appearance.

In those days of slow sailing, voyages to and from Europe consumed much time. The colonists to a greater or lesser extent were thrown upon their own resources for many articles of convenience. The necessity of making, originating, devising, and substituting frequently arose, and the spirit of invention, since become so distinctively American, was thus incited to activity.

QUESTIONS.

What bearing had the French and Indian war upon the development of the English colonies? What taught the colonists the benefits of united action? What valuable lessons were learned by the men of the colonial armies? **What effect had the cession of Canada on the prosperity of the colonies? The relinquishment of the western posts? The conquest of the western and southern tribes?** To what extent had population increased? What inducements did America offer to the liberty-loving of Europe? What is the condition of life in a new region? **What traits of character were transmitted to the descendants of the first settlers?** What problems were first encountered? What was the nature of the first dwellings? Furnishings? Conveniences? What improvements were made? **What advanced American farm life?** What branches of industry were developed? **How was the spirit of American invention incited to activity? What do you know of colonial governments?** How many kinds were there? Describe each?

CHAPTER XIII.

The Beginning of American Industries.

Among the first industries developed in the New World were those pertaining to agriculture. Many were the attempts of the early colonists to cultivate successfully products for export sufficiently staple to command at all times that revenue without which no colony could hope to attain material prosperity. Silk raising, wine making, hemp growing and several other agricultural enterprises were attempted, but in none of them was any degree of success attained.

Virginia was the first to solve the problem with the tobacco plant. The first to experiment successfully with it was John Rolfe, the husband of Pocahontas. The Virginia colonists soon found that with methods of cultivation superior to those employed by the Indians, the quality and yield was greatly improved. Little by little, the best method of curing the leaf became perfected, and at an early day a rigid system of inspection was instituted, that permitted only the best quality to be exported. Virginia tobacco came into great demand in the markets of the world, and as early as 1736 more than twenty-five thousand tons of shipping were required to transport the crop. The industry spread to North Carolina and Maryland, where it was carried on with like success.

The early Carolina colonists found sources of great wealth in the immense pine forests that covered that part of the country. Tar, pitch, rosin, turpentine, and lumber were produced in abundance, and a lucrative trade sprung up with the West Indies. The introduction of rice culture into South Carolina marked an era in the development of that colony. In 1696 Thomas Smith obtained some seed rice from the island of Madagascar, planted it, and made the discovery that it did best upon marshy ground.



EARLY AMERICAN COINS.

Plantations were laid out along the rivers and the rice industry assumed immense proportions. In the years following the French and Indian War the exportation reached nearly seventy million pounds. Charleston soon became a center of wealth and refinement, and, with a population of fifteen thousand, stood fifth in size of the American cities. Indigo was also cultivated with great success.

A limited quantity of cotton was raised in the Southern States; but the difficulty of separating the lint from the seed restricted its cultivation. Inventive talent had not yet devised the ingenious contrivance that was afterwards to make this the great staple of the South.

The agricultural resources of the Middle colonies were developed with great success. Here were numerous well-tilled small farms, whose thrifty owners would send their surplus products to markets and seaport towns. The admirable situation of Philadelphia drew to it the produce trade of all the surrounding country, and it soon became the largest city in America. For the same reason New York became an important center and ranked next in size.

In the development of their resources the people of the Northern colonies had much to contend with. Soil and climate to a great extent were found unsuited to the production with profit of any great agricultural staple, and little more was raised than was consumed at home. Hence, other pursuits soon claimed their attention. All along the coast were excellent fishing grounds, and much profit was found in the catching, curing and exporting of fish. The New England fisheries were rapidly built up and soon became famous. With the growth of the fisheries came the building of fishing vessels, which led to development of ship building interests. New England-built vessels were sent to many parts of the world and sold with their cargo.

Colonial Money.

In the early days trade was a matter of exchange and barter. In Virginia tobacco took the place of money; in South Carolina rice served the same purpose. In the Indian trade leaden bullets and peculiar species of shells strung together, called by the Indians wampum, were used. With the systematic storing of carefully inspected tobacco in Virginia warehouses came the employment of certificates of ownership of stated quantities, which was a great advance upon the system of having the tobacco change hands. The necessity of a medium of exchange caused the colonists to use many foreign coins, particularly those of Spain, which came by way of the West Indies. An attempt was made by Virginia in 1645 to establish a mint. Massachusetts in 1651 was more successful, and among its earliest coins were shillings and sixpences, stamped with the device of a pine tree. Lord Baltimore established a mint in London for his Maryland colony about the year 1659. Paper money was issued by Massachusetts as early as 1690, and her example was soon followed by other colonies.

Much profit was found in trade with the Indians and in the coasting trade with other colonies. Many articles of con-

venience were made for the purpose of exchange, and manufactures would have rapidly developed but for the restrictive policy which England was pursuing at the time toward her American subjects. A regular exchange of commodities arose with the West Indies. The products of the sugar cane raised on those islands became most important imports.

Pirates.

The commerce of the colonies suffered greatly from the depredations of pirates. Vigorous and systematic measures to exterminate them had to be resorted to. After a desperate battle, TEACH, or BLACKBEARD, as he was called, was captured at Ocracoke inlet in 1718, by LIEUTENANT MAYNARD, who was sent for the purpose by Governor Spottswood of Virginia. Another, named STEED BURNETT, was captured with all his men by COLONEL WILLIAM RHETT of Charleston, and being found guilty, were all hanged. CAPTAIN KID, another famous American pirate, was captured, taken to London and executed.

QUESTIONS.

What colonial industry was first developed? What agricultural experiments failed? **What can you say of the development of the tobacco industry?** Why did Virginia tobacco come into great demand? What source of wealth had the Carolina colonists? **What can you say of the introduction of rice into South Carolina?** Why did not cotton become a staple product in colonial days? **How were the agricultural resources of the Middle colonies developed?** What can you say of Philadelphia? New York? With what had the Northern colonists to contend? **What industries were developed in New England?** What can you say of New England fisheries? Shipbuilding? Indian trade? Coasting trade? Trade with the West Indies? **What do you know of colonial money? Pirates?**

CHAPTER XIV.

The Development of Sectional Differences.

The first grant of American territory that led to permanent English colonization was a sectional one. By its terms the territory granted was divided into South Virginia and North Virginia, and assigned to the London Company and Plymouth Colony respectively. In the southern portion was planted first in point of time the colony of Virginia; in the northern, that of Massachusetts. Each of these colonies nat-

urally exerted an influence upon those that followed, and in time each represented, to a fair extent, the thought, development and progress of the respective sections.

Both received their first settlers from England, but the elements of population from which their immigrants were drawn were very unlike. The one was loyal to church and state, and came to Virginia as to another portion of their native country, carrying with them a pride in still being English subjects. The other was thoroughly dissatisfied with the condition of church and state in England, and came to Massachusetts as to another country, desiring to place themselves far enough beyond English jurisdiction to enable them to follow out their stern convictions without interference.

Industrial Differences.

North and South were attaining prosperity along different lines. The interests of the former lay in commerce, and, in time, in manufacture. Those of the latter, in agriculture. Pursuits and occupations re-act upon the life and character of a people. Hence, as the difference between the North and South became more marked in their industrial pursuits, so did this difference in the character of the people become. Had the interests of the two sections been alike, no antagonism could ever have arisen. But let an effort be made, either through the machinery of government or otherwise, to promote seemingly the interests of the one at the expense of the other, we see a natural and logical sequence from sectional difference thorough sectional antagonism to sectional conflict.

The two elements in England were opposed to each other, the opposition culminating in the Cavalier and Puritan conflict, known as the English Revolution (1642-'48). When King Charles I was driven from the throne and put to death, Cavalier Virginia sympathized with his followers and offered to many a refuge. When the son of the executed monarch ascended the throne and proceeded to wreak vengeance upon those concerned in the deposition and death of his father, Puritan Massachusetts held forth a place of safety, even, as it has been stated, affording a place of concealment to three of the regicide judges.

But antagonisms were not carried to the New World; for in time the colonists of both came to have many interests in common, to coöperate with and assist each other, to meet upon a common ground and regard each other as AMERICANS. But for many years vast wildernesses separated them, and, thrown upon its own resources, each developed its own characteristics. As industrial pursuits developed, these characteristics became sectional and manifested themselves particularly in the life and character of the people.

In the North, the tendency of life was to compactness. Small farms were grouped together into rural villages and cities, and towns sprung into existence up and down the coast. In the South, life assumed an entirely different character. The introduction of slavery rendered possible the cultivation of large tracts of land. The white population was thus scattered, and an absence of town life became noticeable. Many of the county seats of Virginia and North Carolina consisted but of a courthouse, a jail, an inn, and a store. At the close of the French War, Virginia contained the greatest number of inhabitants of all the colonies, and yet Norfolk, its largest town, had a population of only seven thousand, and in Williamsburg, its capital, there were but two hundred houses.

The necessity of education was early recognized in all the colonies. The compact settlements of the North made it possible to institute common or public schools. The first college in America was established at Cambridge, Mass. (1638), and the REV. JOHN HARVARD having bequeathed to it his books and half of his estate, the college took his name. The second was established at Williamsburg, Va. (1693), by REV. JAMES BLAIR, and, being endowed by the reigning sovereigns of England, it was named in their honor—WILLIAM AND MARY'S COLLEGE. The founding of Harvard College

was immediately followed by the introduction of the printing press, the first of which was set up at Cambridge (1639).

The wealth of Virginia increased very rapidly. The grand old manor houses became homes of culture and refinement, where hospitality was dispensed in a manner so lavish that traditions of it are handed down to this day. Earliest of all the colonies to become a royal province, it had received a number of governors from England, who brought with them, and imparted to the colonists, much of the polish, grace and courtliness that added so many charms to society in colonial Virginia.

Some few schools were established previous to the founding of William and Mary's College, but under the conditions that then existed, they were not numerous. Opportunities for the acquisition of knowledge were not lacking, however, for the intellectual development of this colony was marked. Among the Virginians who gathered at stated intervals at the county seat or the capital in the later colonial days, were some of the brightest minds that have adorned America. The development of legal talent in Virginia was remarkable, and when the learning and skill of the lawyer matured into the wisdom of the statesman, the world beheld with admiration a senate of peerless men that included Patrick Henry, Jefferson, Madison, Lee, Randolph, Pendleton and others, whose connection with the history of their country has immortalized their names.

QUESTIONS.

What do you know of the establishment of the Virginia and Massachusetts colonies? How did the colonists of each differ from the other? From what opposing elements of English population were they drawn? **What do you know of the English Revolution?** How were the antagonisms lost sight of in the New World? What separated the colonies from one another? What effect had this limited intercourse on each? **What was the difference between life in the Northern and in the Southern colonies?** What

necessity was early recognized? What do you know of the founding of the first American college? The second? The establishment of the first printing press? What can you say of colonial life in Virginia particularly? What opportunities were not lacking? How do we know? What group of great statesmen arose in colonial Virginia?

REVIEW QUESTIONS.

Name the Indian wars? What can you say of the relations between the French and the Indians? The English and the Indians? What do you know of King Philip's war? When and where was Graffenreid's colony established? Who was Handcock? What do you know of the Tuscaroras? The Natchez? What do you know of Bacon's Rebellion? Of the growth of liberty in Virginia? Salem Witchcraft? Name the three inter-colonial wars. Give cause of each. Principal events of each. What do you know of the Spanish troubles in the South? What events immediately preceded the French and Indian War? What do you know of the Ohio Company? Braddock's defeat? What engagements occurred in the French and Indian war in connection with Fort Du Quesne? Louisburg? Quebec? Fort Niagara? Ticonderoga and Crown Point? Name five English generals in this war and tell what each did. Four French. What part did young George Washington take in this war? Name four peace treaties between France and England. What war did each terminate? When was each signed? What do you know of the Cherokee war? Of Pontiac? Name and describe three forms of colonial governments. What do you know of the progress of the English colonies? Of the beginning of American industries? Of the differences existing between the sections in colonial times? Of colonial money? Pirates? First college? Second college? First printing press? What was the largest American city? Second in size? What development was remarkable in Virginia?

REVIEW EXERCISE.

(BIOGRAPHICAL.)

For method of using, see page 162.

Pepperel.	Le Feboure.	Barba.	Braddock.
Andros.	Berkley.	Burroughs.	Tituba.
Graffenreid.	Barnwell.	Alderman.	Spottswood.
Opitchipan.	Rolfe.	Sassacus.	Opecancanough.
King Philip.	Mason.	Uncas.	Massasoit.
Moore.	Craven.	De Chopart.	Perier.

Harvey.	Bacon.	Goodwin.	Mather.
Parris.	Cory.	Wardwell.	Willard.
Leisler.	Phips.	Warren.	Rhett.
Sutherland.	Dinwiddie.	Half-King.	Franklin.
Jumonville.	Boisehebert.	Amherst.	Monckton.
Lyman.	Johnson.	Montcalm.	Loudon.
Abercrombie.	Prideaux.	Forbes.	De Vitré.
Wolfe.	Littleton.	Pontiac.	Montgomery.
Ouconostota.	Grant.	Boquet.	Thos. Smith.
Burnett.	Kid.	Maynard.	Teach.
Harvard.	Blair.	Cantey.	McKay.

PREPARATORY NOTES.

TO CHAPTERS I, II AND III.

Definition of Words.—Restricted, subserving, evasion, engender, assail, inspire, discrimination, fundamentally, announce, impose, litigants, transcendant, inherit, reaffirm, dissolve, interpose, conservatively, memorial, protest, repeal, instigate, obnoxious, despotic, persistancy, pending, significance, empressment, alleged, violation, extortions, rebate, relinquishment, consignee, compliance, annul, concerted, unanimity, remote, impending, deliberation, repeal, grievances.

PARALLEL READINGS.

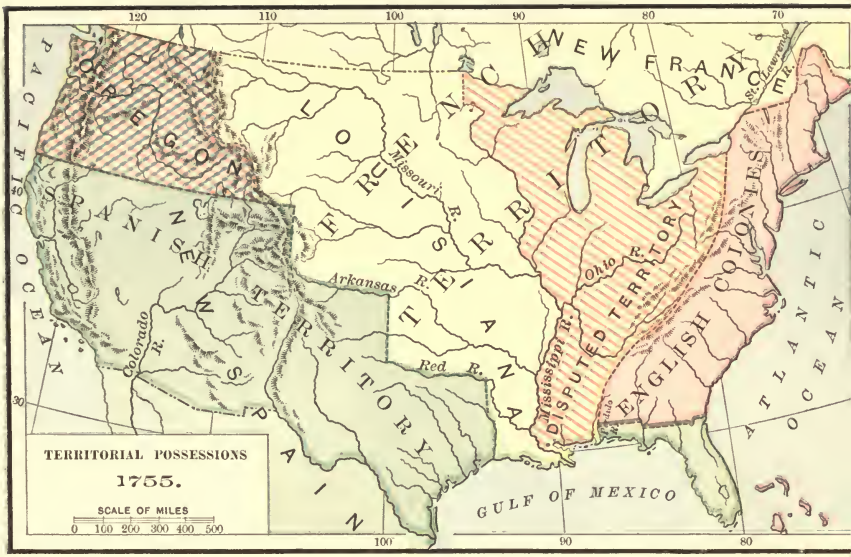
REFERENCE.—Tyler's "Patrick Henry," Hildreth's "History of the United States," Howitt's "History of the United States," Grahame's "Colonial History of the United States," Higginson's "History of the United States," Hosmer's "Samuel Adams."

GENERAL.—The "British Yoke" (Harper's Magazine, August, 1883), Lodge's "English Colonies," Greene's "Historical View of the Revolution," Fiske's "Beginnings of the American Revolution" (Atlantic Monthly, March, 1888), Fiske's "First Years of the Continental Congress" (Id., September, 1888), "First Crisis in the American Revolution" (Id., April, 1888), Arnold's "March to Canada" (Magazine of American History, February, 1885).

TOPICAL.—"Navigation Act," "Stamp Act," "Patrick Henry," "James Otis," "Christopher Gadsden," "American Revolution, Causes of," "Writs of Assistance," "Congress, Second Colonial," "George III, Character of," "Gaspee, Burning of," "Boston Tea Party," "Alamance, Battle of," "Boston Port Bill," "Committees of Correspondence," "Sons of Liberty."

NOTE.

The maps upon the opposite page should be examined in connection with those opposite pages 292 and 35, and the successive territorial changes by which the United States attained its present limits, noted.

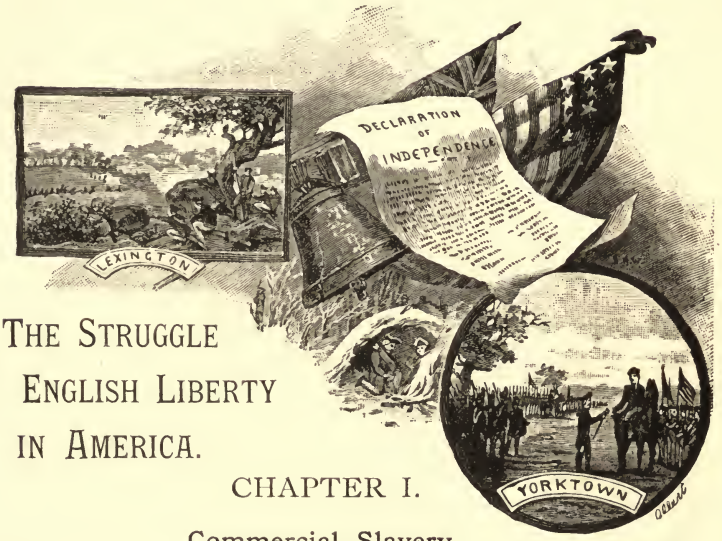




ENGRAVED FOR HANSELL'S HIGHER HISTORY OF THE

FOURTH PERIOD.

REVOLUTION.



THE STRUGGLE FOR ENGLISH LIBERTY IN AMERICA.

CHAPTER I.

Commercial Slavery.

THE improper and oppressive exercise of governmental power is tyranny. The setting aside of governmental authority is revolution. The one has often resulted from the other. We are now to consider an instance known in the world's history as THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION.

The policy of England toward her American colonies had long been a source of great dissatisfaction to the colonists. The governors sent to rule them were often tyrannical and, as often, dishonest. The laws made for their government took little consideration of their welfare, restricted their material advancement, and tended more and more to reduce them to a state of subserviency to the mother country.

NAVIGATION ACTS (1651) compelled the colonists to send

their products to England, and not to those markets of the world where better prices could be obtained. IMPORTATION ACTS (1733) placed heavy restrictions upon their commerce with the West Indies. American shipbuilding was discouraged, lest it should interfere with the interests of English shipowners. American manufactures were prohibited (1751), in order that the American market for English goods might not be affected. Even trade between colonies was limited as much as possible, so that each might deal directly with the mother country to the profit of English merchants.

The colonists did not yield perfect submission to these measures of oppression. The passage of an unjust law would be followed by evasions. Its enforcement would engender much ill feeling. As long as the French foe assailed them from the north, the colonists felt a certain dependence upon Great Britain. But that danger being removed, they could now consider more closely their relations to the mother country.

Two Centers of Political Thought.

Two centers of political thought were slowly crystallizing—the one in Virginia and the other in Massachusetts. An enunciation of political principles was to emanate from each, the successful maintenance of which was to mark an era in the progress of the human race. From these centers was to blaze forth the genius of such men as Patrick Henry and James Otis, of Thomas Jefferson and the Adamses, of Pendleton, Carr, Randolph, Lee, Hancock and Mason. These were to lead. Long-standing dissatisfaction was to culminate in a crisis. A step in all solemnity was to be taken by the American people, from the condition of being governed to that of governing. A transfer of sovereignty was soon to be made; and the principles of self-government were to be given to the world.



JAMES OTIS.

Moreover, a consciousness of power was rapidly developing with the increase of population. Success in the Indian and Inter-Colonial Wars had inspired self-confidence. The conditions of colonial life had from the first fostered a love of liberty. The spirit of American independence was of slow and natural growth, and the time was near at hand when oppression could no longer be submitted

James Otis and Writs of Assistance.

To better enforce the provisions of the Navigation and the Importation Acts authority was granted to colonial courts to issue WRITS OF ASSISTANCE (1761). These writs were official search warrants, empowering officers of the king to search private dwellings. Their issuance was eloquently opposed by JAMES OTIS in Massachusetts, and their execution was resisted at Boston and Salem. The public mind was greatly aroused. The eloquence of Otis made a deep impression. The question soon began to shape itself: "OUGHT AMERICANS SUBMIT TO LAWS IN THE MAKING OF WHICH THEY HAVE NO SHARE?"

The people of England were represented in the law-making body known as the HOUSE OF PARLIAMENT. The people of America were represented in law-making bodies of their own—the Colonial Assemblies. Those who took an advanced position upon political subjects maintained that the laws of each were only operative upon those who were represented in it.

to; when a discrimination between the Englishmen of America and the Englishmen of England could no longer go unquestioned; when the principles that underlie English civil liberty would have to be combated for upon American soil.

QUESTIONS.

What is tyranny? Revolution? **What grievances had the American colonies against England?** What were Navigation Acts? Importation Acts? What restrictions and prohibitions were placed on the colonies? What rendered the colonies less dependent upon England? **What was rapidly developing?** What effect had success in war on the colonists? The condition of colonial life? **What time was near at hand?** What do you know of the two colonial centers of political thought? What were writs of assistance? By whom were they opposed? **What question shaped itself in the public mind?**

CHAPTER II.

Unjust Taxation.

The lower house of Parliament is known as the House of Commons, and constitutes that portion of England's law-making body more directly representative of the people. The principle had already been established fundamentally in their government, that the people of England could not be taxed without their own consent; this consent is expressed by their representatives in the House of Commons.

Being Englishmen and free, the colonists had come to firmly believe that they, too, could not be taxed without

their own consent, and that this consent could only be expressed by the only law-making body in which they were represented—the Colonial Assembly. When, therefore, it was announced (1764) by GRANVILLE, Prime Minister of England, that a tax would be imposed upon the colonies, and that the imposition would come by act of Parliament and not by act of Colonial Assembly, a storm of indignation arose throughout the colonies.

The measure proposed was passed in 1765, and from the peculiar way in which the tax was to be collected it is known as the STAMP ACT. It was received with a burst of indignation throughout the colonies. Bells were tolled in Boston as for a dire calamity. In New York the act was printed and circulated under the heading, "*The Folly of England and the Ruin of America.*"

The Stamp Act.

Under provisions of the Stamp Act every legal document had to be executed upon stamped paper furnished by the British government. Every pamphlet, newspaper and almanac published in the colonies had to bear a stamp. The value of the stamps, all of which were to come from England, ranged from a half penny to six pounds.

It was claimed that the colonies should bear a portion of the expense incurred by England in the French and Indian War, and the imposition of this tax was ostensibly to that end. But the colonists had already borne more than their proportion, having raised, fed and clothed more than twenty-five thousand men. The injustice of the measure fell, therefore, with all the more force.

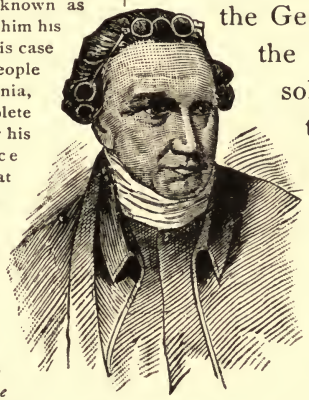
Every colony evaded and resisted the measure. Newspapers were printed, and the picture of a death's head took the place of the required stamp. Lawyers agreed to disregard the absence of stamps. No one would use them. Stamp officers were compelled to resign. In North Carolina COLONEL JOHN ASHE, speaker of the Colonial Assembly, declared that the people of that colony would resist the execution of the law to the death.

The first formal defiance came from Virginia. There had been elected to the Assembly from Louisa county a young lawyer named PATRICK HENRY. When the Assembly convened, this young orator introduced a series of resolutions

that have since become historical. The tenor of these resolutions was that Virginians had inherited all the rights of English subjects; that two charters had reaffirmed these rights; that the taxation of the people by themselves was a distinguishing characteristic of British freedom; and that the General Assembly of the colony had the sole right and power to levy taxes and impositions on the colonists.

Patrick Henry.

Patrick Henry was born at Studley, Hanover county, Virginia, May 29, 1736. He was chiefly instructed by his father, and after engaging in several occupations took up the practice of law, fitting himself for his professional duties in an unusually short space of time. His progress was at first slow; but a celebrated case, known as the Parson's Case, gave him his first claim to fame. In this case the litigants were the people and the clergy of Virginia, and Henry won a complete victory for the former by his transcendent eloquence against what appeared at the time to be hopeless odds. Henry was ever the friend of popular freedom, and did much to shape public sentiment and inspire the colonists in their resistance to English oppression. He it was who boldly uttered: "*If we wish to be free.....we must fight.....There is no retreat but in submission and slavery Our chains are forged. The war is inevitable and let it come.....Is life so dear and peace so sweet as to be purchased at the price of chains and slavery? Forbid it, Almighty God! I know not what course others may take, but as for me give me liberty or give me death.*" Henry became the first governor of the Commonwealth of Virginia. He died in 1799.



PATRICK HENRY.

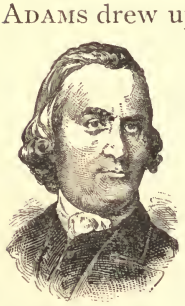
The boldness of these resolutions awakened a fierce debate. They were defended by Henry with an eloquence almost unparalleled in the history of American oratory, and were adopted. Governor Fanquier, exercising the power vested in royal governors, dissolved the Assembly; but the work was done. Virginia had given the signal to the continent, and the colonies quickly responded. A congress was proposed by Massachusetts. South Carolina promptly seconded the proposition, and sent her liberty-loving patriot son, CHRISTOPHER GADSDEN, to take part in the proceedings.

One year after its passage the Stamp Act was repealed (March 18, 1766), to the great joy of America. But with the repeal was passed a DECLARATORY ACT, asserting that Parliament had a right to make laws for the colonists in every case whatsoever, and the next year (1767), instigated by CHARLES TOWNSHEND, Chancellor of the Exchequer, a REVENUE ACT was passed, imposing a duty upon wine, oil and fruit, and upon tea, glass, lead, paper and paint.

The Stamp Act Congress.

The congress assembled in New York city October 7, 1765. All the colonies were represented except New Hampshire, Virginia and North Carolina, whose governors had interposed obstacles in the way of electing delegates. Resolutions of the same nature as those of Henry, but more conservatively worded, were adopted, and respectful memorials and protests to king and Parliament were drawn up. This congress is known as the Second Colonial Congress, or the STAMP ACT CONGRESS.

The same principle for which the colonists were contending was involved—NO TAXATION WITHOUT REPRESENTATION. The same strong opposition was awakened. SAMUEL ADAMS drew up the protests of Massachusetts. The Virginia Assembly denounced the Act. Again dissolved by the governor, it repaired to the Raleigh Tavern, near by, and continued to hold meetings.



SAMUEL ADAMS.

The colonists agreed to import nothing from England until obnoxious measures were repealed. The carrying out of this non-importation policy greatly affected the trade of the London merchants, and influence was brought to bear upon Parliament. The act was repealed, with the exception of the tax on tea. It was thought that surely the colonies would thus be placated, and the claimed right of Parliament be maintained. The tax was insignificant, but the contention was for a principle, not for a tax reduction, and a direct issue was made.

QUESTIONS.

What do you know of the House of Commons? What principle had been established in the English government? How are the people of England represented? How were the colonists? What measure caused great indignation? Why? When was it passed? What do you know of the Stamp Act? How was it received in America? How was it evaded? From what colony came the first formal defiance? What do you know of Patrick Henry? What resolutions were drawn up by him? What did Governor Fanquier do upon the adoption of these resolutions? What was proposed by Massachusetts? What do you know of the Stamp Act Congress? When was the Stamp Act repealed? What was the Declaratory Act? Revenue Act? What principle was involved? What opposition to these acts was encountered? What policy was pursued by the colonists? How did parliament seek to placate the colonies without receding from its claimed right of taxing?

CHAPTER III.

Agitation.

By the time GEORGE III assumed the crown of England (1760), the British people had come to be the freest in Europe. As the privileges enjoyed by subjects increased in number, despotic power on the part of kings diminished. It was the great ambition of this king to increase his power—to be a king in fact as well as in name. With this ambition went a dense ignorance of the character of his American subjects, and a stubborn persistency in adhering to a policy once formed. Thus it was that he instigated and authorized many measures that a wiser monarch would have avoided.

Significance of the Pending Contest.

The contest in which the colonists were now engaged was of deeper significance than many suppose. It was a contest upon American soil for English liberty. A great writer has said that it is impossible for a free people to govern despotically a dependent people without endangering their own freedom. The setting aside of the rights of the English in America would have prepared the way for the revoking of dearly-bought civil privileges of the English in England. Many wise statesmen recognized this, and there arose friends of America, such as PITT, BURKE, BARRE and others in Parliament, who opposed all oppressive measures. But the measures of the king, shaped by his ministry, generally prevailed.

The spirit of resistance throughout the colonies steadily grew in strength. The impressment of several citizens of

Boston as seamen by the British ship of war Romney; the seizure by a crew from the same vessel of the sloop Liberty, belonging to JOHN HANCOCK of Boston, for alleged violation of the revenue laws; the quartering of two regiments of soldiers (1768) in Boston to intimidate the people; the street conflict between these soldiers and citizens, known as the Boston massacre (1770), which resulted in the killing of four and wounding of seven of the latter; the capture and burning, by the colonists of Rhode Island, of the eight-gun schooner Gaspee (1772), that was engaged in oppressively enforcing the revenue act—all marked the progress of events to a crisis.

Battle of Alamance.

Resistance in North Carolina at one time reached open rebellion. The hardy farmers living in the back counties, goaded to desperation by the extortions and oppressions of officials, rose in revolt. An organization existed among these farmers, called the REGULATORS, who, to the number of about twelve hundred, engaged the royal Governor, TRYON, in a bloody conflict at Alamance (1771), in what is now Orange County. They were, however, repulsed with severe loss, and Tryon followed up the victory with many acts of cruelty.

The removal of all duties except that on tea did not mend matters. The colonists refused to import tea from England and smuggled it from Holland. The trade of English tea merchants was suffering greatly. The shrewd plan was devised of granting shippers a rebate upon tea sent to America. This rebate enabled the tea, despite the importation tax, to be sold there cheaper than in either England or Holland. Thus was the endeavor made to buy from the colonists the relinquishment of the one principle for which they were contending; but it availed little.

Ships loaded with tea set sail for the four ports—Boston, Philadelphia, New York and Charleston. Before their arrival a general plan of action was agreed upon. The consignees of Philadelphia, New York and Charleston resigned their commissions in compliance with the popular demand. The consignees at Boston refused to do so. The Massa-

chusetts colonists, headed by Samuel Adams, demanded that the tea-laden vessels in the port of Boston return to England. The demand not being complied with, a party of men, about fifty in number, disguised themselves as Mohawk Indians, took forcible possession of the vessels one night, and, tearing open the hatches, emptied the contents of three hundred and forty-two chests into the sea.

This act of the BOSTON TEA PARTY, as it was called, was liberally applauded throughout America. In England it was looked upon as riot and lawlessness, and awakened much anger. The Prime Minister, now LORD NORTH, determined to humble the Massachusetts colony, and show its people how all-powerful a government can be. The BOSTON PORT BILL (1774), closing up the port of Boston; the REGULATING ACT, annulling the charter of Massachusetts and destroying its free government; and acts providing for the quartering of soldiers in Boston, and prohibiting the trial in Massachusetts of any revenue officer, soldier or magistrate, for murder, were passed (1774). Thus was it that the northern colony was singled out to bear the brunt of English anger.

Committees of Correspondence.

The necessity of concerted action on the part of the colonies was for some time realized. The first step to this end was taken when young DABNEY CARR, a member of the Virginia Assembly, proposed in that body the organization of a committee to correspond with like committees of other colonies upon matters pertaining to the general welfare (March, 1773). The measure was supported by Patrick Henry and RICHARD HENRY LEE, and speedily met with favor in the other colonies. A system of inter-colonial committees of correspondence was therefore instituted, and the colonies were brought into close communication with each other. Thenceforth they were to act with unanimity. Massachusetts had already a similar plan in operation among her cities and towns.

But sympathy for suffering Boston poured in from all sides. Marblehead offered her wharves free of charge to the Boston merchants. Provisions and supplies in great abundance were sent overland from all colonies, even so remote a colony as South

Carolina making contributions. Warm words of encouragement went up from Virginia. Washington offered to equip, at his own expense, one thousand men and march to the relief of Boston if necessary. "An attack upon Massachusetts," said Henry, "is an attack upon Virginia." A day was set apart for fasting and prayer, to invoke the Almighty to avert the impending calamity to civil liberty.

The First Continental Congress.

An impulse was felt to come together for solemn consultation. Virginia directed her Committee of Correspondence to propose a general Congress of the colonies (May 27, 1774). This FIRST CONTINENTAL CONGRESS assembled at Philadelphia, in Carpenter's Hall (September 5, 1774). It was composed of the most eminent men the colonies produced, and, in average of ability and intelligence, had never yet been equaled by any representative gathering of which anything is known. PEYTON RANDOLPH of Virginia was chosen president. The deliberations of this body resulted in an agreement to have no intercourse with England until all offensive acts were repealed; in the issuance of addresses to the king, to the British people, and to the colonies, setting forth formally colonial grievances; and in the recommendation that another congress assemble in May following.

QUESTIONS.

What do you know of the character of George III? To whom was the pending contest important besides to Americans? **What steps marked the progress of events to a crisis? What do you know of the battle of Alamance?** How did the colonists meet the removal of all duties except that on tea? What shrewd plan was devised? Why? To what ports was tea shipped? What do you know of the Boston Tea Party? How was it regarded in America? In England? **What acts were passed to humble Massachusetts? What do you know of the organization of committees of correspondence?** What effect had these committees upon the colonies? **How did the other colonies show sympathy for Massachusetts? What do you know of the First Continental Congress?**

PREPARATORY NOTES.

TO CHAPTERS IV AND V.

Geography.—*Upon a map of Massachusetts note the position of:* Boston. Concord. Lexington. What direction from Boston is Lexington? What States border Massachusetts? Where are the Green Mountains? What direction from Boston is Ticonderoga, N. Y.? Note the nearness of Cambridge to Boston. Note upon a map of Maine the Kennebec River. Chaudiere. Where is Halifax? Note upon a map of South Carolina the position of Charleston. How would a vessel sail from Boston to Charleston?

Definition of Words.—Ensue, memorable, munitions, apprised, collision, disperse, concentrate, preside, assume, jurisdiction, unanimous, unerring, undisciplined, efficiency, allegiance, intercept, abet, inalienable, absolve, immunities, virtual, pronounced, concur, spurn, redress, precipitate, sovereignty, drafted, abolish.

PARALLEL READINGS.

REFERENCE.—Irving's "Life of Washington," Winsor's "Hand book of the Revolution," Lossing's "Field Book of the Revolution," Ramsey's "History of the American Revolution," Jefferson's "Declaration of Independence," Wilcox's "Mecklenburg Declaration of Independence" (Magazine of American History, January, 1889).

GENERAL.—Cooper's "Lionel Lincoln" (fiction), Longfellow's "Paul Revere" (poem), Coffin's "Boys of '76," Holmes' "Lexington" (poem), "Echoes of Bunker Hill" (Harper's Magazine, July, 1875), Hale's "Life of Washington," Cutter's "Life of Israel Putnam," Lawrence's "America in 1776" (Harper's First Century of the Republic), Lanier's "Battle of Lexington" (poem).

TOPICAL.—"Minute Men," "Paul Revere," "General Gage," "Lexington, Battle of," "Boston, Siege of," "Israel Putnam," "Ethan Allen," "Bunker Hill, Battle of," "Richard Montgomery," "Boston, Evacuation of," "Mecklenburg Declaration of Independence," "John Rutledge," "Virginia Bill of Rights," "Richard Henry Lee," "Thomas Jefferson," "Declaration of Independence."

CHAPTER IV.

Armed Resistance.

The people of Massachusetts resisted by force the operation of the Regulating Act. It was clearly foreseen that an armed conflict was about to ensue. Preparations went rapidly forward. Henry's memorable utterance, "*Liberty or Death*," became the watchword. Men armed and organized themselves in bodies, and took oath to be ready at a minute's warning. Stores and munitions of war were collected at various points. Apprised of these preparations, GENERAL GAGE, the military governor of Massachusetts, hastened to fortify the peninsula-neck of Boston.

A collision with the English troops soon took place. Determined to destroy some stores that were collected at Concord, near Boston, General Gage dispatched an expedition. The road to Concord lay through the little town of Lexington. At five o'clock in the morning the British forces



"* * Who is wounded? who is dead?
Seven are killed. My God! my God!
Seven lie dead on the village sod."
— Sidney Lanier.

entered this town and found opposed to them a company of one hundred and thirty "minute men" under CAPTAIN PARKER. They were ordered to diperse by MAJOR PITCAIRN of the British, and, not complying, fire was opened that compelled them to retreat (April 19, 1775). Seven of the minute men were killed.

Paul Revere.

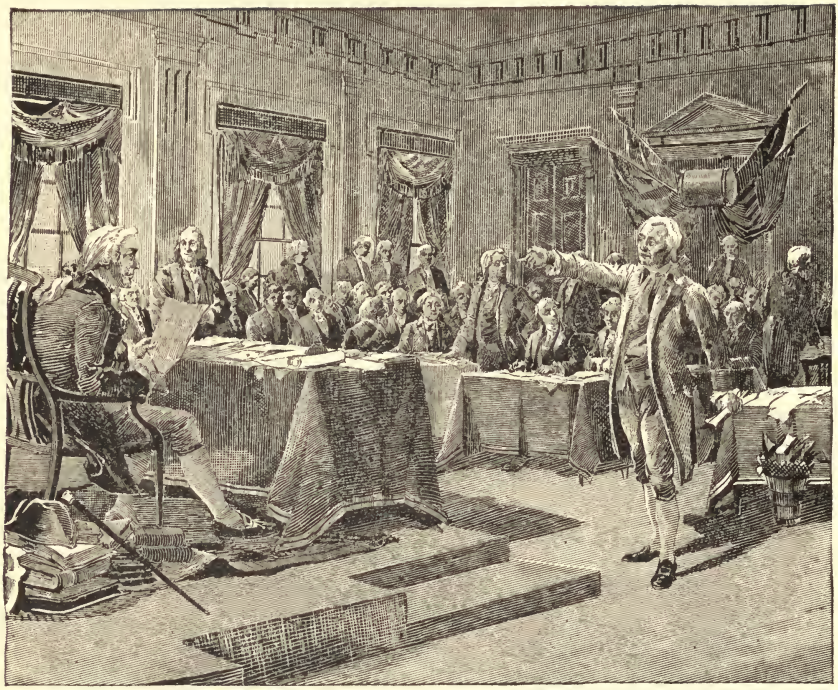
Gage endeavored to keep his Concord expedition a secret from the colonists, but the movements of the British were closely watched. The expedition set out in the night, but signal lights, hung in the tower of Christ Church, warned of their departure, and PAUL REVERE, waiting upon the other side, with his horse all bridled and saddled, set out immediately upon beholding the lights and gave timely warning of British approach.



PAUL REVERE WATCHING FOR THE SIGNAL.

The British went on to Concord, but much of the stores had been removed or successfully concealed, and little of the purpose of the expedition was accomplished. Meanwhile the country was aroused, and men from surrounding towns poured in with astonishing rapidity. The British, while searching the town, were attacked and compelled to retreat. The march back was one long struggle. The Americans, posting themselves along the road, poured volley after volley into the passing British. Thoroughly exhausted, and barely escaping capture, the expedition finally reached Boston after losing two hundred and seventy-three men.

Now, indeed, was the country aroused. Men from all the New England colonies concentrated rapidly about Boston. JOHN STARK came from New Hampshire, NATHANIEL



THE CONTINENTAL CONGRESS.

GREEN from Rhode Island, and BENEDICT ARNOLD from Connecticut, all leading to the scene of conflict companies of recruits and militia. The number around Boston soon reached sixteen hundred. Gage found himself besieged, and war had come.

The need of cannon and munitions of war suggested to Arnold the capture of the well-supplied old forts of Ticonderoga and Crown Point. Armed with a colonel's commission, and

Israel Putnam.

The eagerness of the New Englanders to reach the scene and to take part in the events that were to follow is instanced in the case of ISRAEL PUTNAM, a noted Patriot of Connecticut, who, hearing the news of Lexington while plowing, dropped the plow handles, mounted the horse, and in eighteen hours traveled the hundred miles intervening between his farm and the Patriot camp.

authority to raise a force of four hundred men among the Berkshire Hills of western Massachusetts, he undertook their capture.

A second expedition, composed of GREEN MOUNTAIN BOYS, under the command of ETHAN ALLEN, had already been planned for the same purpose. Arnold overtook this expedition, and his commission from Massachusetts not being recognized, he joined as a private. Ticonderoga was surprised and captured (May 10, 1775), and about the same time another party of Green Mountain boys, under SETH WARNER, fared as well with Crown Point. A party of his Berkshire men arriving, Arnold captured the post of St. John's, on Lake Champlain, with its garrison, and returned to Boston.

The Appointment of Commander-in-Chief.

On the day that Ticonderoga fell, the Second Continental Congress assembled at Philadelphia. Over this body JOHN HANCOCK of Massachusetts was called upon to preside, and such men as Washington, Franklin, Lee, Henry, John and Samuel Adams, Livingston, Benjamin Harrison and others took part in the deliberations. The Congress was without the authority of a recognized government, and only patriotism compelled obedience to its measures and instructions. It assumed jurisdiction over the armed Patriots assembled around Boston, who were thenceforth to be known as the Continental Army. The most important step yet taken was the selection of a commander-in-chief for this army. John Hancock aspired to the position; but there was one whose fitness, experience and ability were so marked that the unanimous choice fell upon him, and Colonel George Washington, of Virginia, became commander-in-chief of the American army (June 15, 1775). The appointment was accepted in all modesty. "Since Congress desire it," spoke Washington, "I will enter upon the duty and exert every power I possess in their service, and for the glorious cause. But I beg it may be remembered by every gentleman in the room, that I this day declare, with the utmost sincerity, I do not think myself equal to the command I am honored with."

QUESTIONS.

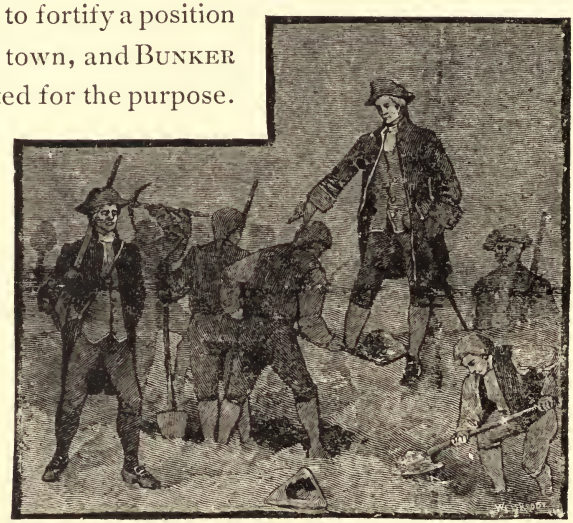
What was now about to ensue? What became the watchword? **What preparations for war were made?** What did Gage do? What expedition did he send? **What do you know of the battle of Lexington?** What was the fate of the Concord expedition? **What effect had the battle of Lexington upon the country?** Who collected about Boston? What do you know of Israel Putnam? From what need did the colonists suffer? **What do you know of the capture of Ticonderoga and Crown Point?** Where did the Second Continental Congress

assemble? Who presided? Who were among its members? What jurisdiction did it assume? What important step was taken? How did Washington receive his appointment as commander-in-chief of the American army?

CHAPTER V.

Independence Declared.

The forces about Boston were under the temporary command of GENERAL ARTEMUS WARD, whose headquarters were at Cambridge. The set purpose of these forces was to compel the British to leave Boston. With this object in view it was determined to fortify a position overlooking the town, and BUNKER HILL was selected for the purpose. At midnight a force of twelve hundred men, under COLONEL PRESCOTT, proceeded to the point in question, but concluded to occupy BREED'S HILL, a little further on. By morning the fortifications were almost finished.



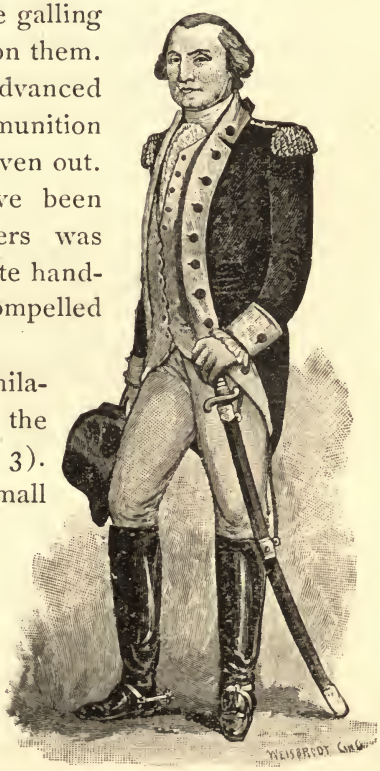
FORTIFYING BREED'S HILL.

The British in Boston now numbered some eleven thousand, GENERALS HOWE, CLINTON and BURGOYNE having arrived from England to coöperate with Gage. The Americans could not be permitted to retain this threatening position, so preparation was made to carry Breed's Hill by storm before the fortifications could be further strengthened.

Battle of Breed's Hill.

By some chance this battle, fought on Breed's Hill, has come to be called the BATTLE OF BUNKER HILL. It was a dearly-bought British victory, their loss amounting to one thousand and fifty-four, while that of the Americans was four hundred and forty-nine. Its moral effect upon the Americans was very beneficial, for it demonstrated that provincial and undisciplined troops could give battle to British regulars, and sustain the conflict with coolness and courage.

Three thousand veterans, led by Generals Howe and PIGGOTT, crossed the river in boats and advanced steadily up the hill. The Americans were commanded by PRESCOTT, STARK and PUTNAM. Many of them were unerring marksmen. The British were permitted to approach very close, when a well aimed volley threw them into confusion. A second time they advanced, but no troops could stand the galling fire that was poured down upon them. After some delay the British advanced to the third attack. The ammunition of the Americans had now given out. The support that should have been given them from headquarters was withheld, and, after a desperate hand-to-hand contest, they were compelled to fall back (June 17, 1775).



GEORGE WASHINGTON OF VIRGINIA, COMMANDER-IN-CHIEF OF THE AMERICAN ARMY.

Washington arrived from Philadelphia and took command of the army at Cambridge (July 3). The task before him was no small one. Out of the raw material there assembled he was to create an army. Many of the men desired to return to their homes, for the first burst of enthusiasm inspired by the battle of Lexington had cooled down. Reinforcements from

Pennsylvania, Maryland and Virginia, under the brave DANIEL MORGAN, however arrived, and the army was kept together.

Discipline was soon improved and efficiency increased. At last Washington was ready to begin active operations against the British. DORCHESTER HEIGHTS, overlooking Boston, were fortified. The British hardly dared to attempt another Breed's Hill experience, for they were now opposed by an able commander and by an army of some organization. The abandonment of the city was determined upon, and the entire British force embarked, the greater part of them sailing for Halifax, N. S. (March, 1776). Washington entered the city in triumph, and took possession of much valuable stores which the British had found impossible to carry away with them.

Sir Henry Clinton had left Boston in the January before the evacuation with two thousand men to operate against the Southern colonies. He was joined off the coast of the Carolinas by SIR PETER PARKER with additional forces and ten ships of war,

Quebec Expedition of Montgomery, Arnold and Morgan.

Morgan and Arnold, with a force, were detached from Washington's army to cooperate with GENERAL RICHARD MONTGOMERY, who was leading an expedition against Canada from northern New York. They proceeded by way of the Kennebec and Chaudiere Rivers, and the journey was made through the wilds of Maine in the dead of winter. The march occupied thirty-three days, and such were its fatigue and hardship that more than two hundred perished, and many others returned. With seven hundred gaunt and suffering men the indomitable leaders reached Quebec, and were joined by General Montgomery, who had succeeded in capturing Montreal (November 3, 1775). Quebec was defended by SIR GUY CARLETON. The city was stormed from different points (December 31) with great gallantry, and narrowly escaped capture. Montgomery was killed, Arnold wounded and Morgan was captured, but was afterwards exchanged. The expedition proved fruitless.

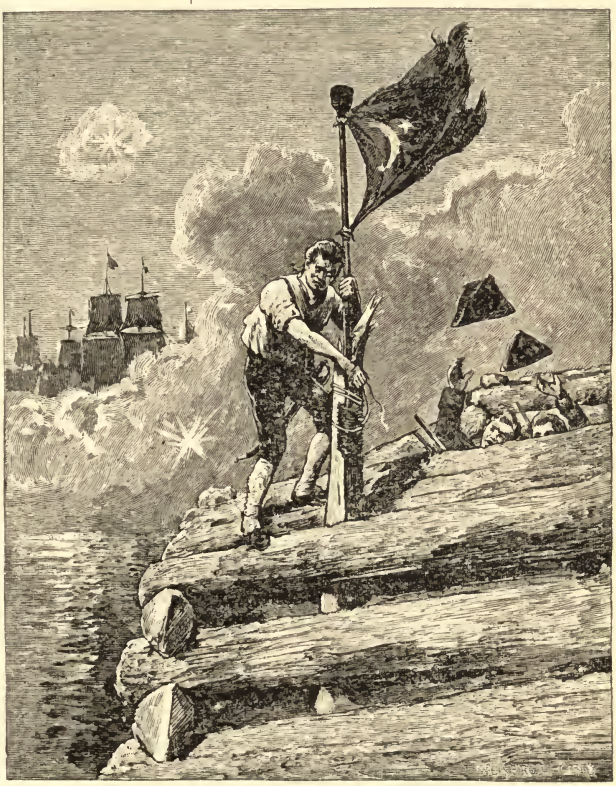
Battle of Moore's Creek Bridge, N. C.

In the interior of the country there were many sturdy Scotch settlers, who, not having yet imbibed the spirit of American resistance, could not renounce their allegiance to George III, and who proposed to show their loyalty. A force of sixteen hundred of them proceeded to the coast to welcome Clinton, but they were intercepted at Moore's Creek Bridge (February 27, 1776) by COLONEL RICHARD CASWELL with one thousand militia. The Scots were routed after a fierce engagement, the Patriots taking nine hundred prisoners and capturing two thousand stands of arms.

Sergeant Jasper.

During the bombardment Sergeant Jasper performed a brave deed that has come to be handed down as a matter of history. A ball from the enemy had torn the flag of the fort from its fastening, and it lay without the fortifications. Undaunted by the hot fire from the fleet the brave sergeant leaped over the parapet, seized the flag, and affixing it to a sponge staff, set it up in full view, so that enemy and friend alike could see that it had not gone down in defeat. For this deed he was offered a lieutenant's commission by GOVERNOR RUTLEDGE, but modestly declined it.

When Clinton and Parker approached Charleston they



SERGEANT JASPER REPLACING THE FLAG.

found the city defended by a fort upon Sullivan's Island. This fort was built of palmetto logs, and, in honor of its commander, was called FORT MOULTRIE. A fierce bombardment was opened upon it (June 28), but COLONEL MOULTRIE promptly responded with such good effect that the enemy was compelled to withdraw, and Charleston was saved.

The question of a total separation from England had not yet fully entered into the contest. But the idea of American independence boldly advocated in public speech by

Christopher Gadsden at Charleston as early as 1766, was gaining ground rapidly. The news of Lexington had scarcely reached North Carolina when Patriots of Mecklenburg county assembled in convention at Charlotte, and passed formal resolutions (May 20, 1775) that were a virtual declaration of independence. In March of the succeeding year South Carolina organized an independent State Government, with JOHN RUTLEDGE as President, and HENRY LAURENS as Vice-President.



COLONEL MOULTRIE.

In April, 1776, North Carolina took the first pronounced step toward the independence of all the colonies, by empowering her delegates in Congress to *concur* with the delegates from the other colonies in declaring independence. Virginia followed closely by passing resolutions, drawn up by PENDLETON and introduced by THOMAS NELSON, instructing her delegates to *propose* to Congress that it declare the colonies free and independent States (May 25, 1776), and shortly after adopted a BILL OF RIGHTS (June 15), and a CONSTITUTION (June 29). under which the Commonwealth was organized, with Patrick Henry as the first governor.



JOHN RUTLEDGE.

In accordance with the instructions of Virginia, Richard Henry Lee moved in the Continental Congress (June 7, 1776), assembled at Philadelphia: "*That these United Colonies are and ought to be free and independent States, and that all political connection between them and the State of Great Britain is and ought to be dissolved.*" The motion was seconded by JOHN ADAMS of Mas-

Mecklenburg Resolutions.

First. Resolved, that whoever directly or indirectly abetted, or in any way, form or manner, countenanced the unchartered and dangerous invasion of our rights, as claimed by Great Britain, is an enemy to this country, to America, and to the inherent and inalienable rights of man.

Second. Resolved, that we, the citizens of Mecklenburg county, do hereby dissolve the political bands which have connected us to the mother country, and hereby absolve ourselves from all allegiance to the British crown, and abjure all political connection with that nation, who have wantonly trampled on our rights and liberties, and inhumanly shed the innocent blood of American Patriots at Lexington.

Third. Resolved, that we do hereby declare ourselves a free and independent people, and of right ought to be a sovereign and self-sustaining association, under the control of no power other than that of our God and the general government of Congress; and to the maintenance of which independence we solemnly pledge to each other our mutual coöperation, our lives, our fortunes and our most sacred honor.

Fourth. Resolved, that as we now acknowledge the existence and control of no law or legal officer, civil or military, within this county, we do hereby ordain and adopt as a rule of life all such and every of our former laws, wherein, nevertheless, the crown of Great Britain never can be considered as holding rights, privileges, immunities or authority therein.

Fifth. Resolved, that it is further decreed that all, each and every military officer in this county is hereby reinstated in his former command and authority, he acting conformably to these regulations, and that every one present of this delegation shall hereafter be a civil officer, viz.: a justice of the peace, in the character of a "committee man," to issue process, hear and determine all matters of controversy according to said adopted laws, and to preserve peace, union and harmony in said country; and to use every exertion to spread the love of country and fire of freedom throughout America, until a more general and organized government be established in this province.

sachusetts, who, in the many days' debate that ensued, sustained the measure with an eloquence that led to its adoption.

The subject was one upon which the people of the colonies were not unanimous. Although eagerly contending for their rights, many were bound to the mother country by ties of interest and affection. But the king had spurned every petition for a redress of grievances, and an armed conflict had been precipitated upon America. This conflict was rebellion as long as the sovereignty of the king was in the least considered. A formal declaration of independence would transfer this sovereignty to themselves, to maintain which the contest could the better be continued. The choice was a return to oppression with added humiliation, or freedom and independence. The measure was adopted (July 2), and a *Declaration of Independence*, drafted by Thomas Jefferson of Virginia,

signed by representatives of all the colonies, and proclaimed to the country (July 4, 1776).

The hall in which Congress was holding its memorable meetings was thenceforth known as INDEPENDENCE HALL. The bell that proclaimed the glad tidings of the declaration is to this day treasured as the OLD LIBERTY BELL, although its sides are cracked and its voice hushed. Thenceforth the fight was to be not for English right, but for American freedom. With the Declaration were given to the world the great principles that were to be maintained by American arms: "*All men are created equal. Life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness are inalienable rights. Government derives its just power from the consent of the governed. The right of the people it is to abolish or alter any form of government destructive of their rights, safety, and happiness.*"

QUESTIONS.

Who held temporary command until Washington arrived? What operations were begun? What British reinforcements arrived? **What do you know of the battle of Bunker Hill?** Who led the British? Americans? What was the loss of each? To what was British success due? **What effect had the battle upon the Americans?** What difficulties presented themselves to Washington? When did he take command? What reinforcements did he receive? **What do you know of the Quebec expedition?** What were its results? **What operations did Washington begin against Boston?** What resulted? When did the British leave Boston? Where had Sir Henry Clinton gone? **What do you know of the siege of Fort Moultrie?** Sergeant Jasper? Battle of Moore's Creek Bridge? **What idea was gaining ground in America?** What was the Mecklenburg Declaration? What was the first State government organized? What did North Carolina empower her delegates to do? Virginia? When? What resolutions were introduced in Congress by Lee? Why? **What do you know of the adoption of the American Declaration of Independence?** Who drafted the Declaration? **What great principles did it enunciate?**

SEARCH QUESTIONS.

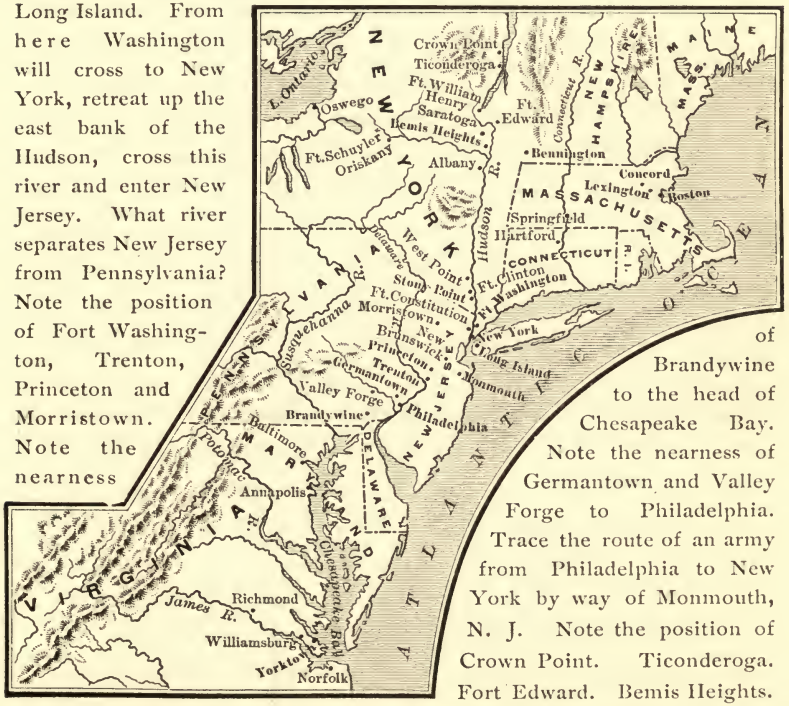
What became of James Otis? Who were the "Sons of Liberty"? What is a "Liberty Tree"? Why did Sergeant Jasper decline promotion? Who said: "If this be treason, make the most of it"? What eminent American fell at the Battle of Bunker

Hill? Upon what island was Fort Moultrie built? Whom did the Continental Congress appoint Major Generals under Washington? Where is the "Old South Church," and why famous? Raleigh Tavern? Who drew up the Mecklenburg Resolutions? When was the Bunker Hill monument built?

PREPARATORY NOTES.

TO CHAPTERS VI AND VII.

Geography.—Upon the accompanying map note the position of Boston. The following chapters will tell of a battle fought at the point named Long Island. From here Washington will cross to New York, retreat up the east bank of the Hudson, cross this river and enter New Jersey. What river separates New Jersey from Pennsylvania? Note the position of Fort Washington, Trenton, Princeton and Morristown. Note the nearness of Brandywine to the head of Chesapeake Bay. Note the nearness of Germantown and Valley Forge to Philadelphia. Trace the route of an army from Philadelphia to New York by way of Monmouth, N. J. Note the position of Crown Point. Ticonderoga. Fort Edward. Bemis Heights. Trace the route of an army going from Oswego to Bemis Heights, as far as Fort Schuyler and Oriskany. Note the position of Bennington. Saratoga.



Definition of Words.—Dispel, cabal, conspiracy, precipitous, matured, indecisive, impulse, alliance, anticipate, insurmountable, rallying.

THE WAR FOR AMERICAN INDEPENDENCE.

CHAPTER VI.

The War in the North.

British reinforcements arrived in America, and Washington soon became apprised of a designed attack upon New York. Hastening from Boston to the defense of that city, he posted about four thousand men under GENERALS SULLIVAN, STIRLING, and PUTNAM on LONG ISLAND, near Brooklyn. General Howe soon arrived from Halifax, and General Clinton, from Charleston, where he had been repulsed. Ten thousand Hessians and English, under GRANT and VON HEISTER, were landed. A battle ensued, in which the Americans suffered terrible defeat. By the greatest good fortune Washington was enabled to withdraw his forces secretly across the river, hidden by a fog, before the British followed up the victory with capture of the whole American army.



DE KALB.

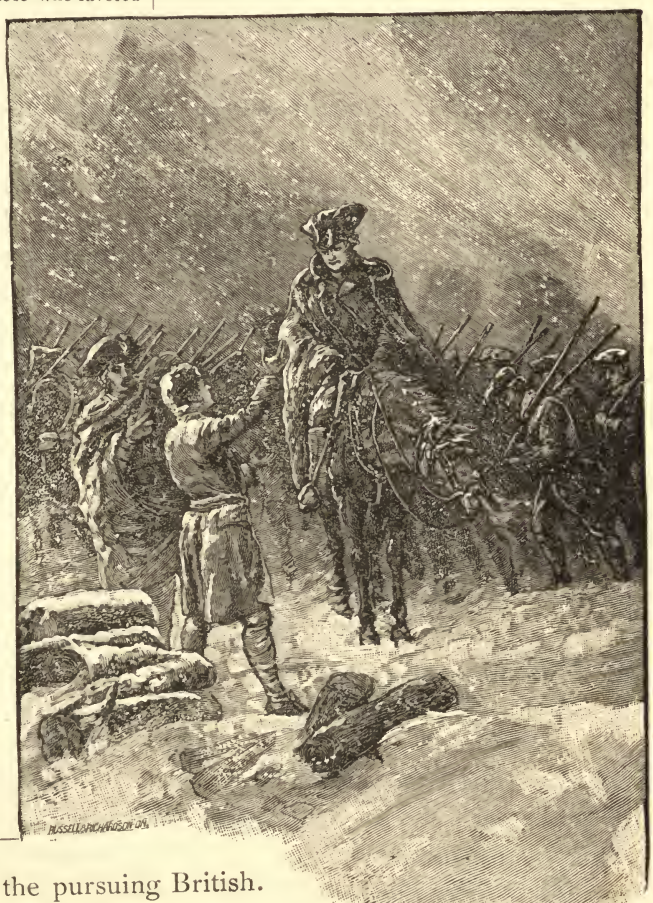
Washington was now forced to evacuate New York. He was followed by the British, and in a skirmish at Harlem Heights gained the advantage over them. Both armies now manœuvered for positions, and at WHITE PLAINS (September 28) the Americans were again defeated. Crossing the Hudson, Washington posted himself at Fort Lee. Directly opposite stood Fort Washington, to defend which COLONEL MAGAW had been left with three thousand men. This fort, with its whole garrison, fell into the enemy's hands (November 16), and the victory was followed by the capture of Fort Lee.

Washington retreated into New Jersey closely pursued by CORNWALLIS and KNYPHAUSEN. Reverses had discouraged

many, and his forces were reduced to three thousand. Across the State he hastened, and, reaching the Delaware, crossed to the other side (December 8), taking the precaution of placing all the boats for miles up and down the stream beyond the reach of the pursuing British. Concluding to wait until the river should freeze sufficiently to

The Hessians.

Both the people of America and the people of England were divided among themselves on the question of the war now pending between the two countries. In America those who favored independence were called PATRIOTS. Those who, from various motives, felt no desire to throw off allegiance to the British Crown, were called TORIES. On the other hand the war was very unpopular with the people of England. The king found it so difficult to recruit his armies for American service that he was compelled to hire soldiers of other powers. Russia, applied to, indignantly declined. The rulers of several petty German States, among which were Hesse-Cassel, Hesse-Hanau, were, however, willing to hire their men, and furnished twenty thousand, under four experienced generals, RIEDESEL, KNYPHAUSEN, VON HEISTER and DONOP.



THE ADVANCE ON TRENTON.

enable his army to cross, Cornwallis quartered his men in the several villages and towns near by.

Hearing that the enemy's forces were thus divided, Washington determined to strike a quick, bold blow upon one of the divisions. Crossing the river at night, amid the drifting ice he marched with two thousand four hundred men upon Trenton, where COLONEL RAHL and some two thousand Hessians were encamped. The advance was made through a blinding snow-storm, and the surprise was complete (December 26). Rahl was mortally wounded, and more than one thousand captured. By morning the Americans were safe on the other side of the river with their prisoners.



COUNT PULASKI.

The victory at Trenton gave new life to the American cause, for it dispelled much of that gloom that had settled upon the country. Many enlisted, and with increased force Washington was enabled to enter New Jersey and take the offensive. Cornwallis fell back to Princeton, and, receiving heavy reinforcements, advanced upon the American position near Trenton. A preliminary skirmish took place (January 2, 1777) with the advantage in favor of the Patriots. According to the plans of Cornwallis the main engagement was to take place the next day.

Again did Washington distinguish himself by a feat of good generalship. A part of the British forces had remained at Princeton and were to arrive to take part in the battle. Washington determined to attack this force, but the enemy in his front must know nothing of his movement. Quietly was the baggage of the Americans removed to a safe place, and, leaving the camp fires burning, the Patriots quietly withdrew, and by morning were at Princeton. The British

forces were up and about to march forward to join Cornwallis. The action that ensued was hotly contested (January 3). The personal bravery of the commander-in-chief did much toward winning the victory, and with a loss of some four hundred men the British were routed. Cornwallis, hearing the sound of distant cannon, hastened to the rescue, but arrived too late. Both armies now went into winter quarters—the Americans at Morristown Heights.

Foreigners in the American Army.

The gallant struggles of the Americans were winning the admiration of Europe. Frederick the Great of Prussia saw much to applaud in the achievements of Washington, Arnold and other generals. A number of foreigners joined the American army and did valiant service in the cause of liberty. Among these were the French nobleman, LAFAYETTE; the Poles, PULASKI and KOSCIUSKO, and the Germans, DE KALB and STEUBEN.



STEUBEN.

When operations were resumed Washington soon found himself called to the defense of Philadelphia. Eighteen thousand British put to sea from New York, and landed at Elktown, Maryland, seventy miles from the city (August 25, 1777). An engagement took place at CHAD'S FORD, on Brandywine Creek (September 11), and, greatly outnumbered, the Americans were compelled to fall back, after making a creditable resistance. The British entered Philadelphia in triumph. Congress was compelled to adjourn to Lancaster (September 26), and shortly after to York.

Invasion from the North.

During the early part of 1777 a powerful British expedition was organizing in Canada under SIR JOHN BURGOYNE for the purpose of invading New York. Preparations to meet the invaders were made by GENERALS SCHUYLER and Arnold, Washington sending them from time to time such forces as he could spare from his army operating in New Jersey.

The main body of the British encamped at GERMANTOWN, six miles from Philadelphia. Here they were attacked, but without success (October 3), the Americans losing more than

eleven hundred men. The British soon obtained control of the Delaware, Forts MERCER and MIFFLIN falling into their hands, not without the brilliant repulse of Donop by GENERAL GREENE in a preliminary engagement (October 22). The Patriots now retired to Valley Forge, and passed the long, desolate winter in gloom and suffering. Many were without shoes, most were inadequately supplied with clothing, all were



THE MORNING DRILL AT VALLEY FORGE--STEUBEN INSTRUCTING THE PATRIOTS

without sufficient food. Their privations tested their fortitude and patriotism to the utmost.

At Valley Forge the Americans were joined by BARON STEUBEN, an eminent and experienced German general, who enlisted himself in the American cause. Steuben was of inestimable service in reorganizing the army and drilling

The Conway Cabal.

A famous and unsuccessful conspiracy to displace Washington, known as the CONWAY CABAL, was brought to light about this time. It amounted to nothing for Congress had full confidence in him, his men all loved him, and the whole country realized, even in its day of darkest gloom, that none in his position could have better encountered the many difficulties with which he was continually beset; could have better held together his little army and saved them from destruction in the face of overpowering numbers; could have shown more indomitable qualities in the midst of defeat than this American Fabius, as he has admiringly been called.

the men according to the most approved methods of war, and when operations were again resumed the good results of his labors were clearly seen.

QUESTIONS.

What city now became the objective point of military operations? **What do you know of the battle of Long Island?** Harlem Heights? White Plains? **What do you know of the Hessians?** What was the fate of Fort Washington? **What do you know of Washington's retreat across New Jersey?** Who pursued him? What stopped the pursuit? **What do you know of the victory at Trenton?** What was its effect on the American cause? **What do you know of the victory at Princeton?** Where did the Americans spend the winter after the battle of Princeton? Name some foreigners who took part in the American cause? What city was Washington called upon to defend when operations were resumed? **What do you know of Washington's defense of Philadelphia?** What battle was fought before the city fell? After? What forts on the Delaware fell into the hands of the British? What victory did Greene gain? What do you know of the sufferings at Valley Forge? What valuable service did Steuben here render? **What do you know of the Conway Cabal?**

CHAPTER VII.

The First Great Victory.

The force with which BURGOYNE started from Canada to invade New York consisted of more than eight thousand English and Hessians. Forts Crown Point (June 16), Ticonderoga (July 5), and Edward (July 30) fell successively into his hands, resistance being encountered by him at Ticonderoga only, where GENERAL ST. CLAIR opposed him unsuccessfully with three thousand men.

As Burgoyne journeyed southward preparations were made to receive him. Fortifications were erected upon BEMIS HEIGHTS, near Saratoga, by Kosciusko, and the capable and energetic General Schuyler succeeded in collecting and organizing a considerable force. In this he was ably assisted by Generals Arnold, LINCOLN, and Morgan.

The plans of battle were all matured, when, at the last moment, Schuyler was unjustly deprived of command, and GATES, a general of little real ability, put in his place. Holding the welfare of his country above his personal advancement Schuyler generously proffered his services to his successor, which Gates slightingly declined. On the 19th of September the two armies came together in battle. Most of the fighting on the American side was done by that part of the army over which Arnold held command, and, for hours, he repeatedly repulsed the British advance; Gates rendering but little assistance and encouragement. The result was indecisive. It was held that had Arnold received the proper reinforcements, a

Fort Schuyler, Oriskany and Bennington.

It was expected that many Tories and Indians would join Burgoyne along the route, and for the purpose of securing recruits of this kind a minor expedition, under COLONEL ST. LEGER, ascended the St. Lawrence River to Lake Ontario, landed at Oswego and proceeded eastward down the Mohawk Valley to effect a junction with Burgoyne's army on the Hudson. Fort Schuyler, garrisoned by the American COLONEL GANSEVOORT and seven hundred men, lying in the way of their march, was besieged and a force of militia, under brave GENERAL HERKIMER, attempting its relief, was defeated at the battle of ORISKANY. Arnold, from the Hudson River, then advanced to the relief of the fort. His forces were small, yet he succeeded by stratagem in spreading the impression in St. Leger's camp that the approaching Americans were overwhelmingly numerous. St. Leger's allies deserted him and he was compelled to beat a precipitous retreat, leaving much of his supplies in the hands of the besieged. As Burgoyne's army proceeded on its way a body of troops, under COLONEL BAUM, was detached to capture and destroy some stores that had been collected at Bennington, Vt. A body of New Hampshire militia, under Colonel Stark, hastily gathered, and the oncoming British were met and severely repulsed (August 15), losing more than eight hundred men.

Arnold Displaced.

The brilliant achievement of Arnold in this battle, receiving its deserved credit, the jealousy of his commanding officer was awakened. An unpleasant consequence was that Arnold was deprived of command before the next engagement took place.



GATES

complete victory would have been won. A second battle was soon fought (Oct. 7). The British were led by GENERALS PHILIPS, RIEDESEL and FRASER, three of the most skillful generals ever sent to America. The field was hotly contested. For some time Arnold looked on, but, unable to resist his impulses, he rushed into the thickest of the action without authority. His men received him with loud hurrahs, and his leadership of them turned the tide to complete victory. Burgoyne retreated to Saratoga, where he was surrounded, his supplies cut off, and he was at last compelled to surrender (October 17). More than five thousand laid down their arms and became prisoners of war.



BURGOYNE.

The French Alliance.

France had for some time encouraged the Americans in their hostility against her old enemy, England. The victory of Saratoga gave such promise of success that she was led to enter into an alliance with them. SILAS DEANE, ARTHUR LEE and BENJAMIN FRANKLIN, commissioners appointed by Congress (1776), had endeavored for some time to bring about this result. They were now successful. COUNT D'ESTAING and a fleet were dispatched to America, and the Patriot cause was greatly strengthened.

The alliance with France filled the British at Philadelphia with alarm. Anticipating the arrival of the French fleet, the English vessels hastily cleared for New York, while the army proceeded to that point overland across New Jersey (June 18). Washington, who had received reinforcements from the North upon the surrender of Burgoyne, now followed the British, overtaking them at MONMOUTH, N. J. An attack was made (June 28), but came near ending in disaster. An order of Washington to GENERAL CHARLES LEE being either



AMERICAN FLAG ADOPTED BY CONGRESS, 1777.

mistaken or intentionally ignored, the commander-in-chief found that general retreating at a most critical time, and saved the day only by rallying the retreating Americans in person.

Peace Overtures of England.

About this time the king and ministry of England began to realize that America was not to be easily subdued. Overtures were made to the Patriots to bring about a peace. Bills conceding everything claimed in the past by the colonists were passed by Parliament. Commissioners were sent to treat with Congress. It was, however, too late. The war now was not for rights claimed, but for American independence, and nothing short of its acknowledgment by Great Britain could end hostilities.

Toward the close of the year an expedition of great importance was planned and fitted out by the Commonwealth of Virginia. That body of land belonging to her, known as the NORTHWEST TERRITORY, contained several forts and posts that, having been wrested from the French, were still held by the English. The British governor, HAMILTON, had in every way encouraged the Indians of that region to harass the colonists, and Patrick Henry, Virginia's governor, sent COLONEL GEORGE ROGERS CLARK to drive the British from the territory. Kaskaskia and Cahokia, in what is now Illinois, and Vincennes, Indiana, fell into the hands of the Virginians, and Hamilton himself was taken prisoner. The achievement was a notable one, and was accomplished in the face of almost insurmountable difficulties. The vast territory was wrested from British rule and restored to the control of Virginia, where it rightly belonged.

Rhode Island Expedition.

Upon arrival of the French fleet an expedition was planned against Newport, R. I., and the land forces sent to coöperate were placed under General Sullivan. The English Admiral Howe sailed from New York to give the French battle, but a storm separated the combatants, doing much damage to the vessels of both. Sullivan, unsustained, failed in his design, but, being attacked as he was withdrawing, he succeeded in winning a victory from his pursuing foes.

QUESTIONS.

Of what did Burgoyne's force consist? What do you know of St. Leger's expedition? Colonel Baum's? Who commanded Fort Schuyler? By whom

was the fort rescued? What forts were taken by Burgoyne? What resistance was made at Ticonderoga? What preparations were made to rescue Burgoyne? By whom was Schuyler succeeded? **What can you say of the first battle of Saratoga? The second battle?** What was Arnold's conduct in each? **What great victory was won by the Americans? What do you know of the French alliance?** What overtures were now made by England? Why did the British leave Philadelphia? What battle was fought on their retreat? **What do you know of the battle of Monmouth?** What do you know of the Rhode Island expedition? **What important expedition was sent out by the Virginia Commonwealth? What do you know of Clark's conquest of the Northwest Territory?**

REVIEW OUTLINE.

WAR OF THE REVOLUTION—PRINCIPAL BATTLES.

BRITISH VICTORIES AND GENERALS IN ITALICS.

THE WAR IN THE NORTH.

1775	*April 19*	*LEXINGTON, (Mass.)*	PARKER *SMITH.*
	June 17	*BUNKER HILL, (Mass.)*	PRESCOTT *HOWE.*
1776	*Aug. 22*	*LONG ISLAND, (N. Y.)*	WASHINGTON .. *HOWE.*
	Sept. 28	*WHITE PLAINS, (N. Y.)*	WASHINGTON .. *HOWE.*
	Dec. 26	TRENTON, (N. J.)	WASHINGTON .. *RAHL.*
1777	Jan. 3	PRINCETON, (N. J.)	WASHINGTON .. *MAWHOOD.*
	Aug. 15	BENNINGTON, (Vt.)	STARK *BAUM.*
	Sept. 11	*BRANDYWINE, (Pa.)*	WASHINGTON .. *HOWE.*
	Sept. 19	BEMIS HEIGHTS, (N. Y.)	GATES *BURGOYNE.*
	Oct. 4	*GERMANTOWN, (Pa.)*	WASHINGTON .. *HOWE.*
	Oct. 11	SARATOGA, (N. Y.)	GATES *BURGOYNE.*
1778	June 28	MONMOUTH, (N. J.)	WASHINGTON .. *CLINTON.*

SEARCH QUESTIONS.

Who was Baron Steuben's interpreter at Valley Forge? Who planned the fortifications at Fort Washington? Why did the British go to Philadelphia by way of the Chesapeake instead of Delaware Bay? Who was Fabius, and what is a Fabian policy? Who were the instigators of the Conway Cabal? Who was Captain Molly? Who was Nathan Hale, and what was his fate? What British General was kidnapped, and why? Why was General Schuyler displaced?

PREPARATORY NOTES.

TO CHAPTERS VIII, IX AND X.

Geography.—Upon the accompanying map note the position of Savannah. Ninety-Six. Trace a route of travel from Ninety-Six (S. C.) towards Savannah as far as Kettle Creek (Ga.) Note the coast from Savannah to Charleston. Where is Stono Ferry? Monk's Corner? Camden? Note the nearness of Sander's Creek to Camden. In what part of South Carolina is the Pedee River? Where is the Catawba River? Waxhaw Creek? Ramsour's Mill? Hanging Rock? Fishing Creek? King's Mountain? Note the position of Cheraw. Trace a route of travel from Cheraw to the Cowpens. From Cowpens to the Dan River of Virginia. What rivers would be crossed? Note the position of Guilford Courthouse? Trace a route of travel from Guilford Courthouse to Yorktown, Va., by way of Petersburg. From Guilford Courthouse to Hobkirk's Hill. Then to Ninety-Six. Note the nearness of Eutaw Springs to Orangeburg. Upon the map, page 233, note the position of Stony Point. West Point.



Definition of Words.—Intercept, accede, dislodge, irresistible, subsequently, marque, reprisal, squadron, inadequate, concentrate, laurels, subordinate, convictions, elude, exploit, episode, campaign, devastation.

CHAPTER VIII.

The War in the South.

The war had now lasted three years, and during that time the British had accomplished little towards the subjugation of the Northern colonies. It was now determined to transfer operations to the South, and the first step in that direction was made with the sending of COLONEL CAMPBELL and ADMIRAL HYDE PARKER to Savannah, Ga. The forces of the British numbered two thousand, while in defense of the city there could only be gathered nine hundred, who, under GENERAL ROBERT HOWE, offered all possible resistance. The city surrendered December 29, 1778.

From that point the British soon overran all the southeastern portion of Georgia. Officers were sent into the interior to rally the Tories to the British cause. A force of these was collected at NINETY-SIX, S. C., by COLONEL BOYD, but on their way to Savannah they were intercepted by some South Carolina and Georgia militia, under COLONELS PICKENS and CLARKE, at KETTLE CREEK, Wilkes County, Ga. (February 14, 1779), and driven back with the loss of their leader.



PICKENS.

GENERAL LINCOLN was sent to take charge of military operations in the South. He dispatched COLONEL ASHE, with about two thousand men, to take up a position on Brier Creek, near Savannah. Here Ashe was surprised and defeated by the British GENERAL PREVOST (March 3, 1779). Following up his advantage, Prevost advanced upon Charleston and demanded its surrender (May 11). The city was defended by COLONEL MOULTRIE, who declined to accede to the demand.

Meanwhile Lincoln, advancing upon Savannah with a large force, learned of the movements of Prevost, and

turned northward to the relief of Charleston. The siege of the city was abandoned on Lincoln's approach. Retreating along the coast, the forces of Prevost were intercepted about thirty miles from Charleston, but for nearly a month neither side made a movement towards battle. At length Lincoln sought to dislodge a portion of the enemy's forces under COLONEL MAITLAND, and the battle of STONO FERRY ensued (June 20, 1779). The attack of the Americans was repulsed with terrible loss.

Capture of Stony Point.

The British in the North were doing but little, except to send out various expeditions for the sake of destroying and plundering. One of these, under TRYON, ravaged the coast of Connecticut, and inflicted much damage upon the towns of New Haven, Fairfield and Norwalk. To offset this a brilliant exploit was performed by the Americans. The British were in possession of the strong fort of STONY POINT, in New York, on the Hudson. GENERAL ANTHONY WAYNE undertook its capture. Softly approaching the fort at night, he arranged his men in two columns, and that no alarm might be sounded, ordered his men to unload their guns and use bayonets only in the assault. The sentinel was surprised and overpowered, but as the Americans steadily advanced up the rocky path to the summit, upon which the fort was built, they were discovered and fired upon. The charge, however, was irresistible, and though Wayne was wounded in the assault, the fort, with its stores and six hundred prisoners, fell into the hands of the Americans (15th July, 1779)

The French fleet, under D'Estaing, now arrived off the coast, and a combined attack on Savannah was planned. The city was besieged for a month. An attempt was made to carry the enemy's works by storm (October 9), but was unsuccessful. Both French and Americans fought gallantly, but the resistance was stubborn. Pulaski fell in the action, and the gallant Sergeant Jasper, of Fort Moultrie fame, was mortally wounded. After the repulse D'Estaing

Sullivan's Expedition Against the Indians.

In July, 1778, a body of Tories and Indians under MAJOR JOHN BUTLER, descended upon the village of Wyoming, Pa., and most of the able-bodied men being away in the Patriot army, captured the fort and put to death most of the inhabitants with all the barbarities of savage warfare. Cherry Valley, N. Y., suffered the same fate the November following. These atrocities were avenged by General Sullivan, who led an expedition to the Susquehanna country, and subsequently to the Mohawk country. A fierce battle was fought near Elmira, New York, August 29, 1779, in which the Tories and Indians were routed, their fields laid waste and much of their property destroyed.

refused to coöperate further, and sailed away. Lincoln returned to Charleston.

Paul Jones and the Bon Homme Richard.

In the war of the Revolution the Americans had no regularly organized navy. Congress, however, granted letters of marque and reprisal that authorized shipowners to fit up private vessels of war to prey upon the commerce of the enemy. These were known as privateers. By great exertion there had been fitted up in France a small squadron for the Americans, and it was placed under the command of CAPTAIN PAUL JONES. Jones did much damage to the commerce of England, and boldly frequented the English coasts. His most notable achievement was his victory over the Serapis, off Flamboro Head, Scotland (September 23, 1779). No more desperate naval engagement has ever transpired. Jones lashed his vessel to the Serapis, and the battle was fought hand to hand. Three times the ships took fire and were as many times extinguished. The Bon Homme Richard was rendered worthless in the action, and when the Serapis struck her colors, Jones transferred his crew to that vessel and sailed for Holland.



JOHN PAUL JONES.

Sir Henry Clinton, with a large force from New York, now arrived in the South, and, effecting a landing thirty miles below Charleston (February 11, 1780), surrounded the city (March 20), his fleet, under ADMIRAL ARBUTHNOT, taking a position in the harbor (April 9). A force under HUGER hastening to its relief, was intercepted at MONK'S CORNER by the British COLONEL TARLETON, and repulsed. With all communications cut off, his forces inadequate, and with no probability of succor, Lincoln surrendered after enduring a siege of some two months (May 12).



TARLETON.

With Charleston as a base of operations, the British proceeded to overrun South Carolina. Expeditions were sent out by Clinton —to Ninety-Six under COLONEL CRUGER, to AUGUSTA under COLONEL BROWN, and to CAMDEN under LORD CORNWALLIS. The presence of the British encouraged the Tories to engage in hostilities, and both British and Tories exercised such

harsh measures that the Patriots in many parts organized themselves in partisan bands, and, in revenging outrages, struck many a blow for freedom.

The capture of Lincoln necessitated the appointment of another commander in the South. At first the brave and experienced German, DE KALB, was sent with authority to act. He was soon followed and superseded by Gates, for it was thought the presence in the South of the conqueror of Burgoyne would inspire greater confidence, and thousands would join the Patriot ranks. The advance of Gates was looked upon with some concern by the British. Cornwallis hastened to Camden, where LORD RAWDON, his second in command, had concentrated the forces that were to meet Gates. The Patriot army was collected at Clermont, some ten miles distant. Each general formed the design of surprising his adversary, and carried it into effect at the same time. The opposing forces came unexpectedly upon each other at



ARNOLD.

Arnold's Treason.

About this time news came from the North of a sad blow dealt to the American cause. The whole country was shocked at the sudden intelligence that Arnold, the brave, the gallant, the impetuous, the hero of Quebec, the genius of Saratoga, the trusted friend of Washington, had gone over to the enemy and sold his honor for English gold. In all confidence Washington had given him command of the important post of West Point, New York. Whatever may have been his motives, it transpired that an offer of £6,315 and a position in the English army induced him to turn traitor. An agreement was made by him to surrender West Point, and MAJOR ANDRE of the British was sent from New York to arrange the transfer. On his way back Andre was stopped by three Patriots, PAULDING, VAN WERT and WILLIAMS, who learned the nature of his business. The captors rejected all the tempting bribes that were offered by the captive for his release. Arnold, however, received timely warning and escaped to devote his energies thenceforth as the foe of his country. But never again was he to feel that peace that comes of consciousness in having done well. He lost the respect of his admirers, the affections of his friends, and died in obscurity, unhonored and unmourned. The unfortunate Andre was sentenced to be hung, and went to his death pleading to be shot as a soldier should be. His death was greatly lamented. COLONEL ISAAC HAYNE of Charleston was hanged under as cruel circumstances by the English Lord Rawdon.

Sander's Creek near Camden, and a battle ensued. There was much hard fighting on both sides, but the militia could not withstand the steady bayonet charges of the British regulars. Baron De Kalb fell pierced with eleven wounds. The day was lost, and Gates, utterly routed, found his "northern laurels turned to southern willows."

QUESTIONS.

Where was the war now transferred? Why? What do you know of the capture of Savannah? For what purpose were British officers sent out? What do you know of the battle of Kettle Creek? Who was sent to command the Americans in the South? What misfortune befell Ashe? Who defended Charleston from Prevost? What do you know of the battle of Stono Ferry? What do you know of the capture of Stony Point? Sullivan's expedition? What did Lincoln attempt with the assistance of the French fleet? What was the result? Who were among the slain in the attack? What do you know of the siege of Charleston? What followed its capture? Where was Cruger sent? Brown? Cornwallis? Why? Who succeeded Lincoln? Why was Gates sent South? What can you say of the battle of Camden? What can you say of Paul Jones? What do you know of Arnold's treason? Who were the captors of Major André? What was his fate? What American suffered a similar fate?

CHAPTER IX.

The Partisans of the Carolinas.

The defeat of Gates at Sander's Creek left the Carolinas in a deplorable condition. The authority of Great Britain extended over the territory, and Lord Cornwallis, who was now in command, determined to hold the conquered province. Subordinate officers of his went from point to point engaging actively in the work of subjugation. The most notorious of these was Colonel Tarleton, who, from his many acts of undue severity, soon earned for himself the title of the "Bloody Tarleton."



MARION.

Ill would it have fared with the American cause in the South had not indefatigable leaders in various portions arisen and gathered to their standard men whom no hardship could deter, no suffering discourage. These carried on a desultory, yet a terribly persistent and harassing warfare against the foes of their country.

Partisan Warfare.

These conflicts were waged in great part against Tories. The Tories of the Carolinas had the courage of conviction, and, unlike those of other colonies, were ready to do more for the English cause than extend aid, comfort and encouragement to British troops. The achievements of the Southern Patriot leaders are all the more remarkable when it is understood that they were contending with not only the victorious troops of a mighty nation, but with many Americans of the same courageous characteristics as themselves.

Chief among these partisan leaders were GENERALS MARION, SUMTER and PICKENS, and COLONEL HENRY LEE. Marion operated in the swamps about the Pedee, striking blow after blow, here and there, wary, vigilant, eluding capture time after time at the hands of large forces sent for the purpose; striking his very pursuers when they were least expecting him; joining the regular army when a battle was in prospect, and when the fate of this army was defeat, as it was at Camden, hastening back to his haunts; annoying the victors, harassing them on all sides; rescuing prisoners, as at Nelson's Ferry (August 20, 1780), when with but a handful, he routed a powerful guard and released more than one hundred and fifty ill-fated victims of the Camden battlefield. Truly was he the "Swamp Fox of the Carolinas."



SUMTER.

The scenes of Sumter's exploits lay chiefly along the Catawba; those of Pickens, near the Saluda. Lee, or "Light-horse Harry," as he was called, had already won many

laurels for bravery in the Northern armies, and throughout the war he was continually engaged in brilliant and active service. When not with the regular army he was engaged in daring enterprises, coöperating with Pickens, Sumter or Marion.

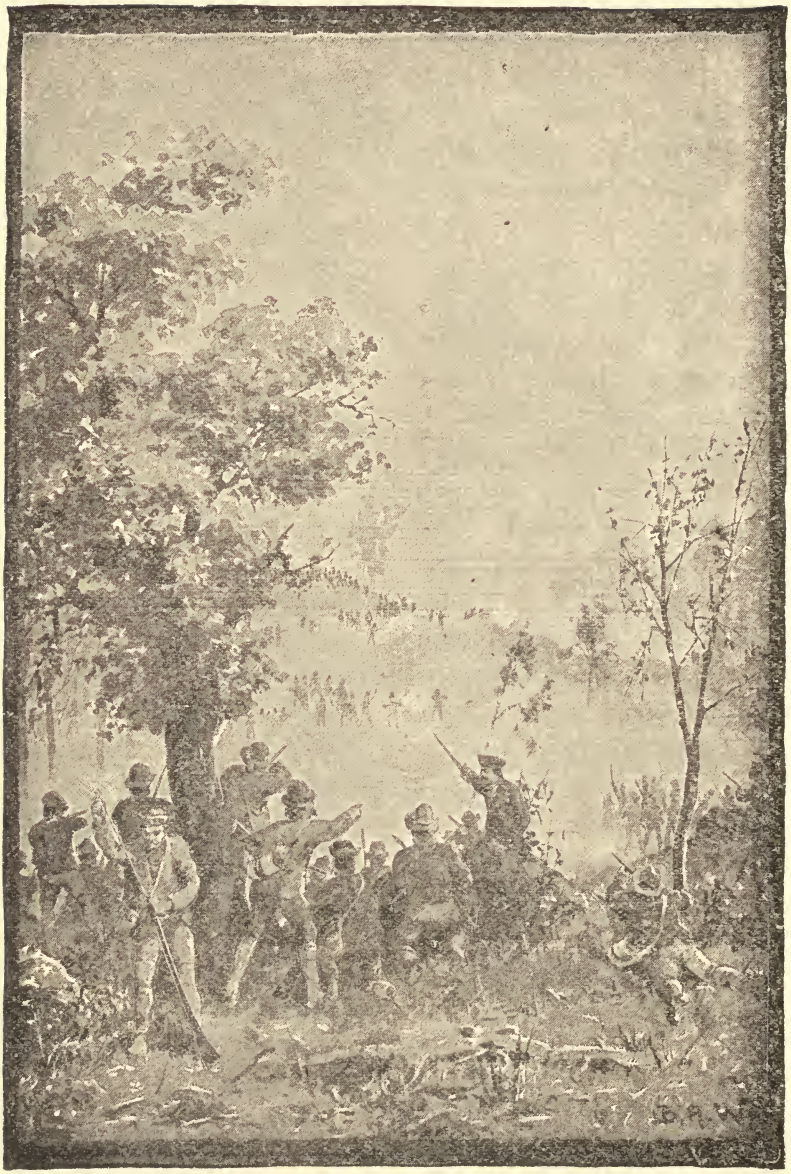


COLONEL HENRY LEE.

Tarleton was one of the ablest of the English leaders. In May, 1780, he intercepted COLONEL BUFORD, who was coming south from Virginia, at WAXHAW, N. C., and surprising him, put almost his whole command to death. This victory was in part balanced by the defeat of a large body of Tories, under COLONEL MOORE, by a smaller force, under COLONEL FRANCIS LOCKE, the engagement occurring at a place called RAMSOUR'S MILL, N. C. (June 20, 1780). Nevertheless the episode of Waxhaw rankled in the breasts of the Patriots for many a day.

At HANGING ROCK (August 7)—one of the best fought battles between American militia and British regulars—the English, under BROWN, were defeated by Sumter, the Americans taking a number of prisoners. Good fortune, however, did not dwell long with Sumter, for shortly after he was surprised and routed by Tarleton at FISHING CREEK (August 17). Later on Tarleton was in turn defeated by Sumter at the battle of BLACKSTOCK'S FORD (November 20).

The battle of KING'S MOUNTAIN, fought October 7, was one of the most notable achievements of the war. Shortly after the defeat of Gates, the British MAJOR FERGUSON was sent by Cornwallis with a force of regulars, well supplied with arms and stores, beyond the Wateree River, for the purpose of enlisting the Tories of that region. Ferguson soon had an army of some eleven hundred men collected. Word went out all over the country of Ferguson's advance, and bodies of Patriots began to assemble at dif-



BATTLE OF KING'S MOUNTAIN.

ferent points to oppose him. Many of these were gallant "mountain men," who had gone beyond the Alleghanies as pioneers in what is now Tennessee. Colonels Isaac Shelby, John Sevier, Wm. Campbell, McDowell, Cleavland, and Williams all led bodies of men to the scene, and the different detachments concentrating, nine hundred of the best pushed on after the enemy. Ferguson had taken up a position in fancied security on the summit of King's Mountain. The attack was made upon several sides, the engagement lasting but little more than an hour. The ardor and determination of the Patriots prevailed, and Ferguson being slain, his successor to the command hoisted the signal of surrender, and the whole force was taken prisoners.



COLONEL ISAAC SHELBY.

QUESTIONS.

What was the condition of the Carolinas after the defeat of Gates? **What do you know of Colonel Tarleton?** What partisan leaders came to the defense of their country? What can you say of the Southern Tories? **What do you know of Marion? Sumter? Lee? Pickens?** What was the fate of Buford? What victory was gained by Locke? What do you know of the battle of Rocky Mount? Hanging Rock? Fishing Creek? Blackstock's Ford? **King's Mountain?** Name some of the Patriot leaders at King's Mountain.

CHAPTER X.

America Triumphant.

Upon the defeat of Gates at Camden, General Greene was sent South by Congress. In the campaigns that followed, Greene proved himself one of the ablest generals of the Revolution, even winning a deserved place beside Washington himself. He had barely two thousand men with whom to begin operations. From his position at Cheraw,

S. C., he dispatched half of these under General Morgan westward to a place called the COWPENS. Cornwallis had been preparing to enter upon the conquest of North Carolina, but, unwilling to leave Morgan in the rear, sent Tarleton with a picked body of men against him.



GREENE.

The forces of Morgan and Tarleton were about equal. The battle that ensued was one of the best fought battles of the war. Morgan's men had unbounded confidence in their leader, and charge after charge of the British was sustained. Tarleton had met his match at last, and he was defeated (January 17, 1781) with a loss of two-thirds of his men, he himself barely escaping capture at the hands of the American COLONEL WILLIAM WASHINGTON, who pursued him for some distance.

Upon learning of Tarleton's defeat Cornwallis hastened to the scene to punish the victor. Morgan began a famous retreat, with Cornwallis in hot pursuit. Crossing the Yadkin he was joined by Greene, and the combined forces continued on to the Catawba, and finally to the Dan River in Virginia, the retreat being conducted so skillfully as to baffle the pursuers all along the route.

Cornwallis gave up the chase when the Dan was reached, and turned south to Hillsborough, N. C. Greene, now receiving reinforcements, followed, and at GUILFORD COURT HOUSE, now Greenesborough, a great battle was fought (March 25). The Americans were driven back, but the victory of the British was dearly bought. Cornwallis' army was so badly crippled that he felt it necessary to hasten to Petersburg, Va., and join forces with those of Arnold and Philips, who had been ravaging and destroying in eastern Virginia.

Greene now proceeded southward, determined to wrest South Carolina and Georgia from British possession. At Hobkirk's Hill, near Camden, another decisive battle was fought (April 25) with Lord Rawdon. The result was similar to that at Guilford Courthouse. The Americans were unable to withstand the fierce advances of the British, but before falling back inflicted such severe loss that Rawdon retired from that part of the country to the region below the Santee.



MORGAN.

Here he was harassed by Sumter and Marion, while Greene turned his attention to Ninety-Six, a strongly fortified post, commanded by Colonel Cruger. Fortifications were erected by Kosciusko, and a siege began that would have resulted in the surrender of the fort had not the arrival of fresh troops from the coast enabled Lord Rawdon to advance to its rescue. Learning of this advance, the Americans hastened to storm the fort (June 18), but the attack was unsuccessful, and Greene was compelled to withdraw.



THE OUTPOST.

Gallant work was being done by the partisan leaders all this time. Post after post, in different portions of the State, were falling into their hands. Rawdon retiring to Charleston, left Stewart in command, near Orangeburg. The hardest fought battle of the war occurred at Eutaw Springs, between Greene and Stewart (September 8). The Americans gained the advantage, the enemy

retreating to Charleston. Of all the territory they had overrun there remained to the British, by the close of the year 1780, but the two cities of Savannah and Charleston.

Lafayette had been sent to Virginia to check the ravages of Arnold and Philips, but with his small force could accomplish little. Cornwallis arriving from North Carolina, continued the work of devastation. More than ten million dollars worth of property was destroyed. He finally took up a position on the Peninsula of Yorktown. Word was sent of this to Washington, who was still near New York, occupied with the British under Clinton in that vicinity. Leaving a force to menace Clinton, he hastened to Virginia, where, assisted by Virginia militia, under GOVERNOR NELSON, and a large force of French that had arrived in America, he surrounded the works of Cornwallis. The French fleet cut off all retreat by sea.



LAFAYETTE.

Clinton at New York was unable to determine whether or not to go to Cornwallis' assistance, meanwhile sending out ravaging expeditions, in the vain hope of drawing Washington back. The Americans established batteries and opened fire. Two redoubts of the enemy were carried by storm. There was no hope for the British, and Cornwallis, the ablest general opposed to the Americans in the whole war, was compelled to surrender (October 19). Seven thousand men laid down their arms.

This second great victory was a decisive one for the American cause. Again had a mighty army of one of the strongest nations on earth been captured whole. The glad news went throughout America, awakening all to demon-

strations of joy. It was felt that the war was virtually ended. When news of Cornwallis' surrender reached Lord North, Prime Minister of England, he exclaimed, "Oh, God! it is all over." It had at last dawned upon the British mind that America could not be subdued. Hostilities ceased. Charleston and Savannah were evacuated. Commissioners met at Paris and signed a treaty of peace (September 3, 1783). The evacuation of New York followed, and the last of the hostile English forces left American shores.

By the terms of the treaty England acknowledged American independence. The colonies were now States. All that portion of territory south of the great lakes and east of the Mississippi, with the exception of Florida, which England ceded to Spain, was their domain. Thenceforth they were to work out their own destiny among the nations of the earth.

QUESTIONS.

Who succeeded Gates to the command in the South? What can you say of General Greene? Where did his forces collect? What victory was gained by Morgan? Over whom? What followed the battle of Cowpens? How was the American retreat conducted? What caused Greene to turn back upon Cornwallis after reaching Virginia? What do you know of the battle of Guilford Courthouse? What was the result? Where did Greene go after the battle? Cornwallis? What do you know of the battle of Hobkirk's Hill? Attack on Ninety-Six? Why was Ninety-Six assaulted instead of besieged? Who was left in command at Orangeburg? What can you say of the battle of Eutaw Springs? What English generals ravaged eastern Virginia? Who was sent against them? By whom was Cornwallis besieged at Yorktown? Why did not Clinton go to his assistance? What do you know of Cornwallis' surrender? How was the news received in America? England? What cities were now evacuated? When and where was the treaty of peace signed? What were among its terms? What did the colonies become with the acknowledgment of their independence?

REVIEW OUTLINE.

WAR OF THE REVOLUTION—PRINCIPAL BATTLES.

BRITISH VICTORIES AND GENERALS IN ITALICS.

THE WAR IN THE SOUTH.

1778	*Dec. 29*	*SAVANNAH CAPTURED*	ROBT. HOWE. *CAMPBELL.*
1779	Feb. 14	KETTLE CREEK (Ga.)	PICKENS. *BOYD.*
	March 3	*BRIER CREEK (Ga.)*	ASHE. *PREVOST.*
	June 20	*STONO FERRY (S. C.)*	LINCOLN. *PREVOST.*
	Oct. 9	*SAVANNAH ATTACKED*	LINCOLN. *PREVOST.*
1780	*April 14*	*MONK'S CORNER (S. C.)*	HUGER. *TARLETON.*
	May 12	*CHARLESTON CAPTURED*	LINCOLN. *CLINTON.*
	May 29	*WAXHAW (N. C.)*	BUFORD. *TARLETON.*
	June 20	RAMSOUR'S MILL (N. C.)	LOCKE. *MOORE.*
	Aug. 7	HANGING ROCK (S. C.)	SUMTER. *BROWN.*
	Aug. 16	*SANDER'S CREEK (S. C.)*	GATES. *CORNWALLIS.*
	Aug. 17	*FISHING CREEK (S. C.)*	SUMTER. *TARLETON.*
	Oct. 7	KING'S MOUNTAIN (S. C.)	CAMPBELL. *FERGUSON.*
	Nov. 20	BLACKSTOCK'S FORD (S. C.)	SUMTER. *TARLETON.*
1781	Jan. 17	COWPENS (N. C.)	MORGAN. *TARLETON.*
	March 25	*GUILFORD'S COURT HOUSE (N. C.)*	GREENE. *CORNWALLIS.*
	April 25	*HOBKIRK'S HILL (S. C.)*	GREENE. *RAWDON.*
	June 18	*NINETY-SIX (S. C.)*	GREENE. *CRUGER.*
	Sept. 8	EUTAW SPRINGS (S. C.)	GREENE. *STEWART.*
	Oct. 19	YORKTOWN (Va.)	WASHINGTON. *CORNWALLIS.*

SEARCH QUESTIONS.

How did Cowpens receive its name? What President of the United States fought at King's Mountain? What great invention was designed at the house of General Greene's widow? In what places did Congress hold sessions during the Revolution? What are "letters of marque and reprisal"? Why did Greene's defeats have the effect of victories? What famous repast did Marion serve to a British officer and what was the result?

PREPARATORY NOTES.

Definition of Words.—Supreme, sovereignty (see Webster's Dictionary, edition of 1844), compact (Id.), constitution (Id.), delegation (Id.), federal (Id.), confederation (Id.), state (Id.), vested, function, interpretation, despotic, civil, exemplifies, jurisdiction, mutual, domiciled, assumption, instituted, quota, equitable, levy, depreciate, redress, provisional, allegiance, enunciation, wary, inordinate, ordinance, expansion, harmonious, consummate, exclusion, specified, stipulation, competition, quorum, financier, deliberations, judiciary, devised, compromise, ratification, encroachment, genius, homogeneous, domestic, tranquillity, amendment, restriction.

PARALLEL READINGS.

REFERENCE.—Bancroft's "History of the United States," Fiske's "Critical Period of American History," Schouler's "History of the American Republic," Von Holst's "Constitutional History of the United States," "The Federalist."

GENERAL.—Lodge's "Alexander Hamilton," Gay's "Madison," Coffin's "Building of the Nation," Tyler's "Patrick Henry," Cooke's "Virginia," Morse's "Thomas Jefferson," Irving's "Washington," Gilmore's "Rear Guard of the Revolution," and "John Sevier as a Commonwealth Builder," Shaler's "Kentucky," Phelan's "Tennessee," "The Northwest Territory" (Magazine of American History, August, 1886), "The Framers of the Constitution" (Id., April, 1885), Stephens' "History of the United States."

TOPICAL.—"Government, Forms of," "Confederation, Articles of," "The Federal Constitution," "The Federalist," "The Virginia Plan," "The New Jersey Plan," "The Connecticut Compromise," "James Robertson," "Franklin, State of," "John Sevier," "Daniel Boone," "Alexander Hamilton," "Federal Ratio," "Constitution, The Adoption of," "State Rights."

THE INSTITUTION OF SELF-GOVERNMENT.

CHAPTER XI.

The Transfer of Sovereignty.

Man is of a social nature, and therefore exists in societies. For the regulation and welfare of societies, government is necessary. In every form of government there must enter into consideration two elements: the one in which SOVEREIGNTY, or supreme power, is vested; and the one upon which it is exercised.

When, in a society, sovereignty is vested in one person, we have a form of government called a MONARCHY. When sovereignty is vested in all the members of a society, and all have a voice in the governing of themselves, we have a DEMOCRACY.

When the members of a democracy are too numerous to exercise governmental functions directly, they may delegate their authority to representatives chosen from among themselves, in which case we have a form of government known as a REPUBLIC.

A sovereign may either exercise authority himself, or delegate this authority. Sometimes the delegation is made

by written instrument. In the history of the English colonies we find mention of an instrument of this kind under the name of CHARTER. Sometimes the delegation is made by popular election, as in a Republican form of government.

Personal Freedom.

In a monarchy personal freedom, in its widest interpretation, is enjoyed by but one person in the society—the monarch himself. In a democracy personal freedom is enjoyed by all alike. The limitation of despotic power, and the extension of civil privileges, have marked the progress of modern enlightened nations. The Republic of the United States of America exemplifies in the highest degree, the advance that has been made in the application of progressive governmental ideas, and to-day presents to the world the most remarkable example of a people governing themselves.

Sovereigns often enter into a mutual agreement in matters pertaining to their own government. This agreement is sometimes called a COMPACT. The earliest mentioned in the history of the United States is that which was drawn up in the cabin of the Mayflower by the Pilgrim Fathers, who, deeming themselves beyond the jurisdiction of any authority higher than their own, entered as sovereigns into a mutual agreement for their government (1620).

The people of an organized society or community may enter into an agreement with the people of other organized societies and communities for the purpose of promoting the welfare of all. The agreement in this case is called a CONSTITUTION, and is said to be the fundamental law by which all are governed. The earliest written Constitution mentioned in the history of the United States is that which was drawn up by the Connecticut colonies of Hartford, Weathersfield, and Windsor (1638).

A society of individuals organized for the purpose of government, whether monarchical or democratic, is called a STATE, if sovereignty is domiciled within its borders; a PROVINCE if sovereignty is domiciled without. Thus, many of the American colonies were provinces before the Revolu-

tion. After the Revolution they became States. The Declaration of Independence transferred the sovereignty under which the colonies were governed from Great Britain to America; and this sovereignty was assumed by the American people, who maintained themselves in this assumption by force of arms.

This transfer of sovereignty rendered possible the institution of self-government as it exists in the United States to-day; yet the principles of American self-government were not of sudden growth. Throughout the whole history of the English colonies their gradual development went hand in hand with that of American independence. The first popular election in America, making Captain John Smith, President of Virginia (1609); the first Representative Assembly, by which an American people gained a voice in the making of their own laws, instituted in Virginia the year before the Mayflower Compact (1619); the transfer of the charter of the Massachusetts Bay Company, with its governmental privileges, from England to that colony, instituting a high form of self-government, for that time, in America (1630) —all marked the first stages of growth. By the time of the Revolution, ideas upon the subject had become clearly established in the American

Sovereignty and Government.

It is to be borne in mind that government and sovereignty are not one and the same. In a monarchy, sovereignty and governmental power may repose in one and the same person. The monarch may retain his sovereignty and delegate governmental powers. In a republic the people are the sovereigns, and their governmental authority is delegated to an organization, the constituting of which they determine. The bringing of the MASSACHUSETTS BAY CHARTER to America transferred governmental powers, but not sovereignty, from England to Massachusetts. The Revolution transferred sovereignty to the American people.

Self-Government West of the Alleghanies.

Pioneers who crossed the Alleghanies and placed themselves beyond the limits of societies already organized, carried with them ideas of self-government and put them into practical operation in the communities which they established. The first instance of this and of the establishment of free government west of the Alleghanies was at Watauga, Tenn., in 1772, by pioneers from North Carolina.

mind, and under the systematic oppressions of England these ideas developed into powerful principles of action.

BLACKBOARD FORM.

GOVERNMENT.
- Devised for the { Regulation / Welfare } of Society.
- Powers of,
 - Derived from Sovereignty { Vested in ONE. (Monarchy.) / Vested in ALL. (Democracy.) }
 - May be Delegated by { Charter. / Compact. / Constitution. }

QUESTIONS.

Why is government necessary? What enters into consideration in every form of government? What is a monarchy? Democracy? **What about personal freedom under each form?** What changes of government have characterized human progress? What advance does the Republic of the United States mark? How may a sovereign delegate authority? **What is a charter?** What is a republic? **Compact?** What is the earliest compact mentioned in United States history? **What is a constitution?** What is the earliest mentioned? **What is the difference between a Province and a State? Illustrate. What distinction is to be drawn between sovereignty and government?** Illustrate. **What marks the earlier stages of the development of self-government in America?** By whom were ideas upon the subject put into practical operation? **Where was self-government first established west of the Alleghanies?**

CHAPTER XII.

The Delegation of Governmental Power.

The Continental Congress, assembled at Philadelphia in 1775, exercised certain governmental powers in the name of the thirteen colonies that had united in their opposition to England. This Congress declared war against Great Britain; appointed a commander-in-chief of the army; made provision for the raising of men and supplies; issued bills of credit establishing a continental currency; and organized a postal system, with Benjamin Franklin as the first postmaster-general.

The power of this Congress was very much limited, and from its weakness the American cause suffered greatly. It could only call upon, request, or beg the various colonies for their quotas of men and money, but could compel none of them to contribute its equitable share. It had no power to levy taxes, that its bills of credit or paper money might be redeemed, and hence continental currency became almost worthless. Owing to this lack of power on the part of Congress, the sufferings of the army for food and clothing were intense. The winter camps of Valley Forge and Morristown tested more severely the patriotism and heroism of the Americans than did many a battle.

Sufferings of the Army.

All through the war Washington was harassed by the limited resources at his disposal. The pay of the soldiers in the greatly depreciated currency was not sufficient to keep them in the necessaries of life, and army after army had to be created, as the men returned to their homes to gain subsistence for themselves and families, after their terms of enlistment had expired. With the mistaken idea that Congress was to blame for this condition of affairs, the whole "Pennsylvania line" of Washington's army revolted and proceeded to Philadelphia, bent upon securing a redress of grievances, but patriotism finally prevailed and averted catastrophe.

In the darkest period of the war there came to the front the Patriot, Robert Morris, a rich banker of Philadelphia. He pledged his fortune to establish the credit of Congress. The army was sustained by him. He brought to the service of his country all his financial ability. His name is not connected with the glory and excitement of the battlefield; but no one who took part in the American cause better deserves the grateful remembrance of his countrymen.

One of the first recommendations of the Continental Congress, and one that met with a prompt response, was that which advised the various colonies to establish temporary or provisional governments (May, 1776), pending the difficulty with Great Britain. South Carolina had already anticipated this measure by adopting, in the March previous, a State Constitution—the first of the thirteen colonies to do so. When all allegiance to the British crown was cancelled by the separate colonial ratifications of the Declaration of Independence, these provisional governments became inde-

pendent State governments, the organization of which was justified by the assumption of sovereignty on the part of the people of each colony.



BENJAMIN FRANKLIN, AMERICAN STATESMAN, PHILOSOPHER, AND PATRIOT.

For the purpose of carrying on a successful war against Great Britain, it behooved the revolting Colonies, or States as they now considered themselves, to ratify the powers assumed by Congress, and, by delegating additional ones, to institute some kind of a central government that would promote the welfare of all. ARTICLES OF CONFEDERATION were therefore proposed in Congress (July 12, 1776), and submitted for acceptance. But it was found that the people were somewhat wary in delegating governmental power beyond the limits of their States. They were engaged in a conflict for independence and self-government, and, as instruments of tyranny, they could see no difference between a Parliament in England and a Congress in America, if the latter was entrusted with inordinate power.

Virginia Bill of Rights.

In the organization of the Virginia State government, a very remarkable paper, written by George Mason, and known as the VIRGINIA BILL OF RIGHTS, anticipated, in its enunciation of principles, the declaration of independence that was afterwards made in the name of all the colonies. This Bill of Rights and a State Constitution by the same writer were adopted (June, 1776) by the same convention that instructed delegates to Congress to propose American independence Both these documents served as models to many of the other colonies.

Moreover, the States, though united in their opposition to England, were distrustful of one another. The smaller States manifested great reluctance in consenting to the establishment of a governmental organization in which the larger would naturally have the most influence. Many

objections had to be overcome before the Articles of Confederation were finally adopted. Twelve States assented to them by July, 1779, and the last one, Maryland, by March, 1781.

The Ordinance of 1787.

One of the objections on the part of the smaller States was generously met by Virginia, then the most populous of all the States. Her vast territory gave her much room for expansion, and with this expansion would come increase of power and influence. Nevertheless, to aid in bringing about a harmonious confederation, she proposed to donate to the general government all her territory north of the Ohio. This territory was hers by original grant, and by right of double conquest. Its inhabitants had taken an oath of allegiance to her when Clark consummated the conquest of the territory. The offer of cession was made in 1781, accepted by Congress in 1783, and in 1787 an ordinance for the government of this NORTHWEST TERRITORY was passed. This ordinance is remarkable for its exclusion of slavery, which then prevailed, more or less, in all the States, and for its liberal encouragement of public education.

In the government thus instituted each State, whether large or small, had one vote in deciding upon measures coming up before Congress, and the powers delegated to this government were carefully specified, such as the power to declare war, to make treaties, to coin money, to issue bills of credit, to fix the quota of money to be raised by each State for the purpose of carrying on the war, to regulate the number of land and naval forces, etc. The Articles, however, contained the express stipulation that each State should retain its sovereignty and independence, and all powers not delegated. So jealously had all authority to enforce its measures been withheld from this confederate government, that its weakness and impracticability soon became apparent.

Shays' Rebellion.

In western Massachusetts a remarkable rebellion, headed by Daniel Shays, a captain in the Revolutionary War, was instituted against the extortions of courts and officers employed in the forcible collection of taxes. The wresting from them of their few possessions seemed as great an act of tyranny as any that led to the revolt of the colonies; so the infuriated people arose, and to the number of two thousand marched upon Springfield and Worcester, and were only subdued by superior forces under Generals Lincoln and Shepard.

The close of the war found the States in a deplorable condition. The government, under the Articles of Confedera-

tion, commanded neither respect abroad, nor confidence at home. A large debt had been contracted in the name of the United States, and grave questions arose about its payment. Congress was powerless to levy taxes to redeem its bills of credit, and, indeed, the people in their impoverished condition were in no disposition to cheerfully pay them, even when levied by their own State governments.

Disputes of a more than local nature were arising on every hand. Commerce was unregulated, and commercial competition between the various States was causing strife. The States were drifting as far apart in feeling as they were in geographical position. Discord seemed to be the heritage following upon the death of the power of England. The Articles of Confederation were a failure, and the meetings of Congress became less and less frequent from difficulty in obtaining a quorum.

This unsettled state of affairs was producing great restlessness. Many were making their way beyond the Alleghanies, where already John Sevier, James Robertson, Isaac Shelby and Daniel Boone, with their hardy followers, had established themselves, after wresting from the savage the fair lands of Kentucky and Tennessee. Many who had the good of their country at heart became sorely perplexed over its condition. Independence had been won, but it was being gradually realized that the freedom of a people could be menaced, not only by a tyrannical government, but by the other extreme of anarchy and misrule. It behooved the



JAMES ROBERTSON,
EARLY TENNESSEE PIONEER.



DANIEL BOONE,
EARLY KENTUCKY PIONEER.

States to secure greater domestic tranquility and to form a more perfect union.

A stronger government than the Confederation was the apparent need—one with power sufficient, not only to legislate, but to enforce laws for the general welfare, and yet insufficient to oppress its creators. This was the problem now to be solved by the people of the American States.

The State of Franklin.

In 1785 the pioneer people of what is now eastern Tennessee, but then a part of North Carolina, resolved to form a State government of their own. A constitution was adopted, a legislature chosen, judges appointed, courts organized, and treaties with the Indians entered into. John Sevier was elected Governor. The State was called FRANKLIN, or Frankland, and its seat of government was Jonesborough; but the State of Franklin did not remain long in existence, for North Carolina maintained her jurisdiction over the territory, ceding it in 1789 to the United States as a part of what was to be the territory and State of Tennessee. These early settlers of eastern Tennessee rendered valuable service in the Revolutionary War, for not only did they cross the mountains into Carolina and take part in battles against the British, but they barred the way and prevented hordes of savages, instigated by English emissaries, from sweeping down upon the western Carolina settlements.



JOHN SEVIER, GOVERNOR OF THE STATE OF FRANKLIN, AND FIRST GOVERNOR OF TENNESSEE.

QUESTIONS.

What did the Continental Congress assume? In whose name? What governmental acts did it perform? What can you say of its weakness? What sufferings were caused by its lack of power to raise revenues? How was Washington harassed? What do you know of Robert Morris? What was among the first recommendations of Congress? What State was first to adopt a State constitution? What did provisional governments in time become? What do you know of the Virginia Bill of Rights? What articles were proposed in Congress? Why? When? To whom were they submitted? How received? Why? When were the Articles of Confederation finally adopted? What do you know of the Ordinance of 1787? What do you know of the government under the Articles of Confederation? What powers were delegated? What was expressly stipulated? In what condition were the States at the close of the war? What had been contracted? To what were the people averse? What do you know of Shays' rebellion? What conditions showed that the Articles of Confederation were a failure? What do you know of the State of Franklin? What besides tyranny can menace the freedom of a people? What did it behoove the States to secure and form?

CHAPTER XIII.

The Federal Constitution.

A commercial agreement entered into by the States of Virginia and Maryland was productive of much good. For the purpose of extending this benefit generally the legislature of Virginia issued a call (January, 1786) for a convention of States to consider the establishment of a uniform commercial system. New Jersey, New York, Pennsylvania and Delaware responded to the call, and delegates from the five States assembled at Annapolis, Md. (September, 1786).

Many, dissatisfied with the weakness of the existing confederative government, beheld in the Annapolis meeting an opportunity of instituting not only a commercial union, but a political one. There was present as a delegate from New York, ALEXANDER HAMILTON, a young man of brilliant intellect, who had already distinguished himself as aide-de-camp to Washington in the war, and who was destined to become a financier and statesman of the highest order.

Upon Hamilton's recommendation a call for a second convention was issued by the Annapolis meeting, for the purpose of devising a Constitution of the United States more adequate to the needs of the country than the then existing Articles of Confederation. Delegates from twelve States assembled (May, 1787,) at Philadelphia in answer to the call. Among them were the

The Work of the Federal Convention.

The Philadelphia convention had a work before it of momentous importance. Theirs it was to devise an efficient government acceptable to a free people, who had already organized themselves into States, and who had already signified unwillingness to enter into a close political union. The deliberations of the body covered a period of some four months, and the most intense application was given to the matters in hand. Debates were frequent. Delegates were all jealously watchful of the interests of their respective States and sections, but, realizing the need of the country, made concessions to and compromises with each other. Prominent among those who led in the work of the convention were "Light Horse Harry" Lee, MADISON, Hamilton, Franklin, RANDOLPH, the two Pinckneys, Rutledge and others.

most distinguished men of the time, and over the deliberations of the body thus brought together, George Washington was chosen to preside.

Some of the delegates thought it necessary only to amend and strengthen the Articles of Confederation, but those who favored an entire reorganization were in the majority. The first step was made when the resolution of Randolph of Virginia was adopted, "that a national government ought to be established, consisting of a supreme LEGISLATURE, JUDICIARY and EXECUTIVE." The question arose for debate as to how the Congress or supreme legislature should be constituted.

Virginia brought forward a plan that Congress should consist of two houses, the lower to be chosen by the people, the higher to be elected by the members of the lower house. As this arrangement gave Virginia, Pennsylvania, North Carolina, and Massachusetts, then the most populous States, a greater representation in Congress, and consequently greater power, it was strenuously opposed by the smaller States of Connecticut, New Jersey, Delaware and Maryland.

The Three Great Compromises.

The Convention was divided upon the question of Federal regulation of commerce and upon that of prohibiting or permitting further importation of slaves. New Hampshire, Massachusetts and Connecticut desired that authority to regulate commerce be lodged in Congress. The peculiar agricultural development of South Carolina and Georgia rendered necessary the further importation of slave labor. The second of what has been called the THREE GREAT COMPROMISES was effected by the five States combining to carry through the measures in which each was interested. Thus the regulation of commerce was entrusted to Congress, and the Federal interference with the importation of slaves until 1808 prohibited. The three great compromises were: that establishing State equality in the Senate; that establishing the Federal ratio; and that prohibiting Federal interference in the slave trade until 1808.

A plan was then brought forward by New Jersey, providing for an equal representation of the States as under the Articles of Confederation. To this the larger States were averse. After a period of fierce debate, in which it seemed no agreement would be

reached, a compromise was suggested by Connecticut and finally adopted, which provided that in the lower house of Congress the people should be represented, each State sending representatives according to population; in the upper house or senate, each State, large and small alike, should be represented by two senators.

The next great point of disagreement was whether, of the population upon which representation was based, slaves should be considered a part. Slavery once existed throughout the thirteen States, but was beginning to die out in the North. Its institution had become firmly established in the South. A compromise was reached upon this question also, and it was provided that five slaves should count as three free inhabitants, thus establishing what is known as the FEDERAL RATIO.

The question of what powers should be entrusted to Congress awakened much discussion, especially those pertaining to the regulation of commerce, but the end was finally reached, and the FEDERAL CONSTITUTION stood completed. Although instituting a form of government greatly in advance of any yet devised, it was by no means thoroughly satisfactory to its framers, a

The Beginning of Universal Suffrage.

The Convention was divided as to whether the Executive should consist of one person or more than one. The former, however, was decided upon. It was also divided as to the manner of choosing. Some wanted the choice to devolve upon Congress; others insisted that it be made by the people. Many beheld in an election by Congress possible danger of intrigue and combination powerful enough to control the acts of the President. Others beheld in a choice by the people possible danger of their being led by self-aggrandizing demagogues. At length that feature of the Constitution which provides for an ELECTORAL COLLEGE was agreed upon. The number of these electors corresponds with the number of Senators and Representatives in Congress, and the electors of each State are selected "in such a manner as the legislature thereof may direct." The idea of universal suffrage was in its infancy in the days when the Federal Convention met. It is interesting to note the development of this idea in connection with the election of President. At first the electors were chosen by the State Legislature itself. New Jersey pursued this plan up to 1816; Connecticut to 1820; New York, Delaware and Vermont to 1824; and South Carolina to 1868. At the present day the electors are chosen by popular vote, and the selection of a President of the United States is virtually an election by the people.

few of whom even refused to sign it. Its compromises were not entirely acceptable to all. There were points in it not sufficiently emphasized that left the way dangerously open to different interpretations. Yet, all in all, it was a wonderful achievement, and it stands to-day the greatest written instrument ever executed by man.

Differences of Constitutional Interpretation.

In the light of modern development we have come to know that a constituted government cannot bear harmoniously upon a people unless this people is a unit in interests, in characteristics, and in modes of life. This the American people at that time were not, nor were they to be for years to come. Colonial life had developed sectional characteristics; climatic conditions had caused diversity of industrial interests. The people were not homogeneous, and, therefore, a government bearing directly upon them as a whole could not but cause the friction that was to be the lot of the new government. On the other hand, the States as organized wholes, had many interests in common. Continued existence, uniform regulation of commerce and currency, domestic tranquility and defensive organization against possible foreign foes, were the needs of all, and they therefore could, with reason, compact and agree upon the establishment of a central regulative power to be exercised for the good of all. Thus thought many who favored the Constitution, and its successive and separate ratifications by the different States, caused them to regard it as a compact between sovereign States. In time there arose a difference of opinion as to the relative supremacy of powers delegated by the American people to State and Federal governmental organizations. The theory of compact gave rise to the doctrine of STATE RIGHTS, which in time was to maintain the sovereignty of a State and its right to withdraw from the compact—a principle that was destined to be contended for unsuccessfully, yet heroically, in one of the bitterest struggles ever chronicled in the world's history.

The work of the convention went before the people of each State for their ratification, and for the first time in their history the American people became divided into parties upon a political question. Two classes of political thinkers arose; those who opposed the institution of the new government, and those who favored it. Clear-thinking, honest-minded men, such as Patrick Henry, Samuel Adams, Richard Henry Lee, George Mason, Benjamin Harrison and others, saw lurking in the Constitution possible menaces to that liberty and self-government so dearly purchased. Others equally honest-minded, believed a stronger government to be necessary, and deemed any form of government to be good when pro-

perly administered. In their opinion the genius of American liberty would ever be a protection against encroachment upon self-government, and they considered that the instrument itself established sufficient safeguards against the possibilities feared by the more jealous guardians of popular rights.

The contest between FEDERALISTS and ANTI-FEDERALISTS was a heated one. Among the friends of the Constitution that worked earnestly for its ratification were Washington, Madison, Harry Lee and Marshall, of Virginia; the Pinckneys (Charles and Cotesworth), Gadsden, and Rutledge, of South Carolina; Livingston, Jay, and Hamilton, of New York; Franklin, Clymer, and Wilson, of Pennsylvania; and others. The labors of Madison and Hamilton were particularly valuable, and were second only to those of Washington. From the pens of these great political thinkers came a series of letters, that appeared in public print, and educated the popular mind to an appreciation of Constitution. These letters collected, constitute the remarkable work called THE FEDERALIST.

Delaware was the first State to ratify (December 7, 1778), followed in succession by Pennsylvania, New Jersey, Georgia, Connecticut, Massachusetts, Maryland, South Carolina, New Hampshire, Virginia and New York. In many of the States the vote was very close. In Massachusetts it stood one hundred and eighty-seven to one hundred and sixty-eight; in Virginia the Constitution was ratified by the small majority of ten. Thus reluctant were the people to take a step that conflicted with the idea of self-government then held by them, by delegating governmental powers beyond the limits of their States.

The Constitution was to go into effect as soon as nine States should accept it. Eleven responded favorably. Some however, proposed certain amendments, several of

which were afterwards adopted and made a part of the Constitution. These amendments were to preclude restrictions upon individual liberty, and the assumption of undelegated powers by the general government.

However divided the American people were upon the question of the Constitution, when it became known that the new government was to go into operation, there was but one choice for its Chief Executive. George Washington was chosen President; John Adams was the choice for Vice-President. The first Congress was to meet at New York in March, but failing to obtain a quorum, did not organize until a month after the stipulated time, (April 1-6, 1789).



JOHN ADAMS.

In November (1789) North Carolina adopted the Constitution, and Rhode Island, in May of the following year. Thus were all the American States then existing—thirteen in number, united under one government—a government devised to "establish justice, insure domestic tranquility, provide for the common defense, promote the general welfare, and secure the blessings of liberty" to an independent people and their posterity.

QUESTIONS.

What call was issued by Virginia? Why? When? What States responded? Where was the commercial convention held? When? What did friends of better government behold in the Annapolis convention? What do you know of Alexander Hamilton? What was recommended? Where did the next convention assemble? When? Why? How many States were represented? What work had this convention before it? What can you say of conflicting and sectional interests? Why were concessions and compromises made? Name some who led in the work of the convention. What was the first important step taken in the formation of the new government? What was the "Virginia Plan"? What was the objection to it? What

was the "New Jersey Plan"? What was the "Connecticut Compromise"? What was the next point of disagreement? What do you know of the "Federal Ratio"? What awakened much discussion? What were the Three Great Compromises? How was the Convention divided upon the question of the Executive? What do you know of the Electoral College, as provided by the Constitution? How was it first chosen? How, now? What can you say of Federal Constitution as completed? To whom was the Constitution submitted when complete? How was it received? What two political parties arose? Name some who did not favor ratification? What can you say of the contest between Federalist and anti-Federalist? Name some who strenuously worked for adoption? What State first adopted? What states followed? How close was the contest in Massachusetts? Virginia? What do you know of the subsequent difference of interpretation that arose? What had the States in common? Upon what was the doctrine of State Rights founded? When did the Constitution go into effect? How many amendments were made with its adoption? What can you say of these amendments? Who was unanimously chosen as President under the new government? When did the first Federal Congress assemble? Where? What two States finally adopted the constitution? When? For what purposes was the new government devised?

REVIEW QUESTIONS.

(GENERAL.)

What policy did England pursue towards her colonies? When were Navigation Acts passed? Why? What were they? Importation Acts? What was the Stamp Act? When was it passed? Repealed? Why did the colonists regard it as unjust? What were "Writs of Assistance"? What was the "Stamp Act Congress"? How did England seek to punish Massachusetts for opposing the tea tax? What do you know of the battle of Allamance? Name four acts of colonial resistance. What were "Committees of Correspondence"? What was the first battle of the Revolution? Last battle? How long did the war last? Name six American victories won in the North. Eight in the South. Name five celebrated foreigners who assisted the Americans. What nation assisted the Americans? When was the treaty of alliance entered into? Why not before? Name ten American generals. Five British. Three Hessians. Name eight battles fought by Washington. Four by Greene. Three by Gates. Three by Lincoln. Three by Sumter. What battles were fought before the Declaration of Independence? Why? What brilliant naval engagement occurred during the War of the Revolution? What do you know of partisan warfare in the Carolinas? Give two results of the American Revolution. In the growth of ideas of liberty what effect had successes in colonial wars? Who in Virginia educated public sentiment up to an appreciation of Independence?

South Carolina? Massachusetts? What was the Mecklenburg Declaration of Independence? What State first offered to concur with other States in declaring independence? What State first proposed independence? When and where was American Independence declared? Who wrote the declaration? What battles of the Revolution were decisive ones, and why? What governmental functions were assumed by the Seeond Continental Congress? What recommendation did it make to the States? Why is government necessary to man? What is Sovereignty? What is a Monarchy? Democracy? Republic? State? Province? How did the American people assume sovereignty? What delegation of governmental power did they make? Give six events of American history that marked the development of self-government. What do you know of the Ordinance of 1787? Of the State of Franklin? Virginia Bill of Rights? Shay's Rebellion? What convention led to that which drew up the Constitution? What is a Constitution? Name three compromises in the Constitution. What differences of interpretation came to exist in regard to the Constitution? Name some who opposed the establishment of the new government as proposed by the Constitution? Why did they oppose? Name some who favored? Why? What three men did most to secure the adoption of the Constitution? What is "The Federalist"? Why was the Federal Government instituted in place of the Congress of the Confederation? What State first adopted the Constitution? When? What States followed in succession? Who was the unanimous choice for President of the United States?

(BIOGRAPHICAL.)

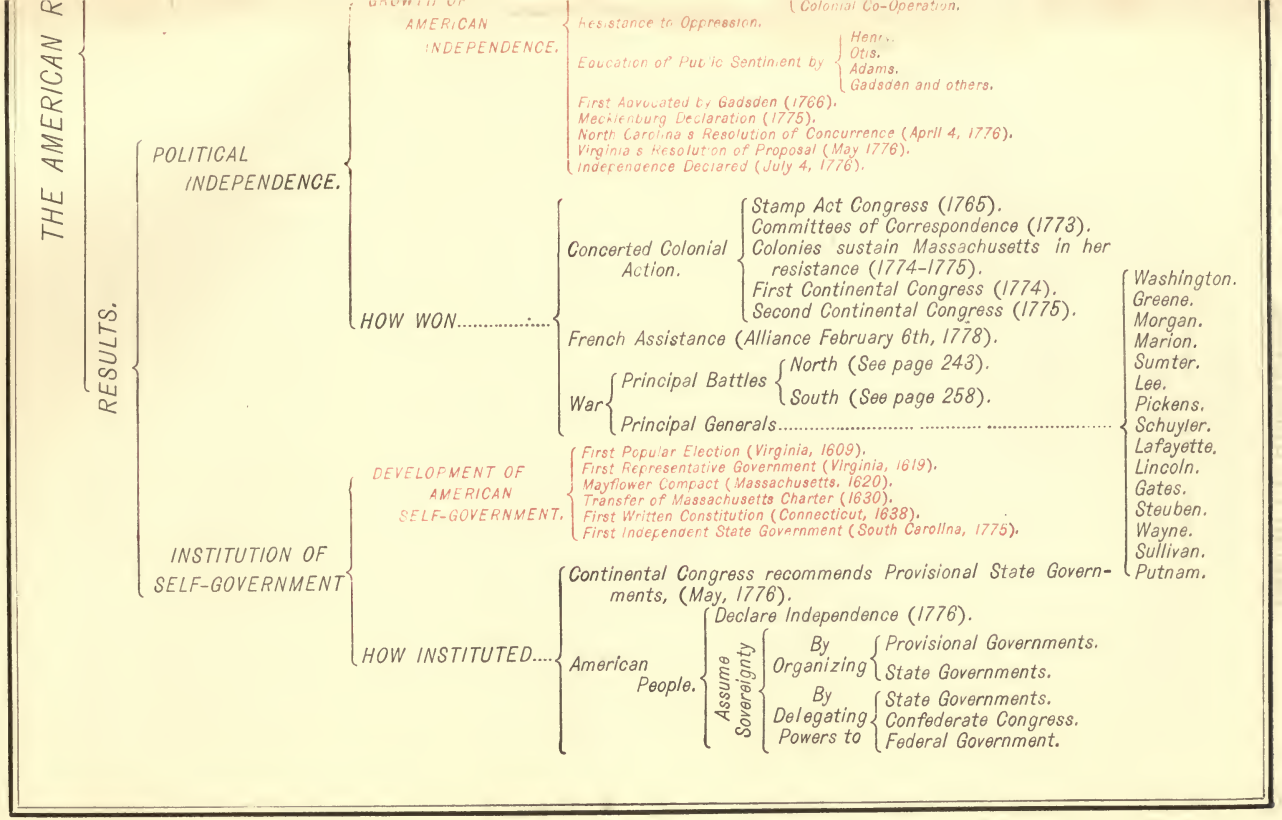
Tell what you know of each of the following and of the events connected with his name:

Washington.	Ferguson.	Jones.	Schuyler.	André.
Randolph.	Cleaveland.	Tarleton.	Riedesel.	Moultrie.
Gadsden.	Nelson.	Rawdon.	Lee (A.)	Stirling.
Greene.	Boone.	Van Wert.	Clarke.	Steuben.
Putnam.	Henry.	Shelby.	Wayne.	St. Clair.
Harrison.	Adams (S.)	Campbell.	Buford.	Philips.
Burgoyne.	Lee (R. H.)	Mason.	Hayne.	Lee (C.)
Jasper.	Revere.	Madison.	Marion.	Pickens.
Rutledge.	Allen.	Hancock.	Williams.	D'Estaing.
Cornwallis.	Ward.	Jefferson.	McDowell.	Cruger.
Lafayette.	Gates.	Carr.	Shepard.	Paulding.
Kosciusko.	Morgan.	Stark.	Marshall.	Moore.
Franklin.	Laurens.	Arnold.	Otis.	Sevier.
Lee (H.)	Pulaski.	Howe.	Adams (J.	Stewart.
Ashe.	DeKalb.	Prescott.	Gage.	Robertson.
Prevost.	Fraser.	Caswell.	Parker.	Wilson.
Brown.	Deane.	Sullivan.	Warner.	St. Leger.
Locke.	Hamilton.	Knyphausen.	Clinton.	Baum.

TOPICAL OUTLINE.

Showing Causes and Results of the AMERICAN REVOLUTION, the Growth of AMERICAN INDEPENDENCE, and the Development of SELF-GOVERNMENT.

- AMERICAN REVOLUTION.
 - CAUSES.
 - ENGLISH OPPRESSION.
 - Tyrannical Governors.
 - Commercial Restrictions
 - Navigation Laws (1651).
 - Importation Acts (1733).
 - Acts of Trade, etc. (1750).
 - Writs of Assistance (1761).
 - Unjust Taxation
 - Stamp Act
 - Passed (1765).
 - Repealed (1766).
 - Revenue Act (1767).
 - Declaratory Act (1766).
 - Sending of Soldiers (1768).
 - Boston Port Bill (1774).
 - Annulment of Massachusetts Charter (1774).
 - COLONIAL RESISTANCE.
 - Boston Massacre (1770).
 - Battle of Allamance, North Carolina (1771)
 - Burning of Gaspee (1772).
 - Boston Tea Party (1773).
 - Battle of Lexington (1775),
 - Conditions of Colonial Life.
 - Successes in
 - Indian and
 - Inter-Colonial Wars.


THE AMERICAN R
RESULTS.
POLITICAL INDEPENDENCE.
GROWTH OF AMERICAN INDEPENDENCE.
Colonial Co-Operation.
Resistance to Oppression.
Education of Public Sentiment by
Henry.
Otis.
Adams.
Gadsden and others.
First Advocated by Gadsden (1766).
Mecklenburg Declaration (1775).
North Carolina's Resolution of Concurrence (April 4, 1776).
Virginia's Resolution of Proposal (May 1776).
Independence Declared (July 4, 1776).
HOW WON.....
Concerted Colonial Action.
Stamp Act Congress (1765).
Committees of Correspondence (1773).
Colonies sustain Massachusetts in her resistance (1774-1775).
First Continental Congress (1774).
Second Continental Congress (1775).
French Assistance (Alliance February 6th, 1778).
War
Principal Battles
North (See page 243).
South (See page 258).
Principal Generals.....
Washington.
Greene.
Morgan.
Marion.
Sumter.
Lee.
Pickens.
Schuyler.
Lafayette.
Lincoln.
Gates.
Steuben.
Wayne.
Sullivan.
Putnam.
INSTITUTION OF SELF-GOVERNMENT
DEVELOPMENT OF AMERICAN SELF-GOVERNMENT.
First Popular Election (Virginia, 1609).
First Representative Government (Virginia, 1619).
Mayflower Compact (Massachusetts, 1620).
Transfer of Massachusetts Charter (1630).
First Written Constitution (Connecticut, 1638).
First Independent State Government (South Carolina, 1775).
HOW INSTITUTED....
Continental Congress recommends Provisional State Governments, (May, 1776).
American People.
Declare Independence (1776).
Assume Sovereignty
By Organizing
Provisional Governments.
State Governments.
By Delegating Powers to
State Governments.
Confederate Congress.
Federal Government.

*SEARCH QUESTIONS.**

For what purpose was the Constitution ordained and established? What is the law-making body of the Federal Government called? Of what two houses does it consist? Of whom is the House of Representatives composed? What are the qualifications of a Representative? Of whom is the Senate composed? What are the qualifications of a Senator? What powers have been delegated to Congress? What bills originate in the House? How does a bill become a law? Who is the Executive? How is he chosen? What are his qualifications? What are his duties? Powers? In whom is the judicial power of the United States vested? To what cases does this power extend? What provision is in the Constitution regarding the return to their owners of runaway slaves? How are new States formed and admitted to the Union? What does the United States Government guarantee to each State? By whom are regulations and rules regarding territory of the United States made? How may the Constitution be amended? What is the Tenth Amendment to the Constitution? What amendment changed the original manner of electing the President and Vice-President?

*For answers see the Constitution of the United States.

PREPARATORY NOTES.

TO CHAPTERS I, II AND III.

Definition of Words.—Subordinate, financial, conservative, tariff, complications, impetus, census, animosity, coerce, negotiate, overtures, void, *quasi*, alien, sedition, political, amendment, recurrence, preëminently, retrocession, tribute, spoliation, culminate, retaliatory, flagrant, nullification, dominant, aggressor, exultation, embargo, preliminary.

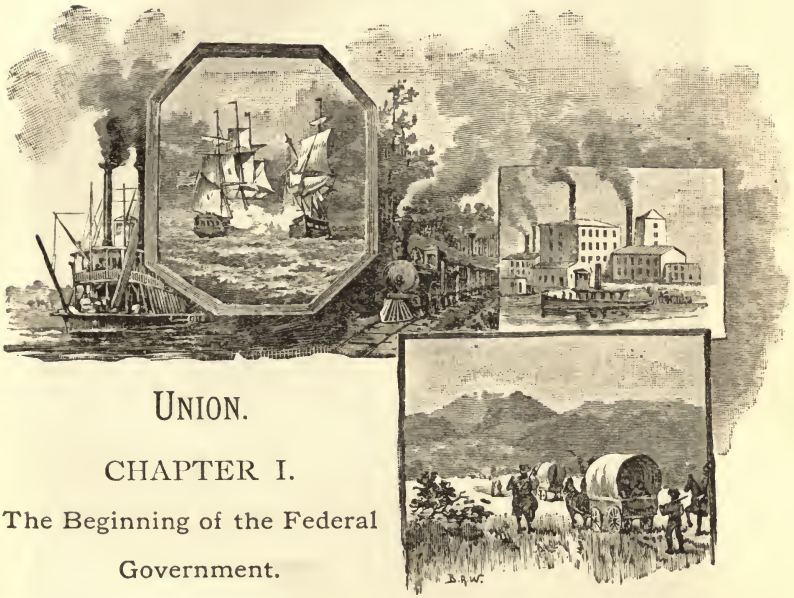
PARALLEL READINGS.

REFERENCE.—Schouler's "History of the American Republic," McMaster's "History of the People of the United States," Marshall's "Life of Washington," Andrews' "Kentucky, Tennessee, Ohio, Their Admission into the Union" (Magazine of American History, October, 1887).

GENERAL.—Irving's "Life of Washington," Lodge's "Hamilton," Morse's "Jefferson," Johnston's "American Politics," Von Holst's "Constitutional History of the United States," Morse's "John Adams," Coffin's "Building of the Nation."

TOPICAL.—"Federal Government, Organization of," "Alexander Hamilton," "Whisky Rebellion," "First United States Bank," "Thomas Jefferson," "Washington's Inauguration," "Jay's Treaty," "Tennessee, Early History of," "Kentucky, Early History of," "John Adams," "Quasi French War," "Charles C. Pinckney," "Alien and Sedition Laws," "Virginia Resolutions," "Kentucky Resolutions," "Louisiana Purchase," "Tripolitan War," "Lewis and Clark, Expedition of," "Orders in Council," "Milan Decree," "Embargo Act," "First Steamboat."

INDEPENDENCE.



UNION.

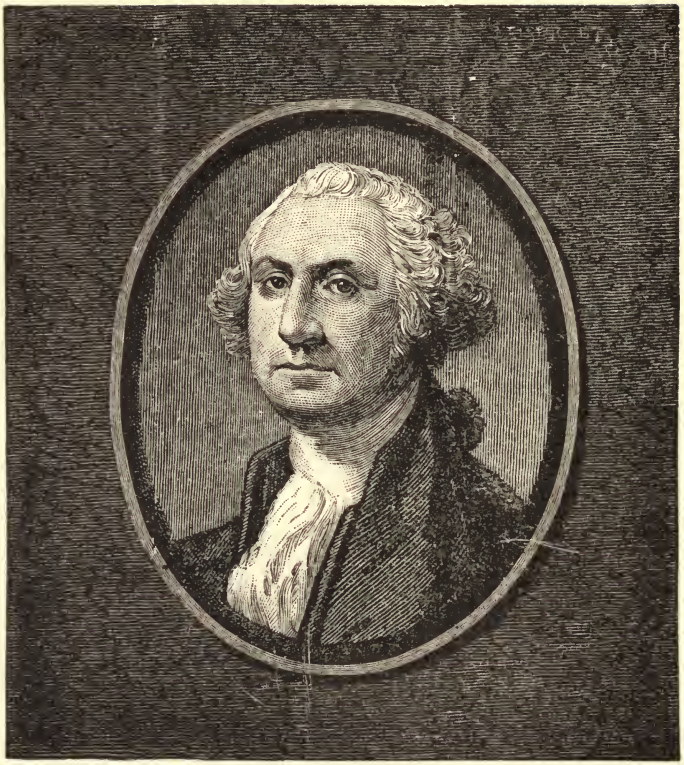
CHAPTER I.

The Beginning of the Federal Government.

THE inauguration of Washington as President of the United States took place at New York, April 30, 1789. Congress had already assembled, and with the inauguration of the President, the organization of the Federal Government neared completion. JOHN JAY of New York was appointed Chief Justice of the Supreme Court, and EDMUND RANDOLPH of Virginia, Attorney-General.

The First President.

The call to the presidency found Washington at his home, Mount Vernon, Virginia. It was with reluctance that he gave up the peace and retirement of his surroundings to engage again in public life. His journey to New York, where the new government was to be organized, was a series of ovations. Everybody turned out eager to greet and behold one who had done so much for his country, and who was yet to do more. No one better merited the public confidence, and in no one could the hopes of the American people be better centered.



GEORGE WASHINGTON.

Three subordinate executive officers were appointed. One was to administer affairs connected with foreign powers (State), another with defense (War), and the third with the finance (Treasury). These officers or SECRETARIES constituted the PRESIDENT'S CABINET. Washington was particularly fortunate in his selection of a cabinet. GENERAL KNOX was appointed Secretary of War, Thomas Jefferson of State, and Alexander Hamilton of the Treasury.

The duties devolving upon those who first administered affairs were many and difficult. The authority of the new government over its citizens had to be established, and in a

Jefferson and Hamilton.

Jefferson and Hamilton are numbered among America's greatest statesmen. The State papers of the former are remarkable contributions to political literature. The financial policy of the latter was brilliantly conceived, and endures to this day. Both represented extremes of political thought. Hamilton believed in a strong central government, and directed all his plans accordingly. Jefferson was opposed to any increase of power that would strengthen the Federal Government at the expense of the State. Between the two stood Washington, the conservative, guiding the transcendent energies and abilities of both with consummate tact and wisdom; following the counselings of each so far as they conformed, in his judgment, to what was best for the country, and shaping, by the assistance of each, the early destinies of the new government, with a success that has added the glories of the statesman to those already won as a soldier and patriot.

manner as harmonious as possible. Antagonisms against the Constitution had to be softened, and jealous fears allayed. The States, united under one jurisdiction, had to be elevated to such dignity as would command respect both at home and abroad.

Hamilton was of invaluable assistance in the organization of the government. He presented to Congress reports upon the condition and needs of the country, the necessity of establishing public credit, the desirability of encouraging domestic manufactures, and many other important matters. He divided the public debt into three parts: that due by the Confederation abroad, that due at home, and that due by each State independent of the confederated government. He advocated the prompt and honest payment of the whole. In all, this debt amounted to about eighty million dollars.

Franklin's Anti-Slavery Petition.

African slavery, as an institution, had become firmly established in this country. It had been tacitly recognized in the drawing up of the Constitution. Nevertheless the question of its abolition had already arisen. Hardly was the Federal Government organized before a petition for emancipation, headed by Franklin, was presented to Congress (February 19, 1790). After some deliberation, Congress decided that it had no authority to interfere in the slavery regulations of any State, and the question which afterwards caused fierce agitation, was for a time set at rest.

In no way is the efficiency of a government better tested than in the matter of raising revenues. Here Hamilton's policy was well defined. A tariff was levied on imports, and an internal revenue tax on distilled spirits. A mint was

established at Philadelphia, and a national bank chartered. The whole machinery of the treasury department was successfully set in motion. The Federal Government rapidly increased in strength, and its vigor enabled it to cope with many difficulties that beset it.

The Capital Bargain.

Hamilton experienced some difficulty in carrying his measures through Congress, but finally succeeded by what has been termed the CAPITAL BARGAIN. The seat of government had been removed from New York to Philadelphia (1791), there to remain until a permanent location was decided upon. Different sections were contending for this location. Hamilton's measures had many friends in the North, and but few in the South. In return for southern support of his measures he used his influence to have the national capital located in the South, and the site selected was that upon the Potomac River, where it now is.

The attention of the government was soon directed to foreign affairs. The attitude of England had been far from satisfactory since the close of the war. She still held the western posts; had declined to recognize the new government by sending a representative, as is customary, and was holding the rights of the United States on sea in utter contempt. Complications also arose with France, which had entered into a war with England, and confidently anticipated American assistance. The United States was too young a nation to enter into any entangling alliances with foreign powers, and Washington's policy was one of neutrality.

The Whisky Rebellion.

The collection of the internal revenue tax was resisted by the farmers of the western counties of Pennsylvania, many of whom were engaged in the manufacture of whisky. The resistance offered by them assumed important proportions. A sufficient force rallied to the support of the government however, and marching to the region suppressed the rebellion without bloodshed.

The war between France and England gave a great impetus to American commerce, but this impetus was soon checked by repeated acts of hostility on the part of England. War was threatened, but was averted by Washington, who, in his wisdom, dispatched Jay to England to effect a treaty (1795). JAY'S TREATY was ratified by the Senate, but

was thoroughly unsatisfactory to the people, because it did not dispose of England's claim of right to search American vessels, and it placed restrictions upon the trade of the United States with the West Indies. But the western posts were relinquished, and war was deferred.

War With Little Turtle.

The Indians were encouraged in many an act of hostility by the English garrisons that still occupied the western forts. Emigration, seeking the fertile lands of Ohio and Indiana, was checked for a time. In seven years of Indian depredation more than fifteen hundred settlers fell victims to savage butchery, while many others were carried off into captivity. General Harmar, General St. Clair, and General Wayne were successively sent to bring the Indians to terms. Harmar (1790) and St. Clair (1791) were badly defeated by LITTLE TURTLE, chief of Miamis. Wayne met with better success. Advancing into the Indian country (1793) he built several forts, and finally won a complete victory over the savages on the banks of the Maumee, in Northern Ohio (1794). The defeated savages long remembered Wayne, and called him the "chief who never sleeps." The year after their defeat the Indians relinquished by treaty all claim to a large extent of territory (1795).

Washington served as President two terms of four years each, and declined a third. The first census was taken during his administration, and showed a population of almost four million. By treaty with Spain, in whose possession was Florida, the southern boundary of the United States was defined, and the free navigation of the Mississippi conceded.

Three new States were added to the original thirteen—Vermont, Kentucky and Tennessee. The Constitution provides for the admission of new States, but stipulates that no new State may be formed within another State without consent of its legislature. Vermont was claimed by both New York and New Hampshire. The people desired a separate State government, and in 1790 New York gave her consent. Congress passed

Genet.

Washington issued a proclamation of neutrality, but it was ignored by Genet, a representative of France, who came to this country to secure the assistance of the Americans. At Charleston he proceeded to fit out vessels of war to prey upon English commerce (1793), and a controversy ensued between him and the administration. Upon the demand of the United States he was recalled to France.

the act of admission February 18, and March 4, 1791, the act went into effect.

Free Navigation of the Mississippi.

This concession was important to the settlers of the Ohio Valley, for it gave them an outlet to the sea for their surplus produce. A thriving trade sprung up that did much to develop the western section and increase the commercial importance of New Orleans. Large quantities of farm products were shipped in flatboats down the Ohio and Mississippi, and the boat and cargo having been sold, the enriched owner made his way back home over land.

Six States had made cessions to the United States of their claims to western territory—New York (1781), Virginia (1784), Massachusetts (1785), Connecticut (1786), South Carolina (1787), and North Carolina (1790). The land so ceded was organized into two territories, the "NORTHWEST" and the "SOUTH OF THE OHIO." The "Northwest" was that portion north of the Ohio River. The "South of the Ohio" was that now occupied by the State of Tennessee, together with a narrow strip south of it, ceded by South Carolina. Between the two was the District of Kentucky, a part of the domain of Virginia not included in her cession of 1784. The legislature of Virginia consented (December 18, 1789) to the forming of a new State from this district. The act of admission was approved by Congress February 4, 1791, and took effect June 1, 1792.

Under the governorship of WILLIAM BLOUNT the territory "South of the Ohio" retained its territorial organization until 1796. The deed of cession passed by North Carolina provided that when the territory attained a population of sixty thousand, it should be admitted into the Union. A census was taken in 1795, under the direction of the territorial legislature, and showed the required number. That portion ceded by North Carolina was therefore organized as a State. It was named Tennessee, and admitted into the Union June 1, 1796.

BLACKBOARD FORM.

WASHINGTON'S ADMINISTRATION.

PRINCIPAL EVENTS.

- *1789* — *Inauguration.*
- *1790* — *Franklin's Anti-Slavery Petition.*
- *1790* — *Harmar's Defeat.*
- *1791* — *Philadelphia made Capital.*
- *1791* — *Vermont Admitted.*
- *1791* — *National Bank Established.*
- *1791* — *St. Clair's Defeat.*
- *1792* — *Kentucky Admitted.*
- *1792* — *Washington Re-elected.*
- *1793* — *Troubles with France (Genet).*
- *1794* — *Wayne's Victory over Little Turtle.*
- *1794* — *Whisky Rebellion.*
- *1795* — *Jay's Treaty.*
- *1796* — *Tennessee Admitted.*

QUESTIONS.

When and where was Washington inaugurated? What can you say of his journey to the Capital? **What can you say of the organization of the Federal Government?** What executive departments were instituted? Who were appointed secretaries? **What can you say of Jefferson and Hamilton?** **What can you say of the duties devolving upon the first administration?** **What work did Hamilton do?** How was the public debt divided? What was its amount? What do you know of Franklin's anti-slavery petition? What do you know of the Capital Bargain? **How is the efficiency of a government best tested?** How was revenue raised? What was established? Chartered? What do you know of the whisky rebellion? **What grievances did the United States have against England?** What complications arose with France? **What do you know of Jay's treaty?** What Indian war occurred while Washington was President? **What do you know of the campaigns of Harmar, St. Clair and Wayne?** What do you know of Genet? What was the population of the United States according to the first census? What boundary treaty was made with Spain? What was conceded by this treaty? **Of what importance was this concession to the Western States?** What three States were admitted? When was each admitted? **What do you know of the organization of the Northwest Territory?** South of the Ohio Territory? Who was its governor? **What do you know of the organization of Kentucky as a State? Tennessee?**

CHAPTER II.

The Rise of Political Parties.

The difference between the political parties had become more and more marked, and each put forward a candidate to succeed Washington as President. The question of accepting or rejecting the Constitution had been settled, and party lines were now drawn upon the subject of the powers to be exercised by the government under the Constitution. The cardinal principle of the Federalist party was to strengthen the general government; that of their opponents, who now came to be known as the Democratic-Republican party, was to oppose all centralizing of power and to place as few restrictions upon the people as possible.

The candidate of the Federalists was JOHN ADAMS; of the Democratic-Republicans, THOMAS JEFFERSON. No candidate for vice-president was put forward in those days. The presidential candidate receiving the second highest number of votes became the Vice-President. The contest resulted in the election of Adams as President, and Jefferson as Vice-President.

Jay's treaty had averted war with England, but it had excited the animosity of France. ADET, the French minister to the United States, vainly urged an alliance. France had just passed through a revolution, and its government was in the hands of a DIRECTORY of five. This Directory endeavored to coerce the United States into opposition against England. Failing in this, their relations with our government became hostile. The American minister was ordered to leave France, and French men-of-war were instructed to prey upon American commerce.

More than a thousand vessels were lost before American shipowners became apprised of hostilities. CHARLES

COTESWORTH PINCKNEY, ELDRIDGE GERRY and JOHN MARSHALL were sent as commissioners to negotiate a treaty, and secure, if possible, a friendly settlement. The Directory refused to receive them officially, but sent word that a present of two hundred and forty thousand dollars and a loan from the United States to the French government would insure peace. These overtures were indignantly rejected, Pinckney uttering the memorable words, "*Millions for defense, but not one cent for tribute.*"



CHARLES COTESWORTH PINCKNEY.

The indignities of France soon aroused America to action. The army was organized. Washington was called again to its command, while Alexander Hamilton was made a major-general. An executive department for naval affairs was created, and BENJAMIN STODDERT of Maryland was appointed Secretary of the Navy. All past treaties with France were declared void, and American men-of-war made ready for sea. Although war was not formally declared, American and French vessels met in combat. COMMODORE TRUXTON in the American frigate CONSTELLATION won an important victory over the French forty-gun ship *L'Insurgent*, near the West Indies, and shortly after successfully encountered *La Vengeance*. This *quasi-war* continued until Napoleon came to the head of the French government. Wholly engaged with European affairs, he sought a peace with America. MURRAY, ELLSWORTH and DAVIE were sent as embassadors to Paris (1800), and a treaty was concluded.

Death of Washington.

About this time the sad intelligence was received that Washington was dead (December 14, 1799). The news was everywhere received with manifestations of sorrow. Numbered among the greatest of all time, he stands the central figure in American history. Soldiers and statesmen of every clime have pronounced eulogies upon him, and eloquent tributes to his memory have been over and over repeated.

Adams' administration was unpopular. The most censured of its acts was the passage of ALIEN AND SEDITION LAWS. The Alien laws gave the President power to order any foreigner whom he deemed dangerous to public peace to leave the United States, and lengthened a foreigner's term of residence in this country before he could be naturalized. The Sedition laws made it unlawful to unduly criticize the government, or publish anything that would bring either Congress or the President into contempt or disrepute.

Kentucky and Virginia Resolutions.

The passage and enforcement of these laws were regarded as usurpations of governmental powers. The legislature of Kentucky passed a formal set of resolutions in protest, declaring the Alien and Sedition Laws palpable violations of the Constitution, and asserting as unquestionable the right of the States to nullify all unauthorized acts done under cover of that instrument. Virginia followed with resolutions declaring the powers of the Federal Government limited by the instrument of compact; and that the States are in duty bound, and have the right, to interfere when the dangerous and palpable exercise of powers not granted by the Constitution is sought.

In the political agitation that followed the passage of the Alien and Sedition Laws, the Democratic-Republican party increased greatly in strength. Adams was defeated for re-election. Two candidates, Thomas Jefferson and AARON BURR, had been proposed by the strengthened and successful party, so that if successful both President and Vice-President would be of their party, and both received the same number of electoral votes. According to the Constitution it now became the duty of Congress to choose between the candidates. The Federalist members labored strenuously to defeat their great antagonist, Jefferson, who had been one of the founders of the party opposed to them. Thirty-six ballots were taken before the decision was made. Jefferson was elected.

The Twelfth Amendment.

To prevent a recurrence of these difficulties an amendment was added to the Constitution, by which a candidate for each of the offices of President and Vice-President was thenceforth voted for. This precluded the possibility of two candidates put forth by the successful political party receiving the same vote for the one office, and thus making an election by Congress necessary.

With the close of the eighteenth century the capital of the United States was removed to its permanent location. A site on the Potomac River had been donated by Virginia and Maryland, but only that portion tendered by the latter was used. A district ten miles square was laid out and named COLUMBIA, the city receiving the name of the first President, WASHINGTON.

BLACKBOARD FORM.

PRINCIPAL EVENTS.

ADAMS' ADMINISTRATION.

- 1797
 - Inauguration.
 - Troubles with France
 - 1797 Commissioners sent.
 - 1798 Quasi War begins.
 - 1799 Constitution captures L'Insurgent.
- 1798
 - Navy Department created.
 - Alien and Sedition Laws.
 - Kentucky and Virginia Resolutions.
- 1799 Death of Washington.
- 1800
 - Washington City made Capital.
 - Presidential Election
 - Democratic-Republican Candidates.
 - Jefferson.
 - Burr.
 - Federalist Candidates
 - John Adams.
 - Pinckney.
 - Treaty with France.

QUESTIONS.

What differences existed in political parties after the adoption of the Constitution? What were the parties now called? Who were the presidential candidates of each? Which was successful? How was the Vice-President elected in those days? What effect had Jay's English treaty upon France? **What hostile steps were taken by France against the United States?** Why? What three commissioners were sent? **What was the result of their mission?** What war-like measures did the United States now adopt? **What do you know of the quasi French War?** What treaty was concluded? By whom? What can you say of the death of Washington? What unpopular laws were passed while Adams was President? **What do you know of the Alien Law? Sedition Law? What do you know of the Kentucky and Virginia Resolutions?** What was the effect of the Alien and Sedition Laws upon the presidential election? **What do you know of the election of Jefferson? What do you know of the Twelfth Amendment? What do you know of the permanent location of the Federal Capital?**

CHAPTER III.

Expansion of Territory.

Thomas Jefferson was preëminently a man of the people, and believed in a government "for the people, by the people." His inauguration was attended by no display of pomp or ceremony. In his opinion the Chief Executive is but the servant, not the ruler of those who confer upon him the office, and he should set an example of republican simplicity.



THOMAS JEFFERSON.

In plain attire he rode unattended to the government building, entered, and was sworn in to office (March 4, 1801). The Federalists looked upon his ascendancy to power with grave fears, but the popularity of his administration increased as the years wore on. He was triumphantly elected to a second term, and declined a third, following the precedent established by Washington.

The progress of the country while Jefferson was President was marked, notwithstanding the difficulties that arose with several foreign powers. One new State, Ohio, was admitted into the Union (Februrary 19, 1803). The greatest event connected with his administration was the purchase of Louisiana. It will be remembered that this province passed to the possession of Spain by the treaty that ended the French and Indian War. It comprised a vast region west of the Mississippi, together with that peninsula-like portion of the present State of Louisiana lying on the left bank of the river south of Lakes Maurepas, Pontchartrain and Borgne, and upon which Bienville had established New Orleans (1718).

In 1800 Spain was compelled by Napoleon to retrocede Louisiana to France, which she did by the secret TREATY OF ILDEFONSO. Spain had conceded the free navigation of the Mississippi to the United States, but the retrocession made it necessary to again contend for this privilege.

The navigation of the Mississippi was essential to the prosperity of the western people. Monroe and Livingstone were sent to France to negotiate for the purchase of a site near the mouth of the river, upon which to establish a depot for the commercial benefit of the United States. They were surprised to receive an intimation from Napoleon that the whole province could be purchased. The price de-

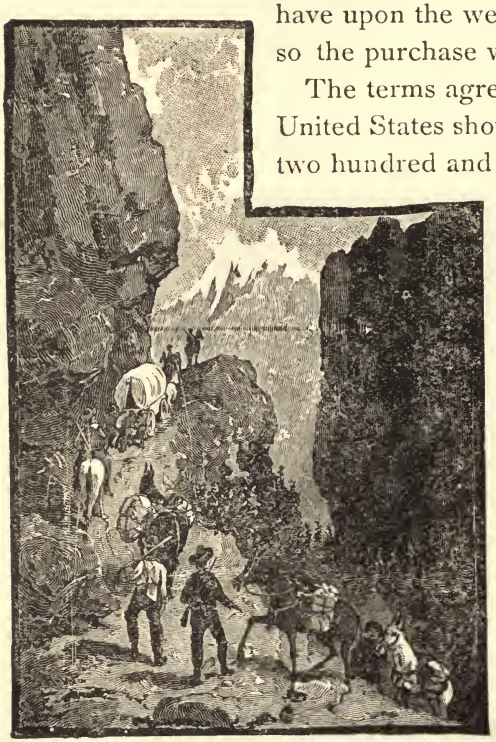


DECATUR BURNING THE PHILADELPHIA.

War With Tripoli.

American commerce in the Mediterranean suffered very much from the piratical practices of the Barbary States of Africa. American vessels were captured, and their crews either held for ransom or sold into captivity. Immunity from these outrages could be secured by the payment of an annual tribute, as several European nations were doing; but the United States declined to submit to such extortion. The Bashaw of Tripoli haughtily declared war (1801). A fleet was sent under Commodore Preble (1803), who, after bringing the Emperor of Morocco to terms, blockaded and bombarded Tripoli, until its piratical ruler was glad to submit (1804). Incidental to the blockade a daring exploit was performed by LIEUTENANT DECATUR. The frigate Philadelphia running aground had fallen into the hands of the Tripolitans. To prevent her being used by the enemy it was determined to destroy her. Decatur, with a chosen band in a small vessel, succeeded in reaching the frigate without exciting suspicion, and before resistance could be made, leaped aboard, cleared the deck of the enemy, set the vessel on fire, and returned without the loss of a single man, though a fierce cannonade was directed upon him from the shore.

manded seemed enormous in those days, but the sagacity of Jefferson enabled him to foresee what an important bearing the full possession of the Mississippi and its tributaries would have upon the welfare of this country; so the purchase was made (1803).

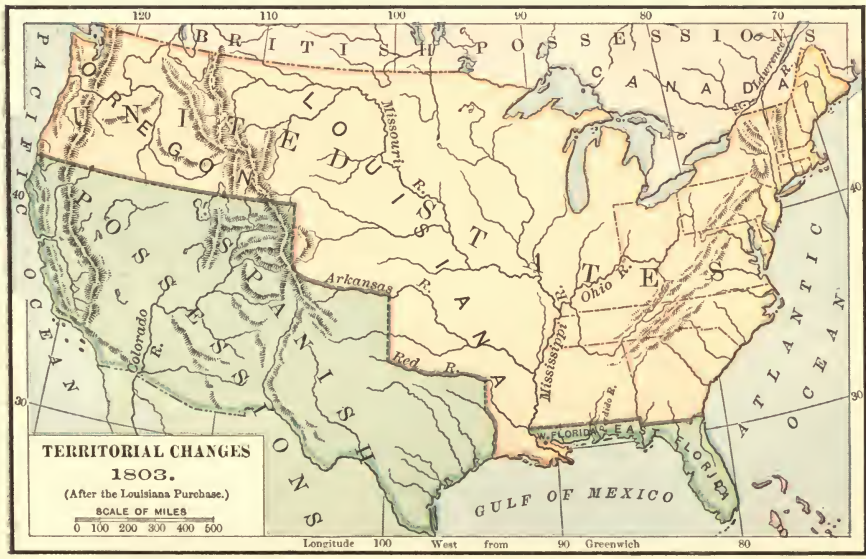


CROSSING THE ROCKY MOUNTAINS.

The terms agreed upon were that the United States should pay eleven million two hundred and fifty thousand dollars to France, and assume a debt of some three million seven hundred and fifty thousand dollars, "SPOLIATION CLAIMS," held by citizens of the United States against French government. Thus was a domain containing more than one million square miles and more than ninety thousand inhabitants added to the territory of the United States. Immediately after its purchase, MERIWETHER LEWIS and WILLIAM CLARKE were sent to explore it (1804). Proceeding westward from the Missouri River these explorers crossed the Rocky Mountains, reached the Pacific coast, and returned, after having been engaged three years in the undertaking.

The purchase of Louisiana made Jefferson very popular in the West, and he was reëlected by an overwhelming majority. The complications with foreign powers, which





ENGRAVED FOR HANSELL'S HIGHER HISTORY OF THE U.S.

began in the administrations of Washington and Adams, and which were destined to culminate in open war, continued during the administration of Jefferson, and reached a critical point during his second term.

Aaron Burr.

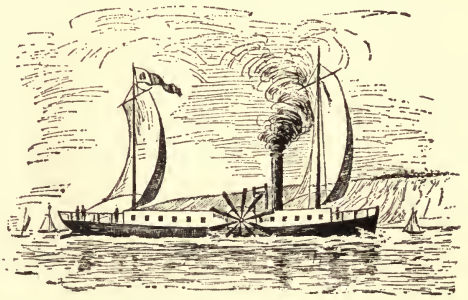
Aaron Burr, who was Vice President during Jefferson's first term, was replaced by GEORGE CLINTON. Burr was a man very ambitious, and ever actuated by motives of self-aggrandizement. When associated with Jefferson on the Democratic-Republican ticket, and the election devolved upon Congress, he manifested every willingness to make an alliance with the Federalist members to secure the position. While Vice-President he became a candidate for governor of New York (1804), and would have been supported by a sufficient number of Federalists to insure his success had it not been for Hamilton's influence. As it was, he was defeated, and, stung by disappointment, he seized upon some expressions employed by Hamilton in the heat of political debate as a pretext for a duel. His challenge was accepted. The duel took place at Weehawken, N. J. (July 11, 1804), and Hamilton was killed. The news was received with profound regret, and the event gave a death blow to Burr's political preferment. He was afterwards engaged in a treasonable scheme to invade Mexico, and, with as much of the southwestern territory of the United States as he could win to his cause, establish such an empire as would realize his dreams and desires for power. He was arrested in Alabama and taken to Richmond for trial, but was acquitted for want of sufficient proof.

France and England were still at war. The policy of the United States was one of strict neutrality. In their war with each other, England issued several ORDERS IN COUNCIL, and France, retaliatory DECREES, that interfered seriously with American commerce, and made it the prey of both the hostile nations. The Orders in Council declared all vessels carrying produce from the West Indies to Europe to be legal prizes, and all French ports to be in a state of blockade. The first French Decree was issued by Napoleon from BERLIN, and forbade the introduction by any neutral vessel of English goods into any port of Europe. The second was issued at MILAN, and decreed the confiscation of all vessels violating the Berlin Decree, or submitting to English search.

Great Britain, moreover, had long viewed with jealousy the growing commerce of the United States. She now

manifested great vindictiveness in the execution of the Orders in Council. International law was by her ignored. Her ships of war infested the Atlantic seaboard, intercepting and searching American vessels, and seizing American seamen. Even in the harbors the ships of the United States were not safe from British guns. Outrages upon the high seas became more and more numerous, and the patience of the American people was tested to its utmost.

One of the most flagrant of these outrages was that upon the American frigate Chesapeake, which, sailing under CAPTAIN BARRON from Norfolk for the Mediterranean, was stopped by the British ship-of-war Leopard (June 22, 1807). The British commander claimed several of the Chesapeake's crew as deserters from the English navy, and demanded their surrender. On being refused, the Leopard opened fire. The attack was a surprise, and the Chesapeake in her unprepared state soon lowered her flag. Great indignation followed. Jefferson issued a proclamation ordering all British vessels out of American ports.



FULTON'S FIRST STEAMBOAT.

Reluctant to involve the country in war with England, Jefferson pursued a policy which, in his judgment, would avoid hostilities, and at the same time bring England to terms. Trade with America was an important consideration with English merchants and manufacturers; so an EMBARGO ACT was passed (December 22, 1807), forbidding American vessels to leave and British vessels to enter the ports of the United States. This virtually sus-

pended all commerce, and bore heavily upon that section of the country whose principal interest was commerce. Murmurs of discontent soon arose from New England. Here was the machinery of government bearing oppressively upon a sectional interest.

The Embargo Act was followed by an act to enforce its provisions. It was now the turn of Massachusetts to object, as Kentucky and Virginia had previously done. Her legislature condemned these measures of the United States Government as unconstitutional. The Governor of Connecticut refused to comply with their provisions, and by his words and acts strengthened the political doctrine of NULLIFICATION. The Federalist party was dominant in New England, and the opposition to the president's course almost crystalized into secession from the Union. To harmonize matters, the Embargo Act was modified and the NON-INTERCOURSE ACT passed, permitting commerce with all nations except England and France.

Fulton's First Steamboat.

The application of steam to navigation was successfully made during Jefferson's second term by ROBERT FULTON. His first boat was called the Clermont. It was clumsily built, and its progress was much slower than steam vessels of the present day. Nevertheless it was a great improvement upon the mode of transit employed at the time. The first trip was made on the Hudson River from New York to Albany (September 2, 1807).



ROBERT FULTON.

In the presidential canvass towards the close of Jefferson's administration, the Democratic-Republican party nominated JAMES MADISON of Virginia for President, and GEORGE CLINTON of New York for Vice-President. The Federalists nominated CHARLES C. PINCKNEY of South Carolina, and RUFUS KING of New York. The Democratic candidates were elected.

BLACKBOARD FORM.

PRINCIPAL EVENTS.

JEFFERSON'S ADMINISTRATION.

- **1801,**
 - Inauguration.
 - War with Tripoli
 - 1803, Preble sent.
 - 1804,
 - Tripoli bombarded.
 - Frigate Philadelphia burned.
 - 1805, Treaty of Peace.
- **1803,**
 - Ohio admitted, February 19.
 - Louisiana Purchased
 - 1800,
 - Retrocession to France,
 - Ildefonso Treaty.
 - 1803,
 - (April 30) Purchased by U. S.
 - (Dec. 20) Possession taken.
 - 1804, 1807, Explored by
 - Lewis.
 - Clarke.
- **1804,**
 - Re-Election of Jefferson.
 - Death of Hamilton.
- **1807,**
 - First Steamboat.
 - Troubles with
 - England.
 - Orders in Council.
 - Chesapeake affair.
 - President's Proclamation.
 - Embargo Act.
 - Non-Intercourse Act.
 - France.
 - Berlin Decree.
 - Milan Decree.
- **1808,** Presidential Election
 - Democratic Candidates
 - Madison.
 - Clinton.
 - Federalist Candidates
 - Pinckney.
 - King.

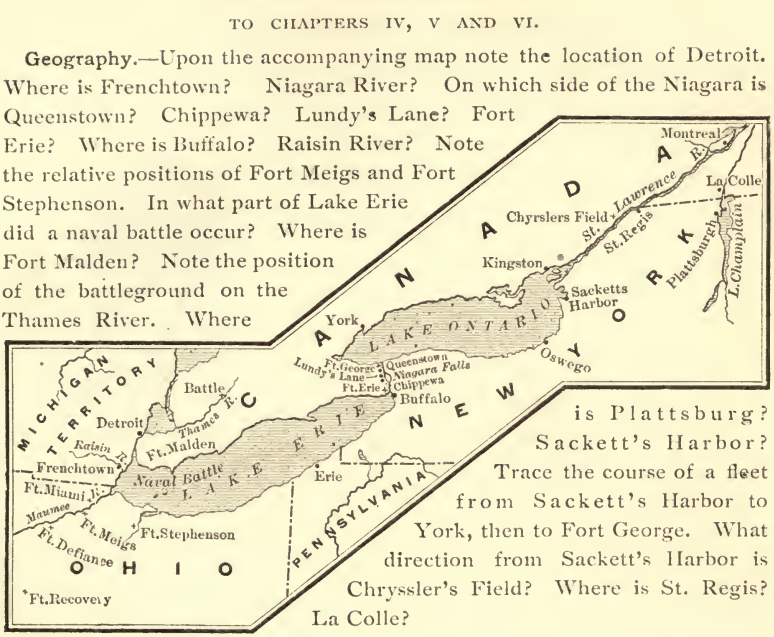
QUESTIONS.

What do you know of Jefferson's inauguration? Of his popularity? What State was admitted while he was President? **What is the greatest event connected with his administration? What do you know of the purchase of Louisiana?** What did the province of Louisiana comprise? By what treaty had France regained this province? Why was the free navigation of the Mississippi desirable? What was the price paid for Louisiana? **What do you know of the war with Tripoli?** Of Decatur? **Of Lewis and Clarke's expedition?** Of Aaron Burr? **What were the British "Orders in Council"? The "Berlin Decree"? The "Milan Decree"?** How did England show her animosity against the United States? **What outrages were committed by her upon American commerce?** What do you know of the Chesapeake affair? What proclamation followed? **What effect had it upon New England? Why was it passed? By what was it substituted?** Who were the candidates to succeed Jefferson? Who was elected?

PREPARATORY NOTES.

TO CHAPTERS IV, V AND VI.

Geography.—Upon the accompanying map note the location of Detroit. Where is Frenchtown? Niagara River? On which side of the Niagara is Queenstown? Chippewa? Lundy's Lane? Fort Erie? Where is Buffalo? Raisin River? Note the relative positions of Fort Meigs and Fort Stephenson. In what part of Lake Erie did a naval battle occur? Where is Fort Malden? Note the position of the battleground on the Thames River. Where is Plattsburg? Sackett's Harbor? Trace the course of a fleet from Sackett's Harbor to York, then to Fort George. What direction from Sackett's Harbor is Chryssler's Field? Where is St. Regis? La Colle?



Definition of Words.—Perfidy, impeded, cope, armament, revelation, uniformly, inglorious, impetuous, exhortation, compensation, ravage, prostrate, inopportune, diverting, mediate.

PARALLEL READINGS.

REFERENCE.—Schurz's "Henry Clay," Lossing's "Field Book of the War of 1812," Roosevelt's "War of 1812," Rives' "Madison," Sumner's "Andrew Jackson."

GENERAL.—Rossiter Johnson's "History of the War of 1812," Abbott's "Blue Jackets of 1812," Hemans' "To the Memory of General Sir Edward Pakenham" (poem), Gay's "Madison," "The Second War of Independence" (Harper's Magazine, April, 1884), Andrew Jackson's "Account of the Battle of Horseshoe Bend" (Magazine of American History, January, 1888).

TOPICAL.—"Impressment of American Seamen," "War with Tecumseh," "The Prophet," "Henry Clay," "James Madison," "Hartford Convention," "War of 1812, Land Battles of," "War of 1812, Naval Battles of," "Battle of New Orleans," "War of 1812, American Generals of," "War of 1812, American Naval Commanders of," "Perry's Victory," "Treaty of Ghent," "Creek War."

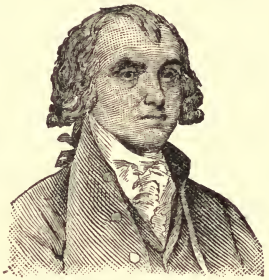
SEARCH QUESTIONS.

Why was "Citizen" Genet so called? Who eulogized Washington as "First in war, first in peace, and first in the hearts of his countrymen"? Who drew up the Virginia Resolutions? Kentucky Resolutions? What was the "Sun prophecy" of Franklin? What is the derivation of the word Tariff?

CHAPTER IV.

The Spirit of Young America.

The efforts of the United States to avoid hostilities only brought upon it the contempt of foreign nations. The outrages of England and the confiscations of France continued. Nine hundred American vessels had been taken by England since difficulties began, and more than six thousand American seamen pressed into English service. Five hundred and fifty vessels had fallen prey to France. Every remonstrance was unheeded by both nations. The position of the United States was indeed humiliating.



JAMES MADISON.

The Americans were slow in coming to a determination to command by force of arms an honored place for their country among the nations of earth. They had won political independence by the War of the Revolution, and with this achievement they seemed for a long while disposed to rest content. But the United States was fast being forced into a condition of commercial subserviency, and this condition could not long exist without calling into action the spirit of resistance characteristic of Americans.

A new generation was coming to the front and making

The Shawnee War.

The population of the United States now numbered eight million. The Indians of the northwest met the encroachment of the whites in the usual manner, and were incited to their deeds of atrocity by the British upon the Canadian frontier. TECUMSEH, chief of the Shawnees, assisted by his brother, the PROPHET, determined to make a final stand. Both were chiefs of great influence. They were joined by many of the western and southwestern tribes, Tecumseh even visiting the Indians of Tennessee and Alabama (1810), and winning them to his purpose. To arrest depredations, WILLIAM HENRY HARRISON, Governor of that portion of the northwest, organized as the Indiana Territory, marched upon the large Indian village of the Prophet at the mouth of the Tippecanoe River. When near his destination, he was attacked at night by overwhelming numbers, but being on the alert, was not surprised (November 7, 1811). He succeeded in administering a crushing defeat to the savages, and on the next day advanced to their town and laid it in ashes.

itself felt in American affairs. These younger citizens beheld their country insulted and humiliated upon every side, and they grew restive, as outrage after outrage was reported. The honor of America was at stake, and the spirit of young America was eager to defend it. War was demanded. Both England and France had been aggressors; but the conduct of England had been the more offensive, particularly as she had added another provocation to her many vindictive acts upon the sea, by again inciting the Indians of the northwest to hostilities.

President and Little Belt.

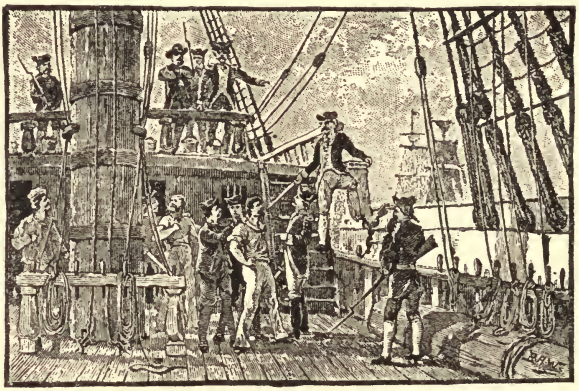
The war feeling steadily increased in strength. Strange to say, the West and South, the sections least affected by the commercial interferences of England, were the most eager to begin hostilities; while New England, the section whose interests had suffered the most, and in whose behalf war was advocated, was averse. An event occurred toward the close of Madison's first administration which did much to hasten the approaching conflict. The United States frigate PRESIDENT, commanded by COMMODORE RODGERS, sailing out of Norfolk, bound for the Mediterranean, hailed a vessel near the coast, and in reply received a shot. The vessel proved to be the British sloop-of-war LITTLE BELT. Instead of lying to and tamely submitting to search, Rodgers cleared his decks for action, and gave the Little Belt a number of broadsides which soon disabled her (May 11, 1811). The news of the punishment of British insolence upon the high seas was received with exultation in America, and the event gave great significance to the cry, FREE TRADE AND SEAMEN'S RIGHTS, that soon resounded throughout the land.

Congress was not unanimous in its desire for war. The elder members counseled peace; the younger would accept no peace at the expense of national honor. The war party was led by HENRY CLAY of Kentucky, JOHN C. CALHOUN, WILLIAM LOWNDES and LANGDON CHEVES of South Carolina, and FELIX GRUNDY of Tennessee, all young men, just beginning to appear in American politics. Their eloquence resounded through the land, arousing the national spirit, as the eloquence of Henry and Otis had done just before the Revolution.

The impulse to avenge injury and insult soon prevailed over the counselings of those more conservatively disposed. By the time that Madison was renominated (May, 1812) it was pretty well understood that war was to be entered into with

England. Preliminary to general hostilities, an embargo to continue ninety days was laid (April 4). No intimation having been received that England would revoke her Orders in Council, the President sent a "war message" to Congress (June 1) in accordance with which a bill was passed, and on June 19, 1812, war was formally declared.

The Cause of the War of 1812. Five days before the declaration England decided to revoke the Orders in Council, not through any consideration for this country, but in compliance with the general demand of her merchants and manufacturers, whose trade was suffering greatly from the non-intercourse policy of the United States. Had the intelligence reached America it is doubtful whether the war would have been averted; for the right to search American vessels and impress American seamen was not relinquished, and for this cause, it may be said, the war was fought.



IMPRESSING AMERICAN SEAMEN.

QUESTIONS.

What did the efforts of the United States to avoid hostilities bring? How many American vessels were taken by England? Seamen? How many by France? **What had the Americans won by the Revolution?** Into what condition were they being forced? What was now making itself felt? Which of the two, between England and France, was the greater aggressor? **What do you know of the Shawnee War?** By whom were the Indians defeated? How was Congress divided? **Who led the party in favor of war?** What sections were in favor of war? What section was averse? **What do you know of President and Little Belt affair?** How was news of it received in America? What cry resounded through the continent? **What events led up to the declaration of war?** When was war declared? **What was the principal cause of the War of 1812?** Why did the British revoke their "Orders in Council"?

CHAPTER V.

The War for Maritime Independence.

The United States was inadequately prepared to enter into hostilities with so powerful a nation as England. Its navy consisted of but twenty or thirty vessels, while that of England comprised a thousand. But preparations were hastily pressed forward. Measures were passed for the enlistment of twenty-five thousand regular and fifty thousand volunteer troops. The States were recommended to levy one hundred thousand militia for local defense. A loan of eleven million dollars was authorized to defray the expense of carrying on the war. Provision was made to increase the navy.

General Henry Dearborn of Massachusetts, an old officer of the Revolution, was appointed Commander-in-chief of the Army. An aggressive campaign against the British Dominion of Canada was planned, and operations to that end were directed upon the Michigan and Niagara frontiers.

The first engagements of the war resulted disastrously to the American arms. General William Hull, governor of Michigan Territory, with fifteen hundred men, advanced into Canada, but hearing that the fort at Mackinaw had been taken by the British, fell back to Detroit. A detachment of his army, under Major Van Horne, was ambushed and defeated near Brownstown, Michigan, by the Indian allies of the British under Tecumseh (August 5), but the savages were routed by another detachment under Colonel Miller, near a place called Maguaga, Michigan (August 9).

General Brock, Governor of Canada, advanced from Malden to lay siege to Detroit. His forces were inferior to those of Hull. The Americans were eager for the combat. But with a baseness almost unparalleled Hull hoisted the

white flag of surrender before a shot was fired, and his chagrined army was delivered up as prisoners of war (August 16).

Shortly after Hull's surrender, the brave GENERAL STEPHEN VAN RENSSELLAER crossed the Niagara River, and with one thousand men gallantly assaulted Queenstown Heights. The heights were carried (October 13), and in the engagement General Brock, who had arrived



CROGHAN'S DEFENSE OF FORT STEPHENSON.

from Detroit, was mortally wounded. Van Renssellaer returned to the American side of the river for reinforcements, but the rest of his army refused to cross the river, and their comrades at Queenstown, left to their fate, were overpowered and captured. Van Renssellaer resigned his command

and was succeeded by GENERAL ALEXANDER SMYTH, who, proving incompetent, was soon deposed.

The military operations for the next year (1813) were more systematically planned. Three armies were organized; the first to operate in the West, about the shore of Lake Erie; the second to operate upon the Niagara frontier, and the third to operate in northern New York. GENERAL HARRISON was placed in command of the ARMY OF THE WEST, GENERAL WADE HAMPTON of the ARMY OF THE NORTH, and the commander-in-chief himself directed the operations of the ARMY OF THE CENTER.

Harrison pushed forward to recover the ground Hull had lost. An advance division of his army under GENERAL WINCHESTER, after gaining an advantage over the enemy at Frenchtown, on the River Raisin, was attacked and defeated by the British and Indians under PROCTOR and Tecumseh (January 22, 1813). Proctor then advanced and besieged Harrison at Fort Meigs (August 5), but failing to effect its capture, proceeded to Fort Stephenson, upon the Sandusky. This fort was defended by one hundred and sixty men under MAJOR CROGHAN, a young man of twenty-one, who employed the limited means of defense at his disposal with such skill that the enemy was thoroughly repulsed (August 2).

Massacre of the River Raisin.

During the engagement Winchester was captured. Perceiving the superior forces of the enemy, and receiving a solemn pledge from Proctor that the surrender of the detachment would insure its safety, Winchester advised his men to lay down their arms, which they did. With a perfidy that has attached to his memory never-ceasing odium, Proctor ignored all pledges and turned the unarmed Americans over to the mercy of the savages. The sick and wounded were butchered in cold blood. The able-bodied were either tortured or taken into captivity. This event nerved the Americans in many an encounter that afterward took place, and they often went into battle with the war cry, "REMEMBER THE RIVER RAISIN."

Shortly after a glorious victory was won over the enemy's fleet on Lake Erie by COMMODORE PERRY (September 10),

and the British land forces were thus compelled to fall back to Canada. Harrison followed and landed his troops near Malden. A battle was fought near the River Thames, and the gallant conduct of some Kentucky riflemen, under COLONEL RICHARD M. JOHNSON, turned the tide of victory in favor of the Americans. The British defeat was thorough. The Indian chief, Tecumseh, was slain in this battle.

Meanwhile General Dearborn had crossed a force under GENERAL ZEBULON PIKE from Sackett's Harbor, New York, to York (Toronto), Canada (April 27, 1813). The British were driven from their batteries, and the town, with many valuable stores, was taken. During the engagement the powder magazine of the enemy blew up, causing much loss in the American ranks. General Pike himself was mortally wounded. From York the victorious troops, now led by Generals Winder and Chandler, crossed over to the mouth of the Niagara River, and drove the British from Fort George (May 27). Thinking Sackett's Harbor defenseless after the departure of these troops, the British, under GENERAL PREVOST, descended



COMMODORE PERRY.

Perry's Victory.

The British were in full possession of Lake Erie, and nothing could be done towards the successful invasion of Canada until this lake was cleared of the enemy's fleet. Captain Perry was sent to coöperate with General Harrison and take charge of operations upon the water. With great energy and perseverance he succeeded in building nine small vessels. Sailors were sent overland from the sea coast to man the little fleet, and though poorly equipped with the appliances of war, Perry sailed out into the lake to meet the British squadron under the veteran COMMODORE BARCLAY, a pennant with the immortal words uttered by Lawrence, "*Don't give up the ship*," flying at the mast head of his flagship. The battle was desperate. Perry's vessel engaged two of the enemy's and was soon badly disabled. Only eight of his men remained, but with these he crossed in an open boat to another of his ships, and continued the engagement so successfully that the whole English fleet surrendered (September 10, 1813). "*We have met the enemy and they are ours*," was the laconic message Perry sent to Harrison to announce the victory.

upon it, but were repulsed by militia under GENERAL BROWN (May 29).

General Dearborn was succeeded as commander-in-chief by GENERAL JAMES WILKINSON. An attack on Montreal was planned. An army of seven thousand men embarked near Sackett's Harbor, and proceeded down the St. Lawrence. They found their progress impeded by the enemy, and a force under General Brown was landed. The battle was fought at CHRYSLER'S FIELD (November 11), and the army advanced to a place called St. Regis, where Hampton was expected to join them with the army of the North, from Plattsburg on Lake Champlain. The junction, however, was not made, and the Montreal expedition was abandoned, Wilkinson's army going into winter quarters at Fort Covington. In the spring the Americans proceeded to the Sorrel River and were defeated at La Colle (March 30, 1814), after which they turned south and joined the troops at Plattsburg.

New York was now formed into one military district of two divisions. That of the right was placed under the command of GENERAL RALPH IZARD, with GENERALS WINDSOR, MACOMB, SMITH and BISSEL as subordinates. That of the left was commanded by General Brown, with GENERALS SCOTT, RIPLEY and GAINES as subordinates.

Izard was a thoroughly trained soldier, and proceeded to put the American army at Plattsburg in a condition of perfect discipline, as Steuben had done in the War of the Revolution at Valley Forge. He realized the necessity of this on being apprised that experienced veterans of England, fresh from the successful battlefields of Europe, were about to be sent to America.

Meanwhile General Brown, upon the Niagara frontier, was actively engaged with the enemy. Generals Scott and

Ripley crossed the river, and defeated the British under RIALL in a battle near the Chippewa River (July 5). At Lundy's Lane, near the Falls of Niagara, Scott and Riall again met (July 25). This was one of the hottest engagements of the war. The British far outnumbered the Americans, but Scott not only held his ground, but captured General Riall, wounded his successor, General Drummond, and drove the British from the field.

"I'll Try, Sir."

American success in the battle of Lundy's Lane depended upon the capture of a British battery upon a neighboring height. General Brown arriving upon the scene as the engagement was drawing to a close, called to COLONEL MILLER, and asked him if he could take it. "*I'll try, sir,*" was Miller's response. Leading his men steadily up the ascent, Miller secured the battery and held it against the repeated assaults of the enemy.

The Americans took up a position



at Fort Erie, near the head of the Niagara River. Drummond having received reinforcements, advanced and laid siege (August 4). The Americans under General Gaines made a brilliant sortie, carried the enemy's works, and Drummond was compelled to retreat (September 17). Fort Erie was then destroyed, and the Americans crossed to their own side, where they went into winter quarters.

The Creek War.

The result of Tecumseh's visit to the Indians of Alabama was soon seen. Weathersford, chief of the Creeks, deeming the time opportune, took up arms, and surprising Fort Mims, near Mobile, massacred more than four hundred of its inhabitants. Forces from neighboring States soon reached the scene. GENERAL COFFEE arrived from Tennessee and destroyed the town of Tallaschatche, slaying more than a thousand Creeks. GENERAL FLOYD of Georgia burnt the Indian town of Autosse (November 24, 1813), while GENERAL CLAIBORNE of Mississippi and PUSHAMATAHA, a friendly Choctaw chief, won a victory over Weathersford at Eccanachaca (December 23, 1813). GENERAL ANDREW JACKSON of Tennessee, who commanded in this district, defeated the Indians at TALLADEGA (November 9, 1813). EMUCFAW (January 22, 1814), and TOHOPEKA or HORSESHOE BEND (March 27). With this last battle the power of the Creeks was utterly crushed.

These active operations upon the Niagara frontier rendered it advisable that General Izard with troops from Plattsburg reinforce General Brown. Leaving Macomb in command, Izard set out upon a long journey overland, impeded by many difficulties, and he arrived shortly after the successful sortie of the Fort Erie garrison. After the departure of Izard, a large force under General Prevost descended from Canada upon Plattsburg, but with greatly inferior numbers Macomb won a brilliant victory, and Prevost was compelled to retreat. Macomb's victory was accompanied by the naval victory of MACDONOUGH over DOWNIE on Lake Champlain, near by, few of the enemy's vessels escaping.



MACDONOUGH.

QUESTIONS.

What preparations were made for war? Who was appointed commander-in-chief? What campaign was decided upon? What do you know of events upon the Michigan frontier? Niagara frontier? The surrender of Hull? How was the American army organized in 1814? What were the principal events connected with the Army of the West? Army of the Center? What do you know of Perry's victory? Croghan's defense? Battle of the Thames? Capture of York? Defense of Sackett's Harbor? Massacre of the River Raisin? Capture of Fort George? Who succeeded General Dearborn? What do you know of the unsuccessful Montreal expedition? The battle of La Colle? Into what two divisions was the military district of New York divided in 1814? Who was placed in command of each division? What were the principal operations of the Division of the Left? Right? What do you know of the battle of Chippewa? Lundy's Lane? Plattsburg? Of Macdonough's victory? Izard's march? Miller's gallantry at Lundy's Lane? Fort Erie sortie? What do you know of the Creek War?

TOPICAL OUTLINE.

OPERATIONS ON THE NORTHERN FRONTIER.

BRITISH GENERALS AND VICTORIES IN ITALICS.

WAR OF 1812.

1812,	Michigan Frontier.	Aug. 5	BROWNSTOWN	VAN HORN — TECUMSEH.
		Aug. 9	MAGUAGA	MILLER — TECUMSEH.
		Aug. 16	DETROIT	HULL — BROCK.
	Niagara Frontier.	Oct. 13	QUEENSTOWN	VAN RENSSELLAER — BROCK.
1813,	Army of the West.	Jan. 22	FRENCHTOWN (MICH.)	WINCHESTER — PROCTOR.
		May 5	FT. MEIGS (O.)	HARRISON — PROCTOR.
		Aug. 2	FT. STEPHENSON (O.)	CROGHAN — PROCTOR.
		Oct. 5	THAMES (CANADA)	HARRISON — PROCTOR.
	Army of the Centre.	April 27	YORK (CANADA)	PIKE — SHEAFFE.
		May 27	FT. GEORGE	WINDER
		May 29	SACKETT'S HARBOR	BROWN — PREVOST.
		Nov. 11	CHRYSLER'S FIELD	BROWN
	Army of the North.		Inactive	HAMPTON
1814,	Division of the Left.	July 5	CHIPPEWA	BROWN — RIALL.
		July 25	LUNDY'S LANE	BROWN — DRUMMOND.
		Sept. 17	FT. ERIE	GAINES — DRUMMOND.
	Division of the Right.	March 30	LA COLLE	WILKINSON — HANCOCK.
		Sept. 11	PLATTSBURG	MACOMB — PREVOST.

CHAPTER VI.

Sea Triumphs of the Young Republic.

When the United States Government took up the cause of the American sailor, it was little expected that she would be able to cope with England successfully on sea. The English navy was at the time the most powerful in the world, and the boastful song of British seamen had long been, "Britannia Rules the Waves."

The American navy, on the other hand, consisted of but few vessels, for the American policy had been to discourage the institution and support of an expensive naval armament. Had the United States been better provided in this respect she would have been able to maintain her rights upon every sea, and would have compelled that respect from all nations that was to be hers after this war.

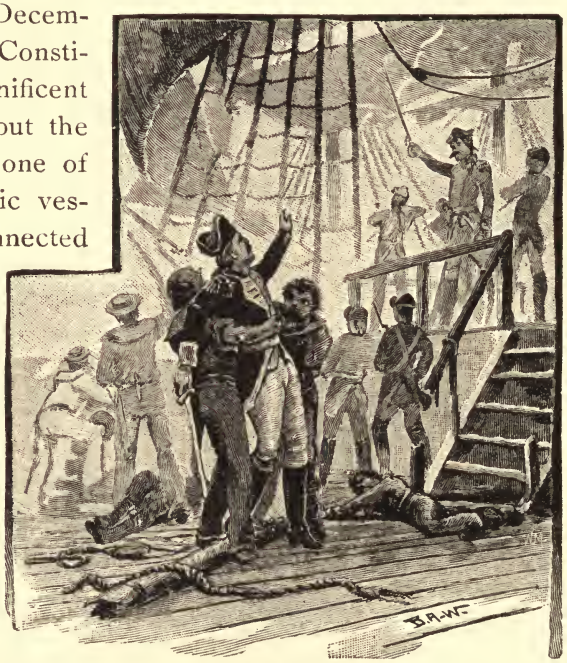
The war upon the ocean was a revelation to the naval powers of Europe. The deeds of American commanders, from first to last, won the admiration of the world. Time after time American and English war vessels met in combat, and so uniformly successful were the former that American ships came to be regarded as invincible.

The Hartford Convention.

The hostility of the New England Federalists to the national administration continued throughout the war. They considered it unconstitutional to require the militia of a State to serve beyond its borders. For the successful conduct of the war the government passed conscription measures, and the Federalists took steps to resist. The legislature of Massachusetts issued a call for a convention, and delegates from Connecticut, Rhode Island, New Hampshire and Vermont, with those of Massachusetts, met at Hartford (December 14, 1814). The sessions of this convention were held in secret, and the records of its proceedings have been studiously suppressed. Suspicion has always existed, however, that measures tending to the secession of the New England States from the Union were contemplated and action postponed only by ending of the war. The event gave a political death blow to the Federalist party, the spirit of national unity having been greatly strengthened by the war then in course of prosecution.

The first naval engagement of consequence occurred off Newfoundland, between the American frigate ESSEX, Captain Porter, and the British sloop ALERT, Captain Langharne (August 12, 1812), the former being victorious. A few days after (August 19), off the coast of Massachusetts, the CONSTITUTION, under Captain Hull, vanquished the GUERRIERE, one of the best equipped frigates of the English navy. Hull was a nephew of the general who so basely surrendered Detroit, and his gallant deeds upon the sea contrasted strongly with the inglorious ones of his relative on land, and did much to wipe out the disgrace attached to the family name.

Before the close of the year 1812 important victories were won by the WASP over the FROLIC (October 18) off the coast of North Carolina; by the American frigate UNITED STATES, commanded by Decatur, over the British frigate MACEDONIA, commanded by Carden, near the Canary Islands (October 25); and by the CONSTITUTION, now commanded by Bainbridge, over the British frigate JAVA, near San Salvador (December 20). The Constitution did magnificent service throughout the war, becoming one of the most historic vessels ever connected with the American navy. In 1815, commanded by Stewart, she captured at one time the British ships CYANE and LEVART (February 20), near the Madeira Islands.



"DON'T GIVE UP THE SHIP."

Among the many gallant naval commanders of the war there will always be remembered CAPTAIN LAWRENCE. In the HORNET he captured, off Demarara, the British brig PEACOCK (February 24, 1813). He was then called to the command of the frigate CHESAPEAKE. While making ready for sea in the port of Boston the British frigate SHANNON, thoroughly equipped for battle, approached the harbor and challenged the Chesapeake to combat.

The impetuous Lawrence promptly responded, sailing out to meet the enemy after hasty and inadequate preparations. The engagement was hotly contested and of short duration (June 1). Heroism availed little against the superior armament of the Shannon. Lawrence was mortally wounded, and, true to his heroic instincts, he gave the parting exhortation to his crew, "*Don't give up the ship*," as in a dying condition he was carried below.

The victory of the Shannon was followed by that of the British sloop PELICAN over the brig ARGUS (August 14), in the English channel, but American successes soon made ample compensation for the losses sustained. The ENTERPRISE captured the BOXER (September 5), near the coast of Maine, and on Lake Erie the greatest naval achievement of the war occurred shortly after (September 10).

British Coast Operations.

During the progress of the war the whole coast from Maine to Delaware was blockaded. The fisheries and commerce of New England were utterly destroyed for a time. Lewiston, Me. (1813) and Stonnington, Conn. (1814) suffered bombardment. Admiral Cochrane, with a powerful fleet, entered the Chesapeake (1814), and four thousand veterans under General Ross landed, and marched to Washington after overcoming some opposition at Bladensburg, Md. (August 24). All the public buildings except the Patent Office were burned by the enemy, and Ross proceeded to ravage Baltimore in a similar manner. Militia were gathered in defense of the city. In a skirmish Ross was killed. The fleet of the British advanced up the Patapsco to coöperate with the army, and began a bombardment of FORT MCHENRY. The fort gallantly responded, and for eighteen hours maintained a spirited contest. The enemy's fleet was compelled to abandon the fight; the army, unsupported, withdrew, and Baltimore was saved.

Captain Porter in the ESSEX, the ship and captain that had made the first capture in the war, after a brilliant career came to grief in the harbor of Valparaiso. Here the Essex was overpowered by the British vessels, PHŒBE and CHERUB, and Porter was compelled to surrender (March 28, 1814). This was the third and last important British naval victory of the war.

The American sloop PEACOCK, commanded by Warrington, won a victory over the EPERVIER off the coast of Florida (April 29, 1814), and the engagements between the WASP

and REINDEER (June 28, 1814), and between the HORNET and PENGUIN (March 23, 1815), resulted in American victories.



BATTLE OF NEW ORLEANS.

The war of 1812 had come at a very inopportune time for England. The great Napoleon had almost succeeded in

The Battle of New Orleans.

General Jackson, in command at the South, was indefatigable in his exertions to defend that portion of the country from invasion. Marching upon Pensacola, where the British had been permitted by the Spaniards to establish quarters, he drove the enemy from the place and took possession of the forts. The coast operations of the British extending as far as Louisiana, Jackson hastened to the defense of New Orleans. Here he was joined by some riflemen from Tennessee and Kentucky, and by many citizens of Louisiana. In the southern part of Louisiana is a bay called Barataria. Along the shores of this bay dwelt a people in a state of partial outlawry, engaged in smuggling or questionable enterprises. Their leader was a man of great daring named LAFITTE. Though outlawed by his country, this smuggler could not turn against her. Offered tempting bribes by the British to join them in their attack upon the city, he rejected their proposals, and proffered instead the services of his men to Jackson, who promptly accepted them. For their brilliant actions in the battle that ensued the United States Government granted a full pardon to such of these men as would settle down as law-abiding citizens, which many of them did.

Forts were erected to oppose the advance of the enemy by river. The advance was made, however, by way of the lakes back of the city, so Jackson threw up fortifications on the plains of CHALMETTE, just beyond the suburbs, and awaited their approach. The English army was composed of veteran troops, many of whom were fresh from the victorious battlefields of Europe. It was led by SIR EDWARD PAKENHAM. The British advanced through the swamp, and reaching the field, charged upon the fortifications of the Americans. The battle raged all day, but the riflemen, citizen soldiery and Baratarians stood their ground, and drove the enemy back with terrible slaughter (January 8, 1815). More than two thousand of their number were lost. PAKENHAM himself was killed. The loss of the Americans was but eight. The battle was a needless one, for, unknown to the combatants, peace had already been declared.

laying all Europe prostrate at his feet, and the remaining great powers of Europe had combined against France. The American war was diverting some of the energy of the British nation. So Russia, one of the allied powers, sought to mediate a peace between England and the United States. Her first attempt was unsuccessful (March, 1813), but, renewing her efforts, she succeeded in bringing commissioners from the two countries together to treat for peace.

Those appointed by the United States were HENRY CLAY, ALBERT GALLATIN, JAMES BAYARD, JONATHAN RUSSELL and JOHN QUINCY ADAMS. The commission met at Ghent, Belgium (July 6, 1814). The attitude of England was haughty and exacting, and for a long time it seemed impossible to reach a satisfactory conclusion; but after five months of negotiation the treaty was signed (December 24, 1814). The news of peace took some time

crossing the ocean, as there were no ocean cables in those days. Before it reached America the greatest land battle of the war had been fought (January 8, 1815), near New Orleans.

QUESTIONS.

What difference in naval strength existed between the United States and England? What success had the United States on sea? What was the first naval engagement? Where, when and by whom fought? **What do you know of Hull's victory? Name other naval battles of 1812. What do you know of Captain Lawrence?** What were his last words? What other British victory was won in 1813? What three American naval victories were won this year? **What do you know of Captain Porter and the Essex? What American victories were won in 1814? 1815?** What do you know of the peace mediation of Russia? **What do you know of the British coast operations?** The burning of Washington? The bombardment of Fort McHenry? **The Hartford Convention?** Who were the American peace commissioners? **What do you know of the Treaty of Ghent?**

TOPICAL OUTLINE.

NAVAL BATTLES—WAR OF 1812.

BRITISH VICTORIES IN ITALICS.

1812.	Aug. 12	ESSEX	(Porter)	Over	ALERT	(Langharne).
	Aug. 19	CONSTITUTION	(Hull)	Over	GUERRIERE	(Dacres).
	Oct. 18	WASP	(Jones)	Over	FROLIC	(Muyates).
	Oct. 25	UNITED STATES	(Decatur)	Over	MACEDONIA	(Carden).
	Dec. 20	CONSTITUTION	(Bainbridge)	Over	JAVA	(Lambert).
1813.	Feb. 24	HORNET	(Lawrence)	Over	PEACOCK	(Peake).
	June 1	*SHANNON*	*(Broke)*	*Over*	*CHESAPEAKE*	*(Lawrence).*
	Aug. 14	*PELICAN*	*(Maples)*	*Over*	*ARGUS*	*(Allen).*
	Sept. 5	ENTERPRISE	(Burrows)	Over	BOXER	(Blythe).
	Sept. 10	AMERICAN FLEET	(Perry)	Over	BRITISH FLEET	(Barclay).
1814.	*Mar. 28*	*PHŒBE* / *CHERUB*	*(Hillyar)* / *(Tucker)*	*Over*	*ESSEX*	*(Porter).*
	April 29	PEACOCK	(Warrington)	Over	EPERVIER	(Wales).
	June 28	WASP	(Blakely)	Over	REINDEER	(Manners).
	Sept. 11	AMERICAN FLEET	(McDonough)	Over	BRITISH FLEET	(Downie).
1815.	Feb. 20	CONSTITUTION	(Stewart)	Over	CYANE (Falcon). / LEVANT (Douglas).	
	Mar. 23	HORNET	(Biddle)	Over	PENGUIN	(Dickenson)

PREPARATORY NOTES.

TO CHAPTERS VII, VIII AND IX.

Definition of Words.— Summary, arbitrary, complications, cession, relinquished, internal, interpose, fanatically, extension, restriction, projected, prestige, minority, semblance, era, perpetrate, fiscal, stability, incumbency, corporation, depose, predecessor, embodied, nullify, tariff, inter-dependence, pronouncedly, domestic, exorbitant, inoperative, precipitate, repeal, accession, revolutionize, civil, extortionate, incidentally, discrimination, secession, enactments, ordinance.

PARALLEL READINGS.

REFERENCE. — Schurz's "Henry Clay," Gilman's "Monroe," Sumner's "Andrew Jackson," Taussig's "Tariff History of the United States," Von Holst's "Constitutional History of the United States," Von Holst's "Calhoun."

GENERAL.—"The Era of Good Feeling" (Harper's Magazine, May, 1884), "Character of Jackson" (Magazine of American History, February, 1885), "The Acquisition of Florida" (Id., April, 1888), Laughlin's "Political Economy" (Chapter XXVI).

TOPICAL.—"Florida Cession," "Internal Improvements," "Monroe Doctrine," "Missouri Compromise," "Rotation in Office, Institution of," "First Steamship," "First Railroad," "Seminole War," "Black Hawk's War," "United States Bank," "Tariff," "Nullification, Ordinance of," "Cotton Gin, Invention of," "Clay' s Compromise of 1833," "The American System," "Eli Whitney," "Samuel Slater," "Protection," "Free Trade."

CHAPTER VII.

The Era of Good Feeling.

The opposition of the Federalists to the war of 1812 had reduced their party to a condition of political weakness. The Democratic-Republican candidate, JAMES MONROE, was, with but little opposition, elected to succeed Madison; and so free was his administration from party contests that it is often referred to as the ERA OF GOOD FEELING.

Two States had been admitted while Madison was President. These were Louisiana (April 8, 1812), and Indiana (December 11, 1816). The Algerines had again been punished by Commodore Decatur for renewing their depredations in the Mediterranean (1815). The candidates to succeed Madison were James Monroe of Virginia and RUFUS KING of New York. The former was successful.

Monroe served two terms. During his first term troubles arose with the Seminole Indians of the South. These Indians were joined by some Creeks and runaway slaves, and it was strongly suspected that the Spaniards of Florida were encouraging them in their uprising.

General Andrew Jackson was sent against them, and he soon overran their country and drove them into Florida. Jackson was a man of great decision and firmness of character, and did thoroughly whatever he undertook. Determined to inflict summary punishment upon the hostiles, he invaded the Spanish territory, and not only broke the



JAMES MONROE.

power of the Seminoles, but drove their Spanish sympathizers from the country. He took possession of Pensacola and St. Marks and forced the Spanish authorities to seek refuge in Havana, Cuba.

Jackson's invasion of Florida was considered unwarranted and arbitrary by many, as it furnished to Spain a just cause of controversy. Others, however, saw much to admire in his prompt and determined course in dealing with

The State of West Florida.

The Florida that passed into the possession of the English by act of Spanish cession (1763), extended to the Mississippi River, and was divided into East and West Florida, the line of division being the Perdido River. While England was wholly occupied with her revolting American colonies, the Spaniards of the neighboring province of Louisiana seized the opportunity to pass into West Florida some troops, who took forcible possession (1779). In 1783 both of the Floridas were ceded to Spain, and in treaty with the United States (1795), their northern boundary was fixed as the thirty-first degree of latitude. The larger portion of what was then West Florida forms a part of what is now the State of Louisiana, but constitutes no part of the territory embraced within the Louisiana purchase, the limits of which have already been described (see page 290). Spain maintained her authority in West Florida until the year 1810, but Spanish rule was thoroughly unsatisfactory to the many Americans who had settled in the province. A revolt was planned and skillfully executed. A force was collected at St. Francisville under GENERAL PHILEMON THOMAS, who marched to Baton Rouge, the most important post in the province, and captured the Spanish garrison (September 23, 1810). A convention was held, independence declared, and the State of West Florida was organized, with FULWAR SKIPWITH as Governor. Application was then made to the United States for protection, upon which President Madison issued a proclamation ordering GOVERNOR C. C. CLAIBORNE of the Louisiana Territory to take possession; and thus the jurisdiction of the United States was extended over the province that had been wrested by American valor from the dominion of Spain.

affairs entrusted to him, and both Congress and the President sustained him.

The foreign complications that might have arisen were obviated by the purchase of the invaded province. The treaty of cession was signed at Washington (February 22, 1821). By its terms Florida passed into the possession of the United States in consideration of the sum of five million dollars; Spanish claims to Oregon were relinquished, and the Sabine River was made the boundary between the United States and the Spanish possessions in the southwest.

Internal Improvements.

The West was rapidly filling up with settlers, and it was becoming evident that the material development of the country depended upon the establishment of easy means of communication between the various sections. The South and West were connected by the magnificent Mississippi system of waterways, but the Alleghanies, interposed between the West and East, rendered travel and domestic commerce difficult. The question of internal improvements was agitated. Several States engaged in the constructing of public works. New York, at an expense of eight million dollars, opened a canal from Buffalo to New York. There were those who thought that the United States Government, designed as it was to promote the general welfare, was empowered by the Constitution to appropriate money for internal improvements. These were termed LOOSE CONSTRUCTIONISTS, and foremost among them was Henry Clay. An appropriation was made to construct a road from Cumberland, Md., to Wheeling, W. Va., and as there were no railroads in those days, the Cumberland road proved of great service.

Mexico and a number of South American provinces were endeavoring about this time to throw off the yoke of Spain and establish their independence. The people of the United States were in warm sympathy with the movement. The President sent to Congress a remarkable message, in which his opinions upon the subject were pointedly expressed (1823). He declared, "that the American continents, by the free and independent position which they have assumed and maintained, are henceforth not to be considered as subjects for future colonization by any European power." This is known as the MONROE DOCTRINE.

The principal events that marked Monroe's administration besides those that have been given, were the admission of five new States into the Union, the succcessful application of steam to seagoing vessels, and the memorable visit of Lafayette to this country. The States admitted were Mississippi (December 10, 1817), Illinois (December 3, 1818), Alabama (December 14, 1819), Maine (March 15, 1820), and Missouri (August 10, 1821). The first steamship to cross the Atlantic was the *Savannah*, owned and projected in the city of that name (1819).

The visit of Lafayette (1824) recalled many patriotic memories. He was now seventy years of age. Great was the pride with which he beheld the rapid advance made by the young republic, whose early destinies his youthful hands had helped to shape; pathetic was his visit to the tomb of his old commander, Washington, at Mount Vernon. He was everywhere treated with the respect due him as the nation's guest, and many of the States were visited by him.

The Beginning of Sectional Antagonism.

Slavery was gradually dying out in the North, and with its decay there was growing up a sentiment of opposition to it. At first this opposition was directed against the further extension of the system; in time it came to be fanatically directed against the system itself. The attainment of Missouri to statehood awakened a bitter controversy as to whether or not slavery should be permitted within its borders. The States previously admitted to the Union had occasioned no issue upon the restriction or extension of slavery. Ohio, Indiana and Illinois were formed from the Northwest Territory in which slavery had been prohibited under the Ordinance of 1787. Kentucky, Tennessee, Mississippi and Alabama were formed from territory originally belonging to States in which slavery was legally recognized. They were, therefore, admitted without restriction. With the exception of Louisiana, in which slavery had long existed prior to its passing into possession of the United States, Missouri was the first State formed from the Louisiana purchase. The territory of which it constituted a part previous to its admission was the joint possession of all the States. Its population had been drawn from both slave and free States. In many cases the settlers from the former had brought their slaves with them. By the time it was eligible for admission to the Union the opponents of slavery were powerful and numerous enough to influence Federal legislation. The restriction of slavery by the Federal government was regarded as unconstitutional, and a bitter controversy arose. Several determined efforts were made in Congress

to pass a bill admitting Missouri without slavery (1819). At length an amendment, proposed by SENATOR THOMAS of Illinois (January 18, 1820), compromised matters, by admitting Missouri as a slave State, but prohibiting the extension of slavery to any other State formed out of the Louisiana purchase north of the line that forms the southern boundary of Missouri (36° 30′). This was the celebrated MISSOURI COMPROMISE of 1820. The slavery question was slowly arraying the slave and free States against each other, but the Missouri Compromise, for a time, settled all differences.

In the presidential election that occurred towards the end of Monroe's administration (1824), there was but one political party to place candidates in the field. JOHN QUINCY ADAMS of Massachusetts, HENRY CLAY of Kentucky, ANDREW JACKSON of Tennessee, and WILLIAM H. CRAWFORD of Georgia were voted for. The military prestige of Jackson had rendered him a great favorite with the people, and he received a greater number of electoral votes than any of the other candidates, but not sufficient to elect him. The choice of a president, therefore, fell to Congress. Adams, a minority candidate, was chosen, chiefly through the influence of Clay.



JOHN QUINCY ADAMS.

The result of the election occasioned much ill-feeling, and friends of the defeated candidates accused Clay of having made a corrupt bargain with the successful one. Clay's appointment to the highest office within the gift of the new president gave a semblance of truth to the accusation, but ample testimony has since proved he was thoroughly conscientious and disinterested in his support of Adams.

The principal events of John Quincy Adams' administration were the deaths of John Adams and Thomas Jefferson, both occurring on the 4th of July (1826); the treaty with the Creeks, by which much valuable land in West Georgia was relinquished by its Indian occupants, who were removed beyond the Mississippi (1826); the building of the first

railways at Quincy, Mass., and Albany, N. Y. (1827), on which cars were propelled by horse power; and the passage of the high tariff measures of 1828.

The popularity of Jackson had steadily increased since his defeat in the election of 1824. The selection of Adams, and the manner of his election had caused general dissatisfaction. The party to which both belonged soon became divided. Those who supported Jackson retained the name of Democratic-Republicans. Those who supported Adams for reëlection were known as National Republicans. Jackson was elected, and with him was chosen as Vice-President, John C. Calhoun, of South Carolina.

QUESTIONS.

What were the principal events of Madison's administration? By whom was he succeeded? **What do you know of the Era of Good Feeling? What were the principal events of Monroe's administration?** What do you know of the Seminole War? Jackson's invasion of Florida? **What do you know of the Florida cession?** Of the State of West Florida? **Internal Improvements?** Who were "Loose Constructionists"? What do you know of the "Monroe Doctrine"? What States were admitted while Monroe was President? What controversy arose in connection with the admission of Missouri? **What do you know of the "Missouri Compromise"?** What do you know of Lafayette's visit to this country? First steamship? What candidates were voted for in the election of 1824? What do you know of the result of this election? What was the so-called Clay bargain? **What were the principal events of John Quincy Adams' administration?** What do you know of the Creek treaty? First railroad? How many terms did Adams serve? Who succeeded him? **What do you know of the rise of the National Republican party?**

BLACKBOARD FORM.

PRINCIPAL EVENTS.

ADMINISTRATION OF

James Madison. (Va.)

- 1809 Inauguration.
- 1811 Shawnee War.
- 1812
 - Louisiana Admitted (April 8).
 - War with England (Declared June 14).
 - Presidential Election
 - DEMOCRATIC-REPUBLICANS: JAMES MADISON. / ELDRIDGE GERRY.
 - Federalist.....: De Witt Clinton. / Jared Ingersoll.
- 1813 Creek War.
- 1814
 - Washington Burned (August 24).
 - Hartford Convention (December 15).
 - Treaty of Ghent (December 24).
- 1815
 - Battle of New Orleans (January 8).
 - War with Algiers.
- 1816
 - Indiana Admitted (December 11).
 - Presidential Election
 - DEMOCRATIC-REPUBLICANS: JAMES MONROE. / DANIEL D. TOMPKINS.
 - Federalists.....: Rufus King. / John Howard.

James Monroe. (Va.)

- 1817
 - Inauguration.
 - Mississippi Admitted (December 10).
- 1818
 - Jackson's Invasion of Florida.
 - Illinois Admitted (December 3).
- 1819
 - Florida Purchased (February 22).
 - First Steamship.
 - Alabama Admitted (Dec. 14).
- 1820
 - Maine Admitted (March 15).
 - Presidential Election
 - DEMOCRATIC-REPUBLICANS: JAMES MONROE. / DANIEL D. TOMPKINS.
 - Federalists.....No Candidates.
- 1821 Missouri Admitted (August 10).
- 1823 Monroe Doctrine Formulated.
- 1824 Presidential Election (Candidates): Andrew Jackson. / JOHN QUINCY ADAMS. / William H. Crawford. / Henry Clay.

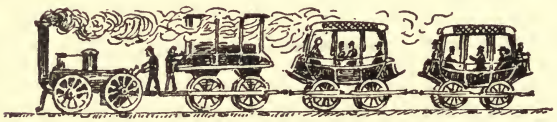
John Quincy Adams. (Mass.)

- 1825 Inauguration.
- 1826
 - Creek Treaty.
 - Death of (John Adams / Thomas Jefferson) (July 4).
- 1827 First Railway.
- 1828
 - High Tariff Act.
 - Presidential Election
 - DEMOCRATIC CANDIDATES.: ANDREW JACKSON. / JOHN C. CALHOUN.
 - National Republican: John Quincy Adams. / Richard Rush.

CHAPTER VIII.

The Rise of Modern Political Methods.

The accession of Andrew Jackson to the presidency marked an era in the political history of the United States. The eight years during which he served were years of unusual prosperity to the country, and two new States were added to the Union. These were Arkansas (June 15, 1836) and Michigan (January 26, 1837). The development of the West was rapidly progressing. Inventions and improvements were contributing to the general advancement. Steam was applied to railroads (1831), and with the application there sprang up the gigantic railway system of the present day. The screw propeller was invented by Captain John Ericsson (1836), and by means of this invention ocean commerce has been revolutionized. McCormick's Reaper, one of the greatest labor-saving agricultural implements ever invented, was devised (1834), rendering possible the cultivation of larger fields of grain and breadstuffs, and thereby building up the great agricultural interests of the Northwest. Immigrants from Europe were pouring steadily into the country, and the population of the United States had increased to thirteen millions. By 1835 the public debt incurred by the war of 1812 was paid in full.



EARLY AMERICAN RAILROAD TRAIN.

The tide of population flowing towards the Northwest again encountered a savage check; this time at the hands of the Sac and Fox Indians of Wisconsin. These Indians, after ceding their territory, had declined to give it up, and under a celebrated chieftain named Black Hawk, resisted the


BLACK HAWK.

encroachments of the whites (1832). Black Hawk was defeated and taken prisoner by GENERALS ATKINSON and SCOTT, and the Indians were removed west of the Mississippi. The Indians of the South also became troublesome. The Cherokees of Georgia had by this time attained to some degree of civilization; but complications arose between them and the State government, and it became necessary for the United States Government to adjust the difficulty. This was done by the payment of five million dollars to the Cherokees, who relinquished their lands and removed (1837-'8) to a region beyond the Mississippi, that had already been organized (1834) as the INDIAN TERRITORY.

It was attempted to remove the Seminoles to this region; but these Indians resisted so violently that war ensued and lasted for four years. The hostiles were led by MICANOPY and OSCEOLA. Among the atrocities perpetrated were the massacre of MAJOR DADE with one hundred and seventeen men, and the murder of GENERAL THOMPSON. During the course of the war the Indians were defeated by GENERAL CLINCH, near the Withlacoochie (December 31, 1835); by GENERAL GAINES, near the same spot (February 29, 1836); by Governor Call in the Wahoo Swamp, not far from Tampa Bay (October, 1836), and by COLONEL ZACHARY TAYLOR, near Okeechobee Lake in the Everglades. In this last battle the defeat was so crushing that nothing remained but to hunt down the different bands of Indians that scattered themselves through the swamp. Osceola died a prisoner at Fort Moultrie, and many of the Seminoles were finally removed.

Although Jackson's administration was marked by the increased prosperity of the country, it was remarkable for the

many heated contests in which the President was engaged. The President of the United States and the party to which he belongs are held responsible to the American people for the proper administration of affairs. In order that the policy of an administration be efficiently carried out, it is necessary that the leading officials of the government be in full accord and of the same party with the chief executive. Jackson was the first President to recognize this principle. Those who preceded him had made but few removals from office. The controversies in which Jackson was engaged during his administration made it absolutely necessary that he surround himself with advisers and subordinates upon whom he could place perfect dependence. Consequently he deposed from office many government employes who had been appointed by his predecessor. Every President since has adhered to this principle. In opposition, what are termed the Civil Service Reform measures of the present day have been instituted, whereby appointments to minor offices are sought to be determined by fitness as ascertained by Civil Service Examinations, held at regular intervals in various parts of the country.



ANDREW JACKSON.

The Bank of the United States.

A second National Bank, similar to the one designed by Hamilton, had been established at Philadelphia under a charter for twenty years (1816). Its capital stock was thirty-five million dollars, of which amount the United States Government held seven million dollars. It had branch institutions at different points, and its purpose was to regulate the currency and serve as the fiscal agent of the government. At first its affairs were badly managed, but LANGDON CHEVES of South Carolina becoming President of the Board of Directors (1819), it attained in the three years of his incumbency a condition of stability and usefulness.

In 1832 the question of renewing the Bank charter came up in Congress. A bill favoring it was passed, but the President vetoed it. The veto was sustained. In 1836 the charter expired, and the funds belonging to the United States were distributed among several State banks.

QUESTIONS.

What was the condition of the country during Jackson's administration? What can you say of the Western States? Inventions and improvements? What resulted from the application of steam to railroads? What do you

know of the screw propeller? McCormick's Reaper? Increase of population? What Indians obstructed the tide of Northwestern emigration? What do you know of Black Hawk's War? What Southern Indians became troublesome? How were the difficulties with the Cherokees adjusted? What do you know of the Seminole War? Dade? What do you know of the United States Bank? What useful purpose did it serve? For what is Jackson's administration remarkable? What political principle did Jackson recognize? What of the Civil Service Reform measures of the present day?

CHAPTER IX.

The American System.

The most important of the political controversies that characterized Jackson's administration, was that which arose between the government of the United States and the State of South Carolina. It was occasioned by the measures adopted by this State to nullify what to her was an oppressive and extortionate tariff act passed by Congress in 1832. Before we consider this controversy let us understand something of the nature of a tariff.

Every citizen is interested in the maintenance of a good government, and should contribute to its support in proportion to his means. To this end he pays TAXES, and the manner in which a government levies these taxes is either DIRECT or INDIRECT. The former is that employed by local and State government; the latter is that by which the Federal Government derives most of its revenues.

The principal method of taxing indirectly is by levying a TARIFF upon imports, collected by customs officers at what are called ports of entry. When a tariff is levied solely for the support of the government it is called a TARIFF FOR REVENUE. Thus, if a tariff of twenty-five cents be levied on a yard of cloth sold for one dollar in England, its selling price, when imported to this country, is increased to one dollar and twenty-five cents, and the citizen who buys it

practically pays one dollar for the cloth and twenty-five cents tax to the general government.

A tariff upon foreign goods, besides yielding revenue to the government, may encourage incidentally the manufacture of such goods at home; for if the cost of production be the same at home and abroad, the domestic manufacturer is enabled either to undersell his foreign competitor in the American market, or to sell at the same price and increase his profits to the amount of the tariff that the foreign maker is compelled to pay to pass his goods into this country. When a tariff is levied solely for the encouragement of American manufactures, it is called a PROTECTIVE TARIFF, and the American industry in whose favor a discrimination is made against foreign competition is said to be PROTECTED.

England has always been one of the greatest of manufacturing nations, and her goods are to be found in every market of the world. We have seen

Tariff Classification.

Originally instituted as a means of revenue, it has come to be considered that tariff may have for its object either revenue or protection. Strictly speaking, a tariff for revenue can be levied only upon such goods and materials as are not produced in this country; otherwise protection will form an incidental feature of it. A tariff whose sole object is protection must be high enough to render unprofitable the importation of such goods as compete with those of domestic make; otherwise there will be incidental revenue. Sheet-tin is not manufactured in this country, therefore, the tariff upon it is purely a revenue one; but the duty on stamped or manufactured tinware is so high as to prohibit importation, and is, therefore, a strictly protective tariff. Sugar is imported in large quantities. It is also manufactured in this country to a limited extent. The tariff on sugar is, therefore, one for revenue with incidental protection. The import tax on manufactured iron is comparatively high, but not too high to prevent importation whenever the demand for it is greater than home production. The tariff on iron is, therefore, a tariff for protection with incidental revenue. According to the object they subserve tariffs may be classified then under four headings: TARIFF FOR REVENUE; TARIFF FOR REVENUE, WITH INCIDENTAL PROTECTION; TARIFF FOR PROTECTION; and TARIFF FOR PROTECTION, WITH INCIDENTAL REVENUE.

It will be observed that the largest revenue to the government from tariff is derivable from the duty on goods not manufactured in this country, and largely imported, embracing luxuries and articles not producible here. On the other hand, the principal articles of necessity are made here, and they are generally protected—resulting in small importations and consequent decrease in revenue to the government. The practical application of these two principles is the difference existing between the two great political parties of the present day: one claiming that high tariff on articles of necessity is a tax and burden on the people individually, the other insisting it is a benefit to the country at large and therefore to the people as a whole.

Development of Cotton Manufactures.

The invention of cotton spinning by machinery had been, to a great extent, perfected in England by Arkwright and Hargreaves. Several attempts to introduce improved machinery into the United States and establish the cotton manufacturing industry failed. One of these was made as early as 1787 at Beverly, Mass. Pawtucket, R. I., secured the services of SAMUEL SLATER, a skilled machinist, who, in 1799, established there the first successful cotton mill. In 1803 there were four in operation.

Eleven million dollars of English-made cotton goods were being imported annually into this country, when commercial intercourse with Great Britain was cut off (1808). The year following the number of American mills in operation suddenly sprang to sixty-two. The mills first established only spun cotton. Weaving was done by hand. In 1814 LOWELL devised an improved power loom, and an impetus greater than ever was given to the cotton industry. Manufacturing towns rapidly arose and became centers of population. One of the most important of these was built on the Merimac River, and named after the inventor of the power loom.

The rapid growth of cotton manufactures was rendered possible only by a proportionate increase in the supply of raw cotton from the South. ELI WHITNEY had given to the world his great invention of the COTTON GIN (1797), and the fleecy staple was rapidly becoming the most valuable agricultural product of the country. Thus was an inter-dependence established between the industrial prosperity of both sections. Both advanced steadily, and all was harmony until the governmental policy was instituted to encourage and foster the interests of the manufacturing section at the expense of the agricultural. Ill-feeling and strife then was the natural result.

how her policy had systematically discouraged manufacturing enterprises in her American dependencies. Long after the Revolution, the United States felt the effects of this early discouragement, and up to the year of 1807 was wholly dependent upon England for many of those products of industry that go to make up the necessaries, comforts, and conveniences of life.



ELI WHITNEY.

The non-intercourse policy of the United States Government, prior to and during the War of 1812, demonstrated how inconvenient was this industrial dependence. With the exclusion of English goods from American markets, domestic manufactures arose. The commercial interferences of France and England had rendered the investment of American capital in shipping and foreign commerce of doubtful profit. Hence this capital



A NEW ENGLAND FACTORY

sought other channels, and that section whose principal interest had been commerce, now turned its attention to manufactures.

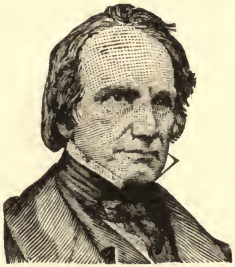
At the close of the War of 1812 commercial relations with England were resumed. Years of manufacturing experience had given to English goods and wares a cheapness and finish that American enterprise had not yet attained. English goods flooded the American markets, and domestic manufactures, then in the first stages of growth, found it difficult to withstand foreign competition. The industrial development of New England was arrested. Mills stopped work; labor became idle, and capital was unemployed.

It is good that a country should be industrially independent. Many realized this, and the idea took shape to place

American manufactures upon a firm basis, so that the United States might attain this independence. The feeling to protect INFANT AMERICAN INDUSTRIES steadily gained ground. The protective principle was slightly recognized in the tariff act of 1816—a revenue measure rendered necessary by the public debt incurred in the War of 1812. In 1824 a tariff act was passed that was pronouncedly protective in its features, as were also acts passed in 1828 and 1832.

The American System of Protection.

Henry Clay was the leading advocate of these measures. The dominant idea of this great statesman seemed to be that the Federal Government should promote the general welfare. The construction of internal improvements and the encouragement of domestic manufactures he held to be within its province. Protective tariff measures were passed by Congress chiefly through his eloquent advocacy of them. His protective policy has come to be known as THE AMERICAN SYSTEM.



HENRY CLAY.

These protective tariff measures were not popular in those sections of the country devoted to agriculture. The increase of prices caused by high tariff seemed to the people of these sections extortionate. There was no logic, to them, in the idea that the general welfare of the country was promoted by building up the interests of one section at the expense of another. The cotton gin and slave labor had made the South already industrially independent, for southern cotton had no competitors, and was everywhere in demand. In return for much of this cotton they received manufactured goods from several countries, and the Southern people held it to be unjust that they should be forced to pay the exorbitant prices that a high tariff imposes, for no other reason than that a distant section might be benefited. Protest after protest went forth, all of which were ignored.

When the tariff act of 1832 was passed, the State of South Carolina determined to oppose its enforcement. She

considered herself a sovereign State, and she was one of the original parties to the constitutional compact. She had delegated certain specified powers to the Federal Government, no one of which, in her opinion, was the power to levy a protective tariff. When, therefore, the general government assumed this undelegated power, it only remained for her to set aside its obnoxious measures and render them inoperative as far as her own territory was concerned. A convention was held (November, 1832) and a NULLIFICATION ORDINANCE adopted, declaring the tariff law null and void, and forbidding the collection of duties at any port in the State.



JOHN C. CALHOUN.

Secession and Nullification.

The idea generally prevailed that the Union was a compact between sovereign States, and that each had a right to withdraw from the compact for good and sufficient cause. The utterances of the great men whose labors and eloquence secured the adoption of the Constitution; the Kentucky and Virginia Resolutions; the acts and deeds of the New England Federalists, particularly those legislative enactments of Massachusetts and Connecticut leading up to the Hartford Convention; all testify how generally this opinion prevailed. But national pride and love of the Union had been growing in strength, and a school of patriotic statesmen arose, led by John C. Calhoun of South Carolina, who sought a remedy other than secession when the compact was broken in regard to any one State. These statesmen held that a State could NULLIFY any law passed by Congress, if, in its opinion, the Federal Government under cover of this law assumed powers not delegated to it by the Constitution. The Constitution specifies the right of Congress to levy a tariff for revenue, but makes no mention of a tariff for protection. Therefore, South Carolina, perceiving how oppressively a high protective tariff was bearing upon her interest, chose what to her appeared to be the best remedy for her grievance—that of nullification.

In taking his office the President had sworn to execute the laws of the United States. With his characteristic firmness, Jackson, though personally opposed to a high tariff, proceeded to overcome the opposition to the authority of the Federal Government. The attitude of South Carolina, however, was a determined one, and preparations were made

to resist force with force. For a time it appeared as if a bloody conflict would ensue, but before such a catastrophe was precipitated, Henry Clay came forward and introduced a compromise measure into Congress. It was supported by Calhoun, and became a law (1833). New England strenuously opposed a repeal of the tariff; South Carolina was opposed to its enforcement. The compromise provided for a gradual reduction of duties, which satisfied both. South Carolina then repealed the Ordinance of Nullification, and tranquillity was restored without the sacrifice of a principle on the part of either side.

QUESTIONS.

What was the greatest political controversy of Jackson's administration? In what is every citizen interested? In what ways may taxes be levied? What is the principal method of indirect taxation? What is a tariff for revenue? For protection? Illustrate. **What effect has a tariff upon domestic manufactures?** When is an industry said to be protected? **What circumstances led to the industrial dependence of the United States?** Under what four headings may Tariff be classified? Illustrate each? What difference of opinion exists between political parties of the present day upon the subject of Tariff? **What caused American manufacturing enterprises to arise? What caused the transfer of capital from shipping to manufactures?** What do you know of the development of cotton manufactures? Who was Samuel Slater? Lowell? **What marked the rapid development of cotton manufactures?** How was this development rendered possible? What invention caused a great increase in cotton production? What interdependence was established? **What resulted from the resumption of commercial relations with England?** What idea soon took shape? **Trace the growth of the protective idea. What do you know of the American system?** Why were not protective tariff measures popular in the South? What State opposed the tariff laws? Why? **What do you know of the Nullification Ordinance?** What idea upon secession generally prevailed at that time? What testify to this? **Why was nullification resorted to by South Carolina rather than secession?** Why did Jackson determine to enforce the laws of the United States? How was a conflict averted? **What do you know of Clay's Compromise of 1833?**

BLACKBOARD FORM.

PRINCIPAL EVENTS.—ADMINISTRATION OF

ANDREW JACKSON, (Tenn.)

- *1829* Inauguration.
- *1832*
 - Black Hawk War.
 - Bank Charter Vetoed.
 - Tariff Act.
 - Nullification Controversy.
 - Presidential Election.
 - Democratic C. — ANDREW JACKSON. / MARTIN VAN BUREN.
 - National Republican C. — Henry Clay. / John Sergeant.
- *1833*
 - Clay's Tariff Compromise.
 - First American Locomotive.
- *1834* McCormick's Reaper.
- *1835* Seminole War.
- *1836*
 - Screw Propeller Invented.
 - Arkansas Admitted. (June 15).
- *1837*
 - Michigan Admitted, (January 26).
 - Presidential Election.
 - Democratic C. — MARTIN VAN BUREN. / R. H. JOHNSON.
 - National Republican C. (Whig). — W. H. Harrison. / Francis Granger.

SEARCH QUESTIONS.

Who was the "Pathfinder of the Rockies"? What was the Underground Railroad? What was "Wild Cat Banking"? Who was Dr. Whitman and what famous ride did he make? What was the first telegraphic message? When did the saying "Fifty-Four Forty or Fight" become current and why? What two cabinet officers were killed by a "peacemaker"? Who said "I would rather be right than President"? Who were the "Locofocos" and why so called? Who was "Old Rough and Ready"? What was the case of Martin Koszta? What was the "Know-Nothing Party," and why so called?

PREPARATORY NOTES.

TO CHAPTERS X, XI AND XII.

Definition of Words.—Predecessor, culminating, panic, stimulus, policy, specie, ascendancy, consummated, memorial, policy, compliance, legacy, decisive.

Pronunciation of Names.—Coahuila, Saltillo, San Jacinto, Conception, Colito, Alamo, San Felipe, Rio Grande, Nueces, Arista, Palo Alto, Resaca-de-la-Palma, Chihuahua, Santa Fé, Los Angeles, Monterey, San Gabriel, Bracito, Ampudia, Buena Vista, Jalapa, Puebla, Contreras, Chapultepec, Cherubusco, Guadalupe Hidalgo.

PARALLEL READINGS.

REFERENCE.—McCulloch's "Men and Measures of Half a Century," Schurz's "Henry Clay," Ripley's "War with Mexico," Thrall's "History of Texas."

GENERAL.—Carr's "Missouri" (Chapter X), Coffin's "Building of the Nation" (Chapter XXXII), "A Chapter of the Mexican War" (Magazine of American History, December, 1885), Whittier's "Angels of Buena Vista" (poem).

TOPICAL.—"Van Buren," "The Mormons," "Sub-Treasury System," "Texas," "First Telegraph," "Gadsden Purchase," "Texas Cession," "War with Mexico."

CHAPTER X.

The Panic of 1837.

The political opponents of Jackson had come to be known as the WHIG party. Although Henry Clay was the acknowledged leader of this party, yet his efforts in behalf of the Compromise of 1833 had caused him to lose the confidence of many of his followers who favored protection. It was therefore deemed best to nominate WILLIAM HENRY HARRISON, the hero of Tippecanoe, as the Whig candidate for President to succeed Jackson.

The Jacksonian or Democratic party nominated MARTIN VAN BUREN of New York. Van Buren had been Vice-President during Jackson's second term, throughout which he had enjoyed the full confidence and friendship of his superior. Van Buren was elected (1836), but his administration, unlike that of his predecessor, was shortened to one term. The cause of this was the unsatisfactory state of affairs into which the country had been placed during the latter years of Jackson's administration, culminating in a GREAT BUSINESS PANIC in the second year of Van Buren's term (1837).



MARTIN VAN BUREN.

This business panic was due to a number of causes, and was far reaching in its effects. When the funds were with-

drawn from the United States Bank by Jackson, they were distributed, as we have seen, among a number of State banks. The immediate result of this distribution was a cheapening of money; for banks are institutions whose business it is to loan money on interest. Money became, therefore, plentiful, and was readily loaned. The business of the country increased rapidly. Credit was everywhere given, and many debts were contracted.

The Patriot War.

A rebellion against the British Government occurred in Canada (1837) while Van Buren was President. Many in the United States desired to render assistance to the Canada patriots, but to this the President was averse, not wishing to involve the United States in difficulties through any act of its citizens. General Scott was dispatched to the Niagara frontier, where preparations were being made to transport a number of Canadian sympathizers to the opposite shore. His arrival put a stop to further proceedings.

With this artificial stimulus given to business, the number of banks multiplied. Many of them were established upon an unsound basis. Some were fraudulent in their business methods. These banks issued notes and bills whose circulation greatly inflated the currency of the country. For a time everything was prosperous, but the crash soon came.

The buying of public land and reserving it until its natural increase of value rendered sale of it profitable, was one of the speculative enterprises engaged in by many. Government agents had been accepting bank bills in payment for these public lands, but Jackson issued a CIRCULAR prohibiting the acceptance of anything but SPECIE in payment. The gold and silver coin of the country thus gradually found its way into the public treasury. Much of it also went abroad to pay for the expensive importations that prosperity and suddenly acquired riches had brought into demand.

The withdrawal of gold and silver from circulation rendered it impossible for many of the banks to meet their obligations or redeem their notes. They suspended specie

payments (1837), and with this suspension, their notes and bills became as worthless as so much paper. Thousands who held these notes were ruined. Business men every-where went into bankruptcy. In New York city alone, the loss in the first two months amounted to one hundred million dollars. Even States were affected—a number of them could not pay their just debts; and the banks in which the funds of the United States had been placed on deposit, were unable to return them to the government.



WILLIAM HENRY HARRISON.

Van Buren convened Congress in special session to consider measures of relief. The Whig members advocated the establishment of another United States Bank to regulate the future financial affairs of the country. The Democrats proposed instead a SUB-TREASURY SYSTEM, by which the collections of the government were to be made by special officers, bonded by responsible men, and the amounts collected were to be deposited, not in banks, but in sub-treasuries. Three years elapsed before this idea was accepted by Congress (1840), and although the law establishing this system was repealed by the Whigs (1841) upon their ascendancy to power, it was reënacted in 1846 and endures to this day.

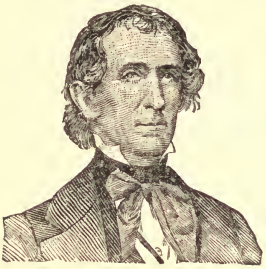
Sub-Treasury System.

The establishment of the United States Sub-Treasury System was perhaps the greatest event of Van Buren's administration, for before its establishment the business of the United States Government was blended with the business of the country, both being conducted through the medium of banks of some kind. The financial affairs of the government have since been kept separate and distinct, thus rendering their administration more in accord with the spirit and letter of the Constitution.

The business calamities of the country brought no popularity to the administration, so that when again Van Buren and Harrison were presented to the people as presidential candidates (1840) the choice fell on the latter. Thus after

forty years of uninterrupted control of public affairs the Democratic party for the first time was compelled to give place to a successful opponent.

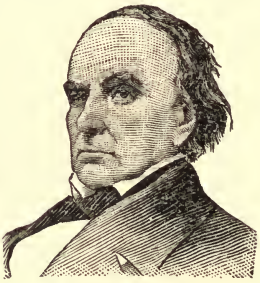
Harrison served but little more than a month, when he suddenly died (April 6, 1841), and the duties of his office fell to the Vice-President, JOHN TYLER of Virginia.



JOHN TYLER.

Although elected by the Whigs, Tyler was not in full accord with the principles of that party, and upon his ascendancy to power used the veto against a number of their measures. This veto power was directed particularly against the establishment of another United States Bank, and no attempt has ever been made in this direction since.

The acts of the President incurred for him the hostility of his party, and his administration was full of minor controversies. At one time all the members of his cabinet resigned, with the exception of DANIEL WEBSTER, his Secretary of State, he remaining to conclude the NORTHEAST BOUNDARY TREATY in progress of negotiation at the time. The treaty was successfully consummated (1842), LORD ASHBURTON acting for the British Government, and by it the boundaries between the United States and the Canadian possessions of England were satisfactorily established.



DANIEL WEBSTER.

A number of local disturbances occurred while Tyler was President. In Rhode Island an effort to overturn an old law that restricted the right of voting to property owners, resulted in what is known as DORR'S REBELLION (1842),

so named from its leader. The rebellion was suppressed without bloodshed, its leader imprisoned, but the principle contended for was successfully and peaceably established a few years after. In New York the descendants of the old Patroons still held the great estates along the Hudson, inherited from their ancestors, and had long exacted rents of the tenants. Generations of these tenants had occupied the same land, and a desire for ownership and undisturbed possession gained strength. Willing to purchase, they refused to pay rent any longer, and disturbances became so frequent that the militia of the State was called upon to preserve the peace (1844). These Patroon estates were subsequently divided up and sold.

The Mormons.

A peculiar religious sect, called the Mormons, had been founded by JOSEPH SMITH of Manchester, N. Y. (1830). Smith organized his first congregation at Kirtland, Ohio (1831), and seven years after journeyed westward and established himself near Independence, Mo., a region of country to which many of his believers had migrated. Here the practices of the Mormons became so offensive to their neighbors that they were compelled to leave. They next established themselves in Illinois, where they founded a city named Nauvoo. They lived here for some time undisturbed. But troubles again arose, and the arrest of Smith was sought. The Mormons prepared to offer armed resistance. At length Smith surrendered himself, and was taken to Carthage, where he was shot by an excited mob (1844). Another emigration now became necessary, and under the leadership of BRIGHAM YOUNG, more than sixteen thousand crossed the western plains and laid the foundation of Salt Lake City in Utah. Here they have increased in wealth and numbers. Mormon missionaries visit remote rural districts of different States, as well as different countries of Europe. Such converts as they win to their faith are obtained more through promises of material prosperity than through conviction of the truth of Mormon belief. Mormonism has been repeatedly denounced. Many of its practices are vicious and the United States government has made several efforts to suppress its worse characteristics. These efforts have been unsuccessful until recently.

To succeed Tyler, the Whigs nominated Henry Clay, the Democrats, JAMES K. POLK of Tennessee. The principal event of the campaign was the annexation of Texas—the Whigs opposing it, the Democrats favoring it. This question will be considered in the next chapter.

BLACKBOARD FORM.

PRINCIPAL EVENTS.—ADMINISTRATION OF

VAN BUREN, (N. Y.)

- *1836* Inauguration.
- *1837*
 - Business Panic.
 - Patriot War (Canada).
- *1840* Presidential Election — Principal Candidates: Van Buren (Dem.); HARRISON (Whig).

HARRISON, (Ohio). and **TYLER,** (Va.)

- *1841* Death of Harrison.
- *1842*
 - Dorr's Rebellion, (Rhode Island).
 - Webster-Ashburton Treaty.
- *1844*
 - Anti-Rent Troubles, (New York).
 - Mormon Difficulties, (Illinois).
 - First Telegraph, (see page 343).
 - Presidential Election — Principal Candidates: JAMES K. POLK, (Dem.); Henry Clay, (Whig).
- *1845*
 - Texas Annexed, (March 1).
 - Florida Admitted, March 3).

QUESTIONS.

Who were the Whigs? Who was their acknowledged leader? Who was the Whig candidate to succeed Jackson? Why was not Clay nominated? **What do you know of Van Buren?** To what was the business panic of 1837 attributable? **What effect had the distribution of the government funds among the State banks?** What multiplied with this artificial stimulus to business? What was the character of some of these banks? What was one form of speculation indulged in? **What was the effect of the "Specie Circular"?** What two causes produced a scarcity of coin in the currency of the country? **What effect had the suspension of specie payments by the banks? What do you know of the Sub-Treasury System?** Patriot War? Who succeeded Van Buren? **What do you know of John Tyler?** What measures did he oppose? What do you know of the "Webster-Ashburton Treaty"? Dorr's Rebellion? Anti-Rent difficulties? **The Mormons?** Who were the candidates to succeed Tyler? **What was the principal issue of the campaign?**

CHAPTER XI.

The Annexation of Texas.

Emigration from the older States was rapidly peopling the region west of the Mississippi, and at an early day it was

manifestly the destiny of the United States to occupy the broad extent of territory that she now does.

The treaty of 1819 had defined the boundaries between the territorial possessions of the United States and those of Spain.* By this treaty the United States relinquished all claim to Texas, and Spain, all claim to Oregon. The claims of the United States to Texas were based upon the Louisiana purchase; those of Spain to Oregon, upon original discovery and exploration.



GEN'L SAM. HOUSTON.

In 1821 Mexico obtained its independence, after eleven years of revolution. In 1824 it adopted a constitution similar to that of the United States, under which a federal republic was organized. Under this constitution Texas was united with the Mexican State of Coahuila, south of the Rio Grande, although the former had previously existed as a separate province with San Antonio as capital.

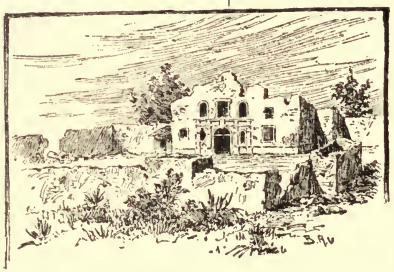
The rich soil and delightful climate of Texas had early attracted the attention of settlers. The policy of the Mexican authorities at first was one to encourage immigration. Liberal grants of land were made to men called Empressarios, who contracted to locate a certain number of families upon the grant, somewhat after the manner of the Patroons in the early days of New York.

One of the first of these empressarios was Moses Austin of Missouri; but he dying before his colonization plans were matured, the execution of his contract fell to his son, Stephen F. Austin. Austin located three hundred families in the region about the Brazos River (1821-

*See Page 317.

1825) according to the terms of the grant, and subsequently entered into and successfully carried out three additional enterprises of the same kind (1825-1828). This was the beginning of an immigration from the States of the Union, and by 1830 the English-speaking residents numbered thirty thousand.

The uniting of Texas and Coahuila into one State was very unsatisfactory to the Americans, for it removed the capital from San Antonio to the distant city of Saltillo, and gave the Mexican authorities of Coahuila unlimited control of Texas affairs; thus depriving the Texans of many of those privileges of self-government to which they had been accustomed, and the continued enjoyment of which they had been led to expect under the form of government by which Mexico was supposed to be governed.



THE ALAMO.

The Texas Revolution.

The Lexington of the Texas Revolution was the fight at Gonzales (October, 1835) between GENERAL CASTENADO and COLONEL MOORE. Its Yorktown was San Jacinto. It had its minute men, its committees of safety, and its Declaration of Independence. Its heroes were HOUSTON, FANNIN, BOWIE, CROCKETT, AUSTIN, MILAM, TRAVIS, BONHAM, and hundreds of others. Its principal engagements besides those given were Concepcion, near San Antonio (October 28, 1835); capture of San Antonio (December 5, 1835), and Colito (March 19, 1836)—all Texan victories. Its progress was marked by two of the darkest episodes that have ever been chronicled among the horrors of war. The first of these was the fall of the ALAMO (March 6, 1836), and the other was the massacre of brave Colonel Fannin and his men, near Goliad (March 26, 1836). After the capture of San Antonio, Colonel W. B. Travis and one hundred and forty men were left in charge of the city. With him were Bowie, Crockett and Bonham. The approach of a large army under Santa Anna caused this historic band to repair to a peculiar fortress near by, called the Alamo. Here they were besieged by a force of four thousand. Day by day the Texans sustained the siege, resisting every attack, and anxiously awaiting reinforcements. At one time they were joined by thirty-two brave fellows from Goliad, who cut their way through. The Mexican lines were drawn closer and closer, and the cannonading was unceasing. The number of Texans slowly dwindled, as one by one the heroes fell. At last there was but a handful to sustain the final attack (March 6). Only three persons sur-

vived, and these by the merest accident. Crockett was one of the last to fall, but before he died twenty of his enemies lay in death around him. The dead bodies of the Texans were mutilated and burned.

Fannin and his men after having repulsed the Mexican GENERAL URREA at the battle of Colito, were surrounded by an overwhelming force. With no chance of escape they accepted honorable terms that were offered them and surrendered. They were taken to Goliad, where an order from Santa Anna arrived for their execution. All unsuspectingly they were marched out upon a neighboring prairie, and while the bright sun of a Palm Sunday morn shone kindly upon them, they were shot down in cold blood and their bodies consigned to flames. Small wonder was it that these atrocities nerved the men of Houston's army to deeds of prowess. At San Jacinto the battle cry was, "*Remember the Alamo!*" "*Remember Goliad!*" and when the Texan onslaught scattered the Mexican forces, and pursuit of the retreating foe was entered into, many a Mexican, realizing how little was his claim to mercy, would fall on his knees when overtaken, and tremblingly repeat, "Me no Alamo!" "Me no Goliad!"

A series of oppressions, begun in 1830, served to increase this discontent. Laws were passed that in every way discriminated against the Americans. Further immigration from the United States was prohibited, while immigrants from other countries were welcomed (1830). This kept back many relatives and friends of those who had already come. Exorbitant taxes were levied, ports blockaded, and the least manifestation of discontent was followed by the declaration of martial law.

A convention of Texans at last assembled at San Felipe (1833), and drew up a strong memorial to the Mexican government, praying for a separation from Coahuila. Stephen F. Austin bore this memorial to Mexico, but his mission proved fruitless, and returning by way of Saltillo he was there seized and remanded to prison without trial, remaining in close confinement nineteen months.

The determination of the Texans soon changed from one of separation to one of independence. A provisional government was organized (November 12, 1835), with HENRY SMITH as Governor, and J. W. ROBERTSON as Lieutenant-Governor. Shortly after a convention assembled at Washington (Texas) and formally declared Texas to be a "FREE,

INDEPENDENT and SOVEREIGN REPUBLIC" (March 2, 1836). A constitution was prepared, and DAVID G. BURNET and LORENZO DE ZAVALLA assumed the duties of President and Vice-President, serving until the close of the year, when a popular election was held, resulting in the choice of General SAMUEL HOUSTON and MIRABEAU B. LAMAR.

Meanwhile armed hostilities had been in progress between Texas and Mexico, for Texan independence was won, as American independence had been won, by revolution and force of arms. During the war for Texan independence a number of battles were fought, in which Texan valor gained the admiration of the civilized world. The last and most important of these battles was that of SAN JACINTO (April 21, 1836), in which the Texans under General Houston, in the face of overwhelming numbers, won a brilliant victory, capturing SANTA ANNA, the Mexican commander-in-chief. A treaty with Santa Anna was signed at Velasco (May 14, 1836).

With the establishment of its independence, the desire of Texas to enter the Union soon manifested itself. A treaty of cession between the Republic of Texas and the United States was presented to the United States Senate toward the close of Tyler's administration, but was by that body rejected (June 8, 1844). The idea of Texas annexation was differently received by the American people.

The Beginning of Sectional Inequality.

The division of the sections upon the subject of slavery was becoming every year more and more marked. Slave and free States were rapidly growing distrustful of each other. In numbers they were about equal, for the policy had been followed of admitting a free State whenever a new slave State joined the Union. Arkansas and Michigan (1836) were the last States admitted under this policy.

With the admission of Arkansas there remained but the territory of Florida from which to carve a slave State, as the Missouri Compromise had restricted slavery to south of the 36° 30′ parallel, and the region west of Arkansas had been reserved to the Indians. There still remained much territory north of the line from which to form free States. So the ascendancy of the North to power was confidently anticipated, but was deferred by the annexation of Texas, which restored for the time the balance between the two sections.

The anti-slavery sentiment of the North bitterly opposed it. The South was earnestly in favor of it. The question was introduced into the politics of the country—the Whigs opposing, the Democrats favoring. "*Polk and Texas*" and "*Clay and no Texas*" became the campaign cries of the presidential election of 1844. The result showed that there were many in the North whose pride in the growth of our common country was as strong as the desire of the South to extend its sectional limits. Polk was elected, and, in compliance with the popular verdict, measures were framed by Congress to annex Texas; one of the last acts of President Tyler being his approval of the measures (March 1, 1845), and later in the year the State was constituted and admitted into the Union (December 29, 1845).



JAMES K. POLK.

The Progress of Invention.

Three important inventions were given to the world within a few years of each other. The first of these was the ELECTRIC TELEGRAPH. It was invented by Professor S. F. B. Morse, who, after having obtained a patent for it (1837), put the invention into practical use by building a line between Baltimore and Washington (1844). In 1846 Elias Howe of Massachusetts invented the sewing machine, and in 1847 R. M. Hoe of New York the cylinder printing press. The value of these inventions is beyond estimate. They are among the greatest of time and labor-saving devices ever designed by man. More than two hundred thousand miles of telegraph lines are now in operation. The improvements that have been made to Hoe's press render it now possible to print, cut, pas e and fold fifty thousand sheets an hour.

The annexation of Texas involved the United States in a war with Mexico, which will be considered in another chapter. The events connected with this war occupied the greater part of the attention of the country while Polk was President. During his administration Iowa (1846) and Wisconsin (1848) were admitted into the Union, making three States in all. JAMES SMITHSON, an Englishman, had left a legacy to the United States for the purpose of establishing an institution to aid

in increasing and disseminating knowledge. It was founded while Polk was President (1846), and is known as the SMITHSONIAN INSTITUTION. The Northwestern, or Oregon treaty, was concluded during the same year with Great Britain, the parallel of forty-nine degrees being decided upon.

QUESTIONS.

What was the "manifest destiny" of the United States? What boundaries had the treaty of 1819 defined? Upon what were the claims of the United States to Texas based? Of Spain to Oregon? What do you know of Mexican independence? How was Texas governed under the Mexican constitution? **Who were Empressarios? What do you know of Stephen F. Austin?** What did the English-speaking population of Texas number in 1830? **What causes for dissatisfaction had the settlers?** What resulted from this dissatisfaction? What do you know of the Texas Revolution? Its first engagement? Its heroes? Its battles? What was its greatest battle? **What do you know of the Alamo?** The massacre at Goliad? Who was the provisional Governor of Texas? President? Who was elected President and Vice-President of the Texas Republic? What do you know of the convention of San Felipe? Of that of Washington (Texas)? When was a treaty concluded with Santa Anna? What desire did Texas manifest after gaining independence? **How was this desire received by the people of the United States? What do you know of the beginning of Sectional Inequality? How was the question of Texas annexation introduced into politics?** Who favored it? Opposed? **What did the election of Polk show?** When did the President approve the measure of annexation? **What were the principal events of Polk's administration?** What do you know of the invention of the sewing machine? Telegraph? Cylinder printing press?

CHAPTER XII.

War With Mexico.

The independence of Texas, though conceded by Santa Anna after the battle of San Jacinto, had never been officially recognized by the Mexican government. The annexation of this territory, therefore, brought the United States into controversy with Mexico; for the latter country had repeatedly declared her purpose to regard Texan annexation as a cause of war.

Moreover the boundary between Texas and Mexico was in dispute. The former claimed the Rio Grande River, and the latter the Nueces, as the line of separation. The admission of Texas into the Union rendered it incumbent upon the United States to protect the newly acquired territory from any threatened invasion. General Zachary Taylor was dispatched to the Rio Grande, and upon arriving there, erected Fort Brown, opposite the Mexican city of Matamoras (March 28, 1846).

Taylor's occupation of the disputed territory was soon resented by the Mexicans. A force crossed to the east side of the river and surprised a detachment of sixty-three men under CAPTAIN THORNTON, killing or capturing almost the whole number (April 26). Anticipating further hostilities, Taylor fell back to Point Isabel, to make preparations. As he was again advancing to Fort Brown he found opposing his progress an army of six thousand Mexicans under GENERAL ARISTA, near Palo Alto. An engagement followed, and the Mexicans were driven from the field (May 8). The next day another battle was fought at Resaca-de-la-Palma, and Taylor was again victorious, the Mexicans retreating beyond the Rio Grande.



GENERAL ZACHARY TAYLOR.

When news of the state of affairs upon the southwestern frontier reached Washington, war was declared to be in existence "by act of Mexico" (May 11, 1846). Money was voted by Congress, and the President was authorized to issue a call for fifty thousand men. The position of General Taylor was regarded as critical, and volunteers hastened forward to his assistance from what were then the Southwestern States.

With the formal opening of war, three distinct campaigns were planned. These were entrusted to GENERALS KEARNEY, WOOL and TAYLOR. The first was directed against Santa Fé, New Mexico; the second against Chihuahua; and the third, against the Mexican States south of the Rio Grande.

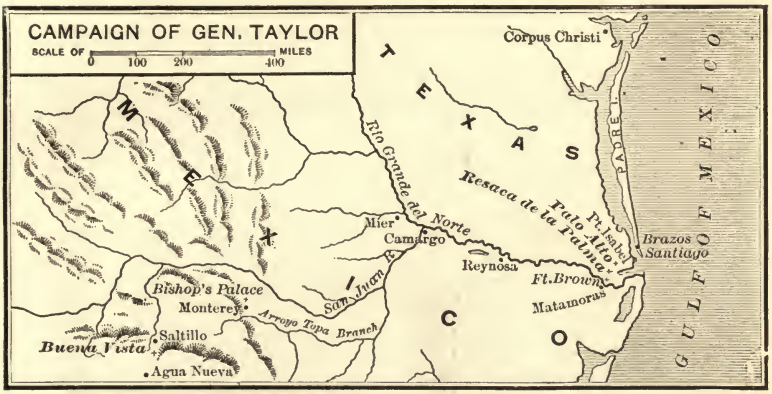
Kearney's expedition, numbering about sixteen hundred men, started from Fort Leavenworth, Kansas (June, 1846), and after journeying nine hundred miles over the old "Santa Fé Trail," reached and took possession of the New Mexican capital with but little opposition (August 18). Leaving Colonel Doniphan in command, Kearney, after organizing a territorial government for New Mexico, proceeded to California (September 25). Doniphan, receiving reinforcements from Missouri after Kearney's departure, determined to push southward. Leaving COLONEL STERLING PRICE in command, he set out upon a memorable march, his object being to join Wool at Chihuahua (December 14, 1846). Two battles were fought upon the march—Bracito (December 25, 1846), and Sacramento Creek (February 28, 1847)—in both of which Doniphan was successful in the face of superior numbers.

Conquest of California.

As emigration to Oregon had already begun, COLONEL JOHN C. FREMONT of the United States army had been engaged for some time in exploring the Rocky Mountains in search of a pass through which emigrant trains could make their way. Fremont turned south, and, hearing that war had been declared against Mexico, he determined to wrest California from Mexican rule. In this he was aided by the American residents and COMMODORES STOCKTON and SLOAT. San Francisco, Monterey (Cal.) and Los Angeles were captured without much opposition, and by the time Kearney arrived from New Mexico, the conquest had been accomplished. Early in 1847 the Mexicans rose in revolt, but were defeated in the battle at San Gabriel, near Los Angeles.

General Wool finding too many obstructions in his path, had relinquished his designs upon Chihuahua, and had turned south to Saltillo. Nevertheless Doniphan continued his march, and the day after the battle of Sacramento Creek

took possession of Chihuahua (March 1, 1847). From this point the little army made its way to Saltillo, where it arrived in safety, after having had its endurance and valor tested to the utmost (May 22).



General Taylor's operations began with the capture of Matamoras (May 19, 1846). From this point he moved westward upon Monterey, and with a much smaller force compelled the Mexican General Ampudia with ten thousand men to surrender and evacuate that city (September 24). General Worth, of Taylor's command, shortly after took possession of Saltillo.

Taylor soon found himself confronted by the experienced Santa Anna, who, having collected an army of twenty thousand men, confidently counted upon victory, as the Americans numbered but little more than five thousand. In view of his greatly superior force, a battle seemed useless to the Mexican commander, and he suggested that the Americans surrender. "*General Taylor never surrenders,*" was the quiet answer made him.

The opposing forces met at Buena Vista (February 23, 1847). No battlefield was ever more hotly contested.

Several times during the day victory was within the grasp of the Mexicans. At one of these times the day was saved for the Americans by the intrepidity of Colonel Jefferson Davis and his regiment of Mississippi riflemen; at another by Captain Braxton Bragg and his artillery. Valiant service was rendered by the Arkansas and Kentucky cavalry under

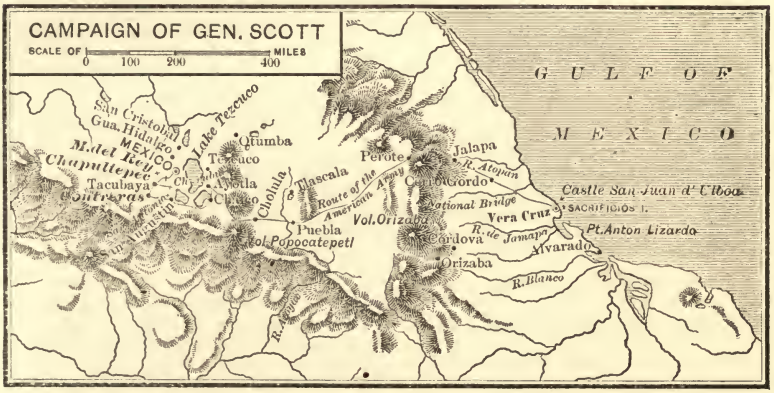


"GENERAL TAYLOR NEVER SURRENDERS."

Colonels Yell and Marshall. After ten hours of fighting the Mexicans withdrew from the field, and by daylight the next morning were in full retreat.

As the war progressed, it was seen that to be decisive, military operations must be directed against the Mexican capital. These operations were entrusted to General Winfield Scott. Landing near Vera Cruz, Scott attacked that city with a force of twelve thousand, and compelled its

surrender (March 27, 1847). Marching inland, he encountered a large Mexican army under Santa Anna at Cerro Gordo, and administered to it a crushing defeat (April 18). The next day he took possession of the city of Jalapa, from which he pushed on to the city of Puebla. Scott here waited for reinforcements. These soon arriving, he again took up his line of march for the city of Mexico (August 7).



On the 20th of August a series of attacks upon the positions of the enemy were successfully executed. Generals Pillow and Twiggs stormed Contreras, driving the Mexican general, Valencia, from his fortifications, and followed up the victory the same day by carrying the heights of Cherubusco, near by, defeating Santa Anna.

The Success of Scott's Army.

The defenses of the city were many in number, and Santa Anna was a skilled and sagacious commander, with more than thirty thousand men under his direction. The successes of the American army were therefore remarkable, and were no doubt due to the great array of military talent among the subordinate officers in command, many of whom were to come to the front as commanding generals in another war, and win undying fame by their achievements.

The next advance was upon Chapultepec. Molino del Rey, one of its outer defenses, was gallantly carried by General Worth (September 7), and shortly after the strongly fortified citadel of Chapultepec itself was brilliantly and

successfully stormed (September 13). The next day Scott entered the city of Mexico in triumph.

The Mexican Government now gladly acceded to terms of peace. The treaty was signed at Guadalupe Hidalgo (February 2, 1848). By the terms of this treaty Mexico relinquished all claims to upper California and New Mexico, accepting the Rio Grande as its northeast boundary. In consideration of this relinquishment the United States paid fifteen million dollars to the Mexican Government, and assumed all debts due by it to citizens of the United States.

California had scarcely come into possession of the United States when a discovery was made that brought a rush of settlers to its territory. A laborer cutting a mill-race for Captain Sutter's mill, in one of the small branches of the Sacramento River, found particles of gold in the sand. The news spread throughout the country, and the rush of gold-seekers and fortune-hunters began. Those who first arrived, alluded to themselves with pride for many years after as "*Forty-niners*." In 1850 San Francisco had sprung up into a city of fifteen thousand inhabitants, and in the same year the State of California was admitted into the Union.

The Texas Cession and the Gadsden Purchase.

The territorial claims of Texas extended to the Rio Grande River and included much of what is now New Mexico. In 1848 it was attempted to extend the jurisdiction of Texas over this newly-acquired territory. Officers were appointed and sent to take possession, but these found the territory already organized, for Kearney had instituted a form of government immediately after taking possession of Santa Fé (1846). A conflict of authority thus arose, but the controversy was settled by the payment of $10,000,000 by the United States (1850). Half of this amount went to liquidate the debt of the old Republic of Texas. The boundary line established by the Treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo was so indefinite that a dispute arose between the United States and Mexico over the territory south of the Gila River. A settlement was effected by the United States paying an additional ten million dollars for the territory in dispute, General Gadsden effecting the purchase (1852).





ENGRAVED FOR HANSELL'S HIGHER HISTORY OF THE U. S.

QUESTIONS.

What controversy arose with the annexation of Texas? What boundary was in dispute? **What do you know of the causes of the Mexican War?** Taylor's occupation of the disputed territory? Thornton's massacre? What two battles did Taylor fight before the war was declared? **What campaigns were planned? What do you know of Kearney's expedition?** Doniphan's march? **Conquest of California? What do you know of Taylor's operations? Battle of Buena Vista?** Who particularly distinguished themselves in this battle? Who led the expedition against the city of Mexico? Where did it land? What was its first battle? What two battles were fought in one day? What two battles caused the surrender of Mexico? **To what was the success of Scott's army in part attributable? What do you know of the Treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo? Texas cession? Gadsden purchase?** What event led to the rapid settlement of California?

TOPICAL OUTLINE.

- *WAR WITH MEXICO.*
 - *Causes*
 - *Annexation of Texas.*
 - *Disputed Territory.*
 - *Mexican Aggressions*
 - *Thornton's Massacre (April 26, 1846).*
 - *Battle of Palo Alto (May 8, 1846).*
 - *Battle of Resaca de la Palma (May 9, 1846).*
 - *Kearney's Campaign*
 - *Leaves Leavenworth (June, 1846).*
 - *Arrives at Santa Fe (August 18, 1846).*
 - *Departs for California (September 25, 1846).*
 - *Doniphan's March*
 - *March begins (December 14, 1846).*
 - *Battle of Bracito (December 25, 1846).*
 - *Battle of Sacramento (Feb. 28, 1847).*
 - *Capture of Chihuahua (March 1, 1847).*
 - *Arrives at Saltillo (May 22, 1847).*
 - *Taylor's Campaign*
 - *Capture of Matamoras (May 19, 1846).*
 - *Battle of Monterey (September 24, 1846).*
 - *Capture of Saltillo (November 15, 1846).*
 - *Battle of Buena Vista (February 23, 1847).*
 - *Scott's Campaign*
 - *Capture of Vera Cruz (March 27, 1847).*
 - *Battle of Cerro Gordo (April 19, 1847).*
 - *Battles of Contreras, Cherubusco, August 20, 1847.*
 - *Battle of Molino del Rey (September 8, 1847).*
 - *Battle of Chapultepec (September 13, 1847).*
 - *Capture of Mexico (September 14, 1847).*
 - *Result, Accession of Territory.*

CHAPTER XIII.

The Development of Sectional Antagonism.

The twelve years immediately following the administration of Polk were years leading up to a crisis in American affairs. This crisis was the terrible sectional conflict known as the Civil War, which began in 1861, lasted four years, and resulted in the abolition of slavery and the preservation of the Union from the evils of dismemberment. The causes which led to this war, like those which have led to other great conflicts, were of slow growth and long standing. It may be said that when the United States emerged from the gloom of the Revolution, it entered the shadow of Civil War.

The differences between North and South, developed in colonial times, had become more and more marked as years wore on. As these differences strengthened, we see, with the understanding that has come to us in recent years, how there grew up on American soil two distinct peoples, each evolving a civilization of its own, each bound to the other by the mutually constituted Federal Government. The social institutions and characteristic features of one were wholly unlike those of the other; the interests of both were not always identical. The constituted authority governing them was at times in position to wield power detrimental to one or the other. The control of national affairs was therefore an object with each at an early day, and many rivalries and discords arose. The halls of Congress became the arena where representatives of North and South met in forensic combat. The eloquence of these representatives echoed sectional sentiments, stirred up sectional pride, and strengthened sectional feeling. We have seen how this feeling became at times one of bitterness, threatening the dissolution of the Union, but disappearing before the peace-makings of a pacific policy or of a compromise.

The sentiment with which the system of slavery had come to be regarded by the North and South divided irreconcilably the sections. This system, as we have seen, was closely interwoven with the welfare and prosperity of the South, and the four million slaves found there, represented a value of twenty-five hundred million dollars. The system was expressly recognized by the Constitution, without which recognition the Constitution would not have been ratified. In the North the anti-slavery sentiment, from feeble beginnings, grew to such proportions that it was made a leading issue in politics. The party of anti-slavery principles became in time dominant in the affairs of the national government. The coming into power of this party caused the withdrawal from the Union of the slave States, in order to subserve what at the time appeared to be their best interests, their interpretation of the constitutional compact justifying them in the act.

Opposition to Slavery.

A change of conditions had come upon the country. In the colonial days conscientious opposition to slavery had been stronger in the South than in the North. The New England colonists had few scruples against selling into slavery the captives taken in their Indian wars; and the profitable slave trade that arose with the general introduction of slavery into the southern colonies was almost monopolized by New England vessels, manned by New England crews. On the other hand, the strongest advocates of emancipation were found among the gentry of colonial Virginia, the colony into which slavery had first been introduced, the voluntary liberation of slaves being of frequent occurrence.



A SOUTHERN COTTON FIELD.

We have seen how the development of agricultural conditions in the South at an early day rendered profitable the employment of unskilled labor, if such labor was intelligently directed. No industrial system answered the conditions of the time to better purpose than that of chattel servitude—a system in which the interests of master and slave were identical. However objectionable the system may now be generally regarded, no facts stand out clearer in American history than that the steady and directed toil of the Southern slave first placed the United States among the great commermercial nations of the world; and that the systematic training bestowed upon him during his period of servitude, and his contact with higher intelligence, have given to the negro an impulse to civilization that neither his inherent inclinations nor his native environment would of themselves have bestowed.

The admission of Missouri, as we have seen, brought the North and South into direct issue with each other, but the differences were settled by compromise. The acquisition of new territory after the war with Mexico, renewed the slavery agitation with a violence that revealed how far apart the sections had drifted in feeling, and how inevitable was the approaching conflict. At the first intimation that new territory was about to be acquired, DAVID WILMOT of Pennsylvania, moved in Congress to appropriate money to purchase the territory in question, with the PROVISO that slavery be not permitted therein (1846). The measure failed to pass, however, and the territory was acquired without it.

The rapid settlement of California, after the discovery of gold, enabled that territory to apply soon for admission as a State. A controversy arose which, with other causes of discord, did much to strengthen sectional antagonism. The Missouri Compromise line divided the proposed State, and

the question arose, *Was California to be a free or a slave State?* Henry Clay, who had retired from public affairs, was called forth from his Kentucky home, elected to the United States Senate, and again, by a compromise measure, did the great pacificator postpone sectional conflict. This compromise is known as Clay's Compromise of 1850, and from the number of features embraced in the one measure it is frequently referred to as the OMNIBUS BILL.

The Omnibus Bill provided for the admission of California as a free State, and stopped the buying and selling of slaves within the limits of the District of Columbia. This was to satisfy the demands of the North. To satisfy the South the rest of the Mexican cession was divided into two territories —Utah (including Nevada) and New Mexico (including Arizona)—and no stipulation was made prohibiting slavery within the limits of either, although the former lay almost wholly north of the Missouri Compromise line. The passage of a more efficient FUGITIVE SLAVE LAW than the one of 1793 and the settlement of the claims of Texas to new Mexican territory* were also provided for. But the bill failed of its purpose. There were many who objected to it, and where approval was expected it received only toleration.

The Dred Scott Decision.

A celebrated case, known as the DRED SCOTT CASE, that had been pending in the Supreme Court of the United States, was decided in 1857, and increased the slavery excitement. Dred Scott was a slave who, having been brought by his owner into free territory, sued for his freedom. The court decided that slaves were property, that under the Constitution all property must be protected, that the taking of a slave into a free State or territory did not forfeit ownership, and that Congress had no power to forbid slavery in the territories. This decision would have nullified the Missouri Compromise had not the Kansas-Nebraska Bill already done so.



MILLARD FILLMORE.

The next controversy upon the question of slavery in the territories arose when it became neces-

*See page 350.

sary to organize the territories of KANSAS and NEBRASKA. For this purpose a bill was introduced into Congress by STEPHEN A. DOUGLAS of Illinois, recognizing the principle of what has been termed SQUATTER SOVEREIGNTY. The KANSAS-NEBRASKA BILL authorized the people of those territories to decide for themselves, as soon as their States were organized, whether slavery should exist within their limits or not. The Compromise of 1850 had virtually repealed the Missouri Compromise, so the bill passed (1854), angering intensely the anti-slavery North. For many years from that time there was to be an absence of all peace.

The beginnings of sectional conflict took place upon Kansas soil. With the passage of the Kansas-Nebraska Bill it became an object with each of the sections to have as many representatives among the emigrants to the territory as possible, so that one could outvote the other when the question of slavery came up for decision. Two separate governments were organized, and in the conflict of authority that ensued much blood was shed. General lawlessness prevailed until 1858, when the opponents of slavery were successful, although Kansas was not admitted until 1861.

The Anti-Slavery Movement.

The Fugitive Slave Law provided for the arrest and return of slaves escaping from their owners into free States, and empowered United States officers to make the arrest and return. This measure caused intense dissatisfaction in the North. PERSONAL LIBERTY BILLS were passed by several States, in direct opposition to the laws of the United States, and these bills placed every obstruction possible in the way of the United States officers, who sought to perform their duty under the Fugitive Law. Many of the Northern people were opposed to slavery, but did not believe that the national government had a right to abolish it. Others believed in nothing more nor less than total abolishment of slavery within the limits of the United States. These were termed Abolitionists. At first the Abolitionists were few in number. The most prominent founder of the movement was WILLIAM LLOYD GARRISON, who instituted an anti-slavery society as early as 1831. For a long time the Abolitionists were regarded in the North with disfavor, as a band of agitators, endangering the peace and tranquillity of the country. Their meetings were often broken up, their halls burned to the ground, their public speakers mobbed. But in later years, sectional animosity and the passage of the Fugitive and other laws caused many to

join their ranks. In 1840 the Abolitionists entered the domain of American politics as the LIBERTY PARTY, and nominated for President JAMES G. BIRNEY, who received 7,509 votes. Birney was again a candidate in 1844, and received 62,300 votes, a marked increase for the short space of time. In 1848 the Abolitionists, with certain Anti-Slavery elements of the Democratic and Whig parties, formed themselves into the FREE SOIL PARTY, whose motto was "*Free Soil, Free Speech, Free Labor and Free Men*," and nominated ex-President Van Buren, he receiving 291,263 votes. In the presidential election of 1852 this party lost ground, but before the next (1856) the slavery agitation had drawn to its ranks so many, that, under name of the Republican party, it polled 1,340,264 votes for its presidential candidate, JOHN C. FREMONT, and emerged from the succeeding contest with success (1860).

The four Presidents that followed Polk were ZACHARY TAYLOR, MILLARD FILLMORE, FRANKLIN PIERCE and JAMES BUCHANAN. Taylor was elected by the Whigs (1848), and, dying the next year after his inauguration, was succeeded by Vice-President Fillmore. Pierce and Buchanan were Democrats.

The events that characterized the administrations of these Presidents were for the most part those given in connection with the slavery agitation. During Pierce's term a treaty was successfully established between Japan and the United States (1854), and during the administration of Buchanan the first successful ocean cable was laid across the Atlantic (1858), though a series of misfortunes prevented its practical and general use until 1866; Minnesota (1858), Oregon (1859) and Kansas (1861) were admitted; and the secession of seven Southern States from the Union occurred (1861).



FRANKLIN PIERCE.

QUESTIONS.

To what crisis in American affairs did the years following Polk's administration lead? What can you say of the difference existing between the North and South? How were they unlike? How was sectional feeling strengthened? How had sectional bitterness been at times allayed? What was interwoven with the prosperity of the South? How was slavery regarded in the North? What happened when the anti-slavery party attained power?

What do you know of the change of opinion with which slavery was regarded? What industrial system answered the conditions of the South? Why? **What placed the United States among the commercial nations of the world?** Upon what is our industrial structure founded? What acquisition of territory led to a renewal of the slavery agitation settled by the Missouri Compromise? **What was the "Wilmot Proviso"?** What controversy arose with the admission of California? How was it settled? **What do you know of the Omnibus Bill? Fugitive Slave Law? Personal Liberty Bills? Trace the growth of the anti-slavery movement. What do you know of the Kansas-Nebraska Controversy?** When was Kansas admitted? What four Presidents followed Polk? By what party was each elected? **What events characterized their administrations?** When was the Japan treaty consummated? Minnesota admitted? Oregon? Kansas?

BLACKBOARD FORM.

PRINCIPAL EVENTS—ADMINISTRATION OF

POLK, (Tenn.)

- 1845
 - Inauguration.
 - Texas Admitted.
- 1846
 - Mexican War Begins.
 - Iowa Admitted.
 - Smithsonian Institution Founded.
 - Oregon Boundary Treaty.
- 1848
 - Wisconsin Admitted.
 - Mexican War Ends, (Treaty signed February 2).
 - Gold Discoverd.
 - Presidential Election
 - Democratic Candidates: Lewis Cass. / Wm. O. Butler.
 - Free-Soil Candidates. (Anti-Slavery): Martin Van Beuren. / Chas. Francis Adams.
 - Whig Candidates: ZACHARY TAYLOR. / MILLARD FILLMORE.

TAYLOR, (La). and **FILLMORE,** (N. Y.)

- 1849
 - Inauguration.
 - Omnibus Bill.
- 1850
 - Death of Taylor, (July 9).
 - California Admitted.
 - Presidential Election
 - Democratic Candidates: FRANKLIN PIERCE. / WM. R. KING.
 - Anti-Slavery Candidates: John P. Hale. / Geo. W. Julian.
 - Whig Candidates: Winfield Scott. / Wm. A. Graham.

PIERCE, (N. H.)

- 1853
 - Inauguration.
 - Gadsden Purchase.
- 1854
 - Japan Treaty.
 - Kansas-Nebraska Bill.
- 1856
 - Presidential Election
 - Democratic Candidates: JAMES BUCHANAN, / J. C. BECKENRIDGE.
 - Republican Candidates. (Anti-Slavery): John C. Fremont, / Wm. L. Dayton.

BUCHANAN, (Pa.)

- 1857
 - Inauguration.
 - Dred Scott Decision.
- 1858
 - Minnesota Admitted.
 - Atlantic Cable.
- 1859
 - Oregon Admitted.
- 1860
 - Presidential Election
 - Democratic Candidates.
 - Northern Wing: Stephen A. Douglass, / H. V. Johnson.
 - Southern Wing: John C. Breckenridge, / Joseph Lane.
 - Constitutional-Union Candidates: John Bell. / Edward Everett.
 - Republican Candidates: ABRAHAM LINCOLN. / HANNIBAL HAMLIN.
 - Secession of South Carolina (Dec. 20).
- 1861
 - Secession of Mississippi, Florida, Alabama, Georgia, Louisiana, Texas.
 - Organization of Southern Confederacy.
 - Kansas Admitted.

SEARCH QUESTIONS.

What was the "Underground Railroad"? What political party was deridingly referred to as the "Locofocos" and why? What is meant by naturalizing a foreigner? What was the "Kitchen Cabinet"? What was the "Pony Express"? What cavalry regiment of the regular army of the United States is remarkable for having been officered by some of the most celebrated generals that America has produced? Name some of these officers.

PREPARATORY NOTES.

Geography.—Upon a map of the United States note the relative position of the following cities: Washington, Montgomery, Charleston, Richmond, St. Louis, Cairo, Paducah. In what part of Missouri is Carthage? Springfield? Lexington? Belmont? In what part of Kentucky is Columbus? Bowling Green? Mill Springs? Mumfordsville? Richmond? Perryville? In what part of Arkansas is Bentonville? Batesville? Des Arc? Fort Smith? Little Rock? Helena? In what part of Mississippi is Corinth? Iuka? Vicksburg? Beginning at Norfolk Va., trace the coast line of the United States southward, noting the following: Hatteras Inlet, Roanoke Island, Wilmington, Charleston, Port Royal, Savannah, Jacksonville, Pensacola, Mobile, Ship Island, New Orleans, Sabine Pass, Galveston. In what part of Tennessee is Murfreesboro? Chattanooga? Knoxville? Nashville? Franklin? In what part of Georgia is Dalton? Atlanta?

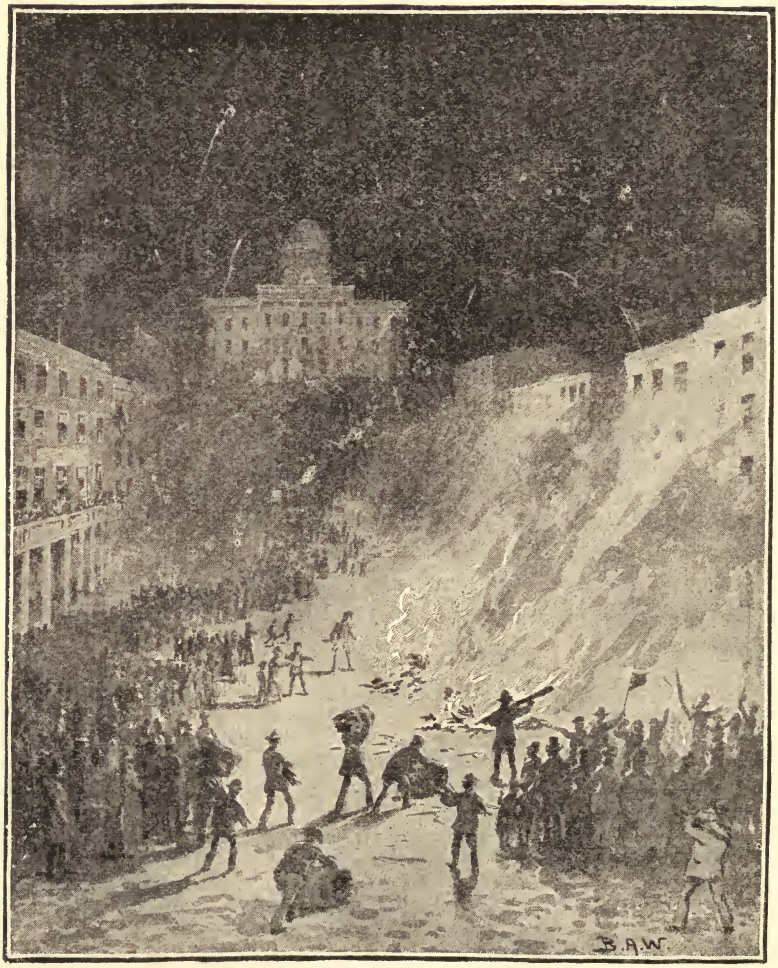
Definition of Words.—Preclude, crisis, erroneously, rancor, discrimination, imbued, allegiance, recipient, convictions, colleagues, interpretation, subsequent, apprised, concentrate, transcendently, aggressive, incendiary, tenacity, obliterated, emancipation, irreparable, strenuously, impeachment, tenure.

PARALLEL READINGS.

REFERENCE.—Stephens' "War between the States," Davis' "Rise and Fall of the Confederate Government," "Battles and Leaders of the Civil War" (Century War Book), Soley's "The Blockade and the Cruisers," Ammen's "The Atlantic Coast," Mahan's "The Gulf and the Inland Waters," Draper's "History of the American Civil War," Greeley's "American Conflict," J. E. Johnston's "Narrative of Military Operations," "Southern Historical Papers."

GENERAL.—Johnston's "Life of Albert Sidney Johnston," Cooke's "Life of Robert E. Lee" and "Life of Stonewall Jackson," Grant's "Memoirs," Sherman's "Memoirs," Hood's "Advance and Retreat," Taylor's "Destruction and Reconstruction," McCulloch's "Men and Measures of Half a Century," Pollard's "Lost Cause" and "Lee and his Lieutenants."

TOPICAL.—"Secession of the Southern States," "The Blockade," "Confederate Cruisers," "The War in Virginia," "The War in Tennessee," "The War in Missouri," "The War in Kentucky," "The War in Arkansas," "The War in Mississippi," "The War in Louisiana," "The War in Texas," "The War in Alabama," "The War in Georgia," "The War in South Carolina," "The War in North Carolina," "The War in Florida," "The War on the Coast," "Gunboat Operations."



MONTGOMERY, ALA.--NIGHT OF DAVIS' INAUGURATION.

DISUNION.

CHAPTER I.

The Secession of the Southern States.

The question of slavery, as we have seen, had become the principal issue before the country. It had caused the organization of a powerful political party, whose avowed purpose was the prohibition of slavery in the territories by act of Congress. This party had assumed the name REPUBLICAN. It had already suffered one defeat (1856), but by the close of Buchanan's administration it had increased greatly in strength and numbers. In the election of a successor to Buchanan (1860) its candidates were: for President, ABRAHAM LINCOLN, of Illinois; for Vice-President, HANNIBAL HAMLIN, of Maine.

John Brown's Raid.

An ardent advocate of slavery abolition named John Brown took a prominent part in the Kansas troubles, and as "Ossawatomie" Brown attained some notoriety in connection with the many deeds of violence committed during the agitation of the slavery question in that territory. In October, 1859, Brown, with twenty friends, invaded Virginia with the avowed purpose of arming the slaves and inciting them to insurrection. The arsenal at Harper's Ferry was surprised and taken (October 16), but Virginia militia and United States marines appeared promptly upon the scene and took most of the party prisoners. Brown was found guilty of treason and hanged December 2, 1859.



JAMES BUCHANAN.

The nominating convention of the Democratic party assembled at Charleston (April 23, 1860). In this convention were Northern Democrats and Southern Democrats; but they entertained different opinions relative to slavery in the territories. The former regarded it as a domestic institution to be regulated by each State, and believed that "squatter sovereignty" should decide whether slavery, after having

been introduced into a territory, should cease or continue, when that territory became a State. The latter desired to meet more squarely the issue presented by the Republicans, and insisted that Congress should not, by prohibiting slavery in the territories, discriminate between northern and southern settlers in the protection of property guaranteed to both under the Constitution.

Unable to agree, the Democratic Convention adjourned, and finally, two separate Democratic conventions were held at Baltimore. One convention, in which Southern members predominated, nominated JOHN C. BRECKENRIDGE, of Kentucky, and JOSEPH LANE, of Oregon. The other nominated STEPHEN A. DOUGLAS, of Illinois, and BENJAMIN FITZPATRICK, who, declining, was substituted by HERSCHEL V. JOHNSON, of Georgia. Meanwhile a remnant of the old Whig party had nominated JOHN BELL, of Tennessee, and EDWARD EVERETT, of Massachusetts, as CONSTITUTIONAL UNION Candidates; and thus four presidential tickets were presented to the consideration of the American people.

The Cause of Secession.

As union did not assure domestic tranquillity, it was by many, regarded as a failure. The North wished to right the so-called wrong of slavery; the South to protect an interest. Slavery existed when the constitutional compact was entered into, and was by it recognized. It could not be forcibly abolished without a violation of this compact. Breach of compact was cause for dissolution of the Union; and the South had long insisted upon strict adherence to the terms of the Constitution. When events indicated that these terms relative to slavery were becoming more and more disregarded by the North, the South decided to withdraw. South Carolina, shortly after the election of Lincoln, held a convention, as she had done in the days of the nullification controversy, and passed the ORDINANCE OF SECESSION. Had some "great pacificator" arisen in Congress as in the past, it is believed by some that an adjustment of difficulties could have been reached without war. But this is doubtful, as antagonism had grown so strong between the sections as to preclude all hope of harmonious compromise. The issue was made, and the greatest crisis in American affairs had arrived.

Although a majority of votes was cast against Lincoln he received more than any one of his three opponents, and was consequently declared elected. The South now found itself

confronted by an alarming state of affairs. The election of Lincoln was a purely sectional one, the vote making him President having been cast solely by the Northern States. The party coming into power with his inauguration was that into which all the elements of the North antagonistic to the interests of the South had been drawn. The domestic tranquillity guaranteed by the Constitution had not been enjoyed for many a day, and an interminable continuance of strife and discord seemed to be in store for all.

The idea had been slowly shaping itself in the Southern mind that, notwithstanding the affection for the Union that the South had felt and manifested since the founding of the government, tranquil existence without the Union was preferable to continued disturbance within. The election of Lincoln stirred the South to action. South Carolina took the first step. A convention of her sovereign people passed an ORDINANCE OF SECESSION, dissolving the bonds existing between the State of South Carolina and the rest of the Union (December 20). Commissioners were dispatched to Washington to adjust the new relations between the two governments upon an equitable basis. Ordinances of secession were also passed by Mississippi (Jan. 9, 1861), Florida (January 10), Alabama (January 11), Georgia (January 19) and Louisiana (January 26). Delegates from the seceded States then met in convention, presided over by HOWELL COBB of Georgia, at Montgomery, Alabama (Feb. 8).



HOWELL COBB.

The First Confederate Cabinet.

President Davis' cabinet, as first constituted, consisted of ROBERT TOOMBS, of Georgia, Secretary of State; LEROY P. WALKER, of Alabama, Secretary of War; STEPHEN R. MALLORY, of Florida, Secretary of the Navy; CHAS. G. MEMMINGER, of South Carolina, Secretary of the Treasury; JUDAH P. BENJAMIN, of Louisiana, Attorney-General; J. H. REAGAN of Texas, Postmaster-General.



A provisional government for THE CONFEDERATE STATES OF AMERICA was organized, and JEFFERSON DAVIS, of Mississippi, was elected President and ALEXANDER H. STEPHENS, of Georgia, Vice-President (February 9). The inauguration of Davis and Stephens occurred amid scenes of the wildest enthusiasm, and demonstrations of loyal support of the new government were everywhere manifested (February 18).

Texas adopted the Ordinance of Secession (February 23, 1861), and was admitted to membership in the Confed-

Jefferson Davis.

Jefferson Davis was among the greatest exponents of the principles of STATE SOVEREIGNTY whose voices have been heard in the halls of Congress. Born in Christian County, Ky. (1808), he graduated from West Point (1828) and served seven years in the regular army of the United States. In 1835 he took up his abode as a planter in Warren County, Miss., and his subsequent career is closely identified with the history of that State. He entered public life in 1845, serving as member of Congress, U. S. Senator, member of the President's Cabinet and again U. S. Senator until the withdrawal of his State from the Union caused him to cast his destiny with that of his people. As Colonel of the First Mississippi Regiment of Volunteer Rifles in the Mexican War he won distinguished honor at Monterey and saved the day at Buena Vista. As Secretary of War during Pierce's administration he increased the strength and efficiency of the regular army, brought the U. S. Naval Academy up to a high standard and instituted most important measures in connection with the COAST SURVEY. At the opening

of the Civil War no statesman stood higher in the estimation of the intelligent than he. None had more to hope for in the way of political preferment, and none made greater sacrifices for the cause he embraced. With the fall of the Confederacy his public career closed. His last days were spent at his beautiful country home, Beauvoir, in southern Mississippi, near the gulf shore. Here a number of works of great literary and historic value were produced by him. Upon a journey to another part of the state he was stricken with his last illness, and was brought to New Orleans, where he died (December 6, 1889). His last words were "*Pray excuse me.*" The news of his death was received with profound sorrow. All realized that a man whose life and character were spotless had passed away. His funeral was attended by large delegations of leading citizens from every Southern State, and while the remains reposed in state in the City Hall of New Orleans, they were viewed by more than one hundred thousand who had assembled from far and near to obtain a last look at the dead chieftain. Respected by the aged and reverenced by the youth of that South whose past is linked with his, and whose future he and his generation have filled with memories undying, he was laid at rest. With his death the last link binding the South of to-day with the conflict of the past is severed.

eracy (March 2). Meanwhile the authorities of the seceded States had been taking possession of forts, arsenals, and government property within their limits. The garrisons of Fort Sumter, in Charleston Harbor, and Fort Pickens, near Pensacola, Florida, however, refused to give up these fortifications when the demand was made. The former was commanded by MAJOR ANDERSON; the latter by LIEUTENANT SLEMMER.

The refusal of Anderson to surrender Fort Sumter placed South Carolina in the position of having, without her consent, a foreign power domiciled within her borders, and within threatening distance of her largest city. It was therefore determined to insist upon a withdrawal of the United States troops. Batteries were erected at various points, and GENERAL P. G. T. BEAUREGARD assumed command. The steamer STAR OF THE WEST arriving with supplies for the garrison, was fired upon by these batteries and compelled to return.



ALEXANDER H. STEPHENS.



BOMBARDMENT OF FORT SUMTER.

Expecting reinforcements, Anderson persisted in his refusal to surrender. The authorities at Washington had given a verbal pledge that reinforcements would not be sent, and that the troops would be withdrawn from Fort Sumter. As long as the pledge was kept there was nothing done by the besiegers in the way of offensive military operations. The Washington authorities, however, soon changed their mind, and dispatched troops by sea to the assistance of the fort. Upon the approach of these it became necessary for Beauregard to

War Preparations.

The secession of the Southern States was differently regarded in the North. There were some who, in preference to an armed controversy, were willing to let the Southern States go in peace. There were others who denied the right of a State to secede, but who held that the United States Government had not the right to coerce a State back into the Union. Of this number was Buchanan. But by far the greater number believed that the Union should be preserved at any cost, and as the time to inaugurate Lincoln drew near, it soon became evident that a determination of this kind was forming. In anticipation of the use of force, the Confederate States began to prepare for resistance. Several efforts were made by commissions and peace congresses to bring about an amicable adjustment of affairs between the two governments; but the authorities at Washington held the people of the Southern States to be in rebellion, and would extend no official recognition to the Confederate Government. Events therefore hastened on to an armed conflict.

take prompt action. A bombardment was begun. At 4:30 A. M., April 12, 1861, the first gun was fired from the battery on James Island. This proved to be the first gun of the great Civil War that was to continue for four years.

For thirty-four hours the bombardment continued, the garrison making a defense so gallant as to win the respect and admiration of their assailants. At length Anderson was compelled to surrender, and, without the loss of a single man on either side, the contest ended (April 14, 1861).

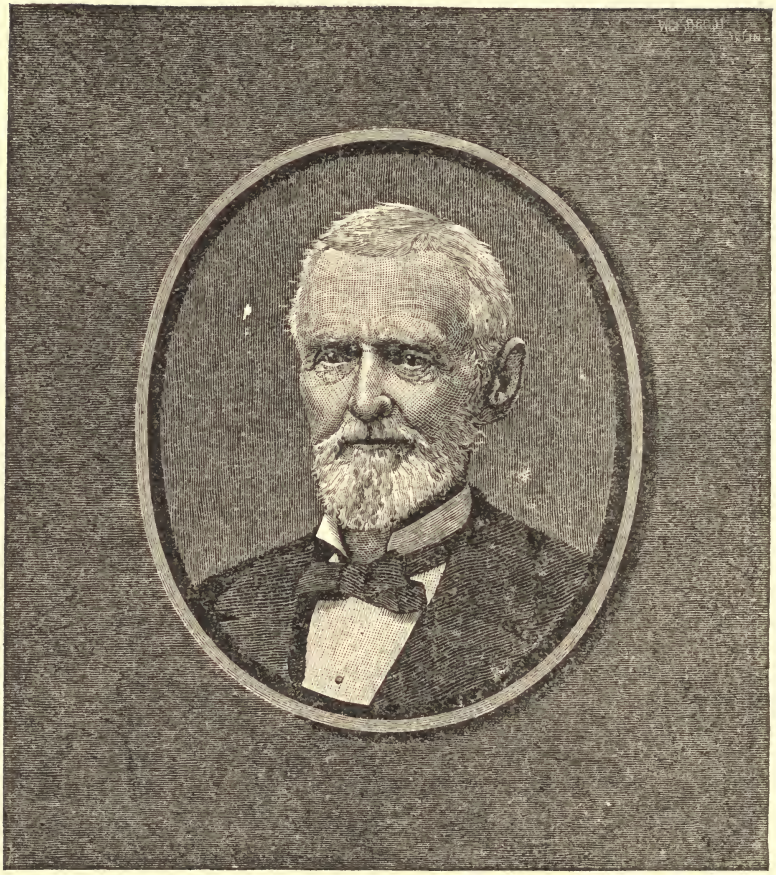
QUESTIONS.

What was the avowed purpose of the political party called into organization by the anti-slavery feeling? What candidates did this party put forth for President and Vice-President? What occasioned a division in the Democratic party? What candidates were nominated by each division? Who were the candidates proposed by the Constitutional Union party? What do you know of Lincoln's election? What action did the Southern States take upon Lincoln's election? Why? What State first seceded? When? How? What five States followed? When did Texas join the Confederacy? What do you know of the organization of the Confederate Government? Who were its officers? How was the secession of the Southern States regarded in the North? How did the authorities at Washington regard it? Why did South Carolina insist upon the surrender of Fort Sumter? What followed Major Anderson's refusal to withdraw? Why was Fort Sumter bombarded? When was the first gun fired? What do you know of Anderson's surrender? What do you know of John Brown's raid? The cause of Southern secession?

CHAPTER II.

The Advance on Richmond.

The fall of Fort Sumter occasioned intense excitement throughout the country. Congress not being in session at the time, President Lincoln, impelled by the rapidly rising war feeling of the North, took immediate steps to assert by force the power of the Union. A call for seventy-five thousand men was issued by him, and to this call the governors of the Northern States promptly responded, raising, equipping, and sending forward their quotas of men to Washington with rapidity.



JEFFERSON DAVIS.

As soon as it became evident that force was to be employed to bring the Gulf States back to the Union, four more States seceded and cast their destinies with the Confederacy. These were Virginia (April 17), Arkansas (May 6), Tennessee (June 8), and North Carolina (May 20). The people of Maryland, Kentucky and Missouri were divided in their sympathies, and prompt action upon the part of the Federal authorities prevented these three States

from following the examples of the other four. The Confederate capital was now removed from Montgomery to Richmond, where the permanent organization of the Confederate Government was completed.

The Call for Troops.

The call for troops met with a different response from the Southern States that still remained in the Union. These States recognized the right of any State to secede, and denied the right of the general government to coerce. GOVERNOR RECTOR of Arkansas, GOVERNOR HARRIS of Tennessee, GOVERNOR MAGOFFIN of Kentucky, GOVERNOR ELLIS of North Carolina, GOVERNOR LETCHER of Virginia, and GOVERNOR JACKSON of Missouri declined to furnish troops. Their refusals showed the general opinion held in the South relative to the right of a State to leave the Union; for, after all that may be said, the contention for this right on the part of the South was the direct cause of the Civil War, and not slavery, as has been frequently and erroneously given. Slavery and tariff agitation were incidental to that sectional antagonism whose steady development rendered possible the settlement of differences only by armed conflict, and not by pacific measures and compromises, as in the past.

The Confederate authorities were soon as busy preparing for war as the Federal. Had the American people foreseen the horrors, strife, and waste of resources that were to follow in the approaching conflict, they might well have paused before meeting one another upon the first battle-field in fratricidal strife. But the destiny of the nation had to be fulfilled. The causes had long been sown, and the reaping of the effects was to inevitably follow. The old American spirit of resistance was now born again. North and South, divided in their opinion as to what was right, were ready to fight for it as their forefathers had done. The patriotism of the Southern people impelled them to contend for the principles of local self-government and to defend their States. The people of the North were as earnest in their desire to rally to the assistance of the government held by them to be superior to that of the States, and to preserve the Union. There can be no questioning of the motives of either without impeaching the integrity of a now united people.

After seceding, Virginia took immediate steps to organize her forces, and General Robert E. Lee was called to the command. When Virginia joined the Confederacy these troops were transferred to the Confederate Government.

In response to Lincoln's call for troops, bodies of men began to assemble near Wheeling, W. Va., under GENERAL GEORGE B. MCCLELLAN; at Chambersburg, Pa., under GENERAL PATTERSON; and at Washington, under GENERAL WINFIELD SCOTT. A body of Massachusetts troops, on their way to Washington, passing through Baltimore against the remonstrances of its inhabitants, encounted some resistance in the streets, during the course of which a number of citizens and soldiers were killed (April 19, 1861).

The Confederates hastened to establish a line of defense. Troops had been sent forward into Western Virginia to repel McClellan's advance; while forces were collected near Harper's Ferry, under

The Question of Loyalty.

When the passions and prejudices awakened by the war between the States were still fresh in the minds of the people much rancor and bitterness went on record in the writings of those who chronicled the events of our country's history. In reviewing these chronicles the student will find his powers of discrimination taxed to the utmost. As the years roll on, truths become more and more clear. The terms *rebels* and *traitors*, once applied to the men of the Southern armies, are now no longer current. These terms cause the question of loyalty to government to arise, and here again North and South were honestly divided in their opinions. The North had received a great tide of immigration from Europe since the Revolution. These people came to the "United States," and when they and their descendants became imbued with the spirit of American institutions, their patriotism and allegiance were yielded to the Government of the United States rather than to that of any particular State. The South had received few of these immigrants, and had preserved intact to a great extent the traditions and opinions of governmental allegiance current when the Union was first formed. Its spirit was decidedly that of LOCAL SELF-GOVERNMENT, manifesting itself in the opposition of the colonies to the rule of England, manifesting itself whenever the functions of the general government seemingly or actually overlapped those of a sovereign self-governing State. The State was the recipient of the loyalty and patriotism of the Southern people; the Union shared with it their affection. Duty, however, moved them when choice came to be made between the two. This duty was interpreted according to convictions. With those officers from the South who held positions in the regular army of the United States, before the secession of the Southern States, the choice was indeed sorrowfully and thoughtfully made. Some, like ROBERT E. LEE, of Virginia, an officer who stood

the highest in military capacity of all in the United States' service, feeling that their hands could only be raised in defense of their States, resigned their commissions when their States seceded. Others, like GEORGE H. THOMAS, of Virginia,—"the general who never lost a battle"—found the ties attaching them to the government stronger than those binding them to their State. The Senators and Congressmen from the South severed their connections with the United States Government in sadness. The farewell address of Jefferson Davis of Mississippi to his colleagues in the United States Senate will ever stand as the grandest expression of that earnest conviction entertained in the South, that the step taken in seceding was legal; that this step was taken with reluctance and for no purpose but that of terminating the turmoil into which the country had, for a long time, been plunged. The spirit that animates traitors was not such as was displayed by Southern men upon many an historic battlefield. The impulses of a causeless rebellion could never have sustained them through the weary years of conflict and suffering, and when from physical exhaustion, they ceased to fight, the terms of peace were accepted in good faith, and nothing can rob them of the glories they achieved; and the consciousness that they did but show themselves Americans, contending for their interpretation of right, resisting what was to them oppression, remains to them. Should the restored Union ever be imperiled, or the American people be called upon to maintain before the world the dignity becoming to a mighty nation, the first to take up arms—be it to defend or to maintain—will be the sons and grandsons of those who submitted the courage of their convictions to the trying ordeals of the great sectional conflict.

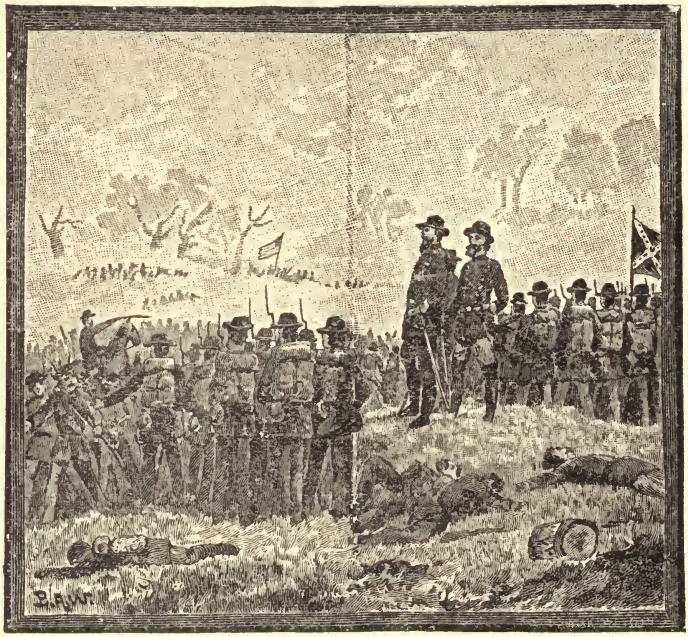
GENERAL JOSEPH E. JOHNSTON; at a place called Manassas Junction, near Washington, under General Beauregard; under GENERAL J. B. MAGRUDER at Yorktown; and under GENERAL BENJAMIN HUGER at Norfolk.

The Union advance into Western Virginia was marked by successes over small bodies of troops at PHILIPPI (June 3, 1861), FALLING WATERS (July 2) and RICH MOUNTAIN (July 11); but it soon became evident that the first important battle was to be fought at some point between Washington and Richmond. The idea generally prevailed in the North that the capture of the Confederate capital would bring hostilities to a speedy termination; so the cry went up, "*On to Richmond.*"



GEN. IRVIN MC DOWELL, (FEDERAL).

General Scott, being too old to take the field, was succeeded by GENERAL IRVIN MCDOWELL. The army that advanced from Washington consisted of thirty-eight thousand men. So confident were



"WE WILL GIVE THEM THE BAYONET"

these forces of success that they had hardly given any attention to the serious business of war, but looked upon their march as something of a holiday excursion. At Bull Run Creek, near Manassas Junction, they encountered the Confederates, July 21, 1861. Johnston had joined Beauregard with a part of his army, leaving the rest to follow.

The battle that took place was gained by the Confederates, owing to two fortuitous circumstances. The first of these was the presence upon the field, in command of part of the forces, of General Thomas Jonathan Jackson, a skilled and experienced military commander. The second was the arrival of the remainder of Johnston's army, under General E. Kirby Smith, in time to turn the tide of victory against the Unionists. The defeat of the Union

"Stonewall" Jackson.

Attack after attack was sustained by Confederate forces under GENERALS EVANS and BEE in one part of the field, and at last they were compelled to fall back. But help had come; for, in the rear, drawn up in line, within supporting distance stood the "First Brigade," commanded by General Jackson. Bee had done all he could to rally his retreating men, and had counted the battle lost. Rushing up to Jackson, who stood coolly awaiting the oncoming and victorious forces of the North, he exclaimed in despair, "*General, they are beating us back.*" "*Sir,*" quietly responded Jackson, "*we will give them the bayonet.*" The effect of his words was electrical. Bee galloped back to his men shouting, "*Look, there is Jackson, standing like a stone wall! Let us determine to die here and we will conquer!*" Bee's men rallied and formed on the right of Jackson. Here they were joined by COLONEL WADE HAMPTON. The long glittering line of bayonets checked the wave of battle and turned it back, and when the arrival of reinforcements under Smith decided the day for the Confederates, victory had been snatched from defeat, and STONEWALL JACKSON'S career, in all its invincibility, had begun.

forces was followed by a panic, and, utterly demoralized, the army that had set out to capture Richmond, abandoned all munitions and accoutrements, and hastily retreated to Washington.

QUESTIONS.

What call was issued by Lincoln? Why? What Governors complied? What Governors did not? What was the direct cause of the Civil War? What bearing had the slavery and tariff agitations upon this cause? What States now joined the Confederacy? Why? What States were prevented from doing so? What became the Confederate capital? How were the Northern and Southern people divided in opinion as to what was right? What idea of governmental loyalty prevailed in the South? North? How did this difference come to exist? What address expressed the conviction of the South? What do you know of Robert E. Lee? George H. Thomas? Where did Federal troops assemble in response to Lincoln's call? What preparations were made by the Confederates? What three successes had Union troops in Western Virginia? What do you know of the battle of Bull Run? "Stonewall" Jackson?

CHAPTER III.

Early Battles in the West.

The result of the battle of Bull Run filled the South with great exultation, and its people reposed for some time in fancied security, fully believing that Southern valor was invincible Upon the North the effect was altogether differ-



GENERAL E. KIRBY SMITH.
(CONFEDERATE).



GENERAL A. P. HILL.
(CONFEDERATE).



GENERAL FITZHUGH LEE.
(CONFEDERATE).



GENERAL WADE HAMPTON.
(CONFEDERATE).

ent. The people there were brought to a sudden realization that the conflict precipitated upon the country was to be one of great magnitude. All the resources of the Federal Government were now brought into activity. Thousands of men and millions of money were voted by Congress, and there was soon assembled, equipped and organized, at Washington, one of the largest armies of modern times.

Operations in the Southwest.

Shortly after the battle of Bull Run GENERAL H. H. SIBLEY was commissioned to repair to Texas, raise a brigade of troops and proceed to the conquest of New Mexico. With three regiments he set out from San Antonio, and by way of the Rio Grande valley arrived at the scene of his operations after having performed a memorable march. Battles were fought with the Union forces already in possession of the territory at Valverde (February 21, 1862), Glorietta (March 27), and Peratta (April 23), in all of which the Texans displayed their proverbial valor. To hold the country, however, was found to be impracticable and the men of "Sibley's Brigade" returned to take part in other and more important scenes.

This army consisted of more than one hundred and fifty thousand men, and General George B. McClellan, a man beloved by his whole army, and one of the most skillful military organizers upon the Union side, was placed in command. A number of months elapsed before it began active operations, and in the meanwhile important events were happening in the West.

Missouri had been held in the Union chiefly through the decision and energy of CAPTAIN LYON. The Missouri State troops, in sympathy with the South, were compelled to retreat to the southwestern part of the State, not without having won a victory over the Federal GENERAL SIGEL, at CARTHAGE (July 5, 1861). Here, under their commander, GENERAL STERLING PRICE, they were soon joined by reinforcements from Arkansas, under GENERALS BEN MCCULLOCH and N. B. PEARCE. Lyon—now General—advancing with an army, attacked the combined forces at WILSON'S CREEK, near Springfield, Mo. (August 10, 1861), but was killed in the action and his army defeated. That part of the combined Confederate forces consisting of Missourians, then advanced upon LEXINGTON and compelled the Federal COL. MULLIGAN to surrender the place with a great quantity of stores and munitions of war (September 20).



GEN. H. H. SIBLEY. (CONFEDERATE).



GEN. STERLING PRICE. (CONFEDERATE).

In its preparations to resist invasion, the Confederate Government entrusted the Western defenses of the Confederacy to GENERAL ALBERT SIDNEY JOHNSTON, an experienced officer and one of the ablest soldiers of his time. Johnston made such a disposition of his forces as to establish east of the Mississippi a line of defense whose principal points were Columbus, Ky., Forts Henry and Donelson, Tenn., Bowling Green and Cumberland Gap, Ky.; while GENERAL EARL VAN DORN was placed in command west of the Mississippi. Powerful Federal armies were organized under GENERALS H. W. HALLECK and D. C. BUELL. In all, these forces numbered more than two hundred thousand men. The people of the South were slow to realize the necessity of preparing to resist the threatened invasion from the Northwest, and Johnston, with but few men and limited supplies at his disposal, was unable to hold his line intact.



GEN. EARL VAN DORN, (CONFEDERATE).

Halleck, from his headquarters at St. Louis, directed a part of his forces, under GENERAL CURTIS, to Southern Missouri to operate against Van Dorn. The remainder were collected at Cairo, Ill., under GENERAL ULYSSES S. GRANT, and at Paducah, Ky., under GENERAL C. F. SMITH. Buell's forces were assembled at various points in Eastern Kentucky.

To resist Curtis, Van Dorn gathered the forces of Price and McCulloch, and was joined by GENERAL ALBERT PIKE with several regiments of Indians, whom he had succeeded in winning to the cause of the Confederacy in the Indian Territory. The combined forces attacked Curtis at Elkhorn Tavern, near Bentonville, in Northwestern Arkansas, and the battle that took place is known as PEA RIDGE (March



GEN. ALBERT PIKE. (CONFEDERATE).

5-8). A part of the attacking forces was routed with the loss of two of the bravest officers on the Confederate side—McCulloch and McIntosh. The remainder maintained the action with energy, but with the defeat of their comrades were compelled to fall back.

General Leonidas Polk, in command of Johnston's forces at Columbus, established a camp across the river at Belmont, Mo. General Grant descending the river from Cairo landed and attacked this camp, but reinforcements sent by Polk crossed the river and drove him back to his gunboats (November 7, 1861). Grant's next operations, however, were more successful. Uniting forces with General Smith, he, with the aid of a powerful fleet of gunboats under Commodore Foote, obtained possession of the Confederate strongholds of Fort Henry (February 6) and Fort Donelson (February 16).



GEN. LEONIDAS POLK. (CONFEDERATE).

The loss of Fort Donelson was a severe blow to the South, for with it more than twelve thousand men were forced to lay down their arms (February 16). In its capture General Grant first manifested the indomitable qualities that were destined to make him the greatest general on the Northern side. Meanwhile the Confederate forces in southeastern Kentucky, under Generals Crittenden and Zollicoffer, had been defeated by a part of Buell's forces under General George H. Thomas, near Mill Springs (January 19), General Zollicoffer losing his life in the action. The disasters of Fort Donelson and Mill Springs compelled Johnston to



GEN ALBERT SIDNEY JOHNSTON.
(CONFEDERATE).

fall back from Bowling Green and establish a new line of defense.

Upon the capture of Fort Donelson, Grant moved south up the Tennessee River as far as Pittsburg Landing, near the State line of Mississippi. Here Buell was ordered to join him. Johnston determined upon an attack before the two armies could unite, and to that end, by skillful generalship, concentrated the different divisions of his command under GENERALS Polk, HARDEE and BRECKINRIDGE, at Corinth, Miss., where he was joined by Generals Beauregard and BRAGG.

A part of Johnston's plan was the complete surprise of his antagonist. In this he was successful. Advancing quietly upon his unconscious foe, he fell upon the Federal camps, near SHILOH Church, about two miles from the Tennessee River (April 6), and although he was greatly outnumbered, and the resistance encountered was stubborn in the extreme, he forced the Federals back to the river before the day was over, capturing many prisoners and stores. But the victory was dearly won, for Johnston, while directing his men, received during the course of the day a wound to which in the heat of battle he gave little attention. An artery was severed, and before the extent of his injury was realized he had bled to death. The fall of Johnston largely determined subsequent events in the West.



BATTLE OF SHILOH.

On the night that the field was won, and while Grant lay under the protection of his gunboats, Buell's army arrived. With this heavy reinforcement the Federals were enabled to renew the engagement the next day, and win back the ground lost. The Confederates, now commanded by Beauregard, fell back to Corinth, where they were joined by reinforcements under Van Dorn and Price, who had crossed the Mississippi from Arkansas after having lost the battle of Pea Ridge.



GEN. W. J. HARDEE. (CONFEDERATE).

Halleck now arrived and assumed command of the Federal forces. Among his subordinate officers, besides Grant and Buell, were Sherman, Thomas, Sheridan, Pope, Rosecrans, Logan and McClernand. Beauregard, having but little more than fifty thousand men to encounter the one hundred thousand of his antagonist, deemed it best to withdraw from Corinth upon Halleck's approach.

A change of commanders now occurred on both sides. Halleck was called to Washington as commander-in-chief of the armies of the United States; Beauregard was compelled by ill-health to entrust the command of the Confederate army to Bragg. Both armies then divided, Buell and Thomas proceeding northeastward into Tennessee, while Grant and Rosecrans remained around Corinth. Bragg with his forces moved into Tennessee to operate against Buell. After Bragg's departure, Price was unsuccessfully attacked by Rosecrans (September 19) at IUKA, MISS., but retreated upon being apprised that Grant was approaching with large reinforcements. Van Dorn and Price then united forces and attacked Rosecrans at CORINTH, but were severely repulsed (October 3-4, 1862).



GENERAL JOSEPH H. WHEELER. CONFEDERATE CAVALRY LEADER.

Upon reaching Tennessee, Bragg proceeded northward into Kentucky with the evident design of reaching Louisville, defeating on the way a Federal force at MUMFORDSVILLE (September 17). He was soon joined by General E. Kirby Smith from East Tennessee, who, on his way, had won a victory at RICHMOND, KY. (August 30). Buell hastened to oppose him with an army that had been heavily reinforced, and the advance of both armies toward Louisville took the form of a foot race. Buell arrived first. Falling back, Bragg was overtaken at



GEN. P. G. T. BEAUREGARD. (CONFEDERATE).

PERRYVILLE (October 8). A severe engagement followed, but the Confederates, gaining a decided advantage, withdrew unmolested with the long wagon trains of spoils they had acquired.

QUESTIONS.

What effect had the battle of Bull Run upon the South? North? **What do you know of the equipment of McClellan's army?** Through whose energy was Missouri held in the Union? **What events led up to the battle of Wilson's Creek?** What were the results of this battle? When and by whom was Lexington taken? **What do you know of General Albert Sidney Johnston?** General Van Dorn? What was his western line of defense? What Union forces prepared to invade the South from the Northwest? Under whom? What do you know of General Curtis? Of the battle of Belmont? **Capture of Forts Henry and Donelson?** Battle of Mill Springs? **Shiloh?** Pittsburg Landing? Pea Ridge? What effect had the fall of Fort Donelson upon the Confederate line of defense? **What change did each army undergo after the capture of Corinth?** What do you know of the battle of Iuka? Corinth? **Bragg's march into Kentucky?** Kirby Smith's? **Battle of Perryville?** What cavalry leader rendered great assistance to Bragg?

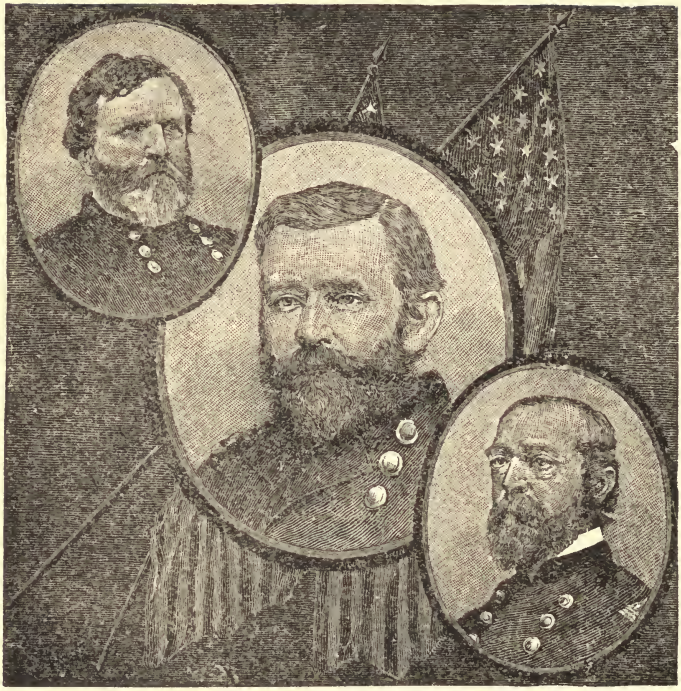
CHAPTER IV.

The War in Virginia.

The disasters that befell the Confederacy in the breaking of its western line of defense were followed by a series of achievements in Virginia, whose parallel, taking into consideration disparity of forces and numbers engaged, it is difficult to find. After the battle of Bull Run, General J. E. Johnston remained in charge of the Confederate forces near Manassas, while General "Stonewall" Jackson was sent to take command in the Virginia valley through which the Shenandoah River runs.



THE CONFEDERATE FLAG.

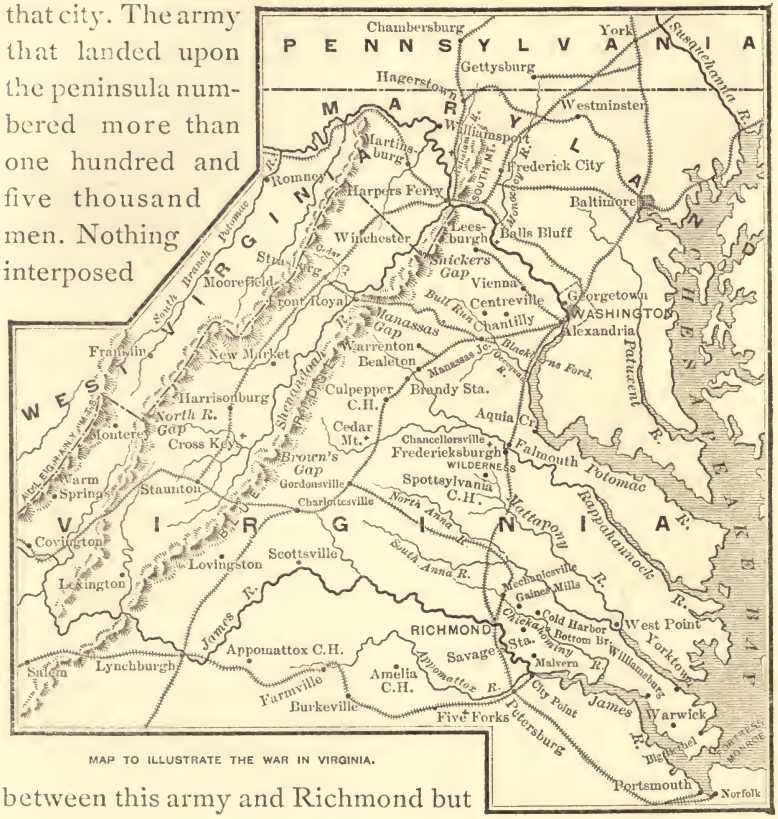


GENERALS THOMAS, GRANT AND MEADE.
(FEDERALS).

Both commanders soon found the military abilities for which they subsequently become famous taxed to their utmost. McClellan was organizing his army at Washington for a descent upon Richmond. Forces under General Banks were making preparations to enter the Shenandoah Valley from the North, while troops now under General Fremont were advancing from the victorious fields of Northwestern Virginia.

In place of marching upon Richmond directly and encountering Johnston's forces, McClellan determined to approach by way of the historic peninsula between the York and James Rivers, and for this purpose transferred his great army by boat to the scene of his proposed operations. That

Washington might not be endangered, General McDowell, with about forty thousand men, remained in defense of that city. The army that landed upon the peninsula numbered more than one hundred and five thousand men. Nothing interposed



MAP TO ILLUSTRATE THE WAR IN VIRGINIA.

between this army and Richmond but ten thousand men under General Magruder. Yet so skillfully were these few troops handled, and such a semblance of force was made, that the overcautious McClellan was delayed a month, calling in the meanwhile for reinforcements. This delay gave Johnston time to move his troops from Manassas to the peninsula. For the purpose of further delaying the invading army, resistance was offered at WILLIAMSBURG (May 5, 1862), and having accomplished their purpose, the Confederates fell back to Fair Oaks. To reach this

point McClellan was compelled to cross the branch of the James called the Chickahominy, and while his army was divided by its waters he was attacked, and the battle of SEVEN PINES, lasting two days, was fought (May 31-June 1). The advantage was with the Confederates the first day; with the Federals the second. During the battle Johnston received a wound that disabled him for some time, and the command of the army fell to General Robert E. Lee.



GEN. J. B. MAGRUDER. (CONFEDERATE).

Meanwhile Jackson had executed his brilliant "VALLEY CAMPAIGN," and had prevented McDowell from advancing on Richmond or reinforcing McClellan. He now arrived to take his place in Lee's army as the commander-in-chief's strong right arm. SEVEN DAYS of BATTLE now followed (June 25-July 1), during

The Valley Campaign.

Shortly after assuming command in the valley, Jackson hurled his little army of thirty-five hundred against seven thousand men of Banks' army under General Shields at Kernstown (March 23, 1862). Though unsuccessful, the bold aggressiveness of this movement awakened such consternation that reinforcements designed for McClellan's army on the Peninsula were retained for the defense of Washington. In moving to confront McClellan, Johnston had left a few troops under General Ewell to oppose any advance made by McDowell. A division of Fremont's forces under COLONELS MILROY and SCHENCK advancing from Western Virginia had taken post at a place called McDowell, situated without the valley, about forty miles west from Staunton. Here they were opposed by a few Confederate troops under General EDWARD JOHNSON. The genius of Jackson for making rapid and skillful military combinations now shone forth. Summoning Ewell to confront Banks, so as to conceal his own movements, he marched his men up the valley, with incredible rapidity, a distance of one hundred miles, joined forces with Johnson, drove Milroy and Schenck out of McDowell, chasing them for two days, and before Banks knew that the Confederate commander had disappeared from his front, he had performed another march of one hundred and twenty miles, and was back again. Joining forces with Ewell, he administered a crushing defeat to Banks at Front Royal (May 23), and pushed him northward to Winchester. Here Banks was again defeated (May 25), and after the battle took refuge beyond the Potomac. Active effort was now made to capture the intrepid Confederate leader. McDowell was ordered to cross the mountains into the valley, Banks and Fremont to advance, and thus by a convergence of columns, surround him. In all, the forces opposed numbered about sixty thousand. Jackson, however, was too quick for his

adversaries. Falling rapidly back from Banks, and burning the bridges over the Shenandoah, so that Fremont and McDowell's forces—the latter under Shields—could not unite, he reached a point within striking distance of each, and fell upon them at Cross Keys (June 8) and Port Republic (June 9) in rapid succession, gaining an additional victory in each instance. Before his bewildered antagonists awoke to a realization of what had happened, Jackson had slipped out of the valley in safety, with all the spoils of his victories, and was on his way to join Lee in the Seven Days' battles, having in three months marched four hundred miles, defeated four armies, captured thirty-five hundred prisoners, and with forces at no time exceeding seventeen thousand, had occupied the attention of sixty thousand.

which McClellan was hammered and driven from point to point, and only upon the last day at Malvern Hill, when under the shelter of his gunboats, did he succeed in checking the victorious advance of Lee. But the PENINSULA CAMPAIGN was a disastrous failure. McClellan's army returned to Washington, and Richmond was saved.

Halleck now arrived from the West and assumed charge of Federal military operations. Another army was organized, and under General John Pope took the field. An advance division of his army under Banks was met by a part of Lee's army under Jackson, at CEDAR MOUNTAIN, not far from Culpepper Courthouse. A rapid and severe engagement followed, in which the Confederates were victorious (August 9). Jackson then gained the rear of Pope's main army and captured many of his stores at Manassas. The Union commander was compelled to face about and return. A battle occurred in which Jackson held his own until General Longstreet, with another portion of Lee's army arrived, and though the combined forces numbered but forty-nine thousand, and Pope's army seventy



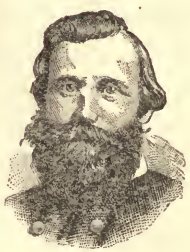
GEN. GEORGE B. MC CLELLAN. (FEDERAL).

thousand, the latter was forced from the field (August 30) by skillful and timely combinations on the part of the Confederates. This brought the third campaign against Richmond to an unsuccessful end.



GEN. JOHN POPE.
(FEDERAL).

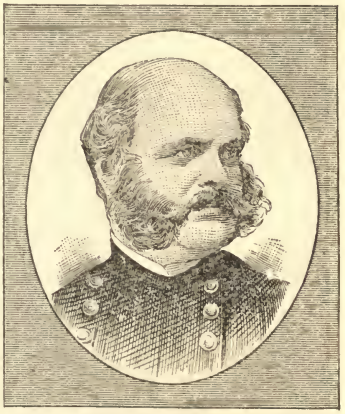
Lee now determined to transfer the war to Northern territory. His army advanced northward in three divisions, under Generals Jackson, LONGSTREET, and D. H. HILL, while the Confederate cavalry was led by General J. E. B. STUART, one of the most famous cavalry leaders of the war. McClellan was again placed in command of the Northern army, and he hastily made a disposition of his forces to meet the Confederate advance. Lee crossed the Potomac into Maryland, sending Jackson to HARPER'S FERRY, where a Federal force of thirteen thousand was stationed. Jackson laid siege to the place, and perfecting his plans, stormed and captured it, taking the whole garrison prisoners (September 15), General D. H. Hill at SOUTH MOUNTAIN (September 14) having delayed reinforcements from advancing to the assistance of the town sufficiently long to enable Jackson to consummate its capture.



GEN. J. E. B. STUART.
CONFEDERATE CAVALRY LEADER.

The opposing forces of Lee and McClellan met at ANTIETAM Creek, near Sharpsburg, Md. The attack came from the Federals and was stubbornly met. At one time Federal troops on the right were swept from the field, but were reinforced; at another the Confederate line was broken, but the

Washington Artillery of New Orleans and Boyce's South Carolina Battery defended the gap successfully (September 17). The next day Lee awaited another attack, but none came. To have remained longer would have enabled McClellan to gather fresh reinforcements; so on the day following Lee, recrossed the Potomac, and, unmolested, returned to Virginia. As a battle, Antietam was indecisive; as a campaign, Lee's march into Maryland was a failure.



GEN. AMBROSE E. BURNSIDE.
(FEDERAL).

McClellan was deprived of command for the second time, and under GENERAL AMBROSE E. BURNSIDE the heavily reinforced army of the North advanced for the fourth time to take Richmond. Lee and Burnside met at FREDRICKSBURG (December 13), and again the Union forces sustained a terrible defeat. Burnside was superseded by GENERAL JOSEPH HOOKER. With an army of one hundred and thirty thousand, the Union commander advanced, confident that the fate of his predecessors was not to be his. A part of his forces under GENERAL SEDGWICK crossed the Rappahanock at Fredricksburg to occupy the attention of Lee, stationed there with sixty thousand men to meet the Union advance. The main



GEN. JOSEPH HOOKER.
(FEDERAL).



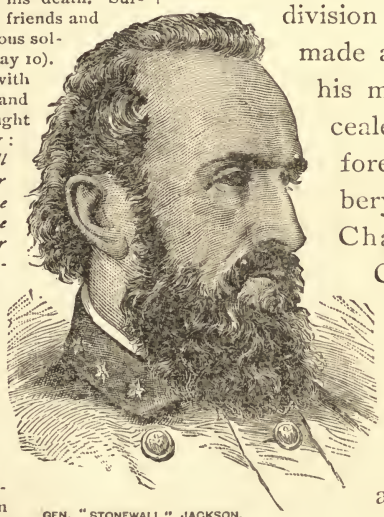
THE NIGHT BEFORE CHANCELLORSVILLE--LAST MEETING OF LEE AND JACKSON.

body crossed the Rappahanock some miles further up, and took position at a place called CHANCELLORSVILLE.

The design of Hooker was to surround and destroy Lee's army. Cavalry under General Stoneman was sent toward

Death of Stonewall Jackson.

Although the Confederate successes of the Chancellorsville campaign were brilliant in the extreme, they nevertheless proved dearly bought victories. Jackson's attack upon Hooker's right flank ended at twilight, and he rode forward with several members of his staff to reconnoitre. Returning, they were in the gloom mistaken for Federal cavalry, and a body of Confederate soldiers fired upon the returning party. Jackson received a wound that directly afterwards hastened his death. Surrounded by weeping friends and relatives, the illustrious soldier passed away (May 10). His thoughts were with his men to the last, and in his delirium he fought his battles anew: "*Order A. P. Hill to prepare for action.*" "*Pass the infantry to the front!*" "*Tell Major Hawks to send forward provisions for the men!*" issued from his lips at intervals. "*Let us cross over the river and rest under the shade of the trees!*" were the last words he uttered before he himself crossed the dark river that separates this life from the beyond. His loss was irreparable to the Confederacy. A man of pure and spotless character, the North and South unite in honoring his memory. His life was given to the service of his State. As a teacher, he instructed her youth in her military institute at Lexington. As a patriot, he hastened to her defense at the first indication that she was to be attacked. As a devout Christian, he never failed to render to the Almighty the prayerful tribute of a strong and earnest nature, after every battle. As a general, he inspired unlimited confidence in the hearts of his men, and they had come to believe that where he was defeat could not be. As a military genius, he stands next to Lee.



GEN. "STONEWALL" JACKSON. (CONFEDERATE).

Gordonville to cut off its probable line of retreat. A daring plan, however, was conceived by Jackson, and its execution authorized by Lee. In place of attacking Fredricksburg, as the Union general confidently expected, Jackson with his division of the army, made a wide detour; his movements concealed by dense forests and shrubbery surrounding Chancellorsville. Coming upon the right flank of Hooker's army—the side furthest away from Fredricksburg—he fell upon General Howard, who commanded that part of the field. The surprise was complete. Nothing could stay the resistless energy with which the Confederate ranks emerged from the woods and advanced upon the Union works, and Howard was driven back in confusion. The

next day Lee, having left a small force to face Sedgwick, attacked Hooker in front and administered to him a crushing defeat. Sedgwick advancing, drove back the few troops opposed to him, but Lee, returning from his success at Chancellorsville, fell upon Sedgwick, and gained a third victory. This completed the rout of the whole Union army, causing them to retreat to the other side of the Rappahanock (May 3). This ended the fifth Union campaign against Richmond.

Lee now determined, for the second time, to carry the war into the North, and by advancing into Maryland and Pennsylvania cause the withdrawal of Hooker's army from the Rappahanock. Skillfully deceiving Hooker as to his intentions, he moved his army in three divisions, under Generals EWELL, Longstreet and A. P. HILL, to the Shenandoah Valley, and proceeded northward into Pennsylvania, taking possession of Chambersburg and York. Philadelphia, Harrisburg and Washington were thus threatened, and the Union forces, now commanded by GENERAL GEORGE G. MEADE, lost no time in hastening from the Rappahanock to the new scene of operations, being reinforced by Pennsylvania militia.



GEN. RICHARD S. EWELL. (CONFEDERATE).

A battle, lasting three days, was fought at GETTYSBURG (July 1, 2, 3). Strongly posted upon a line of hills called Cemetery Ridge, Meade awaited the Confederate attack. On the first day the forces of Ewell and Hill gained a decided advantage, but waited until Longstreet should arrive before following it up. Meade, in the meanwhile, succeeded in concentrating his whole strength. The second day's attack resulted in the Confederates gaining a number of temporary successes, and encouraged them to make a supreme effort upon the day following (July 3).

The plan of attack upon this day was to pierce the center of the Union lines. To do this an open space, three-quarters of a mile wide, had to be crossed, upon which the fire from



THE LAST CHARGE AT GETTYSBURG.

all the Federal artillery could be directed. The men selected for the purpose, numbering four thousand nine hundred, were commanded by GENERAL PICKETT, and were arranged

in three columns, led by GENERALS ARMISTEAD, KEMPER and GARNETT. Crossing the open space, unshaken by shot and shell that worked sad havoc to their ranks, they charged upon the Union lines with a gallantry that won the cheers of friends and the admiration of foes. Over the earthworks they poured only to find overwhelming numbers ready to receive them. A deadly fire was rained upon their rapidly thinning ranks. Garnett and Armistead fell dead, and Kemper, wounded. The charge was repulsed with terrible slaughter, as was that of GENERAL WILCOX, who, moving up to Pickett's support, attacked another part of the Federal lines. The brave fellows, having attempted the impossible, made their way back with many comrades missing, their only success that of furnishing to the world an example of man's heroism which has never been equaled.



GEN. GEORGE D. PICKETT. (CONFEDERATE).

The battle of Gettysburg ended with the third day. On the fourth, Lee waited in position for Meade to advance, but that general remained well satisfied with having repelled the attacks of his antagonist. The Confederates then proceeded to fall back to the Potomac, Meade following leisurely without venturing another battle, and the seat of war was again transferred to Virginia. Like his Maryland campaign, Lee's Pennsylvania invasion had met with failure. Henceforth his military operations were to be strictly defensive.

Lee at Gettysburg.

Never did Lee show the attributes of a great commander more unmistakably than when he rode out to meet the men returning from the memorable Gettysburg charge. "*All this will come right in the end. * * * All good men must rally. We want all good and true men just now,*" said he in his kindly tone as he rallied them. No shifting of the responsibility of failure was there with him as has been the case with other commanders on several occasions. To General Wilcox who rode up and almost sobbed as he told of the loss of almost all of his men, Lee held out his hand and said: "*Never mind, General, all this has been my fault. It is I who have lost this fight, and you must help me out of it the best way you can.*"

QUESTIONS.

Who held command at Manassas? Who commanded in the Shenandoah Valley? How did McClellan advance upon Richmond? What battles were fought during the "Peninsula Campaign"? After what battle did Lee take command of the Confederate army? Why? What do you know of the Seven Days' battles? Of Jackson's Valley Campaign? Of the second battle of Manassas? Cedar Mountain? What do you know of Lee's Maryland Campaign? Capture of Harper's Ferry? Battle of South Mountain? Antietam? What do you know of Burnside's campaign? Hooker's campaign? Battle of Chancellorsville? Jackson's flank movement? Repulse of Sedgwick? Death and character of Jackson? Lee's invasion of Pennsylvania? Why did Lee advance northward? What do you know of the battle of Gettysburg? Pickett's charge? How did Lee show the attributes of a great commander? Where was the war transferred after the battle?

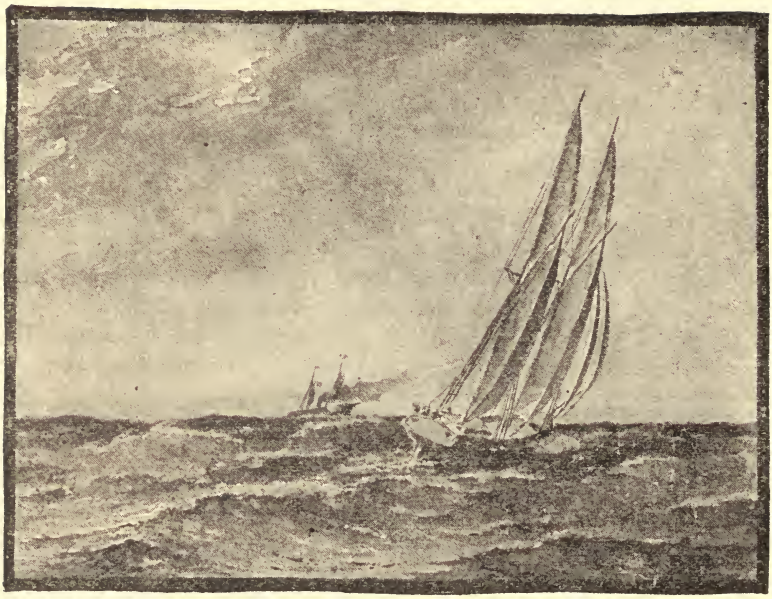
CHAPTER V.

Coast, River and Sea.

There are two ways in which a nation may be overcome. One is by conquering its standing armies; the other, by weakening or destroying its resources, so that these standing armies cannot be sustained. The first few battles made the fact manifest that the subjugation of the Confederacy was to be no small undertaking. Union military operations then began to be planned with more system.

One of the earliest of these plans to be developed was the blockading of all Southern ports. This blockade was established, first by proclamation of President Lincoln, afterwards by presence of Federal ships of war along the Southern ports. A second of these plans was the opening of the Mississippi to Federal control, thereby dividing the Confederacy and rendering difficult the exchange of aid, encouragement, and supplies between the eastern and far western sections.

At first the blockading vessels were stationed outside the entrances to the principal harbors, or were made to guard the coast from point to point. The vigilance of these was



RUNNING THE BLOCKADE.

often evaded, however, by swift little vessels that would slip out of harbor and speed off before the wind, unperceived until too late for attempt at capture to be made.

To render the blockade more efficient it was determined to gain possession of the harbors themselves. As many of these were defended by forts, a number of coast operations were undertaken. The forts at Hatteras Inlet, a commanding entrance to Pimlico Sound, N. C., were taken by naval

The Blockade and What It Teaches.

The blockade demonstrated in a forcible manner that the main strength of a nation consists in diversified industries and development of resources. The South had for years purchased every necessary, convenience, and luxury with the millions of bales of cotton shipped annually abroad. Now that the shipment had ceased, its principal source of wealth was destroyed. As importation of foreign commodities became more and more restricted, articles once looked upon as necessities became luxuries. Inconvenience, in time, became positive suffering; and this suffering was far reaching in its extent. The men of the Southern armies received scantier and scantier supplies of food, clothing, and medicines, and went upon the last battle-fields of the war gaunt and in tatters, sustained only by a spirit that drew forth admiration from every generous foe.

and land forces under COMMODORE STRINGHAM and GENERAL BENJAMIN F. BUTLER (August 29, 1861), and Roanoke Island, lying between North Carolina's two principal sounds was captured by COMMODORE GOLDSBOROUGH and General Burnside (February 8, 1862).



GEN. PHIL. H. SHERIDAN. (FEDERAL).

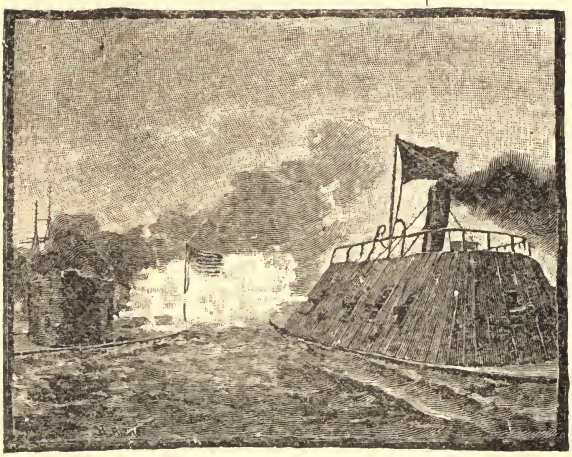
Shortly after the capture of Fort Hatteras, COMMODORE DU PONT and GENERAL THOMAS W. SHERMAN, overcoming gallant opposition, gained possession of the harbor of Port Royal, S. C. (November 7), from which point much of the coast between Charleston and Savannah was controlled by the Unionists. Fort Pulaski, defending the latter city, fell April 11, 1862; but repeated and long-continued attempts upon Fort Sumter, defending the former, failed; as did also an attack upon Fort McRae, in Pensacola Harbor (November 22-23, 1861).

To open the Mississippi, Union operations were instituted from two different directions. The first of these was in the upper portion of the river. When Grant was ascending the Tennessee River upon his Shiloh campaign, General Pope, with a fleet of gunboats, was descending the Mississippi. Upon Island No. 10, opposite New Madrid, Mo., the Confederates had strongly entrenched themselves. Here Pope encountered his first opposition, but succeeded in carrying the Confederate works (April 7, 1862), manifesting such military skill in the undertaking that he was called to the command of the Union army in Virginia; but his good fortune lasted only until the second Bull Run battle.

By the fall of Island No. 10 the Federal gunboats were enabled to proceed further. Opposition was encountered at Fort Pillow, upon the first Chickasaw Bluff, and Confederate gunboats endeavored without success to impede their course. Pushing on, they reached Memphis, which surrendered (May 30). The Federals soon held uninterrupted possession of the river as far south as Vicksburg, the strongest and best defended point on the river.

The Monitor and the Virginia.

The presence of armed vessels along the coast caused the Confederates to devise heavy iron-plated vessels called rams. The most celebrated of these was constructed out of the *Merrimac*, a Federal frigate that the Confederates had obtained on taking possession of the Norfolk Navy Yard. After altering her to suit their purpose she was named the *Virginia*. Under Captain Buchanan this vessel steamed out into Hampton Roads, and attacked the Federal fleet there stationed (March 8, 1862). The guns of the fleet had no effect upon her, and she soon destroyed two of the principal ships opposed to her—the *Cumberland* and the *Congress*. The next day she proceeded to renew the battle, but in the night there had arrived from New York a vessel of novel construction called the *Monitor*, designed by Captain John Ericsson. She, too, was constructed of iron, sat low in the water, and had upon her deck a revolving turret, in which her guns were located. One of the most remarkable battles of naval history ensued (March 9). The engagement was indecisive, and the Virginia withdrew up the river.



BATTLE BETWEEN THE VIRGINIA AND THE MONITOR.

Meanwhile operations had begun in another quarter. Commodore David G. Farragut had been entrusted with the undertaking of opening the lower Mississippi. Arriving at Ship Island, near the coast of Mississippi, he there landed a force of seventeen thousand men, who, under General Butler, had accompanied the expedition, and proceed-

ing with his naval armament alone, he began the ascent of the river.

Thirty miles above the mouth, upon opposite sides of the river, stood Forts Jackson and St. Philip. These forts had been rendered almost impregnable. Chains had been stretched across the river to prevent the passage of hostile fleets, and rafts of combustible materials had been prepared, which, when set afloat and fired, were to drift down the stream and endanger any shipping with which they might come in contact. Nevertheless, New Orleans itself, seventy-five miles above these forts, was inadequately supplied with men and means of defense, as the city had promptly responded to President Davis' call for troops, and many of her citizens were fighting upon the distant battlefields of Virginia and Tennessee.

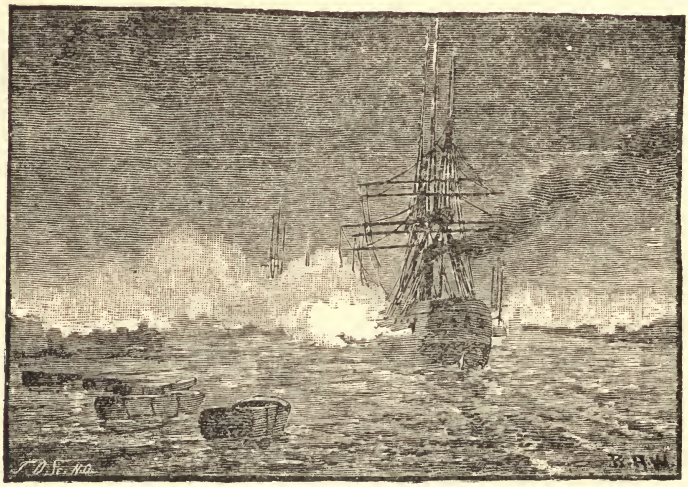


COMMODORE FARRAGUT. (FEDERAL).

Farragut bombarded the forts for a week, and finding it impossible to reduce them, determined upon a plan, the boldness and success of which place him among the greatest naval commanders of history. The Confederate harbor defense fleet, consisted of few vessels, poorly equipped for battle, but the fire from the forts was formidable. This fire Farragut determined to brave. Selecting a dark night for the purpose, he had the chains cut, and forming his vessels in line of battle, he led them up the river.

His intentions were soon discovered, and shot and shell from fort and fleet soon poured upon him. Encountering the ramming attacks of the boldest and best prepared of the

Confederate vessels, as well as the messengers of fiery destruction that were sent drifting down upon him, he forced his way up the river, making the passage in safety. Upon his arrival before New Orleans, the city surrendered (April 25, 1862), and shortly after, the forts. Farragut ascended the river until he met the gunboats from above. Soon there were but two points—Vicksburg, Miss., and Port Hudson, La.—retained in possession of the Confederates.



RUNNING THE FIRE OF THE FORTS.

Butler arrived and took military possession of New Orleans, but was soon replaced (December 17, 1862), by Banks, a general singularly unfortunate in the number and extent of reverses encountered by him during the war. Instances of these reverses were given in his several endeavors to extend Union conquest into Texas.

The Texas coast had for some time been blockaded by the West Gulf Blockading Squadron, and through the efforts of Farragut the three important ports of Corpus Christi, Galveston and Sabine Pass had passed under Federal con-



GEN. W. T. SHERMAN.
(FEDERAL).



GEN. W. S. ROSECRANS.
(FEDERAL).

trol. But the Confederate General, J. B. Magruder, was placed in command of the department, and his energy made itself felt. The Federal land and naval forces at Galveston were attacked by him with such success that one of the Union vessels was destroyed, another—the *Harriet Lane*—captured, the garrison forced to surrender, and an abandonment of the blockade compelled for a time (January 1, 1863). Shortly after this Confederate success, two cotton-clad, steamers darted out of Sabine Lake and captured two of the Federal blockading vessels—the *Morning Light* and the *Velocity*—stationed

Fall of Vicksburg and Port Hudson.

The opening of the Mississippi was completed by the capture of Vicksburg and Port Hudson by land forces. The campaign against the former place was planned by Grant shortly after the battles of Iuka and Corinth. General Sherman was to proceed from Memphis, and General Grant from Holly Springs. Grant, having set out, was soon obliged to return to Holly Springs in consequence of the capture by Van Dorn of the supplies left there. Sherman, reaching the vicinity of Vicksburg attacked the Confederate forces under General Stephen D. Lee at Chickasaw Bayou (Dec. 29, 1862), but was repulsed. Grant then crossed his troops over the Mississippi, and proceeding down the west bank, reached a point opposite the city. Here is to be found one of the sharp bends peculiar to the river, and across the narrow tongue of land he attempted to cut a canal, but failed. Proceeding down further, while the gunboats coöperating with him, ran the fire of the Confederate batteries (April 16, 1863), he crossed to the east side, some distance below, and advanced northward. Opposition was

outside the Pass (June 21).

Banks' first attempt against Texas was to send General Franklin by sea with five thousand men to Sabine Pass. Here they were to effect a landing, march upon Beaumont and Houston, and complete the conquest of the State. Sabine Pass was defended by a fort of primitive construction, in which was posted a company of forty-two men under LIEUTENANTS R. W. DOWLING and N. H. SMITH. The attack resulted in a most flattering victory for the Confederates. Two vessels of the attacking fleet were disabled by well-directed fire from the fort, and the remainder retired (September 8, 1863). With the abandoned vessels there fell into the hands of the Confederates a number of guns, much ammunition and one hundred and fifty prisoners.



GEN. N. P. BANKS. (FEDERAL).

overcome at Port Gibson (May 1), and the Confederates were compelled to evacuate Grand Gulf also. A Confederate force was defeated at Raymond (May 12), and General J. E. Johnston, advancing to the assistance of Vicksburg, was met and repulsed at Jackson (May 14), the city falling into the hands of the Unionists. GENERAL J. C. PEMBERTON had been entrusted with the defense of Vicksburg. Grant, immediately after his victory at Jackson, forced him back from Champion Hills (May 16), and, on the next day, from the Black River Bridge, compelling him to take refuge behind the fortifications of the city. All Union assaults upon these fortifications were repulsed, and finally Grant settled down to a siege of the place. For forty-seven days the siege of Vicksburg continued; the garrison and the people of that historic city, shut in from the outside world, endured all the horrors of starvation and terrors of bombardment. At length the surrender was made, and on July 4, 1863, the day after the last charge at Gettysburg, the city, with thirty thousand prisoners, was yielded up to Grant.

Port Hudson was not long in following. It had been making a similar defense against the besieging army of Banks, and July 8 it was also surrendered.

At the beginning of the war neither North nor South possessed ships sufficient to undertake extensive naval operations. Merchant vessels were at first purchased or pressed into service. The developed industries and resources of the North enabled it to place fleets of war upon

the sea with great rapidity. The South was greatly retarded by the limited manufacturing facilities at its disposal, and when the blockade rendered intercourse difficult with foreign countries, these facilities became fewer still.

American inventive talent was called into exercise on both sides. The Confederates gave to the world the principle of the iron-armored vessels exemplified in their celebrated rams; the Unionists that of the revolving turret, as employed by their famous monitors. These principles have revolutionized the construction of modern war vessels; for, until their efficiency was demonstrated, ships were built of wood. Now, no modern ship of war of the first class is built without embodying both principles.

The establishment of the blockade compelled the Confederate Government to obtain or construct vessels abroad.

Red River Expedition.

After his failure at Sabine Pass, Banks next attempted to gain a foothold on the southwestern coast. He occupied Brazos Island (November 2) and Point Isabel (November 8), and captured Fort Esperanza, at the head of Matagorda Bay, (December 30). At this point he was ordered by the authorities at Washington to return to New Orleans and direct his further operations by way of the Red River, which would enable men and supplies to be transported to Northeast Texas with great facility. The Confederate department of Louisiana was commanded by GENERAL RICHARD TAYLOR, son of Zachary Taylor, twelfth president of the United States. Banks' forces to the number of thirty-one thousand, were encountered by Taylor at Sabine Cross Roads, near Mansfield (April 8, 1864), and the Union army was driven back to a place called Pleasant Hill, where another battle was fought (April 9), compelling Banks to abandon the campaign. Banks' boats were detained by low water, and would have fallen into the hands of the Confederates, had not the skill and ingenuity of COLONEL JOSEPH BAILEY devised a dam by which they were enabled to float down in safety.



GEN. RICHARD TAYLOR.
(CONFEDERATE)

The approach of these vessels to the American coast was extremely hazardous, owing to the fleets and squadrons there stationed; so they did little else than cruise in foreign waters, and engage in warfare against the United States by crippling its commerce. The most celebrated of these Confederate cruisers was the Alabama, built in England and commanded by ADMIRAL RAPHAEL SEMMES.



ADMIRAL RAPHAEL SEMMES.
(CONFEDERATE).

Semmes frequented the waters of many portions of the world, taking many prizes and making the name of the Alabama a terror to Federal commerce. His two principal engagements were with the United States war steamer *Hatteras* (1863) off the coast of Galveston, Texas, and with the *Kearsarge* off the coast of Cherbourg, France (June 19, 1864). The Hatteras was one of a fleet of five blockading vessels. Before engaging her in battle Semmes, enticed her beyond reach of the others, and in an engagement, in which both vessels were about equally matched, sank her in thirteen minutes.

In his conflict with the Kearsarge, Semmes was defeated and his vessel destroyed. He had sailed into the port of Cherbourg, France, for the purpose of refitting his vessel and landing his prisoners. The Kearsarge having appeared off the harbor, Semmes, with much spirit, made hasty preparations and steamed out to meet her. Here again the vessels were about equally matched; but the Kearsarge had been carefully armored by suspended iron chains, so skill-



THE ALABAMA SINKING THE HATTERAS.

fully concealed by thin planking, that Semmes, in his belief that his antagonist's vessel was wooden, like his own, was completely deceived. The Alabama's shots took no effect, and the Confederate vessel was sunk. Semmes and some of the crew were picked up and carried to England by an English yacht.

QUESTIONS.

In what two ways may a nation be overcome? What two plans were early instituted to weaken the Confederacy? **What was the object of each of these plans?** How was the blockade established? **What was the effect of the blockade on the South?** How was it evaded? By whom was Hatteras Inlet taken? Roanoke Island? Port Royal Harbor? What was the result of repeated attacks upon Fort Sumter? **What do you know of the Monitor and the Virginia? Capture of Island No. 10? Farragut's passage of the forts? Grant's campaigns against Vicksburg?** Fall of Port Hudson? Magruder's victory at Galveston? **Dowling's defense of Sabine Pass? Banks' Red River expedition?** What do you know of the naval equipments of North and South? What revolution in naval architecture followed the construction of the Virginia and Monitor? **Why were Confederate cruisers built abroad? What do you know of the Alabama?** Where and when was she finally overcome? What were the most important of her engagements?

SEARCH QUESTIONS.

What European nations recognized the Confederate States as "Belligerents"? What general was called "Fighting Joe"? Who called themselves "Lee's Miserables," and how did they obtain the name? What general dated a number of his letters from "Headquarters in the Saddle"? What general was called "the superb"?

CHAPTER VI.

Lights and Shadows of Appomattox.

After the battle of Perryville, Bragg had retired to Murfreesboro, Tenn., and here he was followed by the Union army now commanded by Rosecrans, who had superseded Buell. Near Stone's River, a few miles from MURFREESBORO, the Confederates were attacked (December 31, 1862), and a furious battle was fought, which continued the whole day. A part of the Union army was almost destroyed, but on the next day there was no fighting, and Rosecrans rallied his men. On the day after he renewed the battle with better success, forcing Bragg back as far as Chattanooga (January 2, 1863).



GEN. T. C. HINDMAN. (CONFEDERATE).



GEN. FREDERICK STEELE. (FEDERAL).

Arkansas Military Operations.

After the battle of Pea Ridge, Van Dorn and his men fell back to Des Arc. Here he received orders to join A. S. Johnston at Corinth, Miss., but arrived too late to take part in the battle of Shiloh. This left Arkansas almost defenseless, and the Federal GENERAL CURTIS soon advanced as far as Batesville (May 3, 1862). GENERAL T. C. HINDMAN, whose gallant conduct upon the field of Shiloh had won for himself promotion, was sent to oppose the Federal invasion, and so vigorously did he set to work that he soon had an efficient army of twenty thousand men organized, with which he compelled Curtis to retreat through the swamps to Helena. GENERAL T. H. HOLMES now assumed command of the Trans-Mississippi Department, with headquarters at Little Rock. Hindman was directed to concentrate his forces near Fort Smith, after which he was ordered to Little Rock to help organize the troops there assembled. In his absence his men encountered successfully the Federal GENERAL SALOMON at Newtonia (September 30), but fell back upon approach of heavy Federal reinforcements. Hindman was now directed to send ten thousand of his men to the assistance of Vicksburg. Before complying he determined to give battle to the Federal GENERAL BLUNT, who had then advanced as far as Fayetteville. In making the attack Hindman found he had two forces to contend with, and in attacking one under GENERAL HERRON, near PRAIRIE GROVE CHURCH, he was himself attacked by the other under Blunt, and was compelled to retire (October 7, 1862). The next Confederate reverse was the surrender of ARKANSAS POST to that part of Grant's army that descended from Memphis to the Vicks-

burg campaign (January 11, 1863). Later in the year Holmes made an unsuccessful assault upon Helena (July 4, 1863). The fall of Vicksburg enabled the Federals to reinforce this point, and the Federal GENERAL FREDERICK STEELE advanced upon Little Rock by way of De Vall's Bluff, on the White River. Little Rock was defended by General Price unsuccessfully (September 10, 1863), and as the Confederate forces were greatly weakened by the departure of a large body of Arkansas troops who, under GENERAL THOMAS J. CHURCHILL, was sent to Louisiana to co-operate with General Taylor in opposing Banks' Red River expedition, the Federals soon held possession of a large part of the State, which they retained until the close of the war.

Rosecrans continuing to advance, Bragg retreated farther, and having been reinforced by Longstreet from Virginia, he took a stand at CHICKAMAUGA CREEK, GA. In the battle that followed Longstreet pierced the Union lines, turned aside, and struck his antagonist on the flank. The Union forces were beaten, and the order was soon given to retreat. But in another part of the field, General Thomas stubbornly refused to comply with the order to fall back, and held his ground against every fierce assault until night, when he deliberately retired. This alone saved the army of Rosecrans from total destruction.



GEN. T. H. HOLMES. (CONFEDERATE).

The retreating forces were followed to Chattanooga, where they were soon besieged, the Confederates erecting fortifications upon MISSIONARY RIDGE and LOOKOUT MOUNTAIN, near by. The siege continued two months, and meanwhile Longstreet was dispatched to eastern Tennessee to operate against Burnside, whom he soon surrounded and besieged at KNOXVILLE.

Grant's great victory at Vicksburg had elevated him in the estimation of the Washington authorities, and he was placed in command of all the Union forces in the West, east of the Mississippi River. Taking command at Chattanooga, he drew to his assistance heavy reinforcements under Sherman and Hooker, and sallying out, assaulted and carried the Confederate works on Missionary Ridge and

Lookout Mountain (November 23, 24, 25), forcing Bragg to abandon the siege and retire to Dalton, Ga. Here Bragg was superseded by General J. E. Johnston. The retreat of Bragg caused Longstreet to abandon the siege of Knoxville, and cross the mountains into Virginia, where he rejoined Lee.

Grant was now appointed commander-in-chief of all the armies of the United States (March, 1864), and leaving Sherman in command in Tennessee, he proceeded to Virginia to begin his campaign against Lee. All the Union forces that had taken part in the Vicksburg, Murfreesboro and Knoxville operations were now concentrated, and with an army now numbering one hundred thousand, Sherman entered Georgia, where he was opposed by Johnston, whose reduced forces now numbered scarcely fifty thousand.

Invasion of Florida.

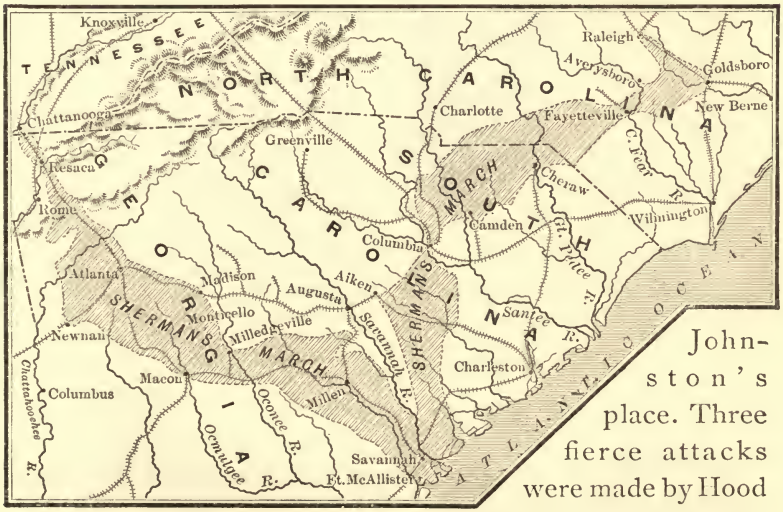
In the early part of the year (1864), for the double purpose of reclaiming Florida for the Union in time to participate in the Presidential election of that year, and to cut off an important source of Confederate stores and supplies, a force numbering seven thousand, under GENERAL TRUMAN SEYMOUR, departed from Port Royal, S. C.—a base of Federal operations established in the early part of the war—landed at Jacksonville (February 7) and proceeded inland to a point near Lake City. Forces under GENERAL JOSEPH FINNEGAN were collected to oppose him, and reinforcements arrived from Georgia, under GENERAL A. H. COLQUITT, increasing the number of Confederates to about five thousand four hundred. A battle was fought at Olustee or Ocean Pond (February 20), in which the Confederates were eminently successful, winning deserved praise by holding their lines intact after their ammunition was exhausted, and standing firm in the face of a galling fire until a supply was brought up from a distance, when they advanced and won the victory.

Both generals were skilled military tacticians. The country was mountainous, and the manœuvers of both armies were intricate. Sherman's superior numbers enabled him several times to reach around Johnston and compel him to rearrange his men in new lines of defense. During the course of these movements the battles of RESACA, DALLAS and KENNESAW MOUNTAIN were fought.



GEN. J. B. HOOD.
(CONFEDERATE).

Johnston was acting with great prudence, his object being to draw Sherman so far away from his base of supplies that a decisive battle might be fought with some probability of Confederate success. But the advance of Sherman into the heart of the Confederacy was awakening much apprehension, and it was determined to put J. B. Hood, a general transcendently brave, but who proved to be recklessly aggressive, in Johnston's place. Three fierce attacks were made by Hood upon Sherman near Atlanta (July 20, 22, 28), all of which were repulsed. In the last of these the Union forces suffered a great loss in the death of General McPherson. Atlanta could now be defended no longer, and it fell into the hands of the Federals (September 2, 1864).



MAP SHOWING AREA DEVASTATED BY SHERMAN'S TROOPS.

Hood now proceeded to put into execution a bold plan that he had conceived. This plan was to return to eastern Tennessee, crush the Union forces that had remained there, cross into Virginia, join forces with Lee, enabling him to repel Grant, after whose repulse the combined armies could march southward and overcome Sherman. Leaving a force of cavalry under the celebrated cavalry leader, General Joseph H. Wheeler, to harass Sherman, Hood turned back, the divisions of his army being led by Generals A. P. Stewart, B. F. Cheatham and Stephen D. Lee.



GEN. JAS. B. MC PHERSON. (FEDERAL).



GEN. JOHN H. MORGAN. CONFEDERATE CAVALRY LEADER.



GEN. N B FORREST. CONFEDERATE CAVALRY LEADER.

Reaching Tennessee, he was joined by a cavalry force under General N. B. Forrest. At Franklin a Union army, under General Schofield, was encountered and compelled to retire (November 30,

Sherman's March to the Sea.

With no army to oppose him, after Hood's departure, Sherman burned Atlanta, destroyed the railroads in the vicinity, cut loose from his base of supplies and set out upon his memorable march to the sea. His vast army advanced in four columns, whose foraging operations covered a strip of territory 60 miles in width. Before them went terror and consternation; behind them followed woe and desolation. The fierce avarice of the invaders despoiled women and children, the aged and the infirm. The homesteads of non-combatants felt the malice of the incendiary, and when the army had passed, there seemed little of future promise to retrieve present disaster. Sherman's army reached Savannah, captured Fort McAllister (December 13, 1864), its outer defense, and took possession of the city, turned northward into South Carolina, burning on the way its beautiful capital, Columbia, and arriving at Fayetteville, N. C., found Johnston—restored to command—at the head of a small force ready to oppose him. Engagements followed at Averysboro, N. C., (March 15, 1865), and Bentonville (March 18), making manifest the fact that the Confederates could accomplish little with their limited resources. At length news came of Lee's surrender, and Johnston and his men laid down their arms, (April 26).

Cavalry Leaders.

The Civil War was characterized by the number and brilliancy of achievements of cavalry leaders. The most famous on the Union side were KILPATRICK, PLEASANTON, SHERIDAN, STONEMAN, GRIERSON and others. Of the Confederates were J. E. B. Stuart, the prince of cavalry generals; FITZHUGH LEE and WADE HAMPTON, invaluable to General Lee in all the Virginia campaigns; TURNER ASHBY, who fell in the great "valley campaign"; JOSEPH H. WHEELER, whose services in the armies of Bragg, Johnston and Hood brought him the lustre of renown and promotion to one of the most exalted positions in the Confederate army; N. B. FORREST and JOHN MORGAN, famous for their raids in the West, the latter extending even beyond the Ohio, and many others.

1864), but in the action the Confederates lost one of the most gallant generals that had ever aided their cause—GENERAL PAT CLEBURNE. Hood continued to advance, and with thirty-seven thousand he laid bold siege to NASHVILLE, where Thomas had concentrated fifty-five thousand to oppose him. While Hood awaited reinforcements that had been promised him from beyond the Mississippi, Thomas perfected a plan of battle, sallied out, forced the Confederates in utter rout from their position, and but for the gallantry of STEPHEN D. LEE, RANDALL L. GIBSON, H. D. CLAYTON, E. C. WALTHALL and other Confederate generals who covered the retreat, would have destroyed Hood's army altogether (December 16).



GEN. PAT CLEBURNE. (CONFEDERATE).

Meanwhile Grant had been conducting the sixth campaign against Richmond. Lee's army consisting of about sixty-two thousand men was in position on the Rapidan River, near Fredricksburg. Grant's advance was made overland with a force of one hundred and twenty thousand. To coöperate with the Union commander-in-chief, forces under General Sigel entered the Shenandoah Valley, while thirty thousand men under General Butler were



GEN E. C. WALTHALL. (CONFEDERATE).



GEN. JUBAL A. EARLY.
(CONFEDERATE).

ordered to proceed against Richmond by way of the James River. These auxiliary movements, however, availed noth-



GEN. J. B. GORDON.
(CONFEDERATE).

ing. Butler was forced into the little peninsula of the James River at Bermuda Hundred by

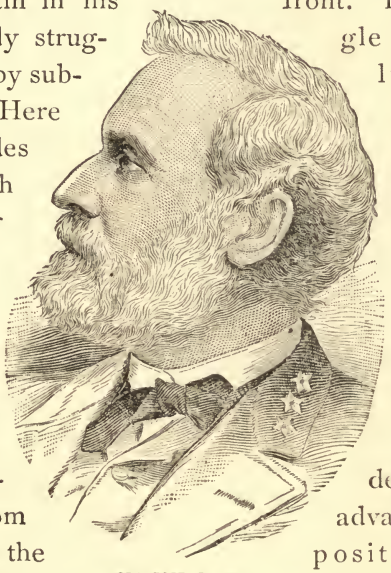
Valley Operations.

Sigel, proceeding down the valley, was met at NEW MARKET (May 15, 1864) by General Breckinridge, and routed. A remarkable feature of this battle was the presence upon the field of a corps of cadets from the Virginia Military Institute at Lexington. These cadets—mere boys—underwent the trials of a toilsome march, held unflinchingly one of the most important positions in the line of battle, left their young dead upon the field, to the proud sorrow of many a mother's heart, and deported themselves throughout with an air that became veterans, leaving the scenes of war to return to their studies with great reluctance.

Hunter and Averill replaced Sigel; and GENERALS JUBAL A. EARLY and JOHN B. GORDON were sent to reinforce Breckinridge. The Union forces were driven in confusion out of Lynchburg, to which place they had advanced (June 18), and Early, crossing the Potomac into Maryland, defeated GENERAL LEW WALLACE at MONOCACY (July 9). Returning to the valley he defeated another Union force under General Wright at Winchester, after which the Confederate commander invaded Pennsylvania, captured Chambersburg and spread such consternation for the safety of Washington that Grant was compelled to dispatch heavy forces under GENERAL SHERIDAN to intercept him. Sheridan and Early met at WINCHESTER (September 19), and again at FISHER'S HILL (September 22), both battles resulting to the advantage of the Union forces. But at CEDAR CREEK (October 19) Early attacked Sheridan's forces and administered to them a crushing defeat. The pursuit, however, was stayed, in order that the victors might take possession of the abundant and much needed stores that had been abandoned. This gave Sheridan, who was away at Winchester during the attack, time to reach the retreating forces, and, rallying his men, he returned and surprised the Confederates, depriving them of the principal fruits of their victory.

General Beauregard, and there kept inactive — "bottled up," as Grant expressed it.

In his advance upon Richmond, Grant crossed the Rapidan and encountered Lee in the WILDERNESS, the region of country in which the battle of Chancellorsville had been fought. The fighting was terrible, and continued for three days (May 5, 6, 7, 1864). Grant then tried to move by Lee's right flank, but at SPOTTSYLVANIA, C. H., found his skillful antagonist again in his front. Here again followed a bloody struggle (May 9-12), characterized by sublime heroism on both sides. Here occurred the thrilling episodes of the Death Angle, in which the Union forces under GENERAL WINFIELD S. HANCOCK, by a daring charge, captured an advance position of the Confederate lines, and only the personal courage of the Confederate commander-in-chief prevented them from advancing further. So fiercely was the position contested that a tree eighteen inches in diameter, standing behind the Confederate lines, was cut to the ground as with a woodman's ax by the bullets that flew thick and fast.



GEN. ROBT. E. LEE. (CONFEDERATE).

Grant again moved to the left in his endeavor to outflank Lee. These tactics were lengthening the opposing lines. Grant, with all necessary forces at his command, could well pursue this plan; but with Lee it was different. The Confederacy had been defending itself for four years. The elements of population, from which its soldiers were

drawn, had become exhausted, and the Southern armies had been growing smaller and smaller. The veterans that fell at Gettysburg were never replaced. The longer Lee's line of defense was made, the thinner it became.

The downfall of the Confederacy could only be effected by the destruction of Lee's army. To compass this destruction the Union commander could afford to sacrifice men, if, in the sacrifice, he could inflict a corresponding loss upon his antagonist. Crossing the Pamunkey River he twice fell upon Lee at COLD HARBOR, but met with a terrible repulse in each instance. With Grant, however, repulse was never demoralization. Reverses seemed but to strengthen tenacity of purpose. Moving his army around to the James River, he drew to him Butler's forces from Bermuda Hundred, and marched upon Petersburg. A siege was laid, continuing throughout the fall and winter (1864-'65). At one time, in order to break into the Confederate intrenchments, a mine which had been secretly dug under them



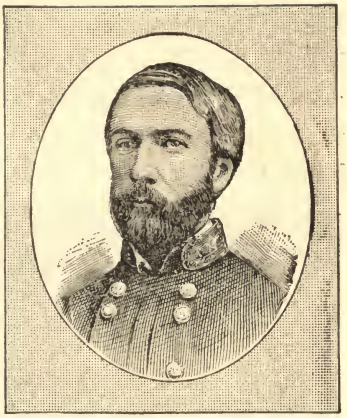
GEN. WINFIELD S. HANCOCK.
(FEDERAL).

Attack Upon Mobile.

While Grant's army lay around Petersburg, Commodore Farragut was conducting naval operations against Mobile, Ala. The bay upon which the city is situated, was defended by Fort Gaines and Fort Morgan. The Confederates had submerged a number of torpedoes in the bay, and in addition had constructed a powerful iron-clad called the *Tennessee*. Farragut forced his way into the bay, destroyed the *Tennessee* and captured the forts, but could not gain possession of the city, which heroically declined to surrender. Not until the last months of the war was Mobile captured, and only by superior land forces.



GEN JAMES LONGSTREET
(CONFEDERATE).



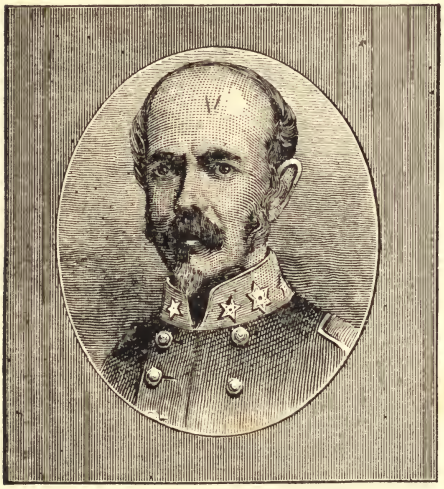
GEN D H HILL.
(CONFEDERATE).

by tunnelling from the Union lines, was exploded (July 30). The Union assaulting column, attempting to enter the breach immediately after, met with terrible disaster.

Grant's attacks now became incessant. All the country south of Petersburg fell into his hands by the end of the year. In the spring a severe engagement occurred at Five Forks (April 1, 1865), the Confederates losing heavily. The intrenchments around Petersburg were carried by assault the next day (April 2), the Confederates falling back. The Confederate capital, so long and gallantly defended, now fell (April 3), Grant having taken a year to effect its capture.

The Confederate army retired toward the southwest, closely pursued. At Appomattox C. H., it was decided to end the struggle, as further sacrifice of life was useless. What could the little remnant of an army, numbering scarcely twenty-nine thousand, do against four times its number? An honorable surrender was made, in conceding the terms of which Grant showed all the magnanimity of a great soldier (April 9th). There was nothing of bitterness mani-

fested between victors and vanquished with the ceasing of hostilities. Men of blue and men of gray came together around the same camp fire, the one sharing the rations of the other: in war, enemies—in peace, friends. The fight had been well fought. The tribute of respect that the brave always yield to their kind, was given and received in a spirit which honored all, robbing defeat of its stings, softening triumph from exultation into contentment.



GEN. JOS. E JOHNSTON.
(CONFEDERATE).

The issue as decided by the surrender of Lee's army was accepted in good faith, and the organized Confederate forces in various parts of the South, laid down their arms. General Johnston, in North Carolina, surrendered (April 26, 1865), General Taylor, in Alabama, General E. Kirby Smith, in Texas (May 26). The last fight of the war occurred at Brazos Santiago, Texas (May 13, 1865).

The South had built up one civilization; but all its old lines were now obliterated, and the men of the Southern armies were to return to face its ruins. From these ruins is arising another in full accord with new conditions—in the adaptation of itself to which, the South is again pressing onward. But the old civilization can never be forgotten. As long as the sons of the South bear its earlier traditions, its later memories, to heart, just so long

will there be a source—undefiled and pure—of patriotism, once local, now national, supplying inspiration to maintain a restored Union.

QUESTIONS.

Who succeeded Buell after the battle of Perryville? **What do you know of the battle of Murfreesboro? Chickamauga?** Siege of Chattanooga? Knoxville? **Bragg's repulse at Chattanooga?** By whom was Bragg succeeded? **What do you know of Arkansas Military Operations?** Battle of Pea Ridge? Steele's expedition against Little Rock? What do you know of the invasion of Florida in the early part of 1864? Battle of Olustee? To what position was Grant appointed after the battle of Chattanooga? Whom did he leave in command in Tennessee? **What do you know of Sherman's campaign against Johnston?** Against Hood? Of his march to the sea? **Of Hood's return to Tennessee?** What Union loss was sustained near Atlanta? Confederate loss at the battle of Franklin? What disaster befell Hood? How did Grant advance upon Richmond? What auxiliary movements were planned in connection with this advance? What were the results of each? **What do you know of the battle of New Market? Cedar Creek? Wilderness? Spottsylvania? Cold Harbor?** To what condition had the Confederate army been reduced? **Why?** What do you know of the siege of Petersburg? Attack upon Mobile? **Appomattox surrender?** How did the soldiers of opposing armies meet each other after the surrender? **What issue was decided when Lee's soldiers laid down their arms?**

SEARCH QUESTIONS.

What General was called the "Young Napoleon of the West"? "Old Pap"? "Marse Robert"? "The Rock of Chickamauga" "Black Jack"? What body of troops was called the "foot cavalry" and why? What eminent Union general fell at Gettysburg? What relation was General Robert E. Lee to Light Horse Harry? Where was General J. E. B. Stuart killed? General A. P. Hill? General Kearney? What was the "Swamp Angel"? What was Farragut's first naval battle? What Union generals in the Civil War subsequently became President? What was the "Anaconda plan" of President Lincoln? What celebrated Union general resigned the presidency of a Southern State Military Academy at the outbreak of the war? What vessel first unfurled the Confederate flag? Name four Confederate generals who became presidents of universities after the war. Where and what was Libby Prison? Camp Douglas? Where and how long was Jefferson Davis imprisoned? What eminent editor signed his bond? Why was Davis imprisoned? Was he ever tried? Why? What was the Sanitary Commission? What State of the Confederacy furnished most troops? Of the Union? How many men took part in the war, in round numbers? How many were killed?

TOPICAL OUTLINE.

PRINCIPAL BATTLES AND GENERALS OF THE CIVIL WAR.

UNION COMMANDERS AND DECISIVE VICTORIES IN ITALICS.

CONFEDERATE, IN THIS TYPE.

1861.	APRIL 13	FORT SUMTER (S. C.)	BEAUREGARD	*ANDERSON.*
	JULY 21	BULL RUN (Va.)	JOHNSTON (J. E.) / BEAUREGARD	*McDOWELL.*
	AUG. 10	WILSON'S CREEK (Mo.)	McCULLOCH / PRICE	*LYON.*
	SEPT. 20	LEXINGTON (Mo.)	PRICE	*MULLIGAN.*
	NOV. 7	BELMONT (Mo.)	POLK	*GRANT.*
1862.	*JAN. 19*	*MILL SPRINGS (KY.)*	CRITTENDEN	*THOMAS.*
	FEB. 16	*FORT DONELSON (TENN.)*	BUCKNER	*GRANT.*
	MARCH 5-8	*PEA RIDGE (ARK.)*	VAN DORN / PRICE	*CURTIS.*
	MARCH 9	MONITOR AND VIRGINIA	BUCHANAN	*WORDEN.*
	APRIL 6	SHILOH (Tenn.)	JOHNSTON (A. S.)	*GRANT.*
	APRIL 7	*PITTSBURG LANDING (TENN.)*	BEAUREGARD	*GRANT.* / *BUELL.*
	APRIL 25	*NEW ORLEANS (LA.)*	LOVELL	*FARRAGUT.*
	May 5	Williamsburg (Va.)	JOHNSTON (J. E.)	*McCLELLAN.*
	May 31	Seven Pines (Va.)	JOHNSTON (J. E.)	*McCLELLAN.*
	MAY / JUNE	VALLEY CAMPAIGN (Va.)	JACKSON	*BANKS.* / *MILROY.* / *SHIELDS.* / *FREMONT.*
	JUNE 25 / JULY 1	SEVEN DAYS' BATTLES (Va.)	LEE	*McCLELLAN.*
	AUG. 30	SECOND BULL RUN (Va.)	LEE	*POPE.*
	Sept. 17	Antietam (Md.)	LEE	*McCLELLAN.*
	SEPT. 19	*IUKA (MISS.)*	PRICE	*ROSECRANS.*
	OCT. 3-4	*CORINTH (MISS.)*	PRICE / VAN DORN	*ROSECRANS.*
	OCT. 8	PERRYVILLE (Ky.)	BRAGG	*BUELL.*
	DEC. 13	FREDERICKSBURG (Va.)	LEE	*BURNSIDE.*
	DEC. 31	*MURFREESBORO (TENN.)*	BRAGG	*ROSECRANS.*
1863.	JAN. 1	GALVESTON (Tex.)	MAGRUDER	*RENSHAW.*
	MAY 2-3	CHANCELLORSVILLE (Va.)	LEE	*HOOKER.*
	JULY 1-3	*GETTYSBURG (PA.)*	LEE	*MEADE.*
	JULY 4	*VICKSBURG (MISS.)*	PEMBERTON	*GRANT.*
	SEPT. 19-20	CHICKAMAUGA (Ga.)	BRAGG	*ROSECRANS.*
	NOV. 24-25	*CHATTANOOGA (TENN.)*	BRAGG	*GRANT.*
1864.	FEB. 20	OLUSTEE (Fla.)	FINNIGAN / COLQUITT	*SEYMOUR.*
	APRIL 8	MANSFIELD (La.)	TAYLOR	*BANKS.*
	MAY 5-7	WILDERNESS (Va.)	LEE	*GRANT.*
	MAY 8-18	SPOTTSYLVANIA, C. H. (Va.)	LEE	*GRANT.*
	May 14-15	Resaca (Ga.)	JOHNSTON (J. E.)	*SHERMAN.*
	May 25-28	Dallas (Ga.)	JOHNSTON (J. E.)	*SHERMAN.*
	JUNE 3	COLD HARBOR (Va.)	LEE	*GRANT.*
	JUNE 19	*ALABAMA AND KEARSARGE*	SEMMES	*WINSLOW.*
	June 27	Kennesaw Mountain (Ga.)	JOHNSTON (J. E.)	*SHERMAN.*
	JULY 20-28	*ATLANTA (GA.)*	HOOD	*SHERMAN.*
	MAY 15 / OCTOBER 1	VALLEY CAMPAIGNS (Va.)	BRECKINRIDGE	*SIGEL.*
			EARLY	*HUNTER.* / *WALLACE.* / *WRIGHT.* / *SHERIDAN.*
	NOV. 30	FRANKLIN (Tenn.)	HOOD	*SCHOFIELD.*
	DEC. 15-16	*NASHVILLE (TENN.)*	HOOD	*THOMAS.*
1865.	March 15	Averysboro (N. C.)	JOHNSTON (J. E.)	*SHERMAN.*
	March 18	Bentonville (N. C.)	JOHNSTON (J. E.)	*SHERMAN.*
	APRIL 1	*FIVE FORKS (VA.)*	LEE	*GRANT.*
	APRIL 2	*PETERSBURG (VA.)*	LEE	*GRANT.*
	APRIL 9	*APPOMATTOX (VA.)*	LEE	*GRANT.*

CHAPTER VII.

The Readmission of the Southern States.

While the Civil War was in progress a number of events connected with the political history of the country occurred, which we must now note. The first of these was a controversy with England occasioned by the seizure upon the high seas of JOHN SLIDELL and JAMES M. MASON, Confederate commissioners to Europe. These commissioners had taken passage upon the English steamer *Trent*, from which they were forcibly taken by the United States ship of war *San Jacinto* (November 8, 1861). The affair was regarded by England as an outrage upon her flag, and war was averted only by the release of the commissioners.

A controversy, based upon a violation of the Monroe Doctrine, also arose. While the attention of the American people was distracted by the war, occasion was taken by France to gain a foothold in Mexico. A French army was sent over, which, with the coöperation of some Mexican revolutionists, instituted a monarchical form of government, with MAXIMILLIAN, Grand Duke of Austria, as Emperor. After the war the United States insisted upon French non-interference with Mexican affairs, and in compliance with this insistance, the troops were withdrawn. Maximillian rashly remained, believing that he had made himself an acceptable ruler to the Mexicans; but with the withdrawal of his support, his subjects rose in revolt, took him prisoner, and executed him (June 19, 1867).

The war had settled the question of slavery, and it was never to arise again as a disturbing element in the politics of the country. President Lincoln had issued, as a war measure, his celebrated EMANCIPATION PROCLAMATION (January 1, 1863), declaring the freedom of those who had once been

slaves. This act of the President was subsequently ratified and made a part of the Constitution by adoption of the Thirteenth Amendment (December 18, 1865). Two States had been admitted during the war. These were West Virginia (1863) and Nevada (1864). The people of the northwestern counties of Virginia had remained loyal to the Union, and these counties, coming under Federal control, established for themselves a separate State Government.

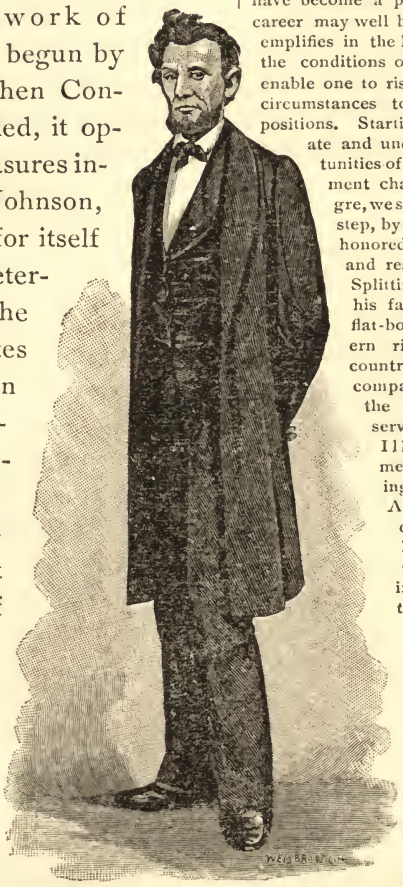


ANDREW JOHNSON.

Lincoln was elected to a second term (1864), with ANDREW JOHNSON, of Tennessee, Vice-President, the unsuccessful opposition candidates being George B. McClellan and GEORGE H. PENDLETON. The end of the war was received with great rejoicing, and a speedy return to peace was promised. But this rejoicing was of short duration, for but six days after the Appomattox surrender, the nation was called upon to mourn an irreparable loss in the death by violence of its Chief Executive (April 15, 1865). The deed which led to his death occurred in a Washington theatre, where the President was peacefully enjoying the play, and was committed by JOHN WILKES BOOTH, an actor. The assassin sought to escape, but was pursued, caught and put to death, as were several others implicated in the crime.

As subsequent events proved, the death of Lincoln was a calamity to the South. His plan was to restore the Union by peacefully extending the civil authority of the Federal Government over the Southern States. His reëlection had given him a stronger hold upon the government, and its policy was under his perfect control. This control did not pass to the hands of the Vice-President who was called to succeed him. Johnson was a Southern man—one of the few

prominent Southern politicians that had unswervingly adhered to the Union. He desired to take up the work of restoration as begun by Lincoln. When Congress assembled, it opposed the measures instituted by Johnson, and claimed for itself the right of determining how the Southern States should again become members of the Union. There arose therefore a contest as to which of two policies should have precedence. The PRESIDENT'S POLICY was to regard the Southern States as never having been out of the Union, inasmuch as the right to secede had never been conceded. The POLICY OF CONGRESS was to regard them as having sepa-



ABRAHAM LINCOLN

Abraham Lincoln.

Abraham Lincoln will ever hold a foremost place among those eminent Americans whose names and lives have become a part of history. His career may well be studied, for it exemplifies in the highest degree how the conditions of American life enable one to rise from the humblest circumstances to the most exalted positions. Starting out in life illiterate and uneducated, the opportunities of his frontier environment characteristically meagre, we see him rising, step by step, by his own efforts, to an honored place in the esteem and respect of the nation. Splitting the rails to fence his father's frontier farm, flat-boating down the Western rivers, clerking in a country store, leading a company of volunteers in the Black Hawk War, serving as member of the Illinois Legislature, meeting and vanquishing the great Stephen A. Douglas in public debate, representing his State as one of its Congressmen, directing the destinies of the Union at the most critical period of its history—these were the significant steps of a career typically American. Called to the helm of government when all was turmoil and uncertainty, the ambitions of a politician gave place to the strong, earnest devotion of a patriot. His election had placed the Union in danger, and from this danger he labored earnestly, patiently, sorrowfully to save it. Self-aggrandizement and love of power formed no part of his motives. He adhered to the right "as God gives us to see the right." Amidst the passions and prejudices of the mighty conflict, in which he was the

central figure, he was frequently misunderstood, and often but faintly encouraged. As time passed, all the strength and singleness of purpose in his character made themselves felt with quiet insistence; and now that these prejudices and passions have passed away, we contemplate, in all their simplicity, the elements of greatness that make his life and character heroic. His death was a calamity to the South; for, inasmuch as the restoration of the Union was the prayer of his heart, his expressed purpose was to bring about this restoration in a way that would occasion but few bitter memories, and "achieve and cherish a lasting peace among ourselves."

rated themselves and thereby forfeited all rights as members of the Union. It insisted on compliance with its conditions before readmitting them.

The President believed it to be only necessary for each Southern State to rescind its Ordinance of Secession, renew its obligations to the Constitution, and accept the provisions of the Thirteenth Amendment. This the Southern States did, many of them forming new State Constitutions, under which new State Governments were organized and representatives sent to Congress. But Congress met later in (1865), opposed the measures of the President, refused admission to the newly elected representatives from the Southern States, and formulated its RECONSTRUCTION POLICY in opposition to the one of Restoration decided upon by the President.

This policy not only provided for the reconstruction of the Union by considering that the South had been out of it, but for the forming of a political constituency in the Southern States different from that existing when the Union was first formed. This was finally accomplished by the adoption of the Fourteenth (1868) and Fifteenth (1870) Amendments to the Constitution; the former, conferring citizenship upon the negro and debarring many Southern whites from holding office under the government; the latter, making voters of those made citizens by the Fourteenth Amendment.

The President strenuously opposed these measures, holding that under the Constitution, the State alone could determine as to who should be its citizens, and that assumption of this power by Congress was usurpation. He used the veto repeatedly, but the advocates of these RADICAL measures had sufficient majority in both houses to overrule the President's

veto by the necessary two-thirds vote. Among the principal acts passed over the veto of the President, were the CIVIL RIGHTS BILL, enacted April 19, 1866, and the MILITARY ACT, which went in force March 2, 1867. The former preceded the adoption of the Fourteenth Amendment, which embodied most of its features; the latter divided the South into five military districts. Under military rule the Southern States adopted the new amendments, organized their local governments anew, and were readmitted to the Union. All but three had accepted the conditions imposed, by the year 1868, and participated in the presidential election of that year. Virginia, Mississippi and Texas were not readmitted until 1870.

During Johnson's administration Nebraska was admitted as a State (1867), and Alaska was purchased from Russia, for seven million two hundred thousand dollars (1867). The most important event, connected with Johnson's reconstruction controversy, was his impeachment by Congress. His sturdy opposition to the arbitrary measures of that body had incurred its hostility; and when in violation of the TENURE OF OFFICE ACT he removed EDWIN M. STANTON, the Secretary of War, charges were preferred against him for "high crimes and misdemeanors." He was tried before the the Senate, but was adjudged "not guilty" (May 16, 1868).

In the presidential election of 1868 the Republican candidates were, ULYSSES S. GRANT, and SCHUYLER COLFAX. The Democratic candidates were HORATIO SEYMOUR and FRANCIS P. BLAIR. Grant and Colfax were elected.

QUESTIONS.

What do you know of the "Trent affair"? French invasion of Mexico? What question was settled by the war? How was slavery abolished? What two States were admitted while the war was in progress? Why was Virginia divided? Who were the candidates in the election of 1864? What do you know of the death of Lincoln? Why was his death a calamity to the South? What differences were there between the "President's Policy" and the Reconstruction Policy of Congress? Which finally prevailed? What measures did President Johnson veto? What new class of voters was created by Constitutional amendments? What do you know of the Civil Rights Bill? Military Act? Fourteenth Amendment? Fifteenth Amendment? What three States were last to be readmitted? What do you know of the Alaska purchase? Impeachment of Johnson? When was Nebraska admitted? Who succeeded Johnson?

TOPICAL OUTLINE.

Showing Causes and Results of the CIVIL WAR; the Development of UNION; and the Significant Steps in the ABOLISHMENT OF SLAVERY.

CAUSES.

REMOTE

Sectional Differences in { Interest / Character / Thought } of people.

DEVELOPING

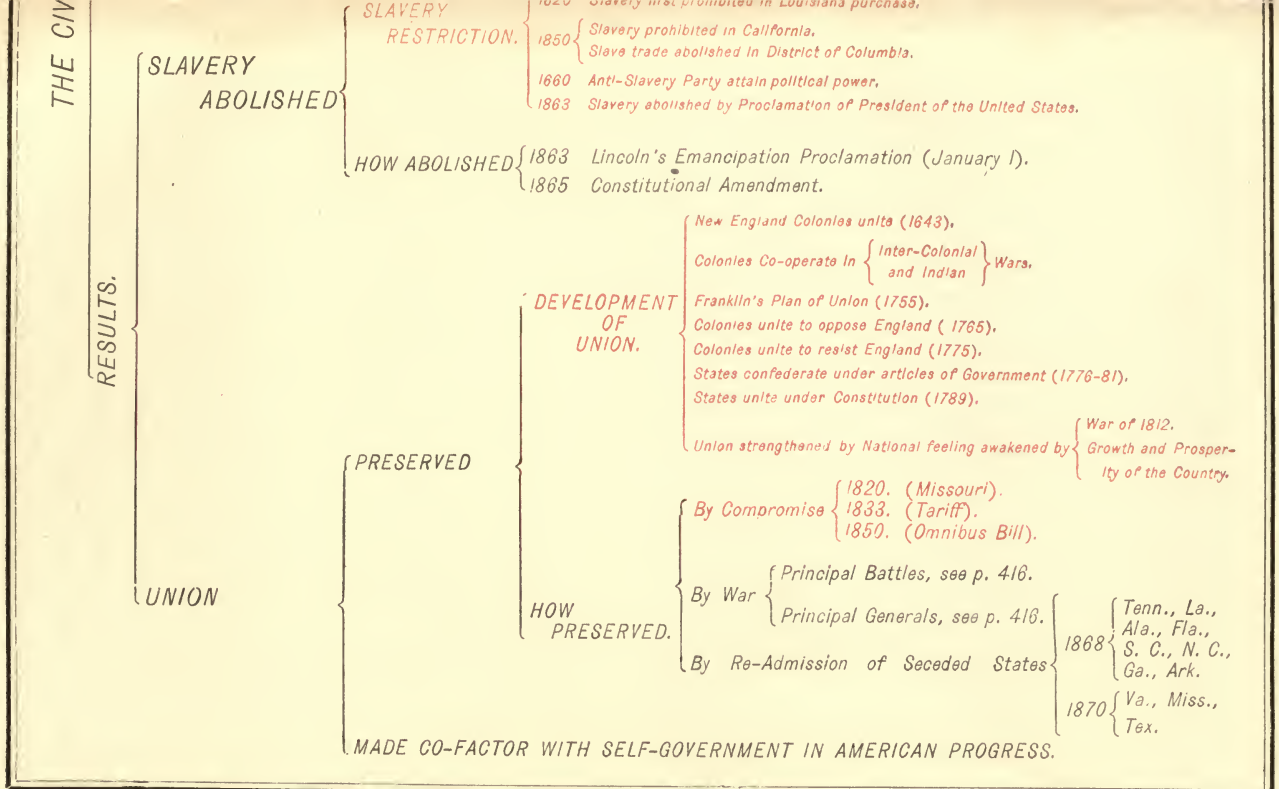
Sectional Antagonism Awakened by:

- Tariff Agitation
 - 1824 Protective Tariff.
 - 1828 High Tariff.
 - 1832 High Tariff.
 - 1833 Nullification Controversy.
- Slavery Agitation
 - 1790 Anti-Slavery Petition.
 - 1820 Missouri Compromise.
 - 1831 Abolition Society formed.
 - 1850 Omnibus Bill.
 - 1854 Kansas-Nebraska Bill.
 - 1855 Kansas Struggle.
 - 1857 Dred Scott Decision.
 - 1859 Brown's Raid.
- Differences of Constitutional Interpretation.
 - Nullification.
 - States Rights.
 - Secession.

IMMEDIATE

- Election of Lincoln.
- Secession of Southern States.
- Bombardment of Fort Sumter.
- Southern Resistance to Northern Invasion.

WAR.


THE CIVIL WAR.
RESULTS.
UNION
SLAVERY ABOLISHED
SLAVERY RESTRICTION.
1820 Slavery first prohibited in Louisiana purchase.
1850 Slavery prohibited in California.
Slave trade abolished in District of Columbia.
1860 Anti-Slavery Party attain political power.
1863 Slavery abolished by Proclamation of President of the United States.
HOW ABOLISHED
1863 Lincoln's Emancipation Proclamation (January 1).
1865 Constitutional Amendment.
PRESERVED
DEVELOPMENT OF UNION.
New England Colonies unite (1643).
Colonies Co-operate in Inter-Colonial and Indian Wars.
Franklin's Plan of Union (1755).
Colonies unite to oppose England (1765).
Colonies unite to resist England (1775).
States confederate under articles of Government (1776-81).
States unite under Constitution (1789).
Union strengthened by National feeling awakened by War of 1812. Growth and Prosperity of the Country.
HOW PRESERVED.
By Compromise 1820. (Missouri). 1833. (Tariff). 1850. (Omnibus Bill).
By War Principal Battles, see p. 416. Principal Generals, see p. 416.
By Re-Admission of Seceded States 1868 Tenn., La., Ala., Fla., S. C., N. C., Ga., Ark. 1870 Va., Miss., Tex.
MADE CO-FACTOR WITH SELF-GOVERNMENT IN AMERICAN PROGRESS.

REUNION.

CHAPTER I.

Recent Events.

With the readmission of Virginia, Mississippi and Texas (1870), the reunion of the States was made complete. Since then the events that have transpired are of too recent occurrence to have passed fully into the domain of history. Brief mention, therefore, will be made only of the more important ones.

Grant served two terms as President. The principal events that marked his administration were the completion of the first railroad—the Union Pacific—across the continent (1869); the Treaty of Washington (1871); war with the Modoc Indians (1871), and with the Sioux (1876); the great Centennial Celebration at Philadelphia (1876); the admission of Colorado as a State (1876), and the Chicago (1871) and Boston fires (1872).

The Washington treaty settled several disputes that had arisen between the United States and England. The northwestern boundary, and the damage done to the commerce of the United States by Confederate war vessels built in England, were the principal points at issue. The treaty referred the boundary question to the Emperor of Germany as arbitrator, who decided in favor of the United States. It also referred the claim for damage to a board of commissioners, which, assembling at Geneva, Switzerland, awarded the United States fifteen million five hundred thousand dollars. This award has taken the name of the place in which it was made, and the money awarded is known as the ALABAMA CLAIMS.

The war with the Modocs was caused by attempts to remove these Indians from their lands in Southern Oregon.



CUSTER'S LAST RALLY.

That with the Sioux was caused by the great influx of whites into the Sioux reservation in Montana immediately upon the discovery of gold in the Black Hills. The leader of the Modocs was CAPTAIN JACK, who was captured and hanged for having murdered GENERAL CANBY, the commissioner sent to treat with him before the war was instituted. The leader of the Sioux was SITTING BULL, and his tribe was a powerful one. A sad episode connected with this war was the massacre of a regiment of soldiers under GENERAL CUSTER. They had unwisely penetrated too far into the country of the hostiles, were surrounded near the Big Horn River by the whole tribe, and put to death. Sitting Bull and his band were subsequently driven northward into the British possessions.



GEN CUSTER.

The debt of the United States Government incurred by the war amounted to about two thousand seven hundred and fifty million dollars. Tariff and internal revenue taxes were levied, and the decrease in the public debt, while Grant was President, was marked. A part of this debt consisted of bills—called from their color "green-backs"—which the government had obligated itself to redeem in coin. The great number of these bills put into circulation inflated the currency of the country, and produced an effect (1873) similar to that produced in 1837.

In the election of a successor to Grant, the Republicans nominated RUTHERFORD B. HAYES, of Ohio, and for Vice-President, WILLIAM A. WHEELER, of New York. The candidates of the Democrats were SAMUEL J. TILDEN, of New York and THOMAS A. HENDRICKS, of Indiana. The contest was very close. A number of fraudulent and corrupt practices in several departments of the government had been brought to light during Grant's administration. The President himself was a man of integrity, but had been unwise in the choice of several of his subordinates. These proved false to the trust reposed in them. The discovery of these frauds greatly weakened the Republican party, and the desire of change was so widely felt that enough rallied under the campaign cry of *Tilden and Reform* to make it seem, immediately after the election, that the Democratic party had vanquished its antagonist.



RUTHERFORD B. HAYES.

The votes of three States, Louisiana, South Carolina and Florida, were claimed by both parties, and for a time excitement ran high, and bloodshed and conflict seemed imminent. But the Civil War had taught its lesson, and temperate coun-

cilings prevailed. To determine the result of the election, an ELECTORAL COMMISSION was created. This consisted of fifteen persons, five of whom were judges of the Supreme Court; five, Senators; and five, Representatives. As constituted, eight were Republicans and seven Democrats. The returns from each of the contested States were examined; and upon every matter coming up before the commission the decision was reached by a strictly partisan vote—eight to seven. Hayes and Wheeler were declared elected (1876).

Hayes served one term of office. In the first year of his administration, war with the small tribe of Nez Percé Indians in the Northwest arose; it was brought to an end by GENERAL O. O. HOWARD, who pursued the hostiles fifteen hundred miles, and compelled them to surrender. Several calamities befell the country during the course of this administration. These included great railroad strikes and yellow fever epidemics. The railroad strikes (1877) extended over wide areas, and occasioned dangerous riots in Pittsburg, Chicago, St. Louis and other places. In the first named city more than one hundred lives were lost, and three million dollars worth of property was destroyed.

The yellow fever epidemics occurred in 1878 and 1879. Many places in the South were visited by the fatal disease, the portion suffering the most being the Mississippi Valley. Science has of late demonstrated that this dread scourge originates in the warmer latitudes, and that it can be excluded from this country by disinfection and quarantine, a most perfect system of which is now in successful operation at a station, established by the State of Louisiana for the purpose, near the mouth of the Mississippi River.

In the presidential election of 1880 the principal candidates were JAMES A. GARFIELD, of Ohio, and CHESTER A. ARTHUR, of New York, proposed by the Republicans; WINFIELD

Scott Hancock, of New York, and William H. English, of Indiana, by the Democrats. The Republican candidates were elected by an unquestioned majority. The newly elected President was a man of unusual ability, and his administration bid fair to be as wise and well directed as any with which this country has been blessed. But scarcely had he served four months when he was stricken low by the bullet of an assassin. The murderer was one of many who had gone to Washington expecting to share in the spoils of office distributed by every President since the days of Jackson.

Called to the highest office in the land, Vice-President Arthur manifested unexpected ability in the administration of its affairs. The country was now entering upon an era of great industrial prosperity. In 1881 there was held at Atlanta an exposition that revealed to an astonishing extent how rapidly the South was conforming to new industrial conditions. At New Orleans, three years after, a World's Exposition was opened, exceeding in magnitude anything of the kind ever held in the world before. President Arthur at Washington set in motion the massive and intricate machinery connected with this exposition by directing a current of electricity over a telegraph wire between Washington and New Orleans.



JAMES A. GARFIELD.

Death of Garfield.

Garfield had been opposed to degrading the public service by making appointments to office of trust and honor a reward for party services. In consequence of this, many were disappointed. In his efforts to purify politics of some of its evils he incurred the displeasure and opposition of many leaders of his party. Two of these, Senators Conkling and Platt, of New York, resigned their seats, returned to their constituents for reëlection, but were not sent back. Charles J. Guiteau, a lawyer of Chicago, of uncertain mental balance, was among those who shared in the animosity against the President, and it was by his act that the death of the President was accomplished. The deed was committed at a railroad depot in Washington (July 2, 1880), and after eighty days of suffering the President passed away, at Elberon, N. J. (September 19, 1881).

In the election of a successor to Arthur, the candidates of the principal parties were, of the Republicans, JAMES G. BLAINE, of Maine, and JOHN A. LOGAN, of Illinois; of the Democrats, GROVER CLEVELAND, of New York, and THOS. A. HENDRICKS, of Indiana. The election was again very close, and the contest was narrowed down to the State of New York, which was found to have given a small majority for the Democratic candidates. Thus, after an interruption of twenty-four years, a Democratic President was again called to administer the executive affairs of the government.



CHESTER A. ARTHUR

QUESTIONS.

When was the reunion of States completed? What were the principal events of Grant's administration? What do you know of the Washington Treaty? Modoc War? Sioux War? The debt incurred by the war? "Green-backs?" Who were the candidates in the election of Grant's successor? What do you know of the disputed election of 1876? Electoral commission? What had strengthened the Democratic party? What were the principal events of Hayes' administration? What do you know of the Nez Percé War? Railroad riots of 1877? Yellow fever epidemics of 1878-'79? Election of Garfield and Arthur? Death of Garfield? What two expositions were held during Arthur's administration? What do you know of the election of Cleveland and Hendricks?

CHAPTER II.

The United States of To-Day.

The administration of Cleveland will always be remembered for the firm and conscientious manner in which the President discharged the duties of his office. He had served the people of New York in several official capacities—Sheriff of Erie County, Mayor of Buffalo, Governor of the State,

and in all had served them well. His call to the highest office in the land was a mark of confidence inspired by the record he had made for integrity and capacity; and when he became a presidential candidate, many who were not of his party, had been drawn to his support.

Cleveland's Cabinet.

Cleveland's cabinet consisted of THOMAS F. BAYARD, of Delaware, Secretary of State; DANIEL MANNING, of New York, Secretary of the Treasury; LUCIUS Q. C. LAMAR, of Mississippi, Secretary of the Interior; WM. C. ENDICOTT, of Massachusetts, Secretary of War; WM. C. WHITNEY, of New York, Secretary of the Navy; WM. F. VILAS, of Wisconsin, Postmaster-General; and AUGUSTUS H. GARLAND, of Arkansas, Attorney-General.

With the ascendancy of the Democratic party to power for the first time in twenty-four years, it was thought by many that radical changes would be made in the affairs and policies of government. But recognizing the fact that abrupt changes disturb the quiet and affect the welfare of a country, Cleveland, in his wisdom, instituted these changes gradually. His appointments were eminently fit ones, and his policy was thoroughly conservative. His cabinet was composed of men from every section of the country, and the manner in which they discharged the high duties reposed in them, furnished additional evidence of his good judgment. His whole administration may be summed up in the memorable words uttered by him, "*Public office is a public trust*," and his conduct of affairs was such as to convince all that this trust had not been misplaced. Nevertheless he was not elected to a second term, owing to the position taken by the party to which he belonged upon the tariff. For many years this question



GROVER CLEVELAND.

had almost disappeared from the politics of the country, as the more disturbing ones of slavery and secession had engrossed public attention; but it had now again arisen.

The heavy debt into which the country had been plunged by the Civil War necessitated the levying of a high tariff for revenue, which practically served many of the purposes of protection. The revenue thus derived was rapidly decreasing the public debt, and was more than was necessary to pay these debts as they matured. In consequence of this, a great SURPLUS of money, for which the government had little need, was accumulating in the public treasury.

Cleveland presented this matter to Congress in a remarkable and masterly message. He took the position that the tariff was a tax, and that the accumulation of a surplus was evidence that the people were being unnecessarily taxed, and he advocated a reduction of the tariff. In this he was sustained by his party, and revenue reduction became one of the issues in the political campaign of 1888.

The high war tariff had given an immense impulse to various American industries. The wool interests of Texas, the sugar interests of Louisiana, the iron interests of Pennsylvania, the lumber interests of Michigan, in addition to the manufacturing interests of different parts of the country, all felt the benefit of protection, and, therefore, the friends of protection had greatly increased in numbers, and were more widely distributed than when tariff first became a political issue.

The Republican party opposed any reduction that should interfere with the protective features of the existing tariff. The candidates of this party were, for President, BENJAMIN HARRISON, of Indiana; for Vice-President, LEVI P. MORTON, of New York. For President the Democrats renominated

Grover Cleveland, and placed with him upon the presidential ticket ALLEN G. THURMAN, of Ohio, as Vice-President. The deciding of the contest again fell to New York. By a remarkable change of sentiment in an otherwise strongly Democratic county of that State, Harrison and Morton were elected.

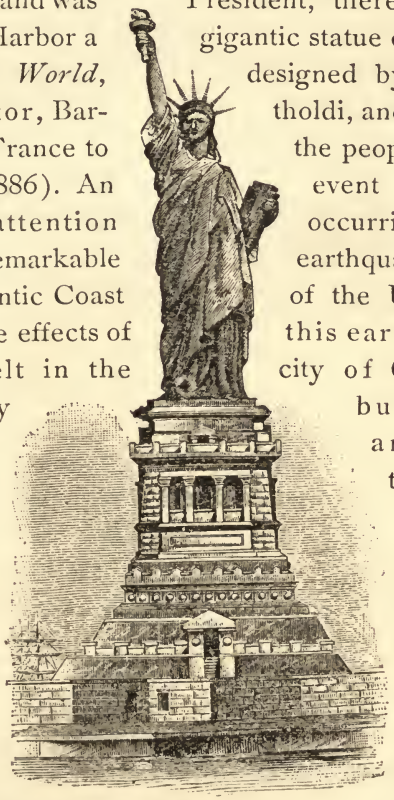
The period during which Cleveland served as President was remarkable for the number of eminent Americans who died. Among these were Grant, McClellan, Hendricks, Tilden and Hancock. The Indian difficulties in the West that claimed the attention of the government were those arising with the warlike Apache Indians of Arizona. These Indians had always been troublesome, and had committed many atrocities and depredations. GENERAL CROOK, a famous Indian fighter, was sent against them. He pursued the hostiles into Mexico, followed them persistently for many days, and at last surrounding them in a secluded

The "Educational Campaign."

The masses of the people are consumers of articles protected by the tariff, and consumers receive little direct benefit from an increase of prices. Of these consumers, two classes, the laborer and the Western farmer, have had to be won over by argument to the side of protection. It could hardly be said now that American manufactures were in their infancy, so protection for infant industries had ceased to be advocated by the time the tariff question again entered politics. The argument now was that a protective tariff benefited the laborer and the farmer, inasmuch as the protected manufacturers were able to pay higher wages to their workmen, who, in turn, were able to pay the farmers better prices for the necessaries of life. On the other hand, it was urged that protection had caused an unhealthy increase in the number of factories, that overproduction and competition were causing a decrease of profits, rendering necessary a lowering of wages; that the multiplication of producing agents in the various industries had brought into operation the public evil called TRUSTS, which are powerful combinations to control the products of an industry, and by limiting the supply, cause prices to rise above values, to the injury of the consumers. This limiting of production has been accomplished in many instances by closing down a number of the factories organized into a "Trust," whose owners lose nothing by the stoppage, as they share in the increased profits of the combination, but whose workmen are thrown out of employment. Thus it would seem that for every benefit afforded by protection there is a corresponding evil. As to which of the two—benefit or evil—predominates, it yet remains for the American people to fully understand. The presidential contest of 1888 has been termed an "educational campaign," for never before had American thought been so awakened to the consideration of wages, profits, consumption, exchange, the inter-relations of an industrial people, and other subjects pertaining to the study of political economy.

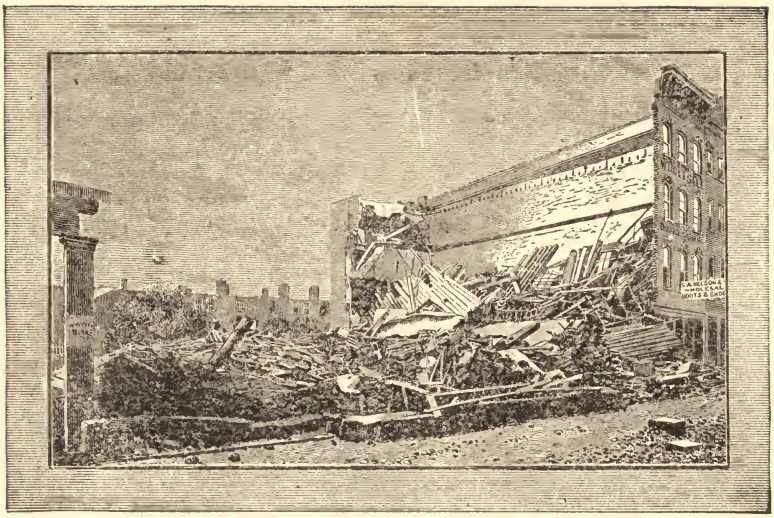
spot in the innermost recesses of the Sierra Madre Mountains, compelled the chief, GERONIMO, and a large party of his followers to surrender. These Indians were subsequently removed to Florida, where, far from their old scenes of bloodshed, they are kept under strict surveillance.

While Cleveland was President, there was erected in New York Harbor a gigantic statue of *Liberty Enlightening the World*, designed by the eminent French sculptor, Bartholdi, and presented by the people of France to the people of America (October 28, 1886). An event that occupied wide-spread attention occurring the same year, was a remarkable earthquake that visited the South Atlantic Coast of the United States. The destructive effects of this earthquake were particularly felt in the city of Charleston, where many buildings were laid in ruins and a number of old and treasured land marks were effaced. For some time it seemed as if the prosperity of the city had abruptly terminated, but with commendable spirit, the citizens declined to abandon their city, and bent their energies to the work of rebuilding. There now remains but little trace of disaster.



STATUE OF LIBERTY.

The election of Harrison to the Presidency of the United States brings the subject of American history within the present knowledge of the student. The events that are to transpire during his administration, and the relative



AFTER THE EARTHQUAKE.

importance of them in their bearing upon the progress of the country, remain to be seen. Already a number of occurrences have been chronicled that deserve passing notice. Among these are the Samoan controversy; the admission as States of North Dakota, South Dakota, Washington and Montana, preliminary steps to which were taken during the latter part of Cleveland's administration; the opening up to settlement of a large tract of land known as Oklahoma, in the Indian Territory, the unprecedented rush of settlers to which has been termed the "Oklahoma Boom"; the celebration in New York with great pomp and ceremony of the one hundredth anniversary of Washington's inauguration (April 30, 1889); and the terrible devastation inflicted upon one of Pennsylvania's fair valleys—that of Conemaugh—by the bursting of a large reservoir near its head. In this disaster the lives lost amounted to many thousands, the property destroyed to many millions, and the destitution, suffering, and bereavement caused, have had few parallels in the annals of human woes.

The inauguration of Harrison brings to mind the signer of the Declaration of Independence from whom he is descended. With this event the government of the United States completes the first one hundred years of its existence. In looking over the field of American history covered by this period, one cannot but be impressed with the wonderful changes that have been wrought, the results that have been accomplished, the growth that has been attained, and the progress that has been achieved. The thirteen States have become forty-two; the three millions of people have become sixty millions. The domain whose western boundary was once the Mississippi, now extends to the Pacific.



BENJAMIN HARRISON.

It is to be noted that the constituency ruled over by the United States Government is rapidly becoming homogeneous, and sectional lines are disappearing so far as industrial interests are concerned. The destruction of slavery has caused a concentration of the thought and intelligence of the South in the development of the extraordinary natural resources of that section. The coal and iron fields of Pennsylvania have their counterparts in Alabama and Tennessee, the pineries of Maine and Michigan theirs, in the almost untouched forest treasures of the southern tier of States. The dairy and farming enterprises of New York are paralleled by those of Mississippi and Georgia. The rich plains of Texas are being peopled by the same hardy class that have wrung the agricultural treasures from the prairies of the Northwest. Pittsburg, Chattanooga and

Birmingham; Providence, Atlanta and Augusta; Philadelphia and New Orleans, have identical interests.

In thought and in feeling the sections are drawing closer together. In the old days, before the revolution, Charleston sent her food supplies to the closed port of Boston; in later times Boston sends her message of sympathy and material aid to the earthquake-stricken city. An epidemic in Florida, a storm-ravaged coast in Texas, an overflow in the delta of the Mississippi, a conflagration in a Western city, a disastrous inundation in a Pennsylvania valley—each with its attendant misery and human suffering,—calls forth a generous response from the American people as a whole, and brings them into closer fellowship. The antagonisms of the past are passing from view, and are only brought to mind by a few demagogues, who, in vain attempts to attain political popularity, seek to revive issues no longer potent for evil. The veterans once opposed to each other now meet at times, upon the old battlefields, in reunions that establish ties of lasting friendship. The graves of dead heroes are hallowed and honored, irrespective of the side upon which they fought. Marble shafts in memory of many a valiant deed, point upwards in all their massiveness, indicative of the greatness and of the aspirations of those they commemorate. From many a pedestal there look down upon us the sculptured forms of those whose memories neither North nor South will willingly let die. History preserves them. The student, when he comes to perform his part—humble or exalted—in the social, political and moral life of the reunited nation, must remember that the past has given him a heritage; that the present, becoming the past, will leave to posterity another heritage; that whatever the bequest is to be, depends upon the intelligence and integrity of the self-governing body-politic of which he is a constituent.


Longitude
PACIFIC OCEAN
WASHINGTON
1889
OREGON
1859
CALIFORNIA
1850
NEVADA
1864
UTAH
1896
ARIZONA
COLORADO
1876
NEW MEXICO
TEXAS
1845
MONTANA
1889
WYOMING
1890
NEBRASKA
1867
KANSAS
1861
DAKOTA
1889
Columbia R.
Snake R.
Great Salt Lake
Colorado R.
Rio Grande
Platte R.
Yellowstone R.
Missouri R.
Gila R.
TERRITORY OF 1848
CESSION OF 1853, OR GADSDEN PURCHASE
CEDED TERRITORY ANNEXED 1845.
MEXICAN CESSION OF 1848
BRITISH POSSESSIONS
ARCTIC OCEAN
ASIA
BERING SEA
RUSSIAN POSSESSIONS
1867.
Pt. Barrow
East Cape
Arctic Circle
Cape Prince of Wales
Behring Str.
Yukon R.
Mt. St. Elias
Boundary between Alaska and the Russian Empire
ALEUTIAN ISLANDS
ALASKA
180 Long. West from 160 Greenwich
SCALE OF MILES
0 100 200 300 400 500



MAP SHOWING THE

TERRITORIAL GROWTH

OF THE

UNITED STATES

The figures under the State names indicate the dates of their admission into the Union; or, in the case of the Original Thirteen States, the date of their ratification of the Constitution.

SCALE OF MILES

0 100 200 300 400 500

ENGRAVED FOR HANSELL'S HIGHER HISTORY OF THE U. S.

QUESTIONS.

What do you know of Cleveland and his administration? Of whom was his cabinet composed? What policy did he pursue in regard to removals and appointments? **What great declaration did he make?** Who were displeased with his policy? What question had again arisen since the close of the war? What position did Cleveland take upon the tariff? Surplus? **What do you know of the "Educational Campaign" of 1888?** Who were the principal candidates? What was the result? **What were the principal events of Cleveland's administration?** What do you know of the Apache war? Of Bartholdi's statue? Charleston earthquake? **What are some of the events that have transpired since Harrison's election?** Give the changes in size and population that have occurred in the first one hundred years of national existence? How are the sections becoming alike in interests? **What facts show that they are drawing closer together in thought and feeling?** What must the student of history realize?

REVIEW QUESTIONS.

When and where was Washington inaugurated? Who composed his Cabinet? What was the Capital Bargain? Whisky Rebellion? What Presidents served two terms? One term? Died in Office? How and when was Louisiana acquired? Florida? Texas? California? Alaska? What do you know of the Northwest Territory? The Organization and Admission of Tennessee and Kentucky? Who was Genet? What were the Kentucky and Virginia Resolutions? What wars have occurred with the Barbary Powers? What do you know of Burr's Conspiracy? Fulton's first Steamboat? What were the causes of the War of 1812? Mexican War? What Indian wars have occurred since the establishment of the Federal Government? When and why was the Indian Territory organized? What two campaigns were executed in the first year of the War of 1812? Three in the second? Two in the third? Name the principal American Generals. British? American Naval Commanders? British? American Naval Victories? British? What do you know of the battle of New Orleans? The State of West Florida? Internal Improvements? What is the Monroe Doctrine? The Era of Good Feeling? The American System? Nullification? What is a Tariff? A Tax? How may Tariffs be classified? What do you know of the growth of Cotton Mauufactures? The Business Panic of 1837? When did a similar panic occur? What is the Sub-Treasury System and when established? What do you know of the Mormons? The Annexation of Texas? The Texas Revolution? What three Campaigns

were accomplished in the Mexican War? What were the principal battles of each? How did an antagonism between the sections originate? What was the Missouri Compromise? The Omnibus Bill? The Dred Scott decision? The Fugitive Slave Law? The Kansas-Nebraska Bill? What do you know of the beginning and progress of the Anti-Slavery Movement? Why did the Southern States secede? What do you know of the organization of the Confederate Government? Why was Fort Sumter fired upon? What battles of the Civil War occurred in Virginia? Missouri? Kentucky? Arkansas? Tennessee? Mississippi? Georgia? North Carolina? Louisiana? Texas? New Mexico? West Virginia? Pennsylvania? The Shenandoah Valley? What do you know of Stonewall Jackson? Name the five greatest Confederate Victories of the Civil War? Federal? Five decisive battles, and tell why? What effect had the Blockade? What do you know of the Alabama? The Virginia? The Tennessee? Give the principal military operations along the Mississippi River? The principal coast operations? Name some of the principal Cavalry leaders on the Confederate side? Federal? Name as many Confederate Generals as you may know, with a battle in which each participated? Federal? Name ten battles in which Grant took part? Ten of Lee's battles? Seven of J. E. Johnston's? Four of McClellan's? Four of Rosecrans'? Two of Banks'? Five of Price's? Two of Van Dorn's? Three of Hood's? Four of Bragg's? Six of Sherman's? What do you know of the capture of New Orleans? Vicksburg? Last charge at Gettysburg? Defense of Sabine Pass? Battle of Olustee? Sherman's March? Jackson's Valley Campaign? Banks' Red River Expeditions? Magruder's Capture of Galveston? Valley Operations of Early? Battle of New Market? Appomattox Surrender? What was the last engagement of the war? What do you know of the Trent affair? Maximillian invasion of Mexico? Abolishment of slavery? Death and character of Lincoln? What contest arose between President Johnson and Congress concerning the readmission of the Southern States? What was the policy of each? Why was Johnson impeached? What was the Geneva award? What do you know of the disputed election of 1876? How was the decision reached? What do you know of the election and death of Garfield? The Educational Campaign of 1888? The events that have transpired since Harrison's election? What Presidents were elected by the Democratic-Republican party? The National Republican or Whig party? The Democratic party? The Republican party? Name some political parties that have been unsuccessful in electing a President? Give the principal events of the administration of each President in order? Draw a comparison between the United States of Washington's time and the United States of to-day.

APPENDIX I.

THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE.

In Congress, July 4, 1776.

THE UNANIMOUS DECLARATION OF THE THIRTEEN UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.

When in the Course of human events, it becomes necessary for one people to dissolve the political bands which have connected them with another, and to assume among the Powers of the earth, the separate and equal station to which the Laws of Nature and of Nature's God entitle them, a decent respect to the opinions of mankind requires that they should declare the causes which impel them to the separation.

We hold these truths to be self-evident, that all men are created equal, that they are endowed by their Creator with certain unalienable Rights, that among these are Life, Liberty and the pursuit of Happiness. That to secure these rights, Governments are instituted among Men, deriving their just powers from the consent of the governed, That whenever any Form of Government becomes destructive of these ends, it is the Right of the People to alter or to abolish it, and to institute new Government, laying its foundation on such principles and organizing its powers in such form, as to them shall seem most likely to effect their Safety and Happiness. Prudence, indeed, will dictate that Governments long established should not be changed for light and transient causes; and accordingly all experience hath shown, that mankind are more disposed to suffer, while evils are sufferable, than to right themselves by abolishing the forms to which they are accustomed. But when a long train of abuses and usurpations, pursuing invariably the same Object evinces a design to reduce them under absolute Despotism, it is their right, it is their duty, to throw off such Government, and to provide new Guards for their future security.—Such has been the patient sufferance of these Colonies; and such is now the necessity which constrains them to alter their former Systems of Government. The history of the present King of Great Britain is a history of repeated injuries and usurpations, all having in direct object the establishment of an absolute Tyranny over these States. To prove this, let Facts be submitted to a candid world.

He has refused his Assent to Laws, the most wholesome and necessary for the public good.

He has forbidden his Governors to pass Laws of immediate and pressing importance, unless suspended in their operation till his Assent should be obtained; and when so suspended, he has utterly neglected to attend to them.

He has refused to pass other Laws for the accommodation of large districts of people, unless those people would relinquish the right of Representation in the Legislature, a right inestimable to them and formidable to tyrants only.

He has called together legislative bodies at places unusual, uncomfortable, and distant from the depository of their Public Records, for the sole purpose of fatiguing them into compliance with his measures.

He has dissolved Representative Houses repeatedly, for opposing with manly firmness his invasions on the rights of the people.

He has refused for a long time, after such dissolutions, to cause others to be elected; whereby the Legislative Powers, incapable of Annihilation, have returned to the People at large for their exercise; the State remaining in the meantime exposed to all the dangers of invasion from without, and convulsions within.

He has endeavoured to prevent the population of these States; for that purpose obstructing the Laws for Naturalization of Foreigners; refusing to pass others to encourage their migration hither, and raising the conditions of new Appropriations of Lands.

He has obstructed the Administration of Justice, by refusing his Assent to Laws for establishing Judiciary Powers.

He has made Judges dependent on his Will alone, for the tenure of their offices, and the amount and payment of their salaries.

He has erected a multitude of New Offices, and sent hither swarms of Officers to harrass our People, and eat out their substance.

He has kept among us, in times of peace, Standing Armies without the Consent of our legislature.

He has affected to render the Military independent of and superior to the Civil Power.

He has combined with others to subject us to a jurisdiction foreign to our constitution, and unacknowledged by our laws; giving his Assent to their Acts of pretended Legislation:

For quartering large bodies of armed troops among us:

For protecting them, by a mock Trial, from Punishment for any Murders which they should commit on the Inhabitants of these States:

For cuttting off our Trade with all parts of the world:

For imposing taxes on us without our Consent:

For depriving us in many cases, of the benefits of Trial by Jury:

For transporting us beyond Seas to be tried for pretended offences:

For abolishing the free System of English Laws in a neighboring Province, establishing therein an Arbitrary government, and enlarging its Boundaries so as to render it at once an example and fit instrument for introducing the same absolute rule into these Colonies:

For taking away our Charters, abolishing our most valuable Laws, and altering fundamentally the Forms of our Governments:

For suspending our own Legislatures, and declaring themselves invested with Power to legislate for us in all cases whatsoever.

He has abdicated Government here, by declaring us out of his Protection and waging War against us.

He has plundered our seas, ravaged our Coasts, burnt our towns, and destroyed the lives of our people.

He is at this time transporting large armies of foreign mercenaries to complete the works of death, desolation and tyranny, already begun with circumstances of Cruelty & perfidy scarcely paralleled in the most barbarous ages, and totally unworthy the Head of a civilized nation.

He has constrained our fellow Citizens taken captive on the high Seas to bear Arms against their Country, to become the executioners of their friends and Brethren, or to fall themselves by their Hands.

He has excited domestic insurrections amongst us, and has endeavoured to bring on the inhabitants of our frontiers, the merciless Indian Savages, whose known rule of warfare, is an undistinguished destruction of all ages, sexes and conditions.

In every stage of these Oppressions We have Petitioned for Redress in the most humble terms: Our repeated Petitions have been answered only by repeated injury. A Prince, whose character is thus marked by every act which may define a Tyrant, is unfit to be the ruler of a free People.

Nor have We been wanting in attention to our British brethren. We have warned them from time to time of attempts by their legislature to extend an unwarrantable jurisdiction over us. We have reminded them of the circumstances of our emigration and settlement here. We have appealed to their native justice and magnanimity, and we have conjured them by the ties of our common kindred to disavow these usurpations, which, would inevitably interrupt our connections and correspondence. They too have been deaf to the voice of justice and of consanguinity. We must, therefore, acquiesce in the necessity, which denounces our Separation, and hold them, as we hold the rest of mankind, Enemies in War, in Peace Friends.

We, therefore, the Representatives of the united States of America, in General Congress, Assembled, appealing to the Supreme Judge of the world for the rectitude of our intentions, do, in the Name, and by Authority of the good People of these Colonies, solemnly publish and declare, That these United Colonies are, and of Right ought to be Free and Independent States; that they are Absolved from all Allegiance to the British Crown, and that all political connection between them and the State of Great Britain, is and ought to be totally dissolved; and that as Free and Independent States, they have full Power to levy War, conclude Peace, contract Alliances, establish Commerce, and to do all other Acts and Things which Independent States may of right do. And for the support of this Declaration, with a firm reliance on the Protection of Divine Providence, we mutually pledge to each other our Lives, our Fortunes and our sacred Honor.

JOHN HANCOCK.

New Hampshire—Josiah Bartlett, Wm. Whipple, Matthew Thornton.

Massachusetts Bay—Saml. Adams, John Adams, Robt. Treat Paine, Elbridge Gerry.

Rhode Island—Step. Hopkins, William Ellery.

Connecticut—Roger Sherman, Sam'el Huntington, Wm. Williams, Oliver Wolcott.

New York—Wm. Floyd, Phil. Livingston, Frans. Lewis, Lewis Morris.

New Jersey—Richd. Stockton, Jno. Witherspoon, Fras. Hopkinson, John Hart, Abra. Clark.

Pennsylvania—Robt. Morris, Benjamin Rush, Benja. Franklin, John Morton, Geo. Clymer, Jas. Smith, Geo. Taylor, James Wilson, Geo. Ross.

Delaware—Cæsar Rodney, Geo. Read, Tho. M'Kean.

Maryland—Samuel Chase, Wm. Paca, Thos. Stone, Charles Carroll of Carrollton.

Virginia—George Wythe, Richard Henry Lee, Th. Jefferson, Benja. Harrison, Thos. Nelson, jr., Francis Lightfoot Lee, Carter Braxton.

North Carolina—Wm. Hooper, Joseph Hewes, John Penn.

South Carolina—Edward Rutledge, Thos. Heyward, Junr., Thomas Lynch, Junr., Arthur Middleton.

Georgia—Button Gwinnett, Lyman Hall, Geo. Walton.

CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.

PREAMBLE.

We, the people of the United States, in order to form a more perfect union, establish justice, insure domestic tranquillity, provide for the common defense, promote the general welfare, and secure the blessings of liberty to ourselves and our posterity, do ordain and establish this CONSTITUTION for the United States of America.

ARTICLE I.

Legislative powers.

SECTION I. 1. All legislative powers herein granted shall be vested in a Congress* of the United States, which shall consist of a Senate and House of Representatives.

House of Representatives.

SEC. II. 1. The House of Representatives shall be composed of members chosen every second year, by the people of the several States; and the electors in each State shall have the qualifications requisite for electors of the most numerous branch of the State Legislature.

Qualifications of representatives.

2. No person shall be a representative who shall not have attained to the age of twenty-five years, and been seven years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that State in which he shall be chosen.

Apportionment of representatives

3. Representatives and direct taxes shall be apportioned among the several States which may be included within this Union, according to their respective numbers,† which shall be determined by adding to the whole number of free persons, including those bound to service for a term of years, and excluding Indians not taxed, three-fifths of all other persons.‡ The actual enumeration shall be made within three years after the first meeting of the Congress of the United States, and within every subsequent term of ten years, in such manner as they shall by law direct. The number of representatives shall not exceed one for every thirty thousand, but each State shall have at least one representative; and until such enumeration shall be made, the State of New Hampshire shall be entitled to choose three; Massachusetts, eight; Rhode Island and Providence Plantations, one; Connecticut, five; New York, six; New Jersey, four; Pennsylvania, eight; Delaware, one; Maryland, six; Virginia, ten; North Carolina, five; South Carolina, five; and Georgia, three.

Vacancies.

4. When vacancies happen in the representation from any State, the executive authority thereof shall issue writs of election to fill such vacancies.

Officers, how appointed

5. The House of Representatives shall choose their speaker and other officers,§ and shall have the sole power of impeachment.

*The body of senators and representatives for each term of two years for which representatives are chosen is called *one Congress*. Each Congress expires at noon of the 4th of March next succeeding the beginning of its second regular session, when a *new Congress begins*.

†The apportionment under the census of 1880 is one representative to every 154,325 persons.

‡This refers to slaves, and is no longer in force (see Amendment XIII).

§Clerk, sergeant-at-arms, doorkeeper and postmaster, and others. The speaker is the presiding officer.

SEC. III. 1. The Senate of the United States shall be composed of two Senators from each State, chosen by the legislature thereof, for six years; and eachSenator shall have one vote. *Senate.*

2. Immediately after they shall be assembled in consequence of the first election, they shall be divided, as equally as may be, into three classes. The seats of the Senators of the first class shall be vacated at the expiration of the second year; of the second class, at the expiration of the fourth year; and of the third class, at the expiration of the sixth year, so that one-third may be chosen every second year; and if vacancies happen, by resignation or otherwise, during the recess of the legislature of any State, the executive thereof may make temporary appointments until the next meeting of the legislature, which shall then fill such vacancies. *Classification of senators.*

3. No person shall be a Senator who shall not have attained to the age of thirty years, and been nine years a citizen of the United States; and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that State for which he shall be chosen. *Qualifications of senators.*

4. The Vice-President of the United States shall be president of the Senate; but shall have no vote, unless they be equally divided. *President of the senate.*

5. The Senate shall choose their other officers,* and also a president *pro tempore*, in the absence of the Vice-President, or when he shall exercise the office of the President of the United States.

6. The Senate shall have the sole power to try all impeachments. When sitting for that purpose, they shall be on oath or affirmation. When the President of the United States is tried, the chief justice shall preside; and no person shall be convicted without the concurrence of two-thirds of the members present. *Senate, a court for trial of impeachments.*

7. Judgment, in case of impeachment, shall not extend further than to removal from office, and disqualification to hold and enjoy any office of honor, trust or profit, under the United States; but the party convicted shall, nevertheless, be liable and subject to indictment, trial, judgment and punishment, according to law. *Judgment in case of conviction.*

SEC. IV. 1. The times, places and manner of holding elections for Senators and Representatives, shall be prescribed in each State by the legislature thereof; but the Congress may, at any time, by law, make or alter such regulations, except as to the places of choosing senators. *Elections of senators and of representatives.*

2. The Congress shall assemble at least once in every year; and such meeting shall be on the first Monday in December, unless they shall by law appoint a different day. *Meeting of Congress.*

SEC. V. 1. Each house shall be the judge of the elections, returns and qualifications of its own members; and a majority of each shall constitute a quorum to do business; but a smaller number may adjourn from day to day, and may be authorized to compel the attendance of absent members, in such manner and under such penalties as each house may provide. *Organization of Congress.*

2. Each house may determine the rules of its proceedings, punish its members for disorderly behavior, and, with the concurrence of two-thirds, expel a member. *Rule of proceeding.*

3. Each house shall keep a journal of its proceedings, and from time to time publish the same, excepting such parts as may, in their judgment, require secrecy; and the yeas and nays of the members of either house, on any question, shall, at the desire of one-fifth of those present, be entered on the journal. *Journal of Congress.*

*Secretary, sergeant-at-arms, doorkeeper and postmaster, and others.

4. Neither house, during the session of Congress, shall, without the consent of the other, adjourn for more than three days, nor to any other place than that in which the two houses shall be sitting.

Adjournment of Congress.

SEC. VI. 1. The senators and representatives shall receive a compensation* for their services, to be ascertained by law, and paid out of the treasury of the United States. They shall, in all cases, except treason, felony and breach of the peace, be privileged from arrest during their attendance at the session of their respective houses, and in going to and returning from the same; and for any speech or debate in either house they shall not be questioned in any other place.

Pay and privileges of members.

2. No Senator or Representative shall, during the time for which he was elected, be appointed to any civil office, under the authority of the United States, which shall have been created, or the emoluments whereof shall have been increased, during such time; and no person holding any office under the United States shall be a member of either house during his continuance in office.

Plurality of offices prohibited.

SEC. VII. 1. All bills for raising revenue shall originate in the House of Representatives; but the Senate may propose or concur with amendments, as on other bills.

Revenue bills.

2. Every bill which shall have passed the House of Representatives and the Senate shall, before it become a law, be presented to the President of the United States. If he approve, he shall sign it; but if not, he shall return it, with his objections, to that house in which it shall have originated, who shall enter the objections at large on their journal, and proceed to reconsider it. If, after such reconsideration two-thirds of that house shall agree to pass the bill, it shall be sent, together with the objections, to the other house, by which it shall likewise be reconsidered, and if approved by two-thirds of that house it shall become a law. But, in all such cases, the votes of both houses shall be determined by yeas and nays, and the names of the persons voting for and against the bill shall be entered on the journal of each house respectively. If any bill shall not be returned by the President within ten days (Sundays excepted) after it shall have been presented to him, the same shall be a law in like manner as if he had signed it, unless the Congress by their adjournment prevent its return, in which case it shall not be a law.

How bills become laws.

3. Every order, resolution or vote, to which the concurrence of the Senate and House of Representatives may be necessary (except on a question of adjournment), shall be presented to the President of the United States; and before the same shall take effect shall be approved by him, or, being disapproved by him, shall be repassed by two-thirds of the Senate and House of Representatives, according to the rules and limitations prescribed in the case of a bill.

Approval and veto powers of the President.

SEC. VIII. The Congress shall have power—

1. To lay and collect taxes, duties, imposts and excises to pay the debts and provide for the common defense and general welfare of the United States; but all duties, imposts and excises shall be uniform throughout the United States.

Powers vested in Congress.

2. To borrow money on the credit of the United States.

3. To regulate commerce with foreign nations, and among the several States, and with the Indian tribes.

4. To establish a uniform rule of naturalization, and uniform laws on the subject of bankruptcies throughout the United States.

*The present compensation is $5,000 a year, with twenty cents for every mile of travel by the most usually traveled post route to and from the national capital.

5. To coin money, regulate the value thereof, and of foreign coin, and fix the standards of weights and measures.

6. To provide for the punishment of counterfeiting the securities and current coin of the United States.

7. To establish postoffices and postroads.

8. To promote the progress of science and useful arts, by securing, for limited times, to authors and inventors, the exclusive right to their respective writings and discoveries.

9. To constitute tribunals inferior to the Supreme Court.

10. To define and punish piracies and felonies committed on the high seas, and offences against the law of nations.

11. To declare war, grant letters of marque and reprisal, and make rules concerning captures on land and water.

12. To raise and support armies; but no appropriation of money to that use shall be for a longer term than two years.

13. To provide and maintain a navy.

14. To make rules for the government and regulation of the land and naval forces.

15. To provide for calling forth the militia to execute the laws of the Union, suppress insurrections and repel invasions.

16. To provide for organizing, arming and disciplining the militia, and for governing such part of them as may be employed in the service of the United States, reserving to the States respectively the appointment of the officers, and the authority of training the militia according to the discipline prescribed by Congress.

17. To exercise exclusive legislation, in all cases whatsoever, over such district (not exceeding ten miles square) as may, by cession of particular States, and the acceptance of Congress, become the seat of government of the United States,* and to exercise like authority over all places purchased, by the consent of the Legislature of the State in which the same shall be, for the erection of forts, magazines, arsenals, dockyards and other needful buildings; and

18. To make all laws which shall be necessary and proper for carrying into execution the foregoing powers, and all other powers vested by this Constitution in the government of the United States, or in any department or officer thereof.

SEC. IX. 1. The migration or importation of such persons as any of the States now existing shall think proper to admit, shall not be prohibited by the Congress prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight; but a tax or duty may be imposed on such importation, not exceeding ten dollars for each person.† *Immigrants, how admitted.*

2. The privilege of the writ of habeas corpus shall not be suspended, unless when, in cases of rebellion or invasion, the public safety may require it. *Habeas corpus.*

3. No bill of attainder, or ex post facto law, shall be passed. *Attainder.*

4. No capitation or other direct tax shall be laid, unless in proportion to the census or enumeration hereinbefore directed to be taken. *Direct taxes.*

5. No tax or duty shall be laid on articles exported from any State.

6. No preference shall be given, by any regulation of commerce or revenue, to the ports of one State over those of another; nor shall vessels bound to or from one State be obliged to enter, clear or pay duties in another. *Regulations regarding duties.*

*The District of Columbia.

†This has reference to the foreign slave trade.

7. No money shall be drawn from the treasury but in consequence of appropriations made by law; and a regular statement and account of the receipts and expenditures of all public money shall be published from time to time.

Moneys, how drawn.

8. No title of nobility shall be granted by the United States, and no person holding any office of profit or trust under them shall, without the consent of the Congress, accept of any present, emolument, office or title of any kind whatever, from any king, prince or foreign State.

Titles of nobility prohibited.

SEC. X. 1. No State shall enter into any treaty, alliance or confederation; grant letters of marque and reprisal; coin money; emit bills of credit; make anything but gold and silver coin a tender in payment of debts; pass any bill of attainder, ex post facto law, or law impairing the obligation of contracts; or grant any title of nobility.

Powers of States defined.

2. No State shall, without the consent of the Congress, lay any imposts or duties on imports or exports, except what may be absolutely necessary for executing its inspection laws; and the net produce of all duties and imposts, laid by any State on imports or exports, shall be for the use of the treasury of the United States, and all such laws shall be subject to the revision and control of the Congress. No State shall, without the consent of Congress, lay any duty of tonnage, keep troops or ships of war in time of peace, enter into any agreement or compact with another State, or with a foreign power, or engage in war, unless actually invaded or in such imminent danger as will not admit of delay.

ARTICLE II.

SECTION I. 1. The executive power shall be vested in a President of the United States of America. He shall hold his office during the term of four years, and, together with the Vice-President, chosen for the same term, be elected as follows:

Executive power, in whom vested.

2. Each State shall appoint, in such manner as the Legislature thereof may direct, a number of electors equal to the whole number of Senators and Representatives to which the State may be entitled in the Congress; but no Senator, or Representative, or person holding an office of trust or profit under the United States, shall be appointed an elector.

Electors.

[3. The electors shall meet in their respective States, and vote by ballot for two persons, of whom one, at least, shall not be an inhabitant of the same State with themselves. And they shall make a list of all the persons voted for, and of the number of votes for each; which list they shall sign and certify, and transmit sealed to the seat of the government of the United States, directed to the President of the Senate. The President of the Senate shall, in the presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the certificates, and the votes shall then be counted. The person having the greatest number of votes shall be the President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if there be more than one who have such majority, and have an equal number of votes, then the House of Representatives shall immediately choose, by ballot, one of them for President; and if no person have a majority, then, from the five highest on the list, the said house shall, in like manner, choose the President. But, in choosing the President, the votes shall be taken by States, the representation from each State having one vote; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two-thirds of the States, and a majority of all the States shall be necessary to a choice. In every case, after the choice of the President, the

Proceedings of electors.

and of House of Representatives.

person having the greatest number of votes of the electors shall be the Vice-President. But, if there should remain two or more who have equal votes, the Senate shall choose from them, by ballot, the Vice-President.]*

Time of choosing electors.

4. The Congress may determine the time of choosing the electors, and the day on which they shall give their votes; which day shall be the same throughout the United States.†

Qualifications of the President.

5. No person, except a natural born citizen, or a citizen of the United States at the time of the adoption of this Constitution, shall be eligible to the office of President; neither shall any person be eligible to that office who shall not have attained to the age of thirty-five years, and been fourteen years a resident within the United States.

Resort in case of his disability.

6. In case of the removal of the president from office, or of his death, resignation or inability to discharge the powers and duties of the said office, the same shall devolve on the Vice-President; and the Congress may, by law, provide for the case of removal, death, resignation or inability, both of the President and Vice-President, declaring what officer shall then act as president; and such officer shall act accordingly, until the disability be removed, or a President shall be elected.

Salary of the president.

7. The President shall, at stated times, receive for his services a compensation, which shall neither be increased nor diminished during the period for which he shall have been elected; and he shall not receive within that period any other emolument from the United States, or any of them.‡

Oath.

8. Before he enter on the execution of his office, he shall take the following oath or affirmation:

"I do solemnly swear (or affirm) that I will faithfully execute the office of President of the United States, and will, to the best of my ability, preserve, protect and defend the Constitution of the United States."

Duties of the President.

SEC. II. 1. The President shall be commander-in-chief of the army and navy of the United States, and of the militia of the several States, when called into the actual service of the United States; he may require the opinion, in writing, of the principal officer, in each of the executive departments, upon any subject relating to the duties of their respective officers; and he shall have power to grant reprieves and pardons for offences against the United States, except in cases of impeachment.

May make treaties, appoint ambassadors, judges, etc.

2. He shall have power, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, to make treaties, provided two-thirds of the Senators present concur; and he shall nominate, and by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, shall appoint ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls, judges of the Supreme Court, and all other officers of the United States whose appointments are not herein otherwise provided for, and which shall be established by law. But the Congress may, by law, vest the appointment of such inferior officers as they think proper in the President alone, in the courts of law, or in the heads of departments.

*This clause, within brackets, has been superseded by the 12th Amendment.

†The electors are chosen on the Tuesday next after the first Monday in November preceding the expiration of a presidential term, and vote for president and vice-president on the first Wednesday of the December following. The votes are counted and declared in Congress the second Wednesday of the following February.

‡The salary of the President was $25,000 a year until 1872, when it was increased to $50,000. That of the Vice-President is $8000 a year.

3. The President shall have power to fill up all vacancies that may happen during the recess of the Senate, by granting commissions which shall expire at the end of their next session.

May fill vacancies.

SEC. III. 1. He shall from time to time give to the Congress information of the State of the Union, and recommend to their consideration such measures as he shall judge necessary and expedient;* he may, on extraordinary occasions, convene both houses, or either of them, and, in case of disagreement between them with respect to the time of adjournment, he may adjourn them to such time as he shall think proper; he shall receive ambassadors and other public ministers; he shall take care that the laws be faithfully executed; and shall commission all the officers of the United States.

May convene Congress.

SEC. IV. 1. The President, Vice-President, and all civil officers of the United States, shall be removed from office on impeachment for, and conviction of treason, bribery or other high crimes and misdemeanors.

How officers may be removed.

ARTICLE III.

SECTION I. 1. The judicial power of the United States shall be vested in one Supreme Court, and in such inferior courts as the Congress may, from time to time, ordain and establish. The judges, both of the supreme and inferior courts, shall hold their offices during good behavior; and shall, at stated times, receive for their services a compensation which shall not be diminished during their continuance in office.

Judicial power, how vested.

SEC. II. 1. The judicial power shall extend to all cases in law and equity arising under this Constitution, the laws of the United States, and treaties made, or which shall be made, under their authority; to all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls; to all cases of admiralty and maritime jurisdiction; to controversies to which the United States shall be a party; controversies between two or more States; between a State and citizens of another State;† between citizens of different States; between citizens of the same State claiming lands under grants of different States; and between a State or the citizens thereof, and foreign States, citizens or subjects.

To what cases it extends.

2. In all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls, and those in which a State shall be a party, the Supreme Court shall have original jurisdiction. In all the other cases before mentioned the Supreme Court shall have appellate jurisdiction, both as to law and fact, with such exemptions and under such regulations as the Congress shall make.

Jurisdiction of the Supreme Court.

3. The trial of all crimes, except in cases of impeachments, shall be by jury, and such trial shall be held in the State where the said crimes shall have been committed; but when not committed within any State, the trial shall be at such place or places as the Congress may by law have directed.

Rules respecting trials.

SEC. III. 1. Treason against the United States shall consist only in levying war against them, or in adhering to their enemies, giving them aid and comfort. No person shall be convicted of treason, unless on the testimony of two witnesses to the same overt act, or on confession in open court.

Treason defined.

*The President does this in messages at the opening of each session. Washington and John Adams read their messages in person to both houses of Congress. Jefferson introduced the present practice of sending to the two houses a written message by his private secretary.

†See Amendments, Art. XI.

2. The Congress shall have power to declare the punishment of treason; but no attainder of treason shall work corruption of blood or forfeiture, except during the life of the person attainted. *How punished.*

Article IV.

Section I. 1. Full faith and credit shall be given in each State to the public acts, records and judicial proceedings of every other State. And the Congress may, by general laws, prescribe the manner in which such acts, records and proceedings shall be proved, and the effect thereof. *Rights of States.*

Sec. II. 1. The citizens of each State shall be entitled to all the privileges and immunities of citizens in the several States. *Privileges of citizens.*

2. A person charged in any State with treason, felony or other crime, who shall flee from justice, and be found in another State, shall, on demand of the executive authority of the State from which he fled, be delivered up, to be removed to the State having jurisdiction of the crime. *Executive requisition.*

3. No person held to service or labor in one State, under the laws thereof, escaping into another, shall in consequence of any law or regulation therein be discharged from such service or labor; but shall be delivered up on claim of the party to whom such service or labor may be due. *Law regulating service or labor.*

Sec. III. 1. New States may be admitted by the Congress into this Union; but no new States shall be formed or erected within the jurisdiction of any other State, nor any State be formed by the junction of two or more States, or parts of States, without the consent of the Legislature of the States concerned, as well as of the Congress. *New States, how formed and admitted.*

2. The Congress shall have power to dispose of and make all needful rules and regulations respecting the territory or other property belonging to the United States; and nothing in this Constitution shall be so construed as to prejudice any claims of the United States, or of any particular State. *Power of Congress over public lands.*

Sec. IV. 1. The United States shall guarantee to every State in this Union a republican form of government, and shall protect each of them against invasion; and on application of the Legislature or of the executive (when the Legislature cannot be convened), against domestic violence. *Republican government guaranteed.*

Article V.

1. The Congress, whenever two-thirds of both houses shall deem it necessary, shall propose amendments to this Constitution; or, on the application of the Legislatures of two-thirds of the several States, shall call a convention for proposing amendments, which, in either case, shall be valid to all intents and purposes, as part of this Constitution, when ratified by the Legislatures of three-fourths of the several States, or by conventions in three-fourths thereof, as the one or the other mode of ratification may be proposed by the Congress; provided, that no amendment which may be made prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight shall in any manner affect the first and fourth clauses in the ninth section of the first article; and that no State, without its consent, shall be deprived of its equal suffrage in the Senate. *Constitution, how to be amended.*

ARTICLE VI.

Validity of debts recognized.

1. All debts contracted and engagements entered into before the adoption of this Constitution, shall be as valid against the United States under this Constitution as under the Confederation.

Supreme law of the land defined.

2. This Constitution, and the laws of the United States which shall be made in pursuance thereof, and all treaties made, or which shall be made, under the authority of the United States, shall be the supreme law of the land; and the judges in every State shall be bound thereby, anything in the Constitution or laws of any State to the contrary notwithstanding.

Oath; of whom required, and for what.

3. The Senators and Representatives before mentioned, and the members of the several State Legislatures, and all executive and judicial officers, both of the United States and of the several States, shall be bound by oath or affirmation to support this Constitution; but no religious test shall ever be required as a qualification to any office or public trust under the United States.

ARTICLE VII.

Ratification.

1. The ratification of the conventions of nine States shall be sufficient for the establishment of this Contitution between the States so ratifying the same.

Done in convention by the unanimous consent of the States present, the seventeenth day of September, in the year of our Lord one thousand seven hundred and eighty-seven, and of the independence of the United States of America the twelfth. In witness whereof, we have hereunto subscribed our names.*

GEORGE WASHINGTON,
Presidt. and deputy from Virginia.

NEW HAMPSHIRE.
John Langdon.
Nicholas Gilman.

MASSACHUSETTS.
Nathaniel Gorham,
Rufus King.

CONNECTICUT.
Wm. Saml. Johnson,
Roger Sherman.

NEW YORK.
Alexander Hamilton.

NEW JERSEY.
Wil. Livingston,
David Brearley,
Wm. Paterson.
Jona. Dayton.

PENNSYLVANIA.
B. Franklin,
Thomas Mifflin,
Robt. Morris,
Geo: Clymer,
Tho: Fitzsimons,
Jared Ingersoll,
James Wilson,
Gouv: Morris.

DELAWARE.
Geo: Read,
Gunning Bedford, Jun'r,
John Dickinson,
Richard Bassett,
Jaco: Broom.

MARYLAND.
James M'Henry,
Dan: of St. Thos. Jenifer,
Danl. Carroll.

VIRGINIA.
John Blair,
James Madison, Jr.

NORTH CAROLINA.
Wm. Blount,
Rich'd Dobbs Spaight,
Hu. Williamson.

SOUTH CAROLINA.
J. Rutledge,
Charles Cotesworth Pinckney,
Charles Pinckney,
Pierce Butler.

GEORGIA.
William Few,
Abr. Baldwin.

Attest: WILLIAM JACKSON, *Secretary.*

*The number of delegates chosen to the convention was sixty-five; ten did not attend; sixteen declined signing the Constitution, or left the convention before it was ready to be signed. Thirty-nine signed.

AMENDMENTS TO THE CONSTITUTION.

*ART. I. Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof; or abridging the freedom of speech, or of the press; or the right of the people peaceably to assemble and to petition the government for a redress of grievances. *Freedom in religion, speech, press.*

ART. II. A well regulated militia being necessary to the security of a free State, the right of the people to keep and bear arms shall not be infringed. *Militia.*

ART. III. No soldier shall, in time of peace, be quartered in any house, without the consent of the owner; nor in time of war but in a manner to be prescribed by law. *Soldiers.*

ART. IV. The right of the people to be secure in their persons, houses, papers, and effects, against unreasonable searches and seizures, shall not be violated; and no warrants shall issue but upon probable cause, supported by oath or affirmation, and particularly describing the place to be searched, and the persons or things to be seized. *Search warrants.*

ART. V. No person shall be held to answer for a capital or otherwise infamous crime, unless on a presentment or indictment of a grand jury, except in cases arising in the land or naval forces, or in the militia, when in actual service, in time of war or public danger; nor shall any person be subject for the same offense to be twice put in jeopardy of life or limb; nor shall be compelled, in any criminal case, to be a witness against himself; nor be deprived of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law; nor shall private property be taken for public use, without just compensation. *Capital crimes.*

ART. VI. In all criminal prosecutions the accused shall enjoy the right to a speedy and public trial, by an impartial jury of the State and district wherein the crime shall have been committed, which district shall have been previously ascertained by law, and to be informed of the nature and cause of the accusation; to be confronted with the witnesses against him; to have compulsory process for obtaining witnesses in his favor; and to have the assistance of counsel for his defense. *Trial by jury.*

ART. VII. In suits at common law, where the value in controversy shall exceed twenty dollars, the right of trial by jury shall be preserved; and no fact tried by a jury shall be otherwise re-examined, in any court of the United States, than according to the rules of the common law. *Suits at common law.*

ART. VIII. Excessive bail shall not be required, nor excessive fines imposed, nor cruel and unusual punishment inflicted. *Bail, fines, etc.*

ART. IX. The enumeration in the Constitution, of certain rights, shall not be construedto deny or disparage others retained by people. *Certain rights.*

ART. X. The powers not delegated to the United States by the Constitution, nor prohibited by it to the States, are reserved to the States respectively, or to the people. *Powers reserved.*

†ART. XI. The judicial power of the United States shall not be construed to extend to any suit in law or equity, commenced or prosecuted against one of the United States, by citizens of another State, or by citizens or subjects of any foreign State. *Judicial power limited.*

*The first ten amendments were proposed in 1789, and declared adopted in 1791.
†The eleventh amendment was proposed in 1794, and declared adopted in 1798.

*ART. XII. The electors shall meet in their respective States, and vote by ballot for President and Vice-President one of whom, at least, shall not be an inhabitant of the same State with themselves; they shall name in their ballots the person voted for as President, and in distinct ballots the person voted for as Vice-President; and they shall make distinct lists of all persons voted for as President, and of all persons voted for as Vice-President, and of the number of votes for each, which lists they shall sign and certify, and transmit, sealed, to the seat of the Government of the United States, directed to the President of the Senate; the President of the Senate shall, in the presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the certificates, and the votes shall then be counted; the person having the greatest number of votes for President shall be the President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if no person have such majority, then from the persons having the highest numbers, not exceeding three, on the list of those voted for as President, the House of Representatives shall choose immediately, by ballot, the President. But, in choosing the President, the votes shall be taken by States, the representation from each State having one vote; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two-thirds of the States, and a majority of all the States shall be necessary to a choice. And if the House of Representatives shall not choose a President, whenever the right of choice shall devolve upon them, before the fourth day of March next following, then the Vice-President shall act as President, as in the case of the death or other constitutional disability of the President. The person having the greatest number of votes as Vice-President, shall be the Vice-President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if no person have a majority, then from the two highest numbers on the list the Senate shall choose the Vice-President; a quorum for the purpose shall consist of two-thirds of the whole number of Senators, and a majority of the whole number shall be necessary to a choice. But no person constitutionally ineligible to the office of President, shall be eligible to that of Vice-President of the United States.

Amendment to Art. II, Sec. 4, respecting election of President and Vice-President.

†ART. XIII. SEC. I. Neither slavery nor involuntary servitude, except as a punishment for crime, whereof the party shall have been duly convicted, shall exist within the United States, or any place subject to their jurisdiction.

No slavery.

SEC. II. Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

‡ART. XIV. SEC. I. All persons born or naturalized in the United States, and subject to the jurisdiction thereof, are citizens of the United States and of the State wherein they reside. No State shall make or enforce any law which shall abridge the privileges or immunities of citizens of the United States; nor shall any State deprive any person of life, liberty or property, without due process of law, nor deny to any person within its jurisdiction the equal protection of the laws.

SEC. II. Representatives shall be apportioned among the several States according to their respective numbers, counting the whole number of persons in each State, excluding Indians not taxed. But when the right to vote at any election for the choice of electors for President and Vice-President of the United States, Representatives in Congress, the executive or judicial officers of a State, or the members of the Legislature thereof, is denied to any of the male inhabitants of such State, being twenty-one years

*The twelfth amendment was proposed in 1803, and declared adopted in 1804.
†The thirteenth amendment was proposed and adopted in 1865.
‡The fourteenth amendment was proposed in 1866, and adopted in 1868,

of age and citizens of the United States, or in any way abridged, except for participation in rebellion or other crime, the basis of representation therein shall be reduced in the proportion in which the number of such male citizens shall bear to the whole number of male citizens twenty-one years of age in such State.

SEC. III. No person shall be a Senator or Representative in Congress, or elector of President or Vice-President, or hold any office, civil or military, under the United States, or under any State, who, having previously taken an oath as a member of Congress, or as an officer of the United States, or as a member of any State Legislature, or as an executive or judicial officer of any State, to support the Constitution of the United States, shall have engaged in insurrection or rebellion against the same, or given aid or comfort to the enemies thereof. But Congress may, by a vote of two-thirds of each house, remove such disability.

SEC. IV. The validity of the public debt of the United States, authorized by law, including debts incurred for payment of pension and bounties for services in suppressing insurrection or rebellion, shall not be questioned. But neither the United States nor any State shall assume or pay any debt or obligation incurred in aid of insurrection or rebellion against the United States, or any claim for the loss or emancipation of any slave; but all such debts, obligations and claims shall be held illegal and void.

SEC. V. Congress shall have power to enforce, by appropriate legislation, the provisions of this article.

*ART. XV. SEC. I. The rights of citizens of the United States to vote shall not be denied or abridged by the United States, or by any State, on account of race, color or previous condition of servitude.

SEC. II. Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

*The fifteenth amendment was proposed in 1869, and adopted in 1870.

APPENDIX III.

PRONUNCIATIONS.

Acadie—Ah-cah-dee'.
Aix-la-Chappelle—Aks-lah-shahpel'.
Alamo—Ah'-lah-mo.
Albert—Ahl-bare'.
Alcolhuas—Ahl-kol-hoo'-wahs.
Algonquin—Al-gon'-kwin.
Alonzo de Ojedo—Ah-lon'zo-da-O-ha'do.
Altamaha—Awl'-taw-maw-haw'
Aimable—A-mab'-bl.
Ampudia—Ahm-poo'-de-ah.
Antonio de Mendoza—Ahn-to'-ne-o da Men-do'-zah.
Apache—Ah-pah'-cha.
Arista—Ah-rees'tah.
Arkansas—Ar'-kan-saw.
Attakullakulla—Ah-tah-kool'-ah-kool-ah.
Aztlan—Ahz'-tlahn.
Bahama—Bah-hahm'-ah.
Bartholomeu Diaz—Bar-tol'-o-mou-Dee-az.
Bermudas—Ber-mu'-daz.
Beujeu—Bo-zhoo'.
Bienville—Be-on-veal'.
Bjorne Herjulfson—Be-orn-Har-yoolf-sun.
Boishebert—Bwah'-e bare'.
Bracito—Brah-the'-to.
Buena Vista—Bwa'-nah-Vees'-tah.
Cabecca de Vaca—Ka-bek-ka da-Vah'-ka.
Cabral—Kah-brahl'.
Cappas—Kah'-paws.
Chaleurs—Sha'ler.
Champlain—Sham-plane'.
Chapultepec—Cha-pool-ta-pek'.
Cherubusco—Che-roo-boos'-ko.
Chevalier de Tonti—Shew-vahl'-ya-du Tonte.
Chichimecs—Chee-chee-meks'.
Chicora—She-ko'-rah.
Chihuahua—She-wah'-wah.
Christoforo Colombo—Kres-to-fo'-ro Ko-lom' bo.
Crozat—Kro'-zaht.
Coahuila—Ko-a-hwe'-lah.
Colito—Ko-le'-to.
Comanches—Ko-man'-chez.
Conception—Con-cep-tion.
Contrecoeur—Kont'-ra-koor.
Contreras—Kon-tra'-ras.
Coronado—Kor-o-nah'-do.
Cortez, Hernando—Her-nahn'-do-Kor'-tez
Coureurs-de-bois—Koo-rer'-du bwah.
Dacan—Da-kong'.
De Gourgues—Da-goorg'.
De la Roche—Da-lah-rosh'.
De Monts—Da-Mong'.

Denys—Deh-nee.
De Rouville—Da-Roo-veel'.
De Vitre—Da-Ve-tra'.
Dieskau—De-es-ko'.
Duhault—Du-ho'.
Duluth—Du-looth'.
Du Quesne—Doo-Kane'.
Durand de Villagagnon—
Du-rong'-da-Ve-lah-gahn-yong'.
Enciso—En-see'-zo.
Espejo—A-spa'-ho.
Esquimaux—Es'-ki-mo'.
Francisco—Fran-sees'-ko.
Frontenac—Fron'-ta-nac.
Gaspard de Coligny—Gas-par-da-Ko-len-ye'.
Gila—He'-lah.
Gomera—Go-ma'-rah.
Grijalva—Gre-hahl'-vah.
Guadalupe—Gwah-da-loo'-pa.
Gunnbyorn—Goon'-be-yorn.
Hennepin—Hen'-a-pan.
Henricus—Hen-re'-cus.
Hiens—He-an'.
Hispaniola—Hes pahn-yo'-lah.
Hochelaga—Ho-shu-lah'-gah.
Hoei Shin—Ho-yi-Shin'.
Huguenots—Hu'-ge-no'.
Iberville—E-bare-veel'.
Iroquois—Ir-o-kwah'.
Jacques Cartier—Zhahk-Kahr'-te-a.
Jalapa—Hah-lah'-pah.
Joli—Zho-lee'.
Joliet—Zho'-lee-a.
Juan de Onate—Hoo-ahn'-da-Oon-yat'
Jumonville—Zhu-mong-veel'.
Karlsefne—Karl-sef'-nee.
Keift—Keeft.
Kiccowtan—Ke-koo-tan'.
La Belle—Lah-bel'.
La Noche Triste—Lah-Nocha-Trees'-ta.
La Salle—Lah Sahl'.
Laudonniere—Lo-don-yare'.
Launcelot—Lon'-se-lo.
Le Boeuf—Lu-Buff.
Le Feboure—Leh Fa-boor'.
Leisler—Lise'-ler.
Les Vaches—La-vash'.
Liet Ericson—Leef Er'-ik-sun.
Liotot—Le o-to'.
Los Angeles—Los-ahng' el-es.
Luys de Moscoso—Loo-ees' da Mos-co'-so.
Manchac—Man-shac'.
Marquette—Mahr-ket'.
Maurepas—Mor'-a-pah.
Mauvilla—Mo-vee'-lah.
Melendez de Aviles—
Mel-en'-daz du-Ah-veel'-es.
Minuit—Min'-oo-it.
Moquis—Mo-kee'.
Montcalm—Mont-kahm'.
Monterey—Mon-ta ray'.
Montezuma—Mon-ta-zoo'-mah.
Montiano—Mon-te-ah'-no.
Nahuatlac—Nah-waht'-lak.
Natchitoches—Nak'-a-tosh.
Nueces—Nwa'-thes.
Nunez de Balboa—Noon'-yez-da-Bahl-bo-ah.
Opecancanough—O-pe-kan'-kan-o.
Ouachita—Wash'-e-taw.
Ouconostota—Oo-con-o-sto'-tah.
Outagamis—Oo-ta-gahm'-ees.
Oxenstiern—Oks'-en-stern.
Palo Alto—Pah'-lo-Ahl-to.
Pamphilo de Narvaez—
Pahm-feel'-yo-da-Nar'-va-eth.
Pascua Florida—Pahs-koo-ah-Flor-e'-dah.
Phœnicians—Fe-nish'-ans.
Pinzon—Peen'-zon.
Pizarro—Pe-zar'-ro.
Ponce de Leon—Pon'-tha-da-La-on'.
Pontchartrain—Pon-shahr-tran'.
Porto Rico—Por-to Ree'-co.
Poutrincourt—Poo-tran-koor'.
Prima Vista—Pre'-mah Vees-tah.
Prideaux—Pre-do'.
Prudhomme—Pru-dohm'.
Puebla—Pweb'-lah.
Quetzal—Kwet'zal.
Rene—Ra-na'.
Resaca-de-la-Palma—
Ra-sah'-cah-da-lah-Pahl'-mah.
Ribaut—Re-bo'.
Rio Grande—Re'-o-Grand'-a.
Roberval—Ro-ber-vahl'.
Roderigo de Triana—
Ro-dre-go-da Tre-ahn'-ah.
Ryswick—Res'-wik.
Salamanca—Sahl-ah-mahn'-kah.
Saltillo—Sahl-teel'-yo.
San Augustine—San-Aw'gus-teen'.
San Felipe—San-Fa-le'-pa.
San Gabriel—San-Gab-re-el'.
San Jacinto—San-Ja-seen'-to.
San Salvador—Sahn-Sahl'-vah-dore.
Santa Fe—Sahn-ta-Fa'.
Santius—Sahn'-sha-oos.
St. Croix—Sent Cro-wah'.
Sauvolle—So-vole'.
Schuylkill—Skool'-kil.
Sebastian—Sa-bahs'-te-an.
Shoshones—Sho-sho'-neez.
Sioux—Soo.
Stuyvesant—Sti'-ves-ant.
Taensas—Ten'-saw.
Tenochitlan—Ten-o che'-tlan.
Thorfin—Tor'-fin.
Thornstein—Tor'-stine.
Utrecht—U-treckt'
Vasco da Gama—Vahs'-ko-da-Gah'-mah.
Velasquez—Va-las'-keth.
Verrazanni—Ve rat dzan'-e.
Vincente Yanez—Vin-tchen-ta Ya'-nez.
Wouter Van Twiller—
Woo'-ter-Van-twil-'ler.
Yeamans—Yee'-mans.
Zuni—Zoon'-yee.

INDEX.

	PAGE.
Abercrombie, General	192
Acadie	59
Acadians expelled	189
Adams, John	230, 273, 286, 289
Adams, J. Q	313, 319
Adams, Samuel	216, 271
Adet, Commissioner	286
Aix-la-Chapelle Treaty	180
Alabama, Admission of	318
Alabama Claims	424
Alabama, The	402, 403
Alamance, Battle	218
Alamo, Battle	340
Alaska Purchase	421
Albert, Captain	98
Albermarle Colony	149
Alcolhuas	73
Allen, Ethan	225
Alexander, Chief	167
Algerine War	315
Alien Law	288
Amaraca	41
Amherst, General	192
Amendment, Twelfth	288
American Flag	241
American System, The	325-331
Amidas	102
Ampudia, General	347
Anahuac	47
Anderson, Major	365
Andros, Sir Edmund	179
André, Major	248
Annapolis Convention	268
Anti-Federalists	272
Antietam, Battle	386
Appomattox Surrender	413
Arbuthnot, Admiral	247
Argall, Captain Samuel	122
Arista, General	345
Arkansas, Admission of	322
Arkansas Explored	54
Arkansas Post Captured	404
Armistead, General	392
Arnold, Benedict	224, 254 240, 241
Arnold's Treason	248
Arthur, Chester A	427-428
Articles of Confederation	264-267
Ashby, General Turner	409
Ashe, Colonel John	214, 245
Assembly, First Colonial	123
Atkinson, General	323
Attakullakulla, Chief	197
Austin, Moses	339
Austin, Stephen F	339, 341
Autosse, Battle	306
Ayllon, Vasquez de	44
Aztecs	47-74
Bacon, Nathaniel, Jr	173
Bacon's Rebellion	174
Bailey, Colonel Joseph	401
Bainbridge, Commodore	310
Balboa, Nunez de	47
Baltimore Conventions	362
Baltimore Founded	144
Baltimore, Lord	143
Banks, General N. P	382, 384, 398
Baratarians, The	313
Barba, Don Antonio	183
Barlow	102
Barnwell, Captain John	169
Barre	217
Barron, Captain	294
Bartholdi	433
Battles of the Civil War	416
Battles of Revolution	243, 258
Battles of the War with Mexico	351
Battles of the War of 1812	308, 314
Baum, Colonel	240
Bayard, James	313
Bayard, Thomas F	430
Beauregard, General P. G. T.	365, 378, 380, 371, 372, 411
Bee, General	373
Bell, John	362
Belmont, Battle	377
Benjamin, Judah P	363
Bennington, Battle	240
Berkley, Lord	129
Berkley, Sir Wm	172
Berlin Decree	293
Beujeu	191
Bienville	155
Bill of Rights, Virginia	230, 264
Biloxi	156
Bishop, Edward	176
Blackbeard	205
Black Hawk, Chief	323

	PAGE.
Blackstone, Wm	135
Blackstock's Ford, Battle	251
Blaine, James G	429
Blair, Francis P	421
Blair, Rev. Jas	207
Blockade, The	393-394
Bloody Marsh, Battle	183
Bloody Run, Battle	173
Blount, Gov. Wm	284
Blue Laws	140
Blunt, General	404
Boguet, Colonel Henry	198
Boishebert	189
Boone, Daniel	266
Booth, John Wilkes	418
Boston Fire	424
Boston, Founding of	135
Boston Massacre	218
Boyd, Colonel	245
Bracito, Battle	346
Braddock, Sir Edward	189
Bradford, Wm	132
Bradstreet, Colonel	192
Bragg, Braxton	348, 378-380
Brandywine, Battle	237
Brazos Santiago, Battle	414
Breckinridge, John C	362, 378, 410
Breed's Hill	227
Brewster, Wm	132
Brier Creek, Battle	245
Brock, General	301, 302
Brown, Colonel	247
Brown, Fort	345
Brown, General	305
Brown's Raid	361
Brownstown, Battle	301
Buchanan, James	357
Buell, General D. C	376, 380
Buena Vista, Battle	347
Buford, Colonel	251
Bull Run, First Battle	372
Bull Run, Second Battle	385
Bunker Hill	226
Burgoyne, Sir John	226, 237, 239
Burnet, David G	342
Burnside, General A. E	387, 395
Burr, Aaron	288, 293
Burroughs, George	176
Bushy Run, Battle	198
Business Panic of 1837	333
Business Panic of 1873	426
Butler, General Benj. F	395, 398, 409
Butler, Major John	246
Cabrillo	52
Cabot, John	39
Cabot, Sebastian	39
Cabinet, First Confederate	363
Cabral	88
Calhoun	299, 320, 330
Call for Troops	369
Calvert, Cecil	143
Calvert, Leonard	143
Calvert, Philip	144
Campbell, Colonel	245
Camden, Battle	249
Canary Islands	23
Canby, General	425
Canonicus, Chief	141
Cantey, Captain	182
Capital Bargain	282
Captain Jack, Chief	425
Carden, Captain	310
Carleton, Sir Guy	228
Caroline, Fort	99
Carpenter's Hall	220
Carr, Dabney	219
Carver, John	132
Carteret Colony	150
Carteret, Sir Geo	129
Cartier	59
Castenado, General	340
Caswell, Colonel Richard	228
Cavalry Leaders	409
Cedar Creek, Battle	410
Cedar Mountain, Battle	385
Census, First	283
Centennial Celebration	424
Central America Discovered	37
Cerro Gordo, Battle	349
Chad's Ford, Battle	237
Chalmette, Battle	313
Champlain	60
Chandler, Gen	304
Chancellorsville, Battle	388
Chapultepec, Battle	349
Charleston Captured	247
Charleston Convention	361
Charleston Earthquake	433
Charleston Founded	150
Charter defined	260
Charter Oak	178
Charter, Massachusetts	135
Charter, Rhode Island	141
Cheatham, Gen. B. F	408
Cherokee War	197
Cherry Valley Massacre	246
Chesapeake Bay	111
Cheves, Langdon	299, 324
Chicago Fire	424
Chickamauga, Battle	405
Chicora	44
Chippewa, Battle	306

	PAGE.
Chrysler's Field, Battle	305
Churchill, Gen. T. J	405
Chichimecs	73
Civil Rights Bill	421
Civil Service Reform	430
Claiborne, Gov. C C	306, 316
Clarke, Colonel	245
Clark, Gen. Geo. Rogers	242
Clarke, Wm	292
Clarendon Colony	149
Clay, Henry	299, 313, 317, 319, 329, 331, 337, 343, 355
Clayborne's Rebellion	143
Clayton, Gen. H. D	409
Cleburne, Gen. Pat	409
Cleveland, Grover	429-433
Clinch, General	323
Clinton, General	226, 293, 234
Clinton, George	295
Clinton, Sir Henry	247
Cloyce, Sarah	176
Cobb, Howell	363
Coddington, Wm	141
Coffee, General	306
Cold Harbor Battle	412
Colquitt, Gen. A. H	406
Coligny	98
Colito, Battle	340
Colonial Coins	203
Colonial Congress	179
Colonial Differences	206
Colonial Government, First	111, 200
Colonial Industries	202
Colonial Life	207
Colonial Money	204
Colonial Progress	199
Colonial Revolts	179
Colorado, Admission of	424
Columbia, District of	289
Columbus	23, 37
Compromise of 1833	331
Compromises, Three Great	269
Conception, Battle	340
Conemaugh Disaster	434
Confederate Government	363-365
Conflicting Claims	164
Congress, First Continental	220
Congress, First Federal	279
Connecticut settled	139
Constitution, Adoption of	272-273
Constitutional Convention	268-273
Constitution defined	260
Constitution, First written	256
Constitution, First Virginia	123
Constitutional Interpretation	271
Constitutional Union Party	362
Contreras, Battle	349
Conway Cabal	239
Cooper, Sir Ashley	150
Corinth, Battle	380
Cornwallis, General	234, 236, 237, 247, 249
Coronado	52
Cory, Giles	176
Cory, Martha	176
Cortez, Hernando	49
Correspondence, Committees of	219
Cotymoore, Capt	197
Cotton Gin	327
Cotton Manufactures	327
Cowpens, Battle	254
Craven, Governor	170
Creek War	306
Creek Treaty	319
Crittenden, General	377
Croatan	105
Crawford, Wm. H	319
Crockett, David	340
Crook, General	432
Cross Keys, Battle	384
Crown Point captured	225
Croghan, Major	303
Cruger, Colonel	247, 255
Cuba, Discovery of	35
Cumberland Road	317
Custer Massacre	425
Curtis, Gen	376, 404
Dacan	63
Dade Massacre	323
Dale, Sir Thos	119
Dallas (Ga.), Battle	406
Dare, Virginia	105
Dark Ages	20
Davis, John	69
Davis, Jefferson	348, 364
Deane, Silas	241
Dearborn, Gen. Henry	301
Death Angle	411
Decatur	291, 310
De Chopart	171
Declaration of Independence	231
Declaratory Act	216
De Contrecœur	190
Deerfield Massacre	168, 179
De Gourgues	100
De Kalb	237, 248
Delaware, Lord	116
De Leon, Alonzo	156
Democratic-Republican Party	286
De Monts	59
Denys	59

	Page.
De Rouville	179
De Soto	52, 53
D'Estaing, Count	241, 246
Detroit, Surrender	301
De Vitre	193
Diaz, Bartholomeu	21
Dieskau, Baron	190
Dinwiddie, Governor	186
Doniphan, Colonel	346
Donop, General	235
Dorchester Heights	228
Dorr's Rebellion	336
Douglas, Stephen A	356, 362
Dover (N. H.) Massacre	179
Dowling, Lieutenant R. W	400
Downie, Commodore	307
Drake, Sir Francis	69, 103
Drake, Captain	182
Dred Scott Decision	355
Drummond, General	306
Drummond, Wm	149
Duhault	156
Du Quesne Built	188
Du Quesne, Capture of	193
Early, Gen. Jubal	410
East India Co	126
Eccanacheca, Battle	306
Educational Campaign	432
Election, First	116
Electoral College	270
Electoral Commission	427
Elizabeth, Queen	68
Elizabeth, Settlement of	106
Elmira, Battle	246
Emancipation Proclamation	417
Embargo Act	294
Empressarios, The	339
Emucfaw, Battle	306
Enciso	47
Endicott, John	135
Endicott, W. C	430
English Revolution	136
English, Wm. H	428
Era of Good Feeling	315
Erie Canal	317
Erik the Red	90
Espejo	52
Eutaw Springs, Battle	255
Evans, General	373
Everett, Edward	362
Ewell, Gen. Richard S	384, 390
Falling Waters, Battle	371
Fanquier, Governor	215
Farragut, Commodore	396-398, 412
Federalists	272
Federalist, The	272
Federal Convention, Work of	268
Federal Ratio	270
Fenwick, Captain	182
Ferdinand	26
Ferguson, Major	251
Fifteenth Amendment	420
Fillmore, Millard	357
Finnegan, Gen. Joseph	406
Fisher Hill, Battle	410
Fishing Creek, Battle	251
Five Forks, Battle	413
Florida Cession	317
Florida, Discovery of	44
Florida Settled	99
Forbes, General	193
Forrest, Gen. N. B	408-409
Fort Donelson Captured	377
Fort Henry Captured	377
Fort Wm. Henry Massacre	191
Fort Fontenac, Capture of	192
Fort Puluski Captured	395
Fort Rosalie Massacre	171
Fort Sumter Surrendered	367
Forty-niners	350
Fourteenth Amendment	420
Franklin, Battle	408
Franklin, Benjamin	188, 241, 262, 281
Franklin, General	400
Franklin, State of	267
Frazier, General	241
Free Soil Party	357
Fredericksburg, Battle	387
Fremont, Gen. J. C	357, 382, 384, 401
French Alliance	241
French and Indian War	189
Frenchtown, Battle	303
Frobisher	69
Frontenac, Count	63
Front Royal, Battle	384
Fugitive Slave Law	355
Fulton, Robert	295
Fu Sang	89
Gadsden, Christopher	215, 272
Gadsden Purchase	350
Gaines, Fort	412
Gaines, General	305, 306, 323
Gallatin, Albert	313
Galveston Captured	400
Gama, Vasco da	21
Gansevoort, Colonel	240
Garfield, Jas. A	427, 428
Garland, Augustus H	430
Garnett, General	392

PAGE.

Garrison, Wm. L. 356
Gaspee, The 218
Gates, General 221, 240, 248
Gates, Sir Thomas 116
General Court 136
Genet 283
Geneva Award 424
Genoa City 21
Germantown, Battle 237
Geronimo, Chief 433
Gettysburg, Battle 390-392
Ghent Treaty 313
Gibson, Gen. Randall L. 409
Gilbert, Raleigh 107
Gilbert, Sir Humphrey 101
Glorietta, Battle 375
Gold, Discovery of 350
Goliad Massacre 340
Gonzales, Battle 340
Good Hope, Cape 21
Good Hope, Fort 139
Good, Sarah 176
Goodwin, John 175
Gordon, Gen. J. B. 410
Gorges, Sir Ferdinand 139
Gosnold 106, 111
Government, Forms of 259
Grand Model, The 150
Graffenreid, Baron 169
Granganimo, Chief 102
Grant, Gen. U. S. 376, 377, 379 399, 405, 409, 411, 412, 421, 432
Grant, Major 193
Granville, Prime Minister 214
Great Woods 186
Greenbacks 426
Green Mountain Boys 225
Green, Rev. Roger 148
Greene, General 234, 238, 253-257
Greenville 103
Grijalva 47
Grundy, Felix 299
Guadalupe Hidalgo Treaty 350
Guilford C. H. Battle 254
Gunnbjorn 89

Half King, Chief 188
Halleck, Gen. H. W. 376, 379, 385
Hamilton, Alexander 268, 272, 281
Hamilton, Governor 242
Hamlin, Hannibal 361
Hampton, Gen. Wade 373, 374, 303, 409
Hancock, Gen. W. S. 411, 412, 428
Hancock, John 218
Handcock, Chief 169

PAGE.

Hanging Rock, Battle 251
Hardee, Gen. W. J. 378
Harlem Heights, Battle 234
Harmar, Gen. 283
Harper's Ferry Captured 386
Harrison, Gen. Wm. Hy. 298, 303, 333
Harrison, Benjamin F. 431
Harrison, Benjamin 225, 271
Hartford Convention 309
Harvard College 207
Harvard, Rev. John 207
Harvey, Sir John 172
Hatteras Inlet Captured 395
Haverhill Massacre 179
Hayes, Rutherford B. 426
Hayti Discovered 35
Hayne, Col. Isaac 248
Hendrick, Chief 190
Herkimer, General 240
Hendricks, Thos. A. 426, 429, 432
Hennepin 63
Henry, Patrick 215, 271
Herjulfson 89
Hessians 235
Hiens 156
Hill, Gen. A. P. 374, 390
Hill, Gen. D. H. 386, 413
Hindman, Gen. T. C. 404
Hispaniola 34
Hobbs, Deliverance 176
Hobkirk's Hill, Battle 255
Hoe, R. M. 343
Hoei Shin 86
Holmes, Gen. T. H. 405
Hood, Gen. J. B. 407
Hooker, Gen. Joseph 387, 390
Hooker, Rev. Thomas 140
Horse Shoe Bend, Battle 306
Houston, Gen. Sam 341, 342
Howe, Admiral 242
Howe, Elias 343
Howe, General 226
Howe, Gen. Robt. 245
Howard, Gen. 389, 427
Hudson 70
Hudson River, Discovery of 70
Huger, Gen. Benj. 371
Huguenots 98
Hull, Captain 309
Hull, Gen. Wm. 301
Hunt, Rev. Robt. 111
Hutchinson, Mrs. Anne 138
Huger, Col. 247

Iberville 155

	PAGE.
Ildefonso Treaty	291
Illinois, Admission of	318
Illinois Explored	63
Importation Acts	212
Impressment of Seamen	300
Independence, Growth of	276
Indian Races	78
Indian Territory Organized	323
Indiana, Admission of	315
Internal Improvements	317
Invention, Progress of	343
Iowa, Admission of	343
Iuka, Battle	380
Isabel, Fort	35
Isabella	26
Island No 10 Captured	395
Izard, Gen Ralph	305
Jack, Capt	190
Jackson, Andrew....306, 313, 316, 319, 320, 322-331	
Jackson, Gen. "Stonewall"..372, 373, 381, 384, 385,	389
Jamaica, Discovered	37
Jamestown Massacre	165
Jamestown Settled	111
Japan Treaty	357
Jasper, Sergeant	229
Jay, John	279
Jay's Treaty	282
Jefferson, Thomas....231, 290-296	
Jesuits	60
Johnson, Andrew....418-420	
Johnson, Col. Richard M.	304
Johnson, Gen. Edward	384
Johnson, Governor	182
Johnson, Herschel V	362
Johnson Impeachment, The	421
Johnson, Sir Wm	190
Johnston, Gen. Albert Sidney.... 376-379	
Johnston, Gen. J. E....371, 372, 381, 384, 406, 407,	414
Joliet	62
Jones, Capt. Paul	247
Jumonville,	188
Jury Trial, First	111
Kansas, Admission of	357
Kansas-Nebraska Bill	356
Kansas Struggle, The	356
Karlsefne	90
Kearney, Gen	346
Kieft	128
Kemper, Gen	392
Kendall	111
Kennesaw Mt., Battle	406
Kent Island	143
Kentucky, Admission of	283
Kentucky Resolutions	288
Kernstown, Battle	384
Kettle Creek, Battle	245
Kid, Capt	205
Kilpatrick, Gen	409
King George's War	180
King's Mountain, Battle	251
King, Rufus	295
King Philip's War	167
King William's War	178
Kuyphausen, Gen	234
Knox, Gen	280
Knoxville, Siege of	405
Kosciusko....237, 240,	255
Labrador, Discovery of	39
La Colle, Battle	305
Laconia	139
Lafayette	237
Lafayette's Visit	318
Lafitte	313
Lake Erie, Battle	304
Lake George, Battle	190
Lamar, L. Q. C	430
Lamar, Mirabeau B	342
Lane, Jos	362
Lane, Ralph	103
Lancelot	156
Laudonierre	99
Langharne, Captain	309
Laurens, Henry	230
Lawrence, Captain....310-311	
La Salle....62,	155
Law, John	158
Lee, Arthur	241
Lee, Gen. Chas	241
Lee, Gen. Fitzhugh	274
Lee, Fort	234
Lee, Col. Henry....251, 268,	272
Lee, Gen. Robt. E....370, 384-393	
Lee, R. H....219,	271
Lee, Gen. S. D....399, 408,	409
Le Bœuf, Fort	187
Le Feboure	182
Leisler, Jacob	179
Lewis, Merriwether	292
Lexington, Battle	223
Lexington (Mo.), Captured	375
Liberty Bell	231
Liberty Party	357
Liberty, Statue of	433
Lief Ericson	90
Lincoln, Abraham....361, 367,	409

PAGE.

Lincoln, General 240, 245, 246
Liotot 156
Little Turtle, Chief 283
Livingstone, Commissioner 291
Locke, Col. Francis 251
Locke, John 150
Logan, John A 429
London Company 107
Loudon, Lord 192
Long Island Battle 234
Longstreet, Gen. James 385, 386, 390, 405, 413
Loose Constructionists 317
Lookout Mountain, Battle 405
Louisburg Captured 180
Louisiana, Admission of 315
Louisiana, Limits of defined 290
Louisiana Named 65
Louisiana, Purchase 291, 292
Louisiana Settled 158
Louisiana, Quarantine Station 427
Lowndes, Wm. 299
Loyalty, Question of 370
Lundy's Lane, Battle 306
Lyman, General 190
Lynn, Captain 375

Macdonough, Commodore 307
Mackey, Colonel 170
Macomb, General 305
Madison, James 268, 272, 298-315
Madog 89
Magas 73
Magaw 234
Magaw, Colonel 42
Magellan 371
Magruder, Gen. J. B 371, 383, 399
Maguaga, Battle 301
Maine, Admission of 318
Maine Settled 139
Maitland, Colonel 246
Mallory, Stephen B 363
Malvern 385
Mandeville, Sir John 20
Manhattan Island Settled 126
Manning, Daniel 430
Mansfield, Battle 401
Manteo, Chief 103
Marion, General 250
Marco, Friar 52
Marquette 62
Marshall, Colonel 348
Martin, John 111
Maryland Named 143
Mason, Geo 264, 271
Mason James M 417

PAGE.

Mason, John 139, 167
Mason and Dixon's Line 145
Massachusetts Bay Co 135
Massachusetts Explored 106
Massasoit, Chief 134
Mather, Cotton 176
Mauvilla 54
Maumee, Battle 283
Maurepas 156
Maximilian 417
Mayflower 131
Mayflower Compact 261
Maynard, Lieutenant 205
McClellan 370, 375, 382, 386, 432
McCormick's Reaper 322
McCulloch, Gen. Ben 375, 377
McDowell, Battle 384
McDowell, Gen. Irvin 371, 383
McHenry, Fort 311
McIntosh, General 377
McKay, Lieutenant 183
McPherson, General 407, 408
Meade, Gen. Geo. G 390
Mecklenburg Resolutions 231
Meigs, Fort 303
Melendez 99
Memminger, Chas. G 363
Mendoza, Antonio de 52
Mercer, Fort 238
Mexican War 344-351
Mexico, Aborigines of 73
Mexico City Captured 349
Mexico Discovered 47
Micanopy, Chief 323
Michigan, Admission of 322
Miflin, Fort 238
Milan Decree 293
Military Act 421
Mill Springs, Battle 377
Miller, Colonel 306
Minnesota, Admission of 357
Minuit, Peter 127, 129
Missionary Ridge, Battle 405
Mississippi, Admission of 318
Mississippi Company 158
Mississippi, Discovery of 54
Mississippi Explored 54
Mississippi River Explored 65
Missouri, Admission of 318, 319
Missouri Compromise 319
Mobile Attacked 412
Monckton, Colonel 189
Modoc War 424
Monk's Corner, Battle 247
Monitor and Virginia 396
Molino del Rey, Battle 349

	PAGE.
Monmouth, Battle	241
Monroe Doctrine	317
Monroe, James	291, 315-319
Montana, Admission of	434
Montcalm	191
Montezuma	49
Montiano	182
Montgomery, Colonel	197
Montgomery, Gen. Richard	228
Montreal, Capture of	194
Moore, Col. James	169
Moore, Governor	181
Moore's Creek Bridge, Battle	228
Morgan, Fort	412
Morgan, Gen. Daniel	228, 240, 254
Morgan, Gen. Jno. H	408, 409
Mormons, The	337
Morris, Robt	263
Morristown Heights	237
Morse, Prof. S. F. B	343
Morse, Rebecca	176
Morton, Levi P	431
Moultrie, Colonel	229, 245
Moultrie, Fort	229
Mound Builders	86, 87
Mulligan, Colonel	375
Mumfordsville, Battle	380
Murfreesboro, Battle	404
Nadod	89
Nahucke, Fort	169
Nashville, Battle	409
Natchitoches	158
Natchez War	171
National Republican Party	320
Narvaez, Pamphilo de	45
Navigation Acts	211
Nebraska, Admission of	421
Necessity, Fort	188
New Albion	69
Newberne Settled	169
New Hampshire Settled	139
New Jersey Settled	129
Nelson, Thomas	230
Nelson, Governor	256
New Market, Battle	410
New Netherlands	126
New Orleans, Battle	313
New Orleans Founded	158
New Orleans, Capture of	398
Newport, Capt. Christopher	110
Newport Founded	141
New Sweden	129
Newtonia, Battle	404
Nicholson, Governor	179
Ninety-Six, Fort	255
North Dakota, Admission of	434
Non-Conformists	131
North Carolina Explored	102
North Carolina Settled	149
North, Lord	219, 257
Northwest Territory, Conquest	242
Nullification	295
Nullification Ordinance	330
Oglethorpe, James	154, 183
Ojedo	41
Okeechobee, Battle	323
Oklahoma Boom	434
Opitchapan	165
Opecancanough	115, 165
Omnibus Bill	355
Osceola, Chief	323
Otis, James	213
Oswego, Fort	191
Ohio Company	186
Ohio, Admission of	290
Onate	52
Olustee, Battle	406
Ocean Cable, First	357
Orange, Fort	127
Orionoco River Discovered	37
Orders in Council	293
Oregon, Admission of	357
Oregon Boundary Treaties	317, 344
Oregon, Discovery of	69
Oriskany, Battle	240
Ordinance of 1787	265
Ouconostota, Chief	197
Pacific Discovered	47
Pakenham, Sir Edward	313
Palo Alto, Battle	345
Paris, First Treaty of	195
Paris, Second Treaty of	257
Parker, Admiral Hyde	245
Parker, Captain	223
Parker, Sir Peter	228
Parliament	213
Parris, Samuel	176
Partisan Warfare	250
Patriot War	334
Patroons	127
Patterson, General	370
Pearce, Gen. N. B	375
Pea Ridge, Battle	376
Pequods	167
Pendleton, George H	418
Penn, Wm	145
Penn's Treaty	147
Pennsylvania Line, Revolt of	263
Pennsylvania, Settlement of	146

	PAGE.
Pepperel, General	180
Peratta, Battle	375
Percy, George	117
Perier, General	171
Perry, Commodore	304
Perryville, Battle	381
Personal Liberty Bills	356
Pet Banks	324
Petersburg Captured	413
Petition, Anti-Slavery	281
Philadelphia Founded	146
Philip, Chief	167
Philips, General	241, 254
Philippi, Battle	371
Phips, Sir Wm	179
Phœnicians	88
Pickens, General	250
Pickett, Gen. Geo. D	392
Pierce, Franklin	357
Piggott, General	227
Pike, Gen. Albert	376
Pike, Gen. Zebulon	304
Pilgrims	132
Pillow, General	349
Pinckney, Chas. C	268, 287, 272, 295
Pinzons, The	29
Pirates	205
Pitcairn, Major	223
Pitt, Wm	192
Pittsburg Landing, Battle	378
Pizarro	50
Plan of Union, Franklin's	188
Pleasant Hill, Battle	401
Pleasanton, General	409
Plymouth Company	107
Plymouth Rock	132
Plymouth, Settlement of	133
Pocahontas	115
Pocotaligo Massacre	170
Political Thought Centers	212
Polk, Gen. Leonidas	377, 378
Polk, Jas. K	337, 343
Polo, Marco	20
Ponce de Leon	44
Pontchartrain	156
Pontiac, Chief	198
Pope, Gen. John	385, 395
Popham Colony	107
Popham, George	107
Popham, Sir John	187
Port Bill, Boston	219
Port Hudson Captured	399
Port Royal (N. S.)	59
Port Royal (S. C.)	98
Port Royal (N. S.) Captured	179
Port Royal (S. C.) Captured	395
Port Republic, Battle	384
Porter, Captain	309
Poutrincourt	59
Power Loom	327
Powhattan	111
Prairie Grove, Battle	404
Preble, Commodore	291
Prescott, Colonel	226
President's Cabinet, First	280
Presque Isle, Fort	186
Prevost, General	245, 304
Price, Stirling	346, 375, 376, 379, 380, 405
Prideaux, General	192
Princeton, Battle	237
Pring	107
Printing Press, First Rotary	343
Proctor, General	303
Prophet, The	298
Proprietors, Lords	148
Protective Tariff	326
Protestants	98
Providence Founded	141
Province Defined	256
Pueblos	87
Pulaski	236
Puritans	131
Puritan Migration	136
Pushamataha, Chief	306
Putnam, General	224, 234
Quakers	147
Quasi French War	287
Quebec, Capture of	194
Queenstown, Battle	302
Queen Anne's War	179
Quetzal	89
Rahl, Colonel	236
Railroad, First	320
Railroad Strikes	427
Raisin River Massacre	303
Raleigh	102
Raleigh Tavern	216
Ramsour's Mill, Battle	251
Randolph, Edmund	279
Randolph, Peyton	220
Ratcliff	111
Rawdon, Lord	248, 255
Reagan, J. H	363
Reconstruction	419-421
Red River Expedition	401
Regulators, The	218
Regulating Act	219
Renssaellaer, Stephen Van	302
Republican Party	357

PAGE.

Resaca de la Palma ... 345
Resaca (Ga.), Battle ... 406
Revenue Act ... 216
Revenue Tariff ... 326
Revere, Paul ... 223
Rhett, Col. Wm ... 182, 205
Rhode Island Expedition ... 242
Rhode Island Settled ... 141
Riall, General ... 306
Ribaut ... 98
Rice Culture Introduced ... 202
Riedesel, General ... 241
Rich Mountain, Battle ... 371
Richmond (Ky.), Battle ... 380
Riedesel, General ... 235
Roanoke Island ... 103
Robertson, James ... 266
Robertson, J. W ... 341
Rodgers, Commodore ... 299
Rolfe, John ... 165
Rosalie, Fort ... 157
Rosecrans, Gen. W. S ... 380, 404, 405, 406
Ross, General ... 311
Roberval ... 59
Russell, Jonathan ... 313
Rutledge, John ... 230, 268
Ryswick Treaty ... 179

St. Augustine Founded ... 99
St. Clair, General ... 239, 283
St. Lawrence, Gulf ... 59
St. Leger, General ... 240
St. Louis, Fort ... 156
St. Mary's (Fla.) ... 98
St. Mary's (Md.), Settlement of ... 143
Sabine Cross Roads, Battle ... 401
Sabine Pass, Battle ... 400
Sackett's Harbor, Defense of ... 305
Sacramento Creek, Battle ... 346
Sagadahoc ... 107
Salamanca, Council of ... 26
Salmon Falls (Me.) Massacre ... 179
Salzburgers ... 154
Samoset, Chief ... 133
Sander's Creek, Battle ... 249
San Felipe Convention ... 341
San Jacinto, Battle ... 341, 342
San Salvador ... 33
Santa Anna, General ... 342
Santa Fé Founded ... 52
Santa Fé Expedition ... 346
Santa Fé, Trail ... 346
Sassacus, Chief ... 166
Sauvolle ... 155
Savannah Founded ... 153

PAGE.

Savannah Captured ... 245
Sayle, Wm ... 149
Schenectady Massacre ... 179
Schofield, General ... 408
Schuyler, Fort ... 240
Schuyler, General ... 237, 240
Scott, Gen. W. S ... 305, 348-350, 370
Screw Propeller ... 322
Secession, Cause of ... 362
Secession of Southern States ... 363
Secession Ordinance ... 363
Sedgwick, General ... 387
Sectional Antagonism, Beginning of ... 318
Sectional Antagonism ... 352-354
Sectional Inequality ... 342
Sedition Law ... 288
Self-Government, Development ... 277
Seminole War ... 315, 323
Semmes, Admiral ... 402-403
Separatists ... 131
Seven Days' Battles ... 384
Seven Pines' Battle ... 384
Sevier, Col. John ... 253, 267
Sewing Machine, First ... 343
Seymour, Gen. Freeman ... 406
Slidell, John ... 417
Shirley, General ... 189
Shiloh, Battle ... 378
Shields, General ... 384
Sherman, Gen. Thomas W ... 395
Sherman, Gen. W. T ... 399, 405-408
Sherman's March ... 408
Sheridan, Gen. P. H ... 409, 410
Shelby, Col. Isaac ... 253
Shay's Rebellion ... 265
Shawnee War ... 298
Shawmut ... 136
Sitting Bull, Chief ... 425
Sioux War ... 424
Sigel, General ... 375, 409
Sibley's Brigade ... 375
Skipwith, Fulwar ... 316
Skittawarres ... 107
Slavery Introduced ... 121
Slavery, Opposition to ... 353
Slater, Samuel ... 327
Slemmer, Lieutenant ... 365
Smyth, Gen. Alex ... 303
Smith, Capt. John ... 111
Smithsonian Institution ... 344
Smithson, James ... 343
Smith, Lieut. N. H ... 400
Smith, Joseph ... 337
Smith, Gen. E. Kirby ... 372, 374, 380, 414

	PAGE.
Smith, Gen. C. F.	376
Smith, Gov. Henry	341
Snorri	90
Somers, Sir George	116
South Carolina, Settlement of	98
South Dakota, Admission of	434
South Mountain, Battle	386
Sovereignty	259
Spottswood, Governor	169, 205
Spottsylvania, Battle	411
Spoliation Claims	292
Spoils System	324
Spain, Treaty with	283
Squanto	133
Squatter Sovereignty	356
Stamp Act, The	214
Standish, Captain	132, 133
Stanton, Edwin M.	421
Stark, Gen. John	223
Star of the West	365
Starving Time	118
State Defined	256
State Rights	271
Steamboat, First	295
Steamship, First	318
Steele, Gen. Frederick	404
Stephens, Alex. H.	364
Stephenson, Fort	303
Steuben	237, 238
Stewart, Gen. A. P.	408
Stewart, Gen. J. E. B.	386
Stirling, General	234
Stoddart, Benjamin	287
Stoneman, General	388
Stono Ferry, Battle	246
Stony Point, Capture	246
Stringham, Commodore	395
Stuyvesant	128
Sub-Treasury System	335
Suffrage	270
Sullivan's Expedition	246
Sullivan, General	234, 242
Sumter, General	250
Sutherland, Lieutenant	183
Swansey Massacre	167
Swedish Settlements	146
Talladega, Battle	306
Tariff Defined, 325; Classified	326
Tarleton, Colonel	247, 249, 251, 254
Taxes Defined	325
Taylor, Zachary	323, 345-348, 357
Taylor, Gen. Richard	401, 414
Teach, Pirate	205
Tea Party, Boston	219
Tecumseh, Chief	298, 301, 304
Telegraph, First	343
Tennessee, Admission of	283
Tenure of Office Act	421
Territory, "South of the Ohio."	284
Territory, State Cessions of	284
Texas Admitted	343
Texas Annexation	338-343
Texas Annexed	343
Texas Cession	350
Texas Declaration of Independence	342
Texas, French Exploration of	156
Texas Revolution	340
Thames, Battle	304
Thirteenth Amendment	420
Thoerwald	90
Thomas, Gen. George H.	377, 380, 405
Thomas, Gen. Philemon	315
Thomas, Senator	319
Thornton Massacre	345
Thurman, Allen G.	431
Ticonderoga Captured	225
Tilden, Samuel J.	426, 432
Tituba	176
Tobacco Culture	119
Toltecs	73
Tomo Chichi, Chief	153
Tonti	63
Toombs, Robt.	363
Townshend, Chancellor	216
Travis, Col. W. B.	340
Treasury Surplus	431
Trent Affair	417
Trenton, Battle	236
Tripolitan War	291
Truxton, Commodore	287
Tryon, Governor	218, 246
Tuscarora War	169
Twiggs, General	349
Tyler, John	336
Union Pacific Railroad	424
United States Bank	324
Urrea, General	341
Utrecht, Treaty	180
Vacca, Cabacca de	45
Valencia, General	349
Valley Forge	238
Valley Campaign	384
Valverde, Battle	275
Van Buren, Martin	333
Van Dorn, Gen. Earl	376, 379
Van Horne, Major	301
Van Twiller	128

	PAGE.
Velasco, Treaty	342
Velasquez	49
Venango, Fort	187
Vermont, Admission of	283
Verrazanni	58
Vespuccius	41
Vicksburg Captured	399
Vikings	89
Vilas, W. F	430
Vinland	90
Virginia and Monitor	396
Virginia Resolutions	288
Von Heister, General	234, 235
Votan	89
Waldsee, Muller	41
Walker, Sir Hovenden	179
Walker, Leroy P	363
Wallace, Gen. Lewis	410
Walloons	128
Walthall, Gen. E. C	409
Ward, Gen. Artemus	226
Wardwell, Samuel	176
Warner, Seth	225
War of 1812	300-315
Warren, General	180
Washington, Admission of	434
Washington City	289
Washington, Col. William	254
Washington (Tex.) Convention	341
Washington, Fort	234
Washington, George, 187; General, 225-257; President, 279	-284
Washington, Treaty	424
Waxhaw, Battle	251
Wayne, Gen. Anthony	246, 283
Weathersford, Chief	306
Webster-Ashburton Treaty	337
Webster, Daniel	336
West Florida, State of	315
West, Gov. Joseph	150
West India Company	127
Weymouth	107
Wheeler, Gen. Joseph H	380, 408
Wheeler, W. A	426
Whig Party	333
Whisky Rebellion	282
White Apple Village	171
White, Governor	105
White Plains, Battle	234
White, Rev. John	135
Whitney, Eli	327
Whitney, Wm. C	430
Wilcox, General	392
Wilderness, Battle	411
Wilkinson, Gen. James	305
Willard, John	176
William and Mary College	207
Williams, Colonel	190
William Henry, Fort	191
Williams, Roger	137
Williamsburg, Battle	383
Wilmot Proviso	354
Wilson's Creek, Battle	375
Winchester, Battle	410
Winchester, General	303
Winder, General	304
Windsor, General	305
Wingfield	111-114
Wingina	102
Winthrop, General	179
Winthrop, John	136
Wisconsin, Admission of	343
Wisconsin Explored	62
Witchcraft, Salem	175
Wolfe, General	193
Wool, General	346
World's Exposition	428
Worth, General	347
Writs of Assistance	213
Wyatt, Sir Francis	124
Wyoming Massacre	246
Yamassee War	170
Yeamans, Sir John	149
Yeardly, Governor	119-123
Yell, Colonel	348
York, Duke of	129
Yorktown Surrender	256
Young, Brigham	337
Zavalla, Lorenzo de	342
Zollicoffer, General	377
Zuni	87

RETURN TO the circulation desk of any
University of California Library
or to the
NORTHERN REGIONAL LIBRARY FACILITY
Bldg. 400, Richmond Field Station
University of California
Richmond, CA 94804-4698

ALL BOOKS MAY BE RECALLED AFTER 7 DAYS
2-month loans may be renewed by calling
(510) 642-6753
1-year loans may be recharged by bringing books
to NRLF
Renewals and recharges may be made 4 days
prior to due date

DUE AS STAMPED BELOW

AUG 1 1 1994

LD
(I

U.C. BERKELEY LIBRARIES
C038151209

